



THE NEW
PRIMARY LATIN BOOK

FOR

ELEMENTARY AND ADVANCED CLASSES
IN HIGH SCHOOLS,

CONTAINING

INTRODUCTORY LESSONS, AUTHORS, AND
PROSE COMPOSITION.

BY

ADAM CARRUTHERS, M.A.,

Lecturer on Greek, University College, Toronto,

AND

J. C. ROBERTSON, B.A.,

Associate Professor of Greek, Victoria College, Toronto.

TORONTO:

WILLIAM BRIGGS.

A2081

34

900

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand nine hundred, by WILLIAM BRIGGS, at the Department of Agriculture.

PREFACE.

THE present edition of the PRIMARY LATIN BOOK appears in response to instructions from the Education Department of Ontario, which desires that the authorized text-books in Latin shall retain, unchanged and unrevised, the Introductory Lessons of the former text-books, and shall also include the selections from Nepos and Cæsar prescribed for matriculation by the University of Toronto, together with annotations, vocabularies and exercises in prose composition and sight translation based on these selections.

The authors regret that it has proved impossible for the present to secure permission to revise the Introductory Lessons also. One result is a difference between the old and the new portion of the book in the marking of the "hidden quantities" of certain words—a matter on which much new light has been thrown since the first appearance of the PRIMARY LATIN BOOK in 1892. The chief differences are in the words cēssī, clāssis and jūssī; firmus, mille, millia, relictus, quārtus, vāllum and vāstō, which, it is now fairly established, are to be marked as above.

TORONTO, *August*, 1900.



CONTENTS.

PART	PAGE
I. Introductory Lessons and Exercises	1
II. Preparatory Lessons in Continuous Reading	115
III. Inflection—	
I. Paradigms of Inflection	136
II. Epitome of Rules and Peculiarities	170
IV. Selections from Nepos and Cæsar, with Annotations—	
Nepos: Themistocles, Aristides, Hannibal	185
Cæsar: De Bello Gallico, Bk. IV., Bk. V. 1-23	201
Annotations on the Selections	229
V. Latin Prose Composition and Translation at Sight—	
I. Rules of Syntax and Exercises in Prose Composition.	285
II. Exercises in Translation at Sight	448
VI. Vocabularies and Index—	
I. Latin-English Vocabulary	466
II. English-Latin Vocabulary	528
III. Index	559

PART I.

INTRODUCTORY LESSONS AND EXERCISES.

LESSON	
Introductory.—Pronunciation, Syllabication, Accent	1
I. Present Indicative Active of Conjugations I. and II.	3
II. Nominative Singular and Plural of Declensions I. and II.	5
III. Accusative Singular and Plural of Declensions I. and II.	6
IV. Genitive Singular and Plural of Declensions I. and II.	7
V. Dative Singular and Plural of Declensions I. and II.	
<i>Ad</i> with Accusative	8
VI. Imperfect Indicative Active of Conjugations I. and II.	10
VII. Ablative Singular and Plural of Declensions I. and II.	
<i>Cum, in, ā, ab</i> , with Ablative	11

LESSON	PAGE
VIII. Vocative Singular and Plural of Declensions I. and II. Nouns in <i>er</i> and <i>ir</i> of Declension II. Use of <i>-que</i> .	13
IX. Nouns in <i>um</i> of Declension II. Gender	15
X. Adjectives of Declensions I. and II.	16
XI. Future Indicative Active of Conjugations I. and II. .	18
XII. Masculine and Feminine Nouns of Declension III. .	19
XIII. Perfect Indicative Active of all Conjugations . .	20
XIV. Neuter Nouns of Declension III.	22
XV. Pluperfect Indicative Active of all Conjugations. .	24
XVI. Prepositions <i>ā, ab, ad, cum, dē, ex, in, inter, per, post,</i> <i>propter, sine, trāns</i>	25
XVII. Future Perfect Indicative Active of all Conjugations .	26
XVIII. Adjectives of Declension III.	28
XIX. Complementary Infinitive (Active Voice)	29
XX. Nouns of Declension IV.	30
XXI. Perfect Indicative Passive of all Conjugations . .	32
XXII. Ablative of Agent with <i>ā, ab</i>	34
XXIII. Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative Passive of all Conjugations	36
XXIV. Nouns of Declension V. Ordinal Numerals . . .	38
XXV. Ablative of Point of Time. Accusative of Duration of Time	39
XXVI. Nouns of Declension III. with <i>I</i> -stems	40
XXVII. Present, Imperfect and Future Indicative Passive of Conjugations I. and II.	42
XXVIII. Regular Comparison of Adjectives	43
XXIX. Indicative and Present Infinitive of <i>sum</i> . Predicate Adjectives	44
XXX. Dative with Adjectives	45
XXXI. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives	46
XXXII. Present Indicative Active and Passive of Conjugations III. and IV.	48
XXXIII. Adjectives with Genitive in <i>-ius</i>	49
XXXIV. Imperfect and Future Indicative Active and Passive of Conjugations III. and IV.	50
XXXV. Cardinal Numerals	51
XXXVI. Active Periphrastic Conjugation	52
XXXVII. Use of <i>Mille</i> . Accusative of Extent of Space . .	53
XXXVIII. Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs . . .	55
XXXIX. Relative Pronoun.	56

LESSON	PAGE
XL. Passive Periphrastic Conjugation	58
XLI. Conjunctions <i>quod, dum, ubi, postquam, simul atque, ut</i> , with the Indicative	59
XLII. Personal Pronouns, <i>ego, tū, is</i>	61
XLIII. Dative of Agent with Gerundives	62
XLIV. Reflexive Pronoun, <i>sui</i> . Possessive Pronouns	63
XLV. Perfect Participle Passive	65
XLVI. Verbs in <i>-iō</i> of Conjugation III.	67
XLVII. Demonstrative Pronouns, <i>hic, ille, is</i>	68
XLVIII. Present Participle Active. Present Infinitive Passive	69
XLIX. Demonstrative Pronouns, <i>ipse, idem</i>	71
L. Ablative Absolute	72
LI. Interrogative Pronouns	74
LII. Adverbs; Formation and Comparison. <i>Quam</i> with Superlative	76
LIII. Deponent Verbs	78
LIV. Ablative of Specification. <i>Quam</i> with Comparative	79
LV. Accusative and Infinitive	81
LVI. Genitive and Ablative of Characteristic	84
LVII. Present and Perfect Infinitive Passive. Infinitives of Deponents. Dative of Purpose	85
LVIII. Ablative of Manner and Accompanying Circumstances	87
LIX. Present and Imperfect Subjunctive Active. Subjunctive of Result	88
LX. Pluperfect Subjunctive Active. Subjunctive of <i>sum</i> . <i>Cum</i> with Subjunctive	89
LXI. <i>Possum</i>	91
LXII. Perfect Subjunctive Active. Subjunctive Passive. Subjunctive of Indirect Question	92
LXIII. <i>Volō, nōlō, mālō</i>	94
LXIV. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Narration	95
LXV. <i>Ferō</i>	97
LXVI. Subjunctive of Purpose	98
LXVII. <i>Eō, fīō</i>	100
LXVIII. Gerund	101
LXIX. Gerundive Construction	102
LXX. Indefinite Pronouns	104
Supplementary Exercises	106
Review Exercises in Accidence	110

PART V.

I. RULES OF SYNTAX AND EXERCISES IN PROSE COMPOSITION.

CHAPTER	PAGE
Introductory.—Order of Words, Order of Clauses, Concords .	285
I. The Accusative and Infinitive	291
II. Complementary Infinitive	295
III. Final Clauses (Clauses of Purpose)	298
IV. Consecutive Clauses (Clauses of Result)	302
V. Questions, Direct and Indirect	305
VI. The Present and Perfect Participles	309
VII The Ablative Absolute	313
VIII. Verbs Completed by the Dative, the Genitive or the Ablative. The Impersonal Passive	316
IX. Conditional Sentences	320
X. Clauses of Concession. Clauses of Proviso. Conditional Clauses of Comparison	324
XI. Uses of the Accusative	327
XII. Uses of the Dative	331
XIII. Uses of the Genitive	336
XIV. Uses of the Ablative	341
XV. Verbal Nouns—Infinitive, Gerund, Supine	348
XVI. Verbal Adjectives—Gerundive, Participles	352
XVII. Expressions of Place and Time	355
XVIII. Imperative. Independent Uses of the Subjunctive	359
XIX. Verbs of Fearing. Uses of <i>Quin</i> and <i>Quōminus</i>	363
XX. Duty, Necessity, Possibility, Permission	366
XXI. Causal Sentences. Uses of <i>Cum</i>	369
XXII. Temporal Clauses	373
XXIII. Personal, Demonstrative, Reflexive and Possessive Pro- nouns	377
XXIV. Indefinite Pronouns	382
XXV. The Relative Pronoun	386
XXVI. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Narration	390
XXVII. Tenses of the Indicative	394
XXVIII. Indirect Narration	398
XXIX. Different Forms of the Noun Clause	406
XXX. Continuous Narrative Prose	410

PRIMARY LATIN BOOK.

PART I.

INTRODUCTORY LESSONS AND EXERCISES.

PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN.

I. SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.¹

Vowels.²

ā is sounded like the first *a* in *aha*, *papa*.

ā " " second *a* in *aha*, *papa*.

ē " " *e* in *met*.

ē " " *e* in *they*.

ī " " *i* in *sit*.

ī " " *i* in *machine*.

ō " " *o* in *obey*, or the first *o* in *oho*.

ō " " *o* in *holy*, or the second *o* in *oho*.

ū " " *u* in *put*, or *oo* in *foot*.

ū " " *oo* in *boot*.

1. The method of pronouncing Latin given above is called the Roman method. The English method is as follows:

The vowels are sounded as in English (long *u* having the sound of *you*), but long vowels are often sounded as short, especially in final syllables, and before two consonants (*e.g.*, *mēnsis* as *mēnsis*); and short vowels are often sounded as long, especially before another vowel (or *h*), and before a single consonant, either in the first syllable of dissyllabic words, or in the unaccented syllables of other words (*e.g.*, *nihil* as *nihil*, *sine* as *sine*, *populus* as *populus*).

The diphthongs are sounded as follows: *ae* and *oe* as *ee*; *au* as *aw*; *eu* as *you*; *ei* and *ui* as *eye*.

The consonants are sounded as in English: *c* and *g* as *s* and *j* before *e* and *i* sounds, otherwise as *k* and *g* hard; *s* like *z* at the end of a word, and occasionally in other cases through the influence of English (*e.g.*, *causa*); *t* and *c* before *i* (unless preceded by *s*, *t* or *x*), as *sh*.

2. Vowels before *ns*, *nf*, *gn* and *j*, are regularly long

Diphthongs.

In diphthongs both vowels should be sounded in their proper order.

ae	is sounded much like the	ai	in	<i>pain</i> . ¹
au	"	"	"	<i>ou</i> in <i>our, house</i> .
oe	"	"	"	<i>wa</i> in <i>wade</i> . ¹
ei	"	"	"	<i>ei</i> in <i>rein</i> .
eu	"	"	"	<i>ew</i> in <i>blew</i> .
ui	"	"	"	<i>we</i> in <i>weep</i> .

Consonants.

Consonants are for the most part pronounced as in English with the following exceptions :

c	is always sounded as in	<i>come</i> ,	never as in	<i>cent</i> .
g	"	"	in	<i>game</i> , " " <i>gem</i> .
s	"	"	in	<i>this</i> , " " <i>his</i> .
t	"	"	in	<i>native</i> , " " <i>nation</i> .
x	"	"	in	<i>axe</i> , " " <i>exact</i> .
i	"	"	y	in <i>yet</i> .
v	"	"	w	in <i>want</i> .

n before c, g, qu, x, is sounded as ng, or as n in *ankie*.

II. SYLLABICATION.

In the following list the words in parentheses are English words to be contrasted with the Latin; in other cases the Latin and the English words to be contrasted have the same spelling, the quantity of the Latin words being marked.²

Diē, *salvē*, *mīles*, *parēs*, *māne*, *cāre*, *honor*, *comes*, *cōnsūmēs*, *palma* (*palm*), *aliēnus* (*alien*), *resistō* (*resist*), *possēssiō* (*possess, possession*), *condemnō* (*condemn*), *legiōnis* (*legion*), *festīnō* (*hasten*), *nūptiālis* (*nuptial*), *auctiō* (*auction*), *dēsertor* (*deserter*), *scēna* (*scene*), *rēgnum* (*reigning*).

1. It is held by some that *ae* is sounded like *ai* in *aisle*, and *oe* like *oi* in *coin*.

2. Throughout this book, all long vowels are indicated, except in footnotes; vowels not marked are accordingly to be regarded as short.

Observation.—What can be learned from the foregoing examples, (a) of silent letters in Latin, (b) of the number of syllables in each Latin word, (c) of the number of sounds represented by each letter in Latin.¹

III. ACCENT.

(a) mo-vēs	ri'-pa	tē'-lō	va'da
an'-nus	i'-ter	ser'-vō	cōn'-sul

Observation.—How are words of two syllables accented ?

(b) spē-rā'-mus	sa-lū'-tem	ge'-ne-ra	ci'-vi-tās
vec-ti-gā'-li	re-dūx'-it	hi'-e-mēs	i-dō'-ne-us
cōn-sēn'-sus	po-ten'-tēs	cōn-sēn'-se-rās	re'-li-qui

Observation.—How are words of more than two syllables accented, (a) when the vowel of the second last syllable is long or precedes two consonants ; (b) when the vowel of the second last syllable is short and does not precede two consonants ?²

LESSON I.

(a) Oppūgnāmus, we attack.	Jubēmus, we order.
Vulnerāmus, we wound.	Removēmus, we remove.
Convocāmus, we call together.	Obtinēmus, we occupy.
(b) Oppūgnant, they attack.	Jubent, they order.
Vulnerant, they wound.	Removent, they remove.
(c) Vulnerat, he, she or it, wounds.	Obtinet, he, she or it, occupies.
Convocās, you call together.	Removés, you remove.
(When speaking to one person.)	

1. Every letter in a Latin word should be sounded, and given always the same sound, except in the case of the vowels, which have each two sounds, a long and a short.

In dividing Latin words into syllables, place at the beginning of each syllable all the consonants which, with the following vowel or diphthong, could be pronounced at the beginning of a word ; e.g., *a-sper, ser-vo, mit-to*. In compounds, however, the several parts are kept distinct ; e.g., *ab-est*, not *a-best*.

2. Two exceptions should be noted : (i.) When the two consonants consist of *r* (or *l*) preceded by a different consonant, the word is accented as though there were but one consonant ; e.g., *ar'bitror, mul'tiplex*, but *impul'sus, vexil'lum, adver'to, incur'ro*, according to the general rule. (ii.) *x* is treated as a double consonant ; e.g., *con'tex-o*.

(The second last syllable is called the *penult*, the third last the *antepenult*.)

Convocātis, you call together. Removētis, you remove.

(When speaking to more than one person.)

(d) **Vulnerō, I wound.**

Jubeō, I order.

Oppūgnō, I attack.

Obtineō, I occupy.

Observation.—How does Latin express the persons *we, they, he, she, it, you* and *I*, as subjects of the verb? What two classes of verb are represented? What irregularity is there in joining the personal endings to the first part?¹

EXERCISE I.

Vocabulary.

(*āre* and *ēre* are used to indicate *-ā* and *-ē*² verbs respectively.)

Adequitō, āre, ride up.

Oppūgnō, āre, attack.

Convocō, āre, summon, call together.

Pāreō, ēre, be obedient.

Habeō, ēre, have.

Parō, āre, prepare, procure.

Imperō, āre, give orders.

Permoveō, ēre, alarm.

Jubeō, ēre, order.

Properō, āre, hasten.

Nāvigō, āre, sail.

Removeō, ēre, remove.

Obtineō, ēre, occupy.

Teneō, ēre, hold.

Vulnerō, āre, wound.

I.—1. Permovēs. 2. Tenēmus. 3. Convocant. 4. Parātin. 5. Imperāmus. 6. Jubet. 7. Pārēmus. 8. Vulnerant. 9. Flabeō. 10. Jubētis. 11. Tenet. 12. Adequitant. 13. Removet. 14. Properō. 15. Oppūgnātis. 16. Obtinēs.

II.—1. They hasten. 2. He sails. 3. I hold. 4. You (*singular*) order. 5. You (*plural*) have. 6. We prepare. 7. She has. 8. I occupy. 9. He wounds. 10. It alarms. 11. They remove. 12. She is obedient. 13. We give orders. 14. You (*plural*) alarm. 15. They attack. 16. You (*singular*) ride up.

1. CAUTION.—It must not be supposed that the ending is *-amus* or *-ant*, *-emus* or *-ent*. Instead, the same endings, *-mus*, *-nt*, etc., are added to forms (representing verbal ideas) which differ in that in some cases the final letter is *a*, in others *e*. (It will be seen later that other final letters are found in the first part.) The only difference between these *a* and *e* verbs is that, before the personal ending *o*, a final *a* is dropped, while a final *e* is retained.

2. These *-a* and *-e* verbs are generally called verbs of the first and second conjugations respectively. There are in all four conjugations, or divisions of verbs according to form.

LESSON II.

- (a) **Vulnerāmus,** *we wound or we are wounding.*
Jubent, *they order or they are ordering.*
Oppūgnat, *he attacks or he is attacking.*

Observation.—The twofold translation of each form, and the point of time referred to.

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| (b) Rōmānus, a Roman. | Rōmānī, the Romans. |
| Nauta, the sailor. | Nautae, the sailors. |
| Lēgātus convocat, | <i>a lieutenant calls together.</i> |
| Lēgātī jubent, | <i>the lieutenants order.</i> |
| Victōria permovet, | <i>the victory alarms.</i> |
| Victōriae permovent, | <i>victories alarm.</i> |

Observation.—How is the plural of nouns ending in *us* and *a* formed? How are *a* and *the* expressed in Latin? The personal endings, *-t* and *-nt*, retained even when a noun is the subject, and when English does not use *he* or *they*.

EXERCISE II.*

Vocabulary.

- | | |
|---|---|
| Barbarus, I, m., barbarian. | Gallus, I, m., Gaul (a native of the country called Gaul). |
| Belga, ae, m., Belgian (one of a tribe in Gaul). | Lēgātus, I, m., lieutenant. |
| Cōpia, ae, f. (in singular), sup-
ply, abundance, plenty; (in
plural), forces, troops. | Nauta, ae, m., sailor. |
| Expectō, āre, await. | Nūntiō, āre, announce. |
| Fuga, ae, f., flight. | Rōmānus, I, m., Roman. |
| Germānus, I, m., German. | Socius, I, m., ally. |
| | Turma, ae, f. squadron. |
| | Victōria, ae, f., victory. |

I.—1. Lēgātus adequitat. 2. Fuga permovet. 3. Rōmānī expectant. 4. Nautae properant. 5. Nūntiāmus. 6. Sociī obtinent. 7. Barbarī adequitant. 8. Germānus vulnerat. 9. Turmae oppūgnant. 10. Belgae obtinent. 11. Expectātis. 12. Jubēs. 13. Germānī habent. 14. Cōpiae oppūgnant. 15. Victōriae permovent. 16. Nauta haec.

II.—1. We are awaiting. 2. They are removing. 3. He is holding. 4. The squadrons ride up. 5. The victory alarms. 6. The allies summon. 7. The lieutenant is sailing. 8. The sailor removes. 9. You are preparing. 10. The Belgians have. 11. The forces occupy. 12. The Roman is ordering. 13. We are obedient. 14. The lieutenant is giving orders. 15. The Gauls occupy. 16. The barbarians are attacking.

LESSON III.

Victōria Rōmānōs permovet, *the victory alarms the Romans.*
Lēgātus victōriam nūntiat, *the lieutenant announces the victory.*
Cōplae lēgātum exspectant, *the forces are awaiting the lieutenant.*
Rōmāni cōplās exspectant, *the Romans are awaiting the forces.*

Observation.—What different forms have nouns in *us* and *a*, in the singular and the plural, when they are used as the subject, and when they are used as the object of the verb? ¹ How does the order of the Latin sentences differ from that of the English? ²

EXERCISE III.

Vocabulary.

Animus, i, m., <i>spirit, mind,</i>	Nūntius, i, m., <i>messenger, mes-</i>
<i>heart.</i>	<i>sage.</i>
Captivus, i, m., <i>captive.</i>	Perturbō, āre, <i>throw into con-</i>
Comportō, āre, <i>bring in.</i>	<i>fusion, disturb.</i>
Cōfirmō, āre, <i>encourage, estab-</i>	Praeda, ae, f., <i>plunder.</i>
<i>lish, arouse.</i>	Prōvincia, ae, f., <i>province.</i>
Equus, i, m., <i>horse.</i>	Pūgnō, āre, <i>fight.</i>
Et, and.	Servus, i, m., <i>slave.</i>
Labiēnus, i, m., <i>Labiēnus (a</i>	Superō, āre, <i>conquer, prevail.</i>
<i>Roman's name).</i>	Tribūnus, i, m., <i>tribune (a</i>
Locus, i, m., <i>place, position,</i>	<i>military officer among the</i>
<i>ground.</i>	<i>Romans).</i>

1. The form used as the subject is called the *Nominative Case*, that used as the object the *Accusative Case*.

2. It must not be supposed that this order is invariable in Latin, but it should be retained by the beginner until he has learned something of the causes (or at least, some of the cases) of variation from the general rule. This applies to all other general rules or order, to which attention may be directed.

I.—1. Cōpiās superat. 2. Praedam comportāmus. 3. Rōmāni locum obtinent. 4. Labiēnus equōs removet. 5. Lēgātōs et tribūnōs convocās. 6. Victōriæ animōs cōfirmant. 7. Servi pūgnant. 8. Nūntium exspectat. 9. Captivōs habētis. 10. Belgae Gallōs superant. 11. Barbari Rōmānōs et sociōs perturbant. 12. Belgās permovet. 13. Cōpiam habeō. 14. Turma cōpiās perturbat. 15. Victōriam nūntiās. 16. Nautae lēgātum exspectant.

II.—1. The slaves are wounding the messenger. 2. The forces occupy the province. 3. The Germans conquer the Gauls. 4. The lieutenant conquers the Germans and the Belgians. 5. The tribunes await the allies. 6. You attack the place. 7. It arouses the spirit. 8. The flight alarms the barbarians. 9. The sailor announces the flight. 10. I am summoning the lieutenants. 11. The forces are awaiting the squadrons. 12. They have plenty. 13. It disturbs the hearts. 14. You (*plural*) are fighting. 15. The sailors prevail. 16. The captive is obedient.

LESSON IV.

Equōs lēgātōrum removet, *he removes the horses of the lieutenants.*

Sociōs Belgārum exspectat, *he awaits the allies of the Belgians.*

Fuga turmae animum lēgātī permovet, *the flight of the squadron alarms the mind of the lieutenant.*

Equum lēgātī removet, *he removes the lieutenant's horse.*

Observation.—How is *of* expressed in Latin? What is the position of the word translated by means of *of*, or by the English possessive?¹

EXERCISE IV.

Vocabulary.

Aedus, I, m., *an Aeduan; in Contineō, ēre, hem in, restrain.*
plural, the Aedui (a tribe in Cotta, ae, m., Cotta (a Roman's
Gaul). name).

Cibus, I, m., *food.*

Dō, are, give, grant.

Conciliō, āre, win over.

Fillius, I, m., son.

¹ This form is known as the *Genitive Case*.

Galba, ae, m., <i>Galba</i> (a Roman's name).	Occupō, āre, <i>seize.</i>
Inopia, ae, f., <i>want, scarcity.</i>	Porta, ae, f., <i>gate.</i>
Nātūra, ae, f., <i>nature.</i>	Probō, āre, <i>favor.</i>
Obsideō, ēre, <i>blockade, beset.</i>	Sententia, ae, f., <i>opinion.</i>
	Via, ae, f., <i>road.</i>

I.—1. Rōmānī cōpiās Germanōrum superant. 2. Sententiam Cottae probāmus. 3. Sententia Labiēnī superat. 4. Inopia cibi Belgās perturbat. 5. Equum Galbae vulnerat. 6. Socii Belgārum locum oppūgnant. 7. Nātūra loci Aeduōs continet. 8. Aeduī portās occupant. 9. Victōriae cōpiārum animōs sociōrum cōfirmant. 10. Barbarī cōpiās parant. 11. Cōpiae Belgārum locum obsident. 12. Labiēnus cōpiam captīvōrum habet. 13. Fugitūm Belgās permovet. 14. Equōs lēgātōrum removet. 15. Victōriam lēgātī nūntiat.

II.—1. We are removing the horse of the lieutenant. 2. The allies of the Aedui give food. 3. Galba's sons procure horses. 4. The victory of Galba arouses the Belgians' spirit. 5. The forces of the allies beset the roads. 6. The tribune's son has plenty of horses. 7. You are wounding the sons of Cotta and Labienus. 8. The lieutenant wins over the Belgians. 9. The Belgians are awaiting the forces of the Gauls. 10. A squadron rides up. 11. They favor the place. 12. The tribunes and the lieutenants restrain the forces. 13. We favor the opinions of the lieutenants and the tribunes. 14. Galba procures forces.

LESSON V.

(a) Lēgātō victōriam nūntiat, *he announces the victory to the lieutenant.*

Prōvinciae imperat,	<i>he gives orders to the province.</i>
Cōpīs imperat,	<i>he gives orders to the forces.</i>
Sociis praedam dōnat,	<i>he presents the plunder to the allies.</i>

Observation.—How is *to* before a noun expressed in Latin? What is the position of the word translated by means of *to*?¹

1. The indirect object (i.e., the word translated by means of *to*) is more frequently placed before than after the direct object of the verb. In most of the sentences which follow, either order may be followed. This form is known as the *Dative Case*.

- (b) *Ad prōvinciam properat,* *he hastens to the province.*
Ad cōpiās adequitat, *he rides up to the forces.*
Ad lēgātōs adequitat, *he rides up to the lieutenants.*
Ad locūm lēgātōs convocat, *he summons the lieutenants to the place.*

Observation.—How is *to* before a noun expressed in Latin, when it is used in a phrase implying motion towards a place or person?

EXERCISE V.

Vocabulary.

<i>Agricultūra, ae, f., agriculture,</i>	<i>Pertineō, ēre, extend.</i>
<i> farming.</i>	<i>Praestō, āre, be superior.</i>
<i>Dōnō, āre, present.</i>	<i>Pūgna, ae, f., battle, fighting</i>
<i>Ēvocō, āre, challenge.</i>	<i>Respondeō, ēre, reply.</i>
<i>Filla, ae, f., daughter.</i>	<i>Rhēnus, l, m., the Rhine.</i>
<i>Italia, ae, f., Italy.</i>	<i>Ripa, ae, f., bank.</i>
<i>Lēgātus, l, m., ambassador.</i>	<i>Silva, ae, f., wood, forest.</i>
<i>Māteria, ae, f., timber, materials.</i>	<i>Studeō, ēre, pay attention.</i>
<i>Mūrus, l, m., wall.</i>	<i>Venia, ae, f., pardon.</i>
	<i>Ventitō, āre, come often.</i>

I.—1. *Māteriam ad locum comportant.* 2. *Aeduī ad prōvinciam ventitant.* 3. *Aeduīs veniam dat.* 4. *Cōpiīs praedam dōnat.* 5. *Gallī Rōmānōs ad pūgnam ēvocant.* 6. *Germānī Belgīs praestant.* 7. *Lēgātus ad cōpiās adequitat.* 8. *Sociī Rōmānōrum agricultūrae student.* 9. *Aeduīs imperat.* 10. *Ad Belgās adequitāmus.* 11. *Silva ad locum pertinet.* 12. *Belgae Labiēnō respondent.* 13. *Ad Italiam ventitās.* 14. *Filiam lēgātō dat.* 15. *Lēgātus Belgās Rōmānīs conciliat.*

II.—1. *Labienus hastens to the forces.* 2. *You are superior to the forces of the Belgians.* 3. *We come often to the provinces.* 4. *They grant pardon to the captives.* 5. *The ambassadors win over the allies of the Germans to the Romans.* 6. *They come often to the walls.* 7. *The woods extend to the Rhine.* 8. *I give orders to the province.* 9. *He announces the victory of the allies to the ambassador.* 10. *You are obedient to Labienus' son.* 11. *The squadrons ride up to the barbarians.* 12. *Labienus replies to the*

ambassadors. 13. He challenges the Gaul to battle. 14. The forces of the Germans ride up to the banks of the Rhine. 15. He summons the lieutenants to the province.

LESSON VI.

- (a) **Oppugnābat,** *he was attacking, or he used to attack.*
Jubēbāmus, *we were ordering, or we used to order.*
Convocābant, *they were summoning, or they used to summon.*
Permovēbātis, *you (plur.) were alarming, or you used to alarm.*
Vulnerābās, *you (sing.) were wounding, or you used to wound.*
 (b) **Jubēbam,** *I was ordering, or I used to order.*
Convocābam, *I was summoning, or I used to summon.*

Observation.—The new element in the Latin verbs. What idea does this new element express? What new personal ending is used? What point of time is referred to?¹

EXERCISE VI.

Vocabulary.

Complēō, ēre, <i>fill up, fill.</i>	Hiemō, āre, <i>pass the winter, winter.</i>
Firmō, āre, <i>strengthen.</i>	Impetrō, āre, <i>obtain one's² request.</i>
Fossa, ae, f., <i>trench, moat.</i>	Prōvocō, āre, <i>call out, challenge.</i>
Funda, ae, f., <i>sling.</i>	Remaneō, ēre, <i>remain.</i>
Gallia, ae, f., <i>Gaul (the country now called France).</i>	Revocō, āre, <i>recall.</i>
Gladius, i, m., <i>sword.</i>	

I.—1. Exspectābāmus. 2. Oppugnābant. 3. Complēbat. 4. Habētis. 5. Studēbam. 6. Perturbant. 7. Removēbat. 8. Hiemābant. 9. Fossās complēbant. 10. Gladium nautae dabātis. 11. Ad Galliam ventitābātis. 12. Remanēmus. 13. Rōmānōs ad pūgnam ēvocābant. 14. Impetrātis. 15. Fundam habeō. 16. Locum firmābant.

1. Notice that where *was* or *were* are used to translate these forms, containing the letters *-ba*, the English verb will end in *-ing*. (The translation by the simple past tense of English should not even be referred to until the student is much further advanced.)

2. Put *his, her, their, my, our, your*. in place of *one's*, as the context suggests.

II.—1. They were recalling. 2. He used to pass the winter. 3. She was awaiting. 4. I was obedient. 5. We used to have. 6. We are filling up the trench. 7. You (*plur.*) were ordering. 8. You (*sing.*) are superior. 9. They were attacking the wall. 10. I was hastening to Italy. 11. He was occupying. 12. He used to favor. 13. They used to have. 14. I remain. 15. She obtains her request. 16. They were strengthening the walls.

LESSON VII.

(a) <i>Lēgātum fundā vulnerat,</i>	<i>he wounds the lieutenant with a sling.</i>
<i>Cum turmā properat,</i>	<i>he hastens with a squadron.</i>
<i>Lēgātum gladiō vulnerat,</i>	<i>he wounds the lieutenant with a sword.</i>
<i>Cum lēgātō adequitat,</i>	<i>he rides up with the lieutenant.</i>
<i>Cum cōplis hiemat,</i>	<i>he winters with the forces.</i>
<i>Locum mūrīs et fossīs firmat,</i>	<i>he strengthens the place with walls and trenches.</i>
<i>Cum Gallis pūgnant,</i>	<i>they fight with the Gauls.</i>

Observation.—In what two ways is *with* expressed in Latin? What corresponding difference is there in the meaning of *with* in English?²

(b) <i>In Galliā hiemat,</i>	<i>he winters in Gaul.</i>
<i>In locō remanent,</i>	<i>they remain in the place.</i>
<i>Cōplās ā pūgnā revocat,</i>	<i>he recalls the forces from battle.</i>
<i>Ab Italiā properat,</i>	<i>he hastens from Italy.</i>
<i>Ab lēgātō et Rōmānīs im-</i>	<i>he obtains his request from the</i>
<i>petrat,</i>	<i>lieutenant and the Romans.</i>

Observation.—How are *in* and *from* expressed in Latin? When is *ab* used in place of *a*?³

1. These forms are known as the *Ablative Case*.
2. In the last example, notice that *cum*, like the English *with*, is used of one's opponents, rather than of one's allies, with verbs of *fighting, contending, waging war*, etc. Here also *cum* means *together with, in company with*. ("It takes two to make a quarrel.")
3. *A* is never used before vowels.

EXERCISE VII.

Vocabulary.

Circumdō, are, surround.	Pecūnia, ae, f., money.
Collocō, are, station, place.	Permaneō, ēre, persist.
Comparō, are, raise, collect.	Prohibeō, ēre, restrain.
Contineō, ēre, keep, hem in.	Rāmus, i, m., branch.
Injūria, ae, f., wrong-doing, injury, wrong.	Sagitta, ae, f., arrow.
Insidiae, arum, f. (used in plural only), ambush.	Sollicito, are, try to influence.
	Submoveō, ēre, drive off.

I.—1. Lēgātus Aeduōs ab injūriā prohibēbat. 2. Cum cōpiis in Italiā hiemābāmus. 3. Galli mūrōs cōpiis complēbant. 4. Belgae locum mūrō et fossā firmant. 5. Silva ab Aeduīs ad Belgās pertinet. 6. Labiēnus cōpiās in insidiis collocābat. 7. Barbari fossās rāmis complent. 8. Cum turmā ad locum properābam. 9. Tribūnum sagittā vulnerās. 10. Captīvi in sententiā permanent. 11. Cōpiās ā pūgnā revocābāmus. 12. Sagittis et fundis Aeduōs ā mūrō submovēbant. 13. Cum filiō lēgātī ad Italiā nāvigābātis. 14. Barbari in locō remanēbant. 15. Lēgātī Aeduōrum ā sociis Germanōrum impetrant. 16. Germānī cum Belgis pūgnābant. 17. Animōs cōpiārum pecūniā sollicitātis.

II.—1. Forests used to extend from Gaul to Italy. 2. The tribunes were keeping the forces in the woods. 3. He was restraining the allies from battle. 4. The barbarians used to fight with slings. 5. They remain with the lieutenant. 6. The allies were raising forces in Gaul. 7. We were surrounding the place with trenches. 8. Labienus used to winter with the allies. 9. We were sailing from Italy to the province with the lieutenant. 10. The barbarians used to station ambushes in the woods. 11. You were wounding the tribune's son with a sling. 12. She obtains her request from Labienus. 13. You are driving off the Gauls from the place. 14. I was passing the winter with the lieutenant and tribunes in the province. 15. They were trying to influence the allies with money. 16. The slave was fighting with the sailor.

LESSON VIII.

(a) *In sententiâ, Labiène, per-* you persist in (your) opinion, *La-*
manès, *bienus.*

Côpiâs, légâtî, comparâmus, we are raising forces, lieutenants.

Nüntiôs, Belgæ, expec- we are awaiting messengers, Bel-
tâmus, *gians.*

Sententiam, filia, collaudô, (my) daughter, I commend (your)
opinion.

Observation.—What forms of the nouns ending in *us* and *a* are used in speaking to a person? In what position are these forms? Omission of Latin words meaning *your, my, etc.*²

(b) The student should now turn to Part III., sections 1 and 2, where examples are given of nouns ending in *a* and *us*, in the order in which the cases are usually arranged. To give all the forms of a noun in this order is called *declining* a noun, and the different series of endings are called *Declensions*.

(c) On the same page, section 3, are declined the words *puer, ager* and *vir*.

Observation.—How do the endings of these nouns differ from those of nouns ending in *us*? What is the difference between the declension of *puer* and that of *ager*? Notice how the vocabulary, by always giving the genitive case of a noun,³ indicates whether a noun ending in *er* is declined like *puer* or like *ager*.

(d) *Rômani et socii, or Rômani* the Romans and (their) allies.
sociique,

Légâtôs et tribûnôs, or lê- the lieutenants and the tribunes.
gâtôs tribûnôsque,

Mûrum et fossam, or mûrum a wall and trench.
fossamque,

Observation.—The use and position of *-que*.⁴

1. These forms are in the *Vocative Case*.

2. Latin possesses words meaning *my, our, your, his, her, its* and *their*, but does not use them when it can be readily gathered from the context to whom the thing (or person) spoken of belongs. So in translating from Latin these words have often to be inserted in the English, and until Exercise XLIV. are to be regularly omitted in translating into Latin. For several exercises to come these words are put in parentheses, to indicate their omission.

3. In all vocabularies the genitive of each noun is given, and as no two of the five declensions have the same genitive, this serves to indicate to what declension the noun belongs.

4. When *-que* is added to a word, the accent is shifted to the syllable before *-que*; e.g., *fôs'sam*, but *fossam'que*.

EXERCISE VIII.

Vocabulary.

Ager, agrī, m., <i>land, field, territory.</i>	Necō, āre, <i>kill.</i>
Amicitia, ae, f., <i>friendship.</i>	Nōn, <i>not.</i>
Amicus, i, m., <i>friend.</i>	Occultō, āre, <i>conceal.</i>
Arbiter, trī, m., <i>arbitrator.</i>	Puer, eri, m., <i>boy.</i>
Faber, bri, m., <i>workman.</i>	Socer, eri, m., <i>father-in-law.</i>
Gener, eri, m., <i>son-in-law.</i>	Vacō, āre, <i>be unoccupied, lie waste.</i>
Liberī, ōrum, m. (in plural only), <i>children.</i>	Vastō, āre, <i>lay waste.</i>
Mārcus, i, m., <i>Marcus (a man's name).</i>	Vicus, i, m., <i>village.</i>
	Vir, viri, m., <i>man.</i>

I.—1. Agrōs vicōsque, Aedui, habētis. 2. Labiēnus fabrōs nautāsque ad Galliam convocat. 3. Cum liberis ad Rhēnum properant. 4. Gallis, socii, arbitrōs dant. 5. Ā lēgātō, Belgae, nōn impetrāmus. 6. Germāni agrōs Belgārum vastābant. 7. Cum Aeduis, Labiēne, amicitiam cōfirmās. 8. In agris Aeduōrum hiemābāmus. 9. Puerōs in silvis occultant. 10. Socerum lēgātī liberōsque necant. 11. Virum gladiō vulnerant. 12. Cum generis ad cōpiās adequitat.

II.—1. He grants lands to the son-in-law of the tribune. 2. He grants pardon to the boys. 3. The workmen used to come often to the wall. 4. You used to have friends, Marcus. 5. The lands of the Belgians are unoccupied. 6. The Gauls were establishing friendship with the Belgians. 7. The forces were fighting in the land of the Belgians. 8. The father-in-law of the lieutenant was giving money to the children of (his) friend. 9. They are giving lands to the Germans, lieutenant. 10. The men were fighting with swords, the boys with slings and arrows. 11. The forces of the Belgians are laying waste the land of the Gauls. 12. They were concealing an ambush.

LESSON IX.

(a) In part III., section 3, is given the declension of *templum*.

Observation.—How does the declension of nouns ending in *um* differ from that of nouns ending in *us*?

(b) The student should look over the vocabularies of this and the preceding lessons, to see what is the gender of the nouns that have been used.

Observation.—Of what gender are all the Latin nouns that refer to males? to females? to what is neither male nor female? What is the gender of the nouns ending in *us*? in *er*? in *tr*? in *um*? in *a*? Explain the apparent exceptions to the general rule in the vocabulary of Exercises II. and IV.

EXERCISE IX.

Vocabulary.

Bellum , I, n., <i>war</i> .	Imperium , I, n., <i>command</i> .
Castra , ōrum, n. (plural form with singular meaning), <i>camp</i> .	Maneō , ēre, <i>remain, continue</i> .
Exemplum , I, n., <i>example</i> .	Moveō , ēre, <i>move</i> .
Expūgnō , āre, <i>take by storm</i> .	Officium , I, n., <i>duty, allegiance</i> .
Frūmentum , I, n., <i>grain, corn</i> .	Oppidum , I, n., <i>town</i> .
Helvētius , I, m., <i>Helvetian</i> (one of a tribe in Gaul).	Postulō , āre, <i>demand</i> .
Hiberna , ōrum, n. (plural form with singular meaning), <i>winter quarters</i> .	Praemium , I, n., <i>reward</i> .
	Praesidium , I, n., <i>garrison</i> .
	Proellum , I, n., <i>battle</i> .
	Renovō , āre, <i>renew</i> .

I.—1. Frūmentum comportābant. 2. Lēgātus cōpiās in hibernīs collocat. 3. Animōs cōpiārum praemiis sollicitābāmus. 4. Imperium bellī postulant. 5. Ab hibernīs ad prōvinciam prope-rābat. 6. Rōmānōs ā proeliō revocat. 7. Mūrum oppidi viris complent. 8. Ad oppidum ventitābātis. 9. Rōmānī castra mo-vent. 10. Germānōs in officiō continēbat. 11. Praesidiō locum tenēmus. 12. Bellum cum Rōmānīs renovābant. 13. Exempla habētis. 14. Labiēnus cōpiās ā proeliō continet. 15. Cōpiam frūmenti habēmus. 16. In castris Helvētiōrum manent.

II.—1. They are stationing garrisons in the towns. 2. We were bringing in plenty of corn. 3. The forces of the Belgians were renewing war with Labienus. 4. The Germans continue in (their) allegiance. 5. The allies of the Romans kill the garrisons of the towns. 6. He was arousing the spirit of the boy with examples and rewards. 7. The children have an example. 8. The Helvetians were laying waste the lands of the Aedui, and taking by storm (their) towns and villages. 9. The forces were renewing the battle. 10. They are attacking the camp. 11. He was stationing a garrison in the town. 12. They used to come often with the barbarians to the winter quarters of the forces. 13. You were surrounding the camp with a trench. 14. He gives orders to the garrison. 15. The Gauls attack the camp and fill up the trench.

LESSON X

- (a) 1. *Lēgātus clārus, a famous lieutenant.*
 2. *Victōria clāra, a famous victory.*
 3. *Exemplum clārum, a famous example.*
 4. *Lēgātī clārī, of a famous lieutenant.*
 5. *Victōriae clārae, famous victories.*
- (b) 6. *Vir clārus, a famous man.*
 7. *Belgae clārī, the famous Belgians.*
 8. *Ager pūblicus, public land.*
 9. *Locus asper, a rough place.*
 10. *Nauta perītus, a skilful sailor.*
 11. *Nautārum perītōrum, of skilful sailors.*
- (c) 12. *Multa exempla, many examples.*
 13. *Cum paucis Belgis, with a few Belgians.*
 14. *Reliqui Belgae, the remaining Belgians.*
 15. *Māgnae cōplae, large forces.*

Observation.—(a) Does the Latin adjective remain unchanged, like the English? Is there a change in the gender, the number, or the case of the nouns accompanying the adjectives, comparing (i.) 1, 2 and 3; (ii.) 2 and 5; (iii.) 1 and 4?

(b) Are the endings of nouns and adjectives always alike? How does the form of the noun affect the form of the adjective?

(c). What is the position of the adjective in 1 to 11? in 12 to 15? When is the adjective placed before its noun?¹

In Part III., section 10, is given the declension of adjectives whose masculine nominative singular ends in *us* or *er*.

Observation.—Is there any difference between the declension of these adjectives (*bonus*, *liber* and *aeger*) and the declension of the nouns given in sections 1, 2 and 3? How does the vocabulary indicate whether an adjective ending in *er* is declined like *liber* or like *aeger*?

EXERCISE X.

Vocabulary.

Adversus , a, um, <i>unsuccessful</i> .	Lātus , a, um, <i>broad, wide</i> .
Altus , a, um, <i>high, deep</i> .	Liber , era, erum, <i>free</i> .
Asper , era, erum, <i>rugged, rough</i> .	Māgnus , a, um, <i>great, large</i> .
Commoveō , ēre, <i>disturb, alarm, agitate</i> .	Marītimus , a, um, <i>maritime, of or on the sea</i> .
Crēber , bra, brum, <i>numerous, frequent</i> .	Numerus , i, m., <i>number</i> .
Excitō , āre, <i>stimulate</i> .	Ōra , ae, f., <i>shore, coast; ōra maritima, the sea coast</i> .
Finītimus , a, um, <i>neighboring, adjacent</i> .	Pauci , ae, a (plural), <i>few</i> .
Helvētius , a, um, <i>Helvetian, of the Helvetians</i> .	Populus , i, m., <i>nation, people</i> .
Idōneus , a, um, <i>suitable</i> .	Reliquus , a, um, <i>remaining</i> . ²
Incitō , āre, <i>arouse, stir up</i> .	Saxum , i, n., <i>stone</i> .
	Sollicitō , āre, <i>tempt, bribe, try to win over</i> .

I.—1. Locum fossā lātā et mūrō altō firmant. 2. Ōram maritimam vastābātis. 3. Fossam crēbris rāmīs complēmus. 4. Māgna saxa in³ mūrīs collocābant. 5. Proelium adversum animōs paucōrum Belgārum commovet. 6. In locō asperō insidiās collocant. 7. Māgnum numerum servōrum et reliquam praedam cōpiīs dōnat. 8. Līberōs Galliae populōs superābās. 9. Paucōs tribūnōs ad

1. As a rule, adjectives follow the noun with which they agree, but precede it in the following cases: (a) when emphatic; (b) when expressing number or quantity; (c) when the noun is modified by both an adjective and a genitive, the order then being regularly, adjective, genitive, noun. See footnote 2, page 6.

2. The best way generally of translating *reliquus* is by "the rest of"; e.g., *reliqui Belgae, the remaining Belgians, i.e., the rest of the Belgians*.

3. Here, as often, Latin *in* is to be translated by English *on*.

locum idōneum convocant. 10. Ad prōvinciam finitimam *an-*
titābat.

II.—1. A few tribunes were stirring up the allies by frequent messages. 2. They are wintering in the provinces on the sea with the remaining forces. 3. You were stimulating a few Gauls with large rewards. 4. Rugged forests extend from the sea coast to the neighboring provinces. 5. The Helvetians are superior to the rest of the (*literally, remaining*) Gauls. 6. We are laying waste the Helvetian territory with large forces. 7. They used to strengthen the camp with wide trenches. 8. The neighboring province is unoccupied. 9. He was raising large forces in the Helvetian territory. 10. The defeats (*literally, unsuccessful battles*) alarm the rest of the Belgians.

LESSON XI.

(a) *Impetrābis, you will gain your request.*

Superābitis, you will conquer.

Removēbit, he will remove.

Complēbimus, we shall fill up.

Observation.—What new element is found in the Latin verbs? What idea does it express? What point of time is referred to?

(b) *Impetrābō, I shall gain my request.*

Superābunt, they will conquer.

Removēbō, I shall remove.

Complēbunt, they will fill up.

Observation.—What variations occur in that part of the Latin verb which expresses *shall* or *will*?

EXERCISE XI.

Vocabulary.

Castellum, l, n., fort.

Lacrima, ae, f., tear.

Certus, a, um, certain, fixed, specified.

Multus, a, um, much, (in plural) many.

Condōnō, āre, overlook.

Obsecrō, āre, beseech, implore.

Firmus, a, um, powerful, strong.

Pecūnia, ae, f., sum of money.

Imperō, āre, require, demand.

Periculum, l, n., danger.

Integer, gra, grum, fresh.

Privātus, a, um, private.

I.—1. Multa oppida expugnābimus. 2. Māgnō¹ cum periculō bellum renovābitis. 3. Lēgātōs et tribūnōs ad certum locum convocābit. 4. Injūriās privātās condōnābō. 5. Locum praesidiō firmō tenēbit. 6. Cōpiaē integrāe bellum renovābunt. 7. Māguam frūmentī cōpiam comportābāmus. 8. Multis¹ cum lacrimīs lēgātum obsecrat. 9. Certum numerum fabrōrum imperābit. 10. Cōpiās in insidiīs collocābis.

II.—1. He will winter with the rest of the forces in the neighboring province. 2. Many Belgians will continue in (their) allegiance. 3. We shall surround the place with a wall and numerous forts. 4. Powerful nations will conquer Gaul. 5. You will conquer a powerful nation. 6. The rest of the Germans do² not have private lands. 7. They will require a specified sum of money. 8. I shall come often to the camp with a large number of the barbarians. 9. They will strengthen the rest of the towns with large garrisons. 10. The opinion of the rest of the tribunes will prevail.

LESSON XII.

(a) The student should examine and learn the endings of the nouns of the third declension, given in Part III., section 4.

Observation.—What are the endings of the various cases? In what cases is there no uniform ending? Is the change from the nominative to the genitive always made in the same way? From which of the two cases given in the vocabulary are the other cases formed?

(b) Cōsul Rōmānus,	<i>a Roman consul.</i>
Cōsulis Rōmāni,	<i>of a Roman consul.</i>
Rēgiō finitima,	<i>a neighboring district.</i>
Ab regiōne finitimā,	<i>from a neighboring district.</i>

Observation.—The agreement of an adjective of one declension with a noun of another.

1. Often when a noun is governed by a preposition of one syllable, an emphatic adjective is placed before both noun and preposition.

2. *Do not have* = *have not*. The same form that means, e.g., *he attacks* or *he is attacking*, is often translated by *does attack*, especially with a negative or in a question. In the same way *did* is often to be used in place of *was* or *were*.

EXERCISE XII.

Vocabulary.

Caes-ar, -aris, m., <i>Caesar.</i>	Miles, militis, m., <i>soldier.</i>
Centuri-ō, -ōnis, m., <i>centurion.</i>	Multitū-dō, -dinis, f., <i>multitude,</i>
Civi-tās, -tātis, f., <i>state.</i>	<i>great number.</i>
Co-hors, -hortis, f., <i>cohort, com-</i>	Obses, obsidis, m., <i>hostage.</i>
<i>pany (one-tenth of a legion).</i>	Ōr-dō, -dinis, m., <i>rank.</i>
Eques, equitis, m., <i>horse soldier,</i>	Pāx, pācis, f., <i>peace.</i>
<i>(in plural) cavalry.</i>	Pedes, peditis, m., <i>foot soldier,</i>
Legi-ō, -ōnis, f., <i>legion.</i>	<i>(in plural) infantry.</i>
Mercā-tor, -tōris, m., <i>trader.</i>	Servō, āre, keep.

I.—1. Obsidēs Caesarī dabimus. 2. Mercātōrēs ad legiōnem ventitābant. 3. Pācem et amīcitiam cum Caesare cōfirmābit. 4. Militēs ōrdinēs non servābant.¹ 5. Paucī peditēs māgnam multitūdinem equitum superant. 6. Cum reliquīs legiōnibus in Galliā hiemābō. 7. Caesar māgnū obsidum numerum² imperat. 8. Tribūnōs militum et centuriōnēs convocābat. 9. Militēs reliquārum legiōnum cīvitātem in officiō continēbunt. 10. Paucās cohortēs in insidiis collocat.

II.—1. He rides up to Cæsar. 2. Cæsar will hasten with the rest of the legion to the town. 3. You will grant pardon to the centurion. 4. The rest of the cohorts will lay waste the neighboring territory. 5. We were restraining the legions from battle. 6. The opinion of the centurion will prevail. 7. He fills the camp with a multitude of soldiers. 8. Caesar establishes peace with the neighboring states. 9. He will winter in Gaul with the rest of the legion and the cavalry. 10. They try to win over the rest of the states. 11. With a few soldiers we shall hasten to the camp.

LESSON XIII.

(a) Expūgnāvi,	<i>I have taken by storm, or I took by storm.</i>
Expūgnāvisti,	<i>you (sing.) have taken by storm, or you took by storm.</i>

1. See footnote 2, page 19.

2. See footnote 1, page 17

Expūgnāvit,	<i>he has taken by storm, or he took by storm.</i>
Expūgnāvimus,	<i>we have taken by storm, or we took by storm.</i>
Expūgnāvistis,	<i>you (plural) have taken by storm, or you took by storm.</i>
Expūgnāverunt,	<i>they have taken by storm, or they took by storm.</i>

Observation.—What changes occur in the verb forms, comparing one with another ?¹ Resemblance to regular personal endings. Twofold translation.

(b) Turn to the perfect tense of all four conjugations, as given in Part III., section 27.

Observation.—Are the endings found in **expūgnāvi**, etc., found in all these verbs ?

(c) **FIRST CONJUGATION.**

Present Tense.	Perfect Tense.
amō	amāvi
dō	dedi
stō	steti
adjuvō	adjūvi

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Present Tense.	Perfect Tense.
moneō	monui
videō	vidi
jubeō	jussi
remaneō	remansi

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Present Tense.	Perfect Tense.
regō	rēxi
legō	lēgi
sūmō	sūmpsi
mittō	miſi
parcō	peperi

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Present Tense.	Perfect Tense.
audiō	audivi
veniō	vēni
vinciō	vinxi
sentiō	sēnsi
comperiō	comperi

Observation.—Is the change from the present to the perfect made in the same way always in each conjugation ? In what one respect only do all the forms of the perfect given in this list agree ? Notice that, in the vocabularies that follow, the perfect tense is always clearly indicated.²

1. The division recommended in classes for beginners is into the unchanging part of the perfect stem and the changing endings; *expugnāv+i*, etc. The relation between the present and perfect stems should be reserved for a much later stage, and even the fact that most verbs of conjugations I., II. and IV. have in the perfect of each conjugation a similar formation, should not be presented for a few lessons, until the pupil has learned to form his perfect, not by the rule of three, but on the authority of the Vocabulary.

2. For the perfect tense of verbs occurring in the preceding vocabularies, the student is referred to the general vocabulary, at the end of the book

EXERCISE XIII.

Vocabulary.

Accipio, accipere, receive.**Arma, armorum, n. (in plural only), arms.****Dare, dare, dedi, give.****Facio, facere, do, make.****Facultas, -tatis, f., opportunity.****Gerere, gerere, carry on, wage.****Juvare, juvare, aid, assist.****Movere, movere, move.****Munire, munire, fortify, protect.****Permanere, permanere, remain.****Petere, petere, ask, seek.****Ponere, ponere, place, pitch (camp), lay down.****Tradere, tradere, give up.****Vallum, l. n., wall, rampart (of camp).****Venire, venire, come.**

I.—1. Gessimus. 2. Accēperunt. 3. Tradidit. 4. Caesar castra movit. 5. Helvētī pācem ā Cæsare petivērunt. 6. Facultatem fugae captivīs dedistī. 7. Māgna praesidia in oppidīs posuī. 8. Reliquae cohortēs castra vallō fossāque mūniverunt. 9. Caesar māgnam injūriam fēcit. 10. Sociī legiōnēs frūmentō jūverunt. 11. Caesar legiōnibus veniam dedit. 12. In officiō permānsimus. 13. Cum multis equitibus ad castra vēnit. 14. Arma posuistis et obsidēs dedistis. 15. Agrōs habēmus.

II.—1. He has aided. 2. We gave. 3. She has sought. 4. You have moved. 5. We came. 6. We received the hostages. 7. The Gauls waged war with Cæsar. 8. They gave up (their) arms, captives (and) hostages to Cæsar. 9. You fortified the camp with high walls. 10. Cæsar has made peace with the neighboring states. 11. The Gauls gave lands to the Germans. 12. I have received many injuries from the Romans. 13. He placed a garrison in the camp. 14. You gave the legion to the lieutenant. 15. They came with a few horsemen to Cæsar. 16. The rest of the legion pitched the camp. 17. The soldiers move the camp. 18. You received great injury from Cæsar. 19. They have villages.

LESSON XIV.

The student should turn to the nouns of the third declension, given in Part III., section 5.

Observation.—Compare the endings of the nouns in section 5

with those of the nouns in section 4. What differences are there in the endings? What is the gender of the nouns in section 5? in section 4? In what respect do neuter nouns of the second and third declensions agree?

EXERCISE XIV.

Vocabulary.

Ag-men, -minis, n., <i>line of march,</i>	Imped-iō, -iōi, obstruct.
<i>army (on the march).</i>	Iter, itineris, n., <i>march, road.</i>
Āmittō, āmisī, lose.	Lat-us, -eris, n., <i>side, flank.</i>
Āvert-ō, -i, turn aside.	Op-us, -eris, n., <i>work, fortifica-</i>
Contend-ō, -i, hasten.	<i>tion.</i>
Dis-cēdō, -cēssī, depart, with-	Per-ficō, -fēcī, finish.
<i>draw.</i> ¹	Signum, i, n., <i>standard, signal.</i> ²
Flū-men, -minis, n., <i>river.</i>	Vuln-us, -eris, n., <i>wound.</i>

I.—1. Iter ā flūmine āvertimus. 2. Militēs opus perfēcērunt. 3. Paucī equitēs vulnera accēpērunt. 4. Māgnis itineribus Cæsar ad flūmen contendit. 5. Signum proeliī cohortibus dedit. 6. Multī peditēs ab agmine discēssērunt. 7. Militēs ab opere revocāvit. 8. Silva pertinet ā flūmine ad castra. 9. Lēgātī ad Cæsarem in³ itinere vērērunt. 10. Cohortēs signa āmisērunt. 11. Iter agminis impedivērunt. 12. Helvētīi iter fēcērunt.⁴

II.—1. You have received a wound. 2. Cæsar recalled the soldiers from work. 3. Broad rivers hem in the Helvetii. 4. We have finished the fortification of the camp. 5. They have marched (*literally, made a march*) from the province. 6. By a forced (*literally, great*) march I came to the camp. 7. Cæsar has turned aside (his) march from the Helvetii. 8. We have lost a standard. 9. A few soldiers have left (*literally, departed from*) the standards. 10. The river has protected the sides of the camp. 11. We came to the river with the rest of the cohorts. 12. We received a few wounds.

1. *Discedo a* = *I leave, literally, I depart from.*

2. A genitive depending on *signum* (= *signal*) should be translated by *for*.

3. *In* is in this phrase to be translated *on*.

4. *Iter facio* = *I march, literally, I make a march.*

LESSON XV.

Dederam, *I had given.***Miserās**, *you (sing.) had sent.***Jūsserat**, *he had ordered.***Vēnerāmus**, *we had come.***Jūsserātis**, *you (plural) had ordered.***Dederant**, *they had given.*

Observation.—Personal endings. What letters are found in each Latin word? What word occurs in the translation of each of these Latin words? Referring to Lesson XIII. (c), are these forms obtained from the present or the perfect tense?

EXERCISE XV.

Vocabulary.

Cōgnōscō, **cōgnōvī**, *learn, find out.***Cōn-fuglō**, **-fūgl**, *flee.***Cōn-sidō**, **-sēdī**, *encamp.***Con-venlō**, **-vēnl**, *come together, assemble.***Ērupti-ō**, **-ōnis**, *f., sally.***Explōrā-tor**, **-tōris**, *m., scout.***Impedimenta**, **ōrum**, *n. (in plural), baggage, baggage-animals.***Mittō**, **misī**, *send.***Ob-tineō**, **ēre**, **-tinui**, *hold, possess.***Occup-ō**, **āre**, **-āvi**, *seize.***Re-ducō**, **-dūxi**, *lead back.***Rēgnum**, **I**, *n., royal power.***Rhēnus**, **I**, *m., Rhine.***Tim-eō**, **ēre**, **-ui**, *fear, be afraid.***Trāns-ducō**, **-dūxi**, *lead across.*

I.—1. Cōpiās redūxerās. 2. Ad Rhēnum contenderat. 3. Lēgātōs mīsimus. 4. Explōrātōrēs iter cōgnōverant. 5. Barbarōs timent. 6. Ēruptiōnem fēcerant. 7. Cōpiæ cōnsēderant. 8. Rēgnum obtinuerat. 9. Accēperāmus. 10. Discēsserant. 11. Gessērunt. 12. Fēceram. 13. Vulnerant. 14. Dedimus. 15. Jūvistis. 16. Posuerātis. 17. Petivimus. 18. Discēssit. 19. Cōnfūgerāmus. 20. Properat. 21. Imperāverat.

II.—1. He had led the soldiers across. 2. They came together to Cæsar. 3. I shall seize the royal power. 4. We had sent scouts. 5. They had fled to the baggage. 6. Cæsar encamped with the rest of the forces. 7. Ambassadors had come to the camp. 8. We led a large number of baggage-animals across. 9.

The forces had encamped. 10. They received a few wounds. 11. He has sought peace. 12. We had given. 13. You had led back the legion. 14. I had finished. 15. We encamped. 16. She had sent. 17. We were hastening. 18. You sent. 19. They will wound. 20. I received.

LESSON XVI.

Ab Italiā pertinet,	<i>it extends from Italy.</i>
Ad Caesarem vēnerunt,	<i>they came to Caesar.</i>
Cum Gallis pācem fēcit,	<i>he made peace with the Gauls.</i>
Dē pāce lēgātōs mīserunt,	<i>they sent ambassadors concerning (or about) peace.</i>
Ex agris frūmentum comportant,	<i>they bring in corn out of (or from) the fields.</i>
In prōvinciā hiemat,	<i>he winters in the province.</i>
Cōpiās in Galliam mīsit,	<i>he sent the forces into (or to) Gaul.</i>
Inter flūmen et silvās iter fēcit,	<i>he marched between the river and the woods.</i>
Inter Belgās valet,	<i>he is influential among the Bel- gians.</i>
Per prōvinciam iter fēcērunt,	<i>they marched through the province</i>
Per Helvētiōs cōgnōvit,	<i>he found out through (or by means of) the Helvetians.</i>
Litrīs cōgnōvit,	<i>he found out by means of letters.</i>
Post pūgnam cōgnōvit,	<i>he found out after the battle.</i>
Propter multitudinem Germānōrum timent,	<i>they are afraid on account of the great number of Germans.</i>
Sine causā timent,	<i>they fear without cause.</i>
Trāns Rhēnum cōnsēdērunt,	<i>they encamped across the Rhine.</i>

Observation.—The meaning of the prepositions used, and the case which follows each of them. The difference between **in** with accusative and **in** with ablative; **ab** and **ex**; **ad** and **in** with accusative; the ablative of means and **per** with accusative.

EXERCISE XVI.

Vocabulary.

Auctōri-tās, -tātis, f., influence.	Mors, mortis, f., death.
Dēditi-ō, -ōnis, f., surrender.	Pater, patris, m., father.
Incol-ō, -ui, dwell, inhabit.	Tim-or, -oris, m., fear.
Inopia, ae, f., want, scarcity.	Val-eō, ēre, -ui, be influential.
Jūdic-ō, āre, -āvi, decide.	Vir-tūs, -tūtis, f., valor, bravery.

I.—1. Sine injūriā per prōvinciam iter fēcimus. 2. Frūmentum ex agris in castra comportābant. 3. Post proelium lēgātī ad Caesarem dē dēditionē vēnērunt. 4. Trāns Rhēnum in locō idōneō cōsēderat. 5. Māgnam inter Belgās auctōritātem propter virtutem habēbat. 6. Militēs ex hiberniis et ā Caesare convēnerant. 7. Ex captivīs cōgnōverat. 8. In certum locum convēnerāmus. 9. Arbitrōs inter civitatēs dedit. 10. Germānōs sine causā timent. 11. Cum reliquīs legiōnibus in Galliam contendit. 12. Ex castris discēssistis. 13. Iter in prōvinciam āverterant. 14. Arma ex oppidō trādidērunt. 15. Sine causā bellum gesserātis.

II.—1. He had sent the forces across the river into Gaul. 2. He found out through scouts. 3. After the death of (his) father he had held the royal power. 4. They had made numerous sallies out of the woods. 5. The rest of the Belgians had sent ambassadors concerning peace. 6. He used to be influential among the Gauls. 7. They remain in the camp not without great danger, on account of the scarcity of corn. 8. They had placed the baggage between the river and the cavalry. 9. He led back the forces into winter quarters. 10. We shall not decide about the road. 11. They had dwelt across the Rhine. 12. On account of (their) fear they had fled into the woods. 13. Cæsar had led across the forces without baggage. 14. We used to have lands across the Rhine in the province. 15. Out of a large number few received wounds.

LESSON XVII.

- (a) **Dederis, you (sing.) will have given.** **Vēnerimus, we shall have come.**
Miserit, he will have sent. **Jūsseritis, you (plur.) will have ordered.**
Jūsserit, he will have ordered. **Dederint, they will have given.**

Observation.—Personal endings. What letters are found in each Latin word in the translation of which are found the words *shall have* or *will have*? Are these forms obtained from the present or the perfect tense?

(b) **Dederō, I shall have given. Miserō, I shall have sent.**

Observation.—What variation occurs in that part of the Latin verb which expresses *shall have*?

(c) In Part III., section 27, may be found the names by which the tenses of the Latin verb are known.

EXERCISE XVII.

Vocabulary.

Dē-ligō, -lēgi, choose.	Jubeō, ēre, jūssi, order.
Dē-pōnō, -posui, lay aside.	Memoria, ae, f., memory.
Dē-terreō, ēre, -terrui, deter.	Per-dūcō, -dūxi, carry, bring.
Dubit-ō, āre, -āvi, hesitate, have doubts.	Regi-ō, -ōnis, f., region, district.
Fug-ō, āre, -āvi, rout, put to flight.	Re-tineō, ēre, -tinui, preserve.
	Vet-ō, āre, -ui, forbid.
	Videō, ēre, vidi, see.

I.—1. Fabrōs ex legiōne dēlēgerat. 2. Mūrum perdūxerimus. 3. Arma dēposuerint. 4. Regiōnem vastāvērunt. 5. Legiō mon tem nōn tenēbit. 6. Vidētis. 7. Renovābam. 8. Discēssit. 9. Jūdicāverō. 10. Dubitābāmus. 11. Dēterret. 12. Vetuistī. 13. Gesserāmus. 14. Discēsserit. 15. Complēbunt. 16. Expūgnāvērunt. 17. Occupāverās. 18. Videritis. 19. Mūnīvērunt. 20. Cōnsēderat. 21. Vēneram.

II.—1. He has not laid aside the memory. 2. You had remembered (*literally, preserved the memory*). 3. They will have routed. 4. I shall have learned. 5. We had hesitated. 6. They chose. 7. I shall order. 8. We have come. 9. We were holding. 10. It used to deter. 11. You were hesitating. 12. She used to be influential. 13. They will have fled. 14. We shall have sent. 15. I forbade. 16. They order. 17. You are deciding. 18. You were deterring.

LESSON XVIII.

Turn to the adjectives of the third declension, as given in Part III., section 11.

Observation.—How far do the endings of the adjective agree with those of the noun, as given in sections 4 and 5 (comparing forms of the same gender always)? Is there always a separate form for the feminine nominative? for the neuter nominative? Examine the vocabulary, to see how the genitive case and the different genders of adjectives of the third declension are marked.¹

EXERCISE XVIII.

Vocabulary.

Dēclivis, e, sloping.

Duplex, duplicis, double.

Eques-ter, -tris, -tre, of cavalry,
cavalry- (adjective).

Fertilis, e, fertile.

Fortis, e, brave.

Humilis, e, low, lowly.

Incend-ō, -ī, burn.

Levis, e, slight, trifling.

Omnis, e, all.

Pot-ēns, -entis, powerful.

Prae-ceps, -cipitis, steep.

**Rec-ēns, -entis, recent, unex-
hausted.**

Silvestris, e, wooded.

Vēl-ōx, -ōcis, swift, active.

I.—1. Praesidia in omnibus oppidīs collocābit. 2. Proelium equestre fēcimus.² 3. Filiam lēgātō, virō fortī et potentī, dedit. 4. In locō silvestrī cōsēderant. 5. Cōpia recentēs et integrae proelium renovābant. 6. Animōs omnium sociōrum cōfirmat. 7. Peditēs vēlōcēs et fortēs dēlēgeram. 8. Duplicem fossam ā castrīs ad flūmen perdūxit. 9. Omnia arma trādidērunt. 10. Levia equestria proelia fēcerant.² 11. Per regiōnem fertilem iter fēcerant. 12. Ex humili locō ad māgnam auctōritātem Mārcum perdūxerat.

1. All adjectives not ending in *us* (or *er*), *a*, *um*, are of the third declension. Adjectives of this declension end generally in (a) masculine and feminine, *-is*, neuter, *-e*, the genitive of each being the same as the masculine nominative; (b) masculine, *-er*, feminine, *-is*, neuter, *-e*, the genitive of each being the same as the feminine nominative; (c) masculine, feminine and neuter, *-ns*, the genitive having *-ntis* in place of *-ns*; (d) masculine, feminine and neuter, *-x*, the genitive having *-cis* in place of *-x* (but *-icis* in place of *-ex*).

2. *Proelium facio* = *I fight a battle*, literally, *I make a battle*

II.—1. They had fortified the camp with a double wall. 2. Caesar removed the horses of all the lieutenants. 3. They were laying waste all the lands. 4. The Helvetians had burned all the towns, all the rest of the villages, (and) all the corn. 5. He had not laid aside the memory of the recent wrongs. 6. He has granted pardon to all the captives. 7. You have pitched the camp in a sloping and steep place. 8. He will have sent fresh and unexhausted cavalry. 9. I hastened with all the cavalry to the river. 10. We marched through fertile lands. 11. We shall deter the Gauls by (our) recent victory. 12. He summons the centurions of all ranks.

LESSON XIX.

Bellum renovâre dubitant,	<i>they hesitate to renew the war.</i>
Côpiâs in prôvinciâ jussit hlemâre,	<i>he ordered the forces to winter in the province.</i>
Lablênum locum tenêre juss- erat,	<i>he had ordered Labienus to hold the place.</i>
Lêgâtôs discêdere vetult,	<i>he forbade the lieutenants to de- part.</i>
Lablênum jubet castra mû- nîre,	<i>he orders Labienus to fortify the camp.</i>
Venîre dubitat,	<i>he hesitates to come.</i>

Observation.—In each sentence notice how one verb completes the meaning of the other. Formation of the infinitive in each conjugation. What is generally the position of the infinitive? Notice that in the vocabularies that follow, the infinitive is always given, as a means of indicating the conjugation to which a verb belongs.¹

EXERCISE XIX.

Vocabulary.

Audeô, êre, venture.	Côgô, ere, coêgi, collect, compel.
Coepi (used in the perfect tenses only) began.	Cônstitu-ô, ere, -i, determine.
	Dêsil-lô, ire, -ui, leap down.

1. In preceding vocabularies, the infinitive has not been given for all verbs. In such cases the student should refer to the general vocabulary at the end of the book.

I.—1. Bellum cum Germānīs gerere cōstituit. 2. Militēs vetuit ab signīs discēdere. 3. Ex finitimīs regiōnibus militēs jubet convenīre. 4. Oppidum oppugnāre et portās incendere coepērunt. 5. Lēgātī ad castra venīre dubitāverant. 6. Māgna praesidia in omnibus oppidis cōstituit collocāre, et cum reliquīs cōpīs in vicō Aeduōrum hiemāre. 7. Cōpiās in hiberna reducere cōstituerat. 8. Omnēs lēgātōs coēgit equōs removēre. 9. Multis cum lacrimīs Caesarem obsecrāre coepimus. 10. Proelium renovāre nōn audēbunt. 11. Omnia oppida incendere cōstituerāmus. 12. Labiēnum cum omnibus equitibus locum tenēre jūssit. 13. Patrem imperium dēpōnere coēgit.

II.—1. Caesar had ordered all the Aedui to give up (their) arms. 2. They determined to send ambassadors to Caesar concerning peace. 3. They had begun to lay waste the lands of the allies. 4. Caesar forbade the legions to leave (their) work. 5. They have begun to collect forces. 6. He ordered all the soldiers to leap down. 7. They began to fill up the trenches with branches. 8. He had ordered the soldiers to fortify the camp with a double trench. 9. We determined to collect forces and wage war with Caesar. 10. They do not venture to send ambassadors. 11. He had compelled the Aedui to give hostages. 12. They hesitate to winter in Gaul. 13. The Gauls began to assemble out of all the towns.

LESSON XX.

Turn to the nouns of the fourth declension given in Part III., section 7.

Observation.—The case-endings of the declension. The gender of the nouns in *us* and in *ū*.¹ How does the vocabulary indicate that a noun is of the fourth declension?

EXERCISE XX.

Vocabulary.

Adventus, ūs, m., *arrival.*

Commeātus, ūs, m., *supplies.*²

Com-mittō, ere, -misi, *entrust;*

(with proelium) *join, begin.*

1. See Part III., section 50, b.

2. See footnote 1, page 31.

Cōspectus, ūs, n., <i>sight, view.</i>	Lacus, ūs, m., <i>lake.</i>
Cornū, ūs, n., <i>wing (of an army).</i>	Magistrātus, ūs, m., <i>magistrate,</i>
Dexter, tra, trum, <i>right.</i>	<i>office.</i>
Discēssus, ūs, m., <i>departure.</i>	Peditātus, ūs, m., <i>infantry.¹</i>
Equitātus, ūs, m., <i>cavalry.¹</i>	Sal-ūs, -ūtis, f., <i>safety.</i>
Exercitus, ūs, m., <i>army.</i>	Sus-tineō, ēre, -tinui, <i>with-</i>
Homō, hominis, m., <i>man, (in</i>	<i>stand, endure.</i>
<i>plural) people.</i>	Ūsus, ūs, m., <i>experience.</i>
Impetus, ūs, m., <i>attack, fury.</i>	

I.—1. Post adventum Caesaris obsidēs dare cōstituerant. 2. Galli impetum in² equitātum fēcērunt. 3. Cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium commīsērunt. 4. Helvētiū agrōs Aeduōrum in cōspectū exercitūs Rōmānī vastābant. 5. Ā lacū ad flūmen mūrum duplicem perdūxerāmus. 6. Magistrātum obtinēbat. 7. Salūtem magistrātuum equitātū commīsīt. 8. In³ dextrō cornū omnem equitātum collocāvit. 9. Oppidum māgnō impetū oppūgnāre coepērunt. 10. Equitātūs in⁴ cōspectum vēneram. 11. Magistrātūs multitudinem hominum ex agrīs coēgerant. 12. Reliquum exercitum Labiēnō dare cōstituit. 13. Exercitum sine māgnō commeātū cōgere nōn audēbunt. 14. Lēgātōs ab omnibus exercitibus convenīre jūssit.

II.—1. They will not withstand the attacks of the cavalry. 2. He ordered the lieutenant to remove out of sight the horses of all the soldiers. 3. He determined to winter in the province with all the cavalry. 4. After the departure of the Belgians they had begun to renew the war. 5. The plunder he orders the lieutenant to present to the cavalry. 6. He hastened to the lake. 7. We have determined to await Labienus' arrival. 8. He orders all the magistrates to assemble. 9. He had forbidden the soldiers to seek supplies. 10. They were surrounding the forces with cavalry. 11. He ordered Labienus with the rest of the cavalry to hasten to the right wing. 12. They have experience in camps. 13. He found out through scouts about the departure of the allies. 14. He hesitates to entrust all the plunder to the magistrates.

1. These words are to be used in Latin in the singular, not in the plural, in spite of their meaning.

2. With *impetum facio*, *in* with the accusative is to be translated *on*.

3. See footnote 3, page 17.

4. Translate *in* here by *in*, not *into*.

LESSON XXI.

(a) Missus sum,	<i>I have been sent, or I was sent.</i>
Superatus es,	<i>you (sing.) have been conquered, or you were conquered.</i>
Auditus est,	<i>he has been heard, or he was heard.</i>
Revocati sumus,	<i>we have been recalled, or we were recalled.</i>
Jussi estis,	<i>you (plural) have been ordered, or you were ordered.</i>
Coacti sunt,	<i>they have been compelled, or they were compelled.</i>

Observation.—Twofold translation. Voice. Number of words in each Latin phrase. Which indicates the person? What does the change of ending in the other indicate?

(b) Jussa est,	<i>she was ordered.</i>
Auditum est,	<i>it has been heard.</i>
Locus munitus est,	<i>the place was fortified.</i>
Castra munita sunt,	<i>the camp was fortified.</i>
Legiones missae sunt,	<i>the legions have been sent.</i>
Militēs jussi sunt,	<i>the soldiers have been ordered.</i>

Observation.—What new endings are found in these verbs? What do the different endings indicate?

(c) FIRST CONJUGATION.

Present.	Perfect Active.	Perfect Passive.
amō	amāvī	amātus sum
dō	dedī	datus sum
vetō	vetul	vetitus sum

SECOND CONJUGATION.

moneō	monui	monitus sum
jubeō	jussi	jussus sum
commoveō	commōvī	commōtus sum
compleō	complēvī	complētus sum

THIRD CONJUGATION.

regō	rēxī	rēctus sum
cōgō	coēgī	coactus sum
cōgnōsco	cōgnōvī	cōgnitus sum
mittō	misi	missus sum

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Present.	Perfect Active.	Perfect Passive.
audiō	audivī	auditus sum
sentiō	sēnsī	sēnsus sum
vinciō	vinxī	vinctus sum

Observation.—Is the relation between the forms of the perfect passive and those of the present or perfect active always the same? Is it the same in any conjugation? In what respect do all the perfect passive forms agree?

Notice how in the vocabularies that follow a form is given with each verb, from which the perfect passive may easily be obtained.¹

EXERCISE XXI.

Vocabulary.

Ac-ci-piō, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, Mūn-lō, ire, -ivī, -itum, fortify. <i>receive.</i>	Per-ficiō, ere, -fēci, -fectum, <i>finish.</i>
Colloc-ō, āre, -āvī, -ātum, station.	
Com-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum, Prohib-eō, ēre, -ui, -itum, re- <i>entrust, begin.</i>	strain.
Com-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mō- <i>tum, alarm.</i>	Re-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, <i>lead back.</i>
Con-voc-ō, āre, -āvī, -ātum, call <i>together.</i>	Renov-ō, āre, -āvī, -ātum, re- <i>new.</i>
Dē-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, Trā-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, give <i>choose.</i>	up.
Expūgn-ō, āre, -āvī, -ātum, Trāns-dūco, ere, -dūxī, -duc- <i>take by storm.</i>	tum, lead across.
Faciō, ere, fēci, factum, do, Vast-o, āre, -āvī, -ātum, lay <i>make.</i>	waste.
In-cendo, ere, -cendi, -cēsum, Vulner-ō, āre, -āvī, -ātum, <i>burn.</i>	wound.

1. For each regular Latin verb the vocabulary gives four forms, ending in *-ō, -re, -ī* and *-um*, called the *Principal Parts* of the verb. With the exception of the first two, these have no constant relation one to another in form, although in the first conjugation a majority of verbs always change *-ō* to *-āvī, -ātum*; in the second conjugation, *-eō* to *-uī, -itum*; and in the fourth conjugation, *-iō* to *-ivī, -itum*.

For the perfect passive of verbs occurring in the preceding vocabularies the student is referred to the general vocabulary, at the end of the book.

I.—1. Agrī vastātī sunt. 2. Cōpiae coāctae sunt. 3. Dēlēctī sumus. 4. Cōgnitum est. 5. Oppida incēnsa sunt. 6. Equitātus missus est. 7. Jūssus sum. 8. Vetita es. 9. Locus est¹ mūnitus. 10. Opus perfectum est. 11. Equī remōtī sunt. 12. Fossa complēta est. 13. Reductī sumus. 14. Convocātī sunt. 15. Prohibita est. 16. Prohibitae sunt. 17. Vulnus acceptum est. 18. Proelium factum est. 19. Exercitus trānsductus est. 20. Caesar commōtus est.

II.—1. The soldiers were ordered. 2. A large number of men has been collected. 3. Wounds were received. 4. We have been sent. 5. She has been wounded. 6. The camp was fortified. 7. I was ordered. 8. The war was renewed. 9. The arms have been given up. 10. The forces were led back. 11. The cavalry has been led across. 12. Garrisons were stationed. 13. A legion was stationed. 14. Hostages have been given. 15. We have been alarmed. 16. You have been ordered. 17. The signal was given. 18. The battle has been begun. 19. The camp was taken by storm. 20. The magistrates were called together.

LESSON XXII.

Fundā vulnerātus est,	<i>he was wounded by a sling.</i>
Agrī ā cōpils vastātī sunt,	<i>the fields have been laid waste by the forces.</i>
Locus vallō fossāque mūnitus est,	<i>the place was fortified by a wall and trench.</i>
Equī ā Caesare remōtī sunt,	<i>the horses were removed by Caesar.</i>

Observation.—Two ways of translating *by*. Which is used in connection with the passive voice to denote the person by whom something is done?²

1. *Est munitus* has the same meaning as *munitus est*. Not only may the order be changed in these perfect passive forms, but the two parts are sometimes separated by other words.

2. With the active voice *a* and *ab* will mean *from*; with the passive, *from* or *by*, whichever the rest of the sentence requires.

EXERCISE XXII.

Vocabulary.

Onus, oneris, n., *burden.***Op-primō, ere, -pressi, -pressum,** *overwhelm.***Perturb-ō, āre, -āvi, -ātum,** *throw into confusion.***Prae-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum,** *send in advance.*

I.—1. Obsidēs ab Helvētiis Caesari datī sunt. 2. Lēgātī ab omnibus regiōnibus vēnerant. 3. Sagittis et fundis barbari ā mūrō submōti sunt. 4. Lēgātī et omnēs centuriōnēs ā Caesare convocāti sunt. 5. Ā magistrātū multitudō hominum ex agris coācta est. 6. Castra ā militibus duplici fossā circumdata sunt. 7. Cōpiae oppressae sunt timōre. 8. Equi omnium ex cōspectū remōti sunt. 9. Jūssi sumus obsidēs dare et frūmentum in hiberna comportāre. 10. Fossa rāmīs complēta est. 11. Labiēnus cum omni equitātū ad prōvinciam praemissus est. 12. Ā Caesare ex captivis cōgnitum est. 13. Frūmentō commeātūque ā sociis jūti estis. 14. Impetus ā barbaris in¹ equitātum factus est. 15. Rōmāni adversō proeliō et fugā Gallōrum commōti sunt.

II.—1. Ambassadors were sent in advance by Cæsar into Gaul. 2. The forces were thrown into confusion by the attack of the barbarians. 3. The camp has been fortified by a rampart and trench. 4. You have been recalled from work. 5. The wall was filled with men. 6. They were ordered by the lieutenant to remove the horses. 7. Ambassadors were ordered to assemble from every town. 8. Large forces have been collected by the Belgians. 9. A large number of the Belgians was slain. 10. The soldiers were overwhelmed by the great weight of (their) arms. 11. All the towns were burned by the Helvetians. 12. We were alarmed by the arrival of Cæsar. 13. The land of the Aedui has been laid waste by the Germans. 14. She was wounded by an arrow. 15. Arms were given up by all the Belgians. 16. The forces were alarmed by the scarcity of corn. 17. A sally was made out of the woods by the Gauls. 18. The army was led back into camp.

1. See footnote 2, page 31.

LESSON XXIII.

(a) **Missus eram, I had been sent.** **Revocāti erāmus, we had been recalled.**

Commōtus erās, you (sing.) **Jūssi erātis, you (plural) had been alarmed.** **been ordered.**

Auditus erat, he had been heard. **Coacti erant, they had been compelled.**

Auditum erat, it had been heard. **Castra munita erant, the camp had been fortified.**

Jussa erat, she had been ordered. **Cōplae missae erant, the forces had been sent.**

Observation.—Compare these phrases with those given in Lesson XXI. (a) and (b). What differences in form and meaning do you find?

(b) **Missus erō, I shall have been sent.** **Revocāti erimus, we shall have been recalled.**

Commōtus eris, you (sing.) **Jūssi eritis, you (plural) will have been alarmed.** **have been ordered.**

Auditum erit, it will have been heard. **Castra munita erunt, the camp will have been fortified.**

Jussa erit, she will have been ordered. **Cōplae missae erunt, the forces will have been sent.**

Observation.—Compare these phrases with those in (a). What differences in form and meaning do you find?

(c) **Miseram, I had sent.** **Jusserātis, you (plural) had ordered.**

Audiverat, he had heard. **Coēgerant, they had compelled.**

Miserō, I shall have sent. **Muniverint, they will have fortified.**

Observation.—Compare these forms with the phrases in (a) and (b). What is the difference between the corresponding active and passive forms in Latin?

EXERCISE XXIII.

Vocabulary.

Ad-dūcō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum, In-struō, ere, -strūxi, -strūctum, draw up.
influence.

Compar-ō, āre, -āvī, -ātum, Tollō, ere, sustuli, sublātum, take away.
make ready, procure.

I.—1. Cōpiæ instructae erant. 2. Adducti erāmus. 3. Frumentum comparatum erit. 4. Jussus erō. 5. Convocati erant. 6. Collocati sunt. 7. Coegeramus. 8. Incenderunt. 9. Oppida incensa erunt. 10. Collocabit. 11. Vastavit. 12. Commovet. 13. Removit. 14. Muniveratis. 15. Sustulimus. 16. Adduxeram. 17. Instructi sunt. 18. Fossa erat completa. 19. Vulnere accepta erant. 20. Transducti erimus. 21. Proelium commiserant. 22. Proelium commissum erat. 23. Jubebat. 24. Commovēbit. 25. Sustinueramus. 26. Delēgerās. 27. Delēctus erās. 28. Cōgnitum erit. 29. Sublātum erat. 30. Vulneratis.

II.—1. The war had been renewed. 2. We had renewed. 3. We were not influenced. 4. The legion had been drawn up. 5. They had been made ready. 6. The battle was begun. 7. They will have been overwhelmed. 8. The camp had been taken by storm. 9. They sent in advance. 10. It had been finished. 11. They used to favor. 12. We were calling together. 13. They will have found out. 14. It was found out. 15. They had been compelled. 16. The legion was led back. 17. The legions had been led across. 18. You were sent in advance. 19. He procures. 20. They are making ready. 21. I shall have taken away. 22. The camp had been fortified. 23. They will take the camp by storm. 24. I shall remove. 25. They had wounded. 26. She had been wounded. 27. They wound. 28. It had been given. 29. I gave. 30. I was giving.

LESSON XXIV.

(a) Turn to the nouns of the fifth declension, given in Part III., section 8.

Observation.—The case-endings of the declension. How does the vocabulary indicate that a noun is of the fifth declension? Of what gender are most nouns of this declension?¹

(b) Turn to the list of ordinal numerals, given in Part III., section 15.

Observation.—Forms and translation. Notice the way in which *thirteenth, fourteenth, twenty-first, etc.*, are expressed.

In the general Vocabulary all ordinal numerals are given as follows: *primus, a, um, first; secundus, a, um, second; decimus, a, um, tenth.* What is indicated by the letters *a, um*?

EXERCISE XXIV.

Vocabulary.

<i>Acies, ei, f., line of battle, line.</i>	<i>Occasus, us, m., setting.</i>
<i>Dies, ei, m., day.</i>	<i>Pars, partis, f., part.</i>
<i>Ægreus, a, um, remarkable.</i>	<i>Rēs, rei, f., thing, matter, affair.</i>
<i>Fides, ei, f., honor, word, fidelity.</i>	<i>Scientia, ae, f., knowledge.</i>
<i>Hōra, ae, f., hour.</i>	<i>Sōl, sōlis, m., sun.</i>
<i>Militāris, e, military.</i>	<i>Spēs, ei, f., hope.</i>

I.—1. Spem fugae sustulerat. 2. Militēs in aciē instructi sunt. 3. Cum tertiā legiōne in prōvinciā hiemāre cōstituit. 4. Fidem servavit dē numerō diērum. 5. Scientiam rei² militāris habet. 6. Ab hōrā septimā ad occāsum sōlis pūgnāverant. 7. Multis rēbus adducti erant. 8. Ægreiam fidem lēgati cōgnōverat. 9. Tertia pars exercitūs interfecta est. 10. Omnēs centuriōnēs quartae cohortis interfecti erant. 11. Dē fidē Gallōrum dubitāverant. 12. Propter inopiam omnium rērum militēs nōnā legiōnis in prōvinciam reducere cōstituerat. 13. Omnem spem salūtis in virtūte posuerāmus.

1. See Part III., section 51, b.

2. *Res militaris* (the singular) = *military affairs, the art of warfare.*

II.—1. An attack had been made by the soldiers of the fifth legion on¹ the first line. 2. They had been influenced by the hope of plunder. 3. The forces had been led back to the camp after the fourth day. 4. All things will have been made ready. 5. The second line had been surrounded by the barbarians. 6. He had had great experience in military affairs.² 7. He drew up the line of battle. 8. They had inhabited a third part of Gaul. 9. They will not withstand the first attack of the forces. 10. The forces had been influenced by the want of everything (*literally, all things*). 11. The matter had been found out through scouts. 12. They had come into Gaul not without great hope of plunder. 13. He had stationed the tenth legion in ambush.

LESSON XXV.

Tertiō diē ad Caesarem vē-	<i>on the third day they came to</i>
nērunt,	<i>Cæsar.</i>
Hōrā septimā proellum com-	<i>he joined battle at the seventh</i>
misit,	<i>hour.</i>
Occāsū sōlis in castra reducti	<i>they were led back into camp at</i>
sunt,	<i>sunset (literally, at the setting of the sun).</i>
Multōs diēs iter fēcerant,	<i>they had marched many days.</i>
Māgnam partem diēi pūgnā-	<i>they had fought a large part of</i>
verant,	<i>the day.</i>
Paucās hōrās impetūs susti-	<i>for a few hours they withstood the</i>
nuērunt,	<i>attacks.</i>

Observation.—The two ideas connected with time found in these sentences. The mode of expressing each in Latin. Is each idea always expressed in the same way in English?

EXERCISE XXV.

(For this, and all subsequent exercises, no special vocabulary will be given. The student must depend entirely on the general vocabularies, at the end of the book.)

1. See footnote 2, page 31.

2. See footnote 2, page 38.

I.—1. Posterō diē castra Labiēni oppugnāre dēcrēverant. 2. Complūrēs hōrās pūgnāverunt. 3. Nocte ad Rhēnum contendit. 4. Sōlis occāsū cōpiā in castra reductae sunt. 5. Multōs annōs rēgnū obtinuerat. 6. Hōrā circiter decimā diēi nūntium ad Labiēnum mīsimus. 7. Permultōs diēs iter per prōvinciam fēcerant. 8. Continuōs complūrēs diēs Caesar aciem instrūxit. 9. Primā lūce rēs ab explōrātōribus cōfirmāta est. 10. Certō annī tempore magistrātūs ā Caesare convenīre jūssī erant. 11. Tertiam partem Galliae paucōs annōs incoluerāmus. 12. Adventū Caesaris barbarī cōstitērunt.

II.—1. The Helvetians moved their camp the next day at day-break. 2. In the third watch they made a sally out of the town with all their forces. 3. For several hours they withstood the attacks of the cavalry. 4. On the first arrival of the army numerous sallies had been made by the Gauls. 5. He decided to attack the town on the seventh day. 6. They had for many days laid waste the lands of the Aedui. 7. On the following day an attack was made by the Gauls on the cavalry. 8. The camp was moved in the fourth watch with¹ great noise and confusion. 9. After his father's death he had possessed the royal power for several years. 10. At daybreak on the remaining days a double line of battle had been drawn up by Caesar. 11. They had waged war with the Romans for many years. 12. We reached the camp the third hour of the day.

LESSON XXVI.

Turn to the nouns of the third declension, given in Part III., section 6.

Observation.—How do the case-endings differ from those given in sections 4 and 5 (comparing always nouns of the same gender)? Do the same differences occur in all the words?² Compare the adjectives of the third declension given in Part III., section 11.

Notice also the irregular declension of the nouns given in Part III., section 9.

1. Use *cum*.

2. Most nouns having these endings will be found to belong to one of the following classes:

EXERCISE XXVI.

I.—1. Equitēs impetum hostium sustinent. 2. Finēs Aeduōrum multōs mēnsēs ferrō et Ignī vastātī sunt. 3. Nāvium figurā et rēmōrum mōtū barbarī permōtī erant. 4. Culmina Alpium ab hostibus occupāta erant. 5. Animālīa atque māgnū numerum servōrum et clientium Galli Ignī cremābant. 6. Posterō diē Labiēnum cum omni equitātū montem tenēre jūssit. 7. In finēs hostium incursiōnem fēcerant. 8. Hieme nāvēs cōstituit aedificāre. 9. Ē finibus hostium Helvētiōrum in finēs Aeduōrum iter per vim fēcērunt. 10. In finibus hostium hiemāverat. 11. Propter altitudinem montium castra in valle posita sunt. 12. Nāvēs ex finitimis regiōnibus jubet convenire.

II.—1. They had built a large number of ships in the third year of the war. 2. He demanded a large number of hostages. 3. An attack was made at daybreak by the enemy on the line of battle. 4. All the towns of the enemy were burned. 5. They had marched through the province by (*literally, through*) force. 6. They were alarmed by the violence of the rivers. 7. For many years he used to have a large number of retainers. 8. A forest used to extend from the mountain to the territories of the Aedui, and restrain¹ the enemy's cavalry from inroads. 8. On account of the depth of the sea, the soldiers hesitated to leap down out of the ship. 10. The forces of the enemy had been dismayed by the size of the ships of war. 11. For a large part of the day they had laid waste the fields with fire and sword. 12. For several years he had leased all the rest of the revenues of the Aedui.

(1) Nouns ending in *is* or *es*, and having two syllables in both nominative and genitive singular.

(2) Monosyllables ending in *s* or *x* immediately preceded by a consonant.

(3) Nouns ending in *ns* or *rs*.

(4) Neuter nouns ending in *e*, *al* or *ar*.

These have *ium* in genitive plural; very few have *i* in the ablative singular, the following being the commonest in Cæsar: *ignis*, fire; *navis*, a ship; *continens*, the continent or mainland.

1. *i.e.*, used to restrain. All similar ellipses are to be supplied in translating from English to Latin, where the words to be understood are expressed in Latin by part of a word, not a separate word.

LESSON XXVII.

Turn to the present, imperfect and future indicative (active and passive) of the first and second conjugations, as given in Part III., sections 27 and 28.

Observation.—From which of the principal parts are these tenses formed in the active voice? in the passive voice? How is the difference between the voices indicated in Latin?

EXERCISE XXVII.

I.—1. *Helvētīl locī nātūrā continentur.* 2. *Māgnae cōpiae ab hostibus comparābantur.* 3. *Tertia pars Galliae ā Belgīs obtinētur.* 4. *Ā Gallīs sollicitābāmur.* 5. *Mōns ā Labiēnō tenēbitur.* 6. *Fugā Gallōrum commovēminī.* 7. *Māgnam inter Belgās auctōritātem habēre vidēris.* 8. *Vicus montibus continēbātur.* 9. *Equitēs peditum virtūte servantur.* 10. *In servitūte tenēberis.* 11. *Numerus hostium augētur.* 12. *Nāvēs tempestātibus dētīnēbuntur.* 13. *Hostēs ā pūgnā tempestātibus continēbantur.* 14. *Adventū Caesaris commovēbar.* 15. *Cōpiae hostium ē castrīs videntur.* 16. *Iter ā flūmine āvertere vidēbimur.* 17. *Prōvincia ab hostibus incursiōnibus vastābātur.* 18. *Multitūdine hominum castra complēbuntur.*

II.—1. The forces of the enemy are being increased. 2. Stones were being placed on the wall. 3. The battle will be renewed. 4. You will be awaited by the consul. 5. The Helvetians are inclosed by the river Rhine, the Jura mountains,² and the river Rhone. 6. We shall not be alarmed by the departure of the allies. 7. The arrival of the forces was being awaited by the citizens. 8. For several successive days the enemy's forces are kept in camp by storms. 9. The lands of the Aedui used to be laid waste by the Germans. 10. It is announced to Cæsar. 11. I shall be held in subjection. 12. They seem to fear without cause.

1. Notice also that there is no change whatever in the part that precedes the personal ending, except that *t* before *s* is changed to *c* before *ris* (*er* having almost the same sound as *ir*, but being easier to pronounce).

2. Use the singular of *mons*, which has the meaning of a *mountain chain*, as well as of a single *mountain* or *hill*.

13. They were removed. 14. We were removing. 15. They were being removed. 16. He will recall. 17. You will be recalled. 18. They will be recalled. 19. I used to restrain. 20. I used to be restrained.

LESSON XXVIII.

(a) Lātus, broad ;	lātior, broader ;	lātissimus, broadest or very broad.
Fortis, brave ;	fortior, braver ;	fortissimus, bravest or very brave.
Vêlôx, swift ;	vêlôclor, swifter ;	vêlôclissimus, swiftest or very swift.
Potêns, powerful ;	potentior, more powerful.	potentissimus, most or very powerful.

Observation.—Endings indicating the different degrees of comparison. Formation of comparative and superlative from the positive.¹ Twofold translation of the superlative.

(b) Viri fortioris,	<i>of a braver man.</i>
Flûmen lātius,	<i>a broader river.</i>
Fossae lātiorês,	<i>broader trenches.</i>
Militis fortissimî,	<i>of a very brave soldier.</i>
Flûmen lātissimum,	<i>a very broad river.</i>
Fossae lātissimae,	<i>very broad trenches.</i>

Observation.—Declension and agreement of comparative and superlative adjectives.

(c) Turn to the declension of comparative adjectives, as given in Part III., section 12.

Observation.—How do the case-endings of the comparative differ from those of adjectives of the positive degree belonging to the same declension ? (See section 11.)

1. Notice that the genitive of the positive degree of these adjectives is respectively *lati, fortis, velocis, potentis*.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

I.—1. *Helvētīī flūmine lātissimō et altissimō continentur.* 2. *Caesarem dē adventī Labiēnī certiōrem fēcērunt.* 3. *Urbs in monte altissimō posita erat.* 4. *Peditēs vėlōcissimī et fortissimī dēlectī sunt.* 5. *Humiliōrēs ā potentiōribus expulsī erant.* 6. *Legiōnēs longiōre itinere circumdūxit.* 7. *In dēnsissimās silvās cōnfūgērunt.* 8. *Castra lātiōribus fossis mūnīta sunt.* 9. *Ad flūmen lātius vēnerant.* 10. *Rēs opportūnissima accidit.* 11. *Crēbriōrēs explōrātōrēs in finēs hostium mīsīt.* 12. *In novissimum agmen impetum fēcērunt.*

II.—1. The Helvetians had been informed of (*literally, about*) the enemy's departure. 2. The enemy sought denser forests. 3. He gives his daughter to the centurion, a very brave and powerful¹ man. 4. He came at a most opportune time. 5. They had sent the noblest (men) of the state. 6. They are alarmed by the appearance of the wider vessels. 7. He ordered Labienus to make the vessels lower and wider. 8. They used to possess most fertile lands. 9. The rear was being thrown into confusion. 10. They encamped in a very fertile region. 11. They used to be hemmed in by higher mountains and a broader river. 12. A deeper river hems in the Helvetians. 13. Cæsar had been informed by more frequent messages. 14. He had entrusted the safety of the hostages to the bravest soldiers.

LESSON XXIX.

(a) *Missus est, he was (or has) Rōmānus est, he is a Roman.*
been) sent.

Jūssī sunt, they were ordered. Fortēs sunt, they are brave.

Cōgnitum erat, it had been Potēns erat, he was powerful.
found out.

Reductī erunt, they will have Liberī erunt, they will be free.
been led back.

Observation.—What difference in translation occurs when *est, sunt, etc.*, are joined with a noun or adjective, not with the part

1. i.e., *very powerful*. See footnote 1, page 41.

of the verb used in forming the perfect tenses? In what case is the noun or adjective in the predicate with the verb *sum*?

(b) Turn to the inflection of the verb *sum*, given in Part III., section 41.

Observation.—Formation and translation of the six tenses in the indicative, and of the present infinitive.

EXERCISE XXIX.

I.—1. Omnium Gallōrum fortissimī sunt Belgae. 2. Exercitus erat¹ in cōspectū. 3. Periculōsum est. 4. In armīs sumus. 5. Tertiā nocte lūna erat plēna. 6. Locus erat idōneus. 7. Omnēs rēs comparātae erant. 8. Noctēs breviorēs sunt. 9. Castra angustiora erant. 10. Spēs est sublāta. 11. Rēx fuerat. 12. Miserior et gravior esse fortūna Sēquanōrum vidētur. 13. Mōns altissimus est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs. 14. In itinere erātis. 15. Propter frīgora frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant. 16. Militēs montem tenēbant. 17. Adventus hostium cōgnitus erat. 18. Reliquae nāvēs erunt inūtilēs. 19. Nōn audēbunt esse inimicī. 20. Vir fortissimus et nōbilissimus fuit. 21. Reductī sunt. 22. Fossa erat ante oppidum. 23. Homō sum.

II.—1. All the rest of the Belgians are in arms. 2. The road through the province will be longer. 3. Ambassadors were sent. 4. The adjacent regions are very fertile. 5. They are aided. 6. The Belgians seem to be very hostile. 7. There² is scarcity of all things. 8. They were awaiting. 9. The night was very short. 10. The vessels are low and wide. 11. The forces were sent in advance. 12. The allies used to be free. 13. They began to be hostile. 14. There² had been great danger. 15. Nothing is casier. 16. We shall be thrown into confusion. 17. You are useful friends. 18. They have been in Cæsar's army. 19. He has been influenced. 20. They are making ready all things. 21. It is uncertain.

1. In this, as in many of the succeeding sentences, the English word *there* may be used in translation. This word has no equivalent in Latin, which would express "*there are ten men present*" and "*ten men are present*" by the same words.

2. *There* (the introductory adverb) has no equivalent in Latin. See footnote 1.

LESSON XXX.

Populō Rōmānō periculōsum *it was dangerous to the Roman people.*

erat,

Helvētīs erat inimīcus, *he was hostile to the Helvetians.*

Finitimī sunt Galliae, *they are adjacent to Gaul.*

Observation.¹—Nature of the adjectives. Addition of a noun defining their application. Case of the noun indicating the person concerned or the thing to which the quality is directed. Does the dative in these sentences generally precede or follow the adjective it refers to?²

EXERCISE XXX.

I.—1. Amicus fuerat Helvētīs. 2. Caesarī es fidēlis. 3. Incursiōnes hostium prōvinciae sunt periculōsae. 4. Fugae similis erat discēssus. 5. Turpissimum est reipūblīcae. 6. Nihil est grātius dīs immortālībus. 7. Omnibus equitibus incōgnitum erat. 8. Galli finitimī Belgīs erant. 9. Caesarī erat inimīcus. 10. Cārī fuērunt dīs immortālībus. 11. Vulnēra militī periculōsa sunt. 12. Galli nōn parēs erant Belgīs. 13. Multis cīvibus erit grātum.

II.—1. We are not equal to the enemy's cavalry. 2. The Aedui are adjacent to the provinces. 3. Nothing was more disgraceful to the Germans. 4. The road is dangerous to the army. 5. She is dear to all. 6. We used to be friendly to the Romans. 7. They are useful friends to the hostages. 8. We had been faithful to the Roman people. 9. The punishments are more pleasing to the immortal gods. 10. He used to seem to be hostile to the Roman people. 11. The war will be dangerous to the state. 12. The harbors were unknown to the Gauls. 13. It is similar to the Gallic war.

LESSON XXXI.

Turn to the list of irregularities in the comparison of adjectives, given in Part III., section 13 (parts ii., iii. and iv.).

1. For beginners it may be sufficient to call attention to the use of datives (translated in the ordinary way) depending on adjectives as well as on verbs.

2. See footnote 2, page 6.

Observation.—The difference between the comparison of these adjectives and the regular comparison, given in Lesson XXVIII.

EXERCISE XXXI.

I.—1. Primā luce majōrem multitudinem equitum ab ūteriōre portū misit. 2. Belgae proximī sunt Germānis. 3. Ascēsus est facillimus. 4. Superiōre annō minōre cum periculō bellum gesserant. 5. Crēberrima aedificia in Galliā sunt. 6. Proximā nocte summa erat difficultās. 7. Ocelum est citeriōris prōvinciae oppidum extrēmum. 8. Spem celerrimae victōriae habent. 9. Māximis itineribus in Galliam citeriōrem contendit. 10. Iter per prōvinciam erat facillimum. 11. Summam scientiam rei militāris habet. 12. Superiōra loca occupāverant. 13. In citeriōre Galliā legiōnēs cōscripserat. 14. Superiōre annō cum proximis civitatibus pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāvērunt. 15. Propter summam virtutem dēlectī sunt. 16. Superiōribus diēbus majōrem mōtum exspectābāmus. 17. Superiōrem partem collis dēnsissimis castris complēverant.

II.—1. They had collected very many ships in the preceding summer. 2. The road will be very difficult. 3. They had been stationed in the upper line. 4. He had sent very frequent messengers into farther Gaul. 5. At the most troublesome (*literally, difficult*) time of the year more states were conspiring. 6. For the larger part of the summer they had waged war in hither Gaul. 7. They made an attack from (*literally, out of*) the higher ground. 8. They were attacking the outer fortifications. 9. He had come on the preceding day to the smaller camp with a larger number of foot-soldiers. 10. The depth of the river is very great. 11. Geneva is the farthest town of the Allobroges, and the nearest to the territories of the Helvetians. 12. Nothing is better. 13. They fled to the nearest woods. 14. They burned the finest city of Gaul. 15. It is best to hasten to the lower part of the island. 16. They had collected very large forces.

LESSON XXXII.

(a) Turn to the present indicative active of the third conjugation, given in Part III., section 27.

Observation.—Personal endings. Manner of joining personal endings to the common part *reg-*.¹

(b) In the same way examine the present indicative active of the fourth conjugation, in the same section.

(c) Turn to the present indicative passive of the third and fourth conjugations, given in section 28.

Observation.—Is the difference between the active and the passive, in the present tense, the same as in the first and second conjugations?²

EXERCISE XXXII.

I.—1. *Ā* Caesare in Galliam praemittitur. 2. Hostēs in silvās repelluntur. 3. Lēgātī ab omnibus cīvitatibus veniunt. 4. Terziam partem Galliae incolitis. 5. Ad castra vēnit : ad castra venit. 6. Ex castris discēdunt. 7. Ad Caesarem convenimus. 8. Castra vallō altissimō mūniuntur. 9. Vinciminī : vinciminī. 10. Pontem rescindunt. 11. Rhodanus prōvinciam ab Helvētiis dīvidit. 12. Vicus flūmine dīviditur. 13. *Ā* populō Rōmānō impedimur. 14. Exercitum in ūlteriōrem Galliam dūcis. 15. Aciem circumveniunt. 16. Vincimus. 17. Castra in locō idōneō pōnimus. 18. Oppida omnia incendunt. 19. In fluctūs dēsilit. 20. Cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt.

II.—1. They leap down out of the ship. 2. The line of battle is drawn up. 3. You are enrolling a legion. 4. A few foot-soldiers fall. 5. We are being surrounded by the Gauls. 6. We are waging war with the Romans. 7. They assemble on the seventh day. 8. They send ambassadors to Cæsar about peace. 9. The legion is led back into winter quarters. 10. You are binding. 11. We are conquering. 12. The bridge is broken down.

1. With beginners it is sufficient for all practical purposes to consider the present stem as ending in the consonant preceding *o*, e.g., *reg-*, *pon-*, *ger-*. To introduce the so-called thematic vowel *-e* will only cause confusion.

2. See footnote 1, page 42.

13. They fortify the camp with a wall and trench. 14. A message is sent to Cæsar. 15. They are assembling from all the camps. 16. The camp is pitched in a valley. 17. Labienus is sent in advance with the scouts. 18. I am hindered by the violence of the river. 19. I am cut off from the army. 20. It is announced.

LESSON XXXIII.

Turn to the adjectives whose declension is given in Part III., section 14.

Observation.—Declension to which these adjectives in the main belong. Irregularities in declension.

The most peculiar of the common uses of the adjectives given in the list may be observed in the following sentences :

Alia loca fossis, alia vallibus. *Some places he was fortifying with
alia turribus munit̃bat.* *trenches, others with walls,
others with towers.*

Altera legiō in Galliā hīemat. *One legion is wintering in Gaul,
altera in Italiā.* *the other in Italy.*

EXERCISE XXXIII.

I.—1. Alterum iter facilius erat. 2. Lēgātī tōtīus Galliæ ad Caesarem veniunt. 3. Cum sōlā decimā legiōne proelium committit. 4. Aliud iter habēmus nūllum.¹ 5. Relinquitur² ūna per Sēquanōs via. 6. In utram partem flūmen fluit?³ 7. Nūllī acciderat. 8. Neuter proelium committere audēbit. 9. Ūnō tempore dē adventū equitātūs et dē Labiēnī victōriā certior factus est. 10. Alteram partem vicī Gallis concēdit, alteram cohortibus. 11. Ab aliis audiunt. 12. Aliā in parte legiōnēs collocāvit. 13. Factiōnum alterius principātūm tenent Aeduī, alterius Sēquanī. 14. Sine ūllō periculō castra mūniunt. 15. Ager Sēquanus optimus est tōtīus Galliæ.

1. *Nullum* agrees with *iter*, and is placed where it is for emphasis' sake.

2. By means of this sentence the use of the introductory *there* in English, where no corresponding word is found in Latin, may be shown. See footnote 1, page 45.

3. See footnote 2, page 19.

II.—1. He gives orders to the whole province. 2. An attack was made from all directions at one time. 3. Some fill the trenches, others attack the walls. ~~4.~~ 4. It is pleasing to neither. 5. They had marched through the province without (doing) any mischief. 6. The Sequani alone do¹ not venture to ask aid. 7. He puts the baggage of the whole army in a suitable place. 8. They assembled in (*literally, to*) one place. 9. They made a sally from another part of the town. 10. On the other bank of the river a legion is left. 11. Neither line begins the battle. 12. He hastened to the other camp. 13. Some he ordered to give up their arms, others to give hostages. 14. We shall aid neither. 15. He will not be deterred by the influence of any state.

LESSON XXXIV.

(a) Turn to the imperfect and future indicative active of the third and fourth conjugations, given in Part III., section 27.

Observation.—Compare these with the corresponding forms in the first and second conjugations. Are they formed from the same principal part? Have they the same letters indicating *was*, *were* or *used to*? *shall* or *will*?²

(b) The corresponding forms of the passive voice are given in Part III., section 28.

Observation.—Are the changes from the active to the passive made in the same way as in the first and second conjugations?³

EXERCISE XXXIV.

I.—1. Bellum gerēbant. 2. Aciēs instruēbātur. 3. Dēsiliēmus. 4. Commoventur. 5. Legiōnem cōscribēbat. 6. Castra mūniēbāmus. 7. Mittēmur. 8. Conveniēbātis. 9. Interclūdēminī. 10. Bellum gerunt. 11. Veniēbat. 12. Oppida incendēbantur. 13. Praemittuntur. 14. Castra mūniēbantur. 15. Vinciar. 16. Dēligntur. 17. Prohibētis. 18. Impediris. 19. Vinceris. 20. Trādētur.

1. See footnote 2, page 19. 2. See footnote 1, page 48. 3. See footnote 1, page 48

II.—1. They were assembling. 2. We shall depart. 3. He was leading back. 4. I shall be led back. 5. He was leaping down. 6. The camp is being fortified. 7. He will encamp. 8. They will move the camp. 9. I shall be restrained. 10. It used to divide. 11. It was being fortified. 12. We were waging war. 13. A legion will be enrolled. 14. You will be bound. 15. You will be conquered. 16. You will have conquered. 17. Arms were being got ready. 18. You shall be hindered. 19. I used to come. 20. We shall not begin battle.

LESSON XXXV.

Turn to the list of cardinal numerals given in Part III., section 15.

Observation.—Notice the similarity in form of the cardinal and ordinal numerals; the formation of the words from eleven to twenty; the manner of expressing twenty-one and similar numbers; the various expressions for eighteen and similar numbers. For the declension of the cardinal numerals, see Part III., section 16.¹

EXERCISE XXXV.

I.—1. Duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā cōscribēbat, et trēs ex hibernīs ēdūxerat. 2. Quīngentīs equitibus māgnam multitudinem hostium prōpulerant. 3. Diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērāmus. 4. Ad Caesarem cum ducentīs obsidibus veniēbat. 5. Nāvēs octōdecim ex superiōre portū solvent. 6. Signa militāria quattuor et septuāgintā ad Caesarem retulērunt. 7. Centum vīgintī quīnque pāgōs habent. 8. Equitēs circiter trīgintā trānsportāverat. 9. Quattuordecim annōs bellum gesserant. 10. Cum sescentīs equitibus ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. 11. Diēs decem et octo trāns Rhēnum cōsūmēmus. 12. Nāvēs octōgintā coāctae erant. 13. Legiōnem quartam decimam in prōvinciam reducet. 14. Quadrāgintā cohortēs coāctae sunt. 15. Diēs continuōs quīnque cōpiās in aciē instrūxit.

1. The declension and use of *mille* are taken up in Lesson XXXVII.

II.—1. He drew up a triple line of four legions. 2. He was demanding five hundred hostages. 3. In one summer two very great wars had been finished. 4. They had taken forty-three towns and about two hundred villages. 5. An attack was made by four hundred cavalry. 6. He ordered Labienus with two legions and one hundred and fifty cavalry to ascend the mountain. 7. They were collecting twenty-eight ships. 8. Thirty-five soldiers will be chosen from the whole army. 9. Twenty-three forts were made. 10. The village is divided into two parts by a river. 11. There were two parties¹ in Gaul. 12. About four hundred villages will be burned. 13. He left two legions in the camp, and with the remaining six marched for nine days through the territories of the Belgians. 14. Two legions, the eleventh and the sixteenth, will be left on the other bank. 15. On the twenty-fifth day two hundred and fifty horsemen had been collected. 16. They will give up the two sons of Galba, and three hundred and fifty hostages. 17. They have three months' corn.

LESSON XXXVI.

Missurus est,	<i>he is going to send, he is about to send, he intends to send.</i>
Vastatur sumus,	<i>we are going to lay waste, we are on the point of laying waste.</i>
Copiae munitionum erant,	<i>the forces were on the point of fortify- ing, were about to fortify.</i>
Jussurus eram,	<i>I was going to order.</i>
Legio non ventura erit,	<i>the legion will not be likely to come.</i>

Observation.—Formation of Latin verbal phrases. Changes in ending *us, i, ae, a*. From which of the principal parts are *missurus, jussurus*, etc., obtained? Various translations possible for each form. To which voice do the verbs belong? Difference in meaning and formation between *missus est* and *missurus est*, etc.

1. Literally, *two parties were*. See footnote 1, page 45.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

I.—1. Duodecim cohortēs coāctūrī sumus. 2. Omnia aedificia incēnsūrī erant et iter per prōvinciam per vim temptātūrī. 3. Sine equitatē nōn est ventūrus. 4. Bellum cum Rōmānīs gestūrī erant. 5. Nūllo cum periculō cōpiae ad proxima castra perventūrae sunt. 6. Neque obsidēs repetitūrī, neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrī erant. 7. Centuriōnēs et tribūnōs militum convocātūrus sum. 8. Proximā nocte quartā vigiliā castra mōta erant. 9. Dē itinere brevi tempore jūdicātūrī estis. 10. Omnēs collēs et loca superiōra occupātūrī erāmus. 11. Impedimēta relictūrī et ēruptiōnem factūrī sumus. 12. Injūriās Aeduōrum nōn neglētūrus erit. 13. Aeduīs obsidēs nōn reddītūrus sum. 14. Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī recūsātūrus est. 15. Cūr ab officiō discēssūrus es?

II.—1. The enemy are going to send ambassadors and give hostages. 2. Reinforcements are likely to come from the nearest winter quarters. 3. The forces are going to winter in hither Gaul. 4. The flight of the Gauls is likely to alarm the Romans. 5. We are intending to aid the other army. 6. They were about to lead across three-fourths (*literally, three parts*) of their forces. 7. She is not likely to gain her request. 8. They had been on the point of giving up their arms. 9. He was about to make an attack with three hundred cavalry. 10. The army was led out of the camp the next day. 11. We are likely to finish the war without any danger. 12. They are not likely to refrain from wrong-doing and mischief. 13. I intend to say nothing about Labienus' opinion. 14. Neither will be likely to begin battle. 15. We shall spend three days in the province.

LESSON XXXVII.

(a) Mille equitēs mittentur,	<i>a thousand horsemen will be sent.</i>
Adventus mille equitum,	<i>the arrival of a thousand horsemen.</i>
Cum mille equitibus con-	<i>he hastened with a thousand horse-</i>
tendit,	<i>men.</i>

Tria millia equitum mit- *three thousand horsemen will be*
tentur, *sent.*

Cum duobus millibus equi- *he hastened with two thousand*
tum contendit, *horsemen.*

Observation.—Difference between singular and plural of *mille* in declension, and in relation to other parts of the sentence. For declension, see Part III., section 16.

(b) **Mille passūs pertinet,** *it extends a thousand paces, or a*
mile.

Tria millia passuum abest,¹ *he is three thousand paces, or three*
miles, distant.

Observation.—By what case does Latin indicate distance or the extent of space?

EXERCISE XXXVII.

I.—1. *Hostēs sub monte cōsēderant millia passuum octo ā castris Rōmānōrum.* 2. *Millia hominum octōgintā dēlēta sunt.* 3. *Summa omnium erat millia trecenta sexāgintā octo.* 4. *Locus sescentōs passūs abest.* 5. *Ā lacū Lemannō ad flūmen Rhodanum millia passuum decem novem mūrūm perdūcit.* 6. *Nūllam partem noctis iter intermīsērunt.* 7. *Millia sex convēnērunt.* 8. *Ex millibus trīgintā tertia pars interfecta erat.* 9. *Ā Germanīs iter paucōrum diērum aberant.* 10. *Militēs aggerem lātūm pedēs trecentōs trīgintā, altūm pedēs octōgintā exstrūxērunt.* 11. *Spatium trium millium² patet.* 12. *Ex proeliō millia hominum trīgintā tria superfuērunt.³* 13. *Multa millia passuum agrī vacant.* 14. *Silva novem diērum iter patet.* 15. *Sex millia peditum reliquit.*

II.—1. *They are six miles distant.* 2. *He restored about twenty thousand captives to the Aedui.* 3. *The camp was pitched three miles from Cæsar's camp.* 4. *Out of a number of fifty-two thousand scarcely a fourth part is left.* 5. *At day-break he was a mile and a half from the enemy's camp.* 6. *The rest of the legions are*

1. *Abest* is from the verb *absum*, *I am distant, I am away.* *Absum* is a compound of the preposition *ab* and the various forms of the verb *sum*, which is similarly compounded with many other prepositions, as *de*, *ad*, *prae*, *super*.

2. *Passuum* is generally omitted when the genitive of *millia* is used.

3. From *supersum*; see footnote 1.

a great distance away. 7. The Boii with fifteen thousand men were bringing up the line of march. 8. We were about a mile away from the river. 9. Twenty-three thousand Gauls had come to Caesar. 10. The territories of the Helvetians used to extend two hundred and forty miles. 11. He selected a suitable place about six hundred paces from the Germans. 12. The Gauls will send twenty-five thousand, the Belgians ten, the Germans three. 13. We shall advance a journey of ten miles. 14. Four thousand men had been slain. 15. A town of the Belgians was eight miles from the camp.

LESSON XXXVIII.

Caesarī pārent,	<i>they obey (or are obedient to) Caesar.</i>
Equitātui Rōmānō praestant,	<i>they surpass (or are superior to) the Roman cavalry.</i>
Legiōni subveniunt,	<i>they aid (or give aid to) the legion.</i>
Prōvinciae imperat,	<i>he commands (or gives orders to) the province.</i>
Militi persuādet,	<i>he persuades (literally, makes it agreeable to) the soldier.</i>

Observation.—What case is used with these Latin verbs to express the object of the English verbs? Notice that in all the examples the word expressed by this case represents the person indirectly affected (to, or for, or in connection with whom something is done).

Notice how the general vocabulary indicates when a verb (*e.g.*, *resistō*) belongs to the same class as those given above.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

I.—1. Aliī ēruptiōnibus resistunt, aliī equitibus subveniunt. 2. Dumnorigī māgnis praemiis persuādet. 3. Ex māgnō equitum numerō nōnnūllī Gallicis rēbus favēbant. 4. Aeduōrum cīvitatī Caesar indulserat. 5. Caesar Dumnorigī ignōvit. 6. Maritimis regiōnibus quattuor rēgēs praeerant.¹ 7. Nullā in rē commūnī

1. For *praesum*, see footnote 1, page 54.

saluti deerat.¹ 8. Omnibus Gallis praestant. 9. Necessario tem-
pore civitati subvenerat. 10. Legioni succurrant et equitum
impetūs sustinent. 11. Neque ad concilia veniunt neque imperiō
Caesaris pārent. 12. Omnia nāvibus deerant.¹ 13. Reliquae
legiōnēs Caesarī satisfēcerant.

II.—1. They will aid the allies. 2. He was injuring Caesar and
the government. 3. They decided to give hostages and obey the
rule of the Roman people. 4. Dumnorix had command of the
cavalry. 5. Dumnorix favors the Helvetians on account of the
relationship. 6. Caesar had indulged the tenth legion, and used
to trust (it) on account of (its) valor. 7. In another direction two
legions were resisting the enemy. 8. They spared neither women
nor infants. 9. The Germans used to surpass the Belgians. 10.
They had given satisfaction to the Aedui about the injuries. 11.
One thing² was lacking to Caesar. 12. He favors Labienus
opinion. 13. The infantry was aiding the cavalry.

LESSON XXXIX.

Lēgātus qui missus erat,	<i>the ambassador who had been sent.</i>
Legiō, quae missa erat,	<i>the legion which had been sent.</i>
Oppidum quod erat expūgnā- tum,	<i>the town which had been taken by storm.</i>
Lēgātus quem miserant,	<i>the ambassador whom they had sent.</i>
Adventus lēgātōrum quōs mi- serant,	<i>the arrival of the ambassadors whom they had sent.</i>
Ab oppidō quod erat expūg- nātum,	<i>from the town which had been taken by storm.</i>
Germāni quibuscum bellum gesserant,	<i>the Germans with whom they had waged war.</i>

Observation.—Change of form in the relative pronoun. (The
declension of **qui** is given in Part III., section 24.) What deter-

1. For *desum*, see footnote 1, page 54.

2. Instead of using *res*, the word *thing*, with an adjective (or pronoun) in agree-
ment, may be expressed by using in Latin the neuter of the adjective (or pronoun).
This should be done only in the nominative and accusative cases.

mines the number, the gender, the case, of the pronoun? *Cum* with the relative. The position of the clause introduced by the relative pronoun.¹

EXERCISE XXXIX.

I.—1. Ex alterā parte vicī, quam Gallis concēsserat, omnēs discēdere coepērunt. 2. Reliquum exercitum in² Morinōs, ab quibus lēgātī nōn vēnerant, dūxit. 3. Cum sōlā decimā legiōne, dē quā nōn dubitābat et cui indulserat, discēssūrus erat. 4. Caesar posterō diē lēgātum, cum legiōnibus, quās ex Britannīā redūxerat, in² Morinōs, quī rebellīōnem fēcerant, mīsit. 5. Cum lēgātis Commium, cūjus virtūtem et cōsiliū probābat, mittit. 6. In finēs Aeduōrum, quī proximī Sēquanis erant, exercitum dūxit. 7. Ab omnibus nātiōnibus, quae trāns Rhēnum incolunt, lēgātī ad Caesarem missī sunt. 8. Nāvēs habent plurimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvīgant. 9. Ad oppidum, quod circiter mille passūs aberat, cōnfūgērunt. 10. Omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam habet auctōritātem.

II.—1. The Belgians are nearest to the Germans, who dwell across the Rhine, with whom they are continually waging war. 2. He ordered Labienus with two legions which had wintered in the province to hasten to the river, which was ten miles distant. 3. They did what they had been ordered. 4. He is likely to persuade Casticus, whose father has possessed royal power among the Sequani for many years. 5. He will collect all his retainers, of whom he has a great number. 6. He sends the cavalry in advance through the forest (of) Ardennes,³ which is the largest in (*literally*, of) all Gaul. 7. Twenty-four thousand Germans came to Ariovistus, who had settled in the country of the Sequani. 8. Two legions, which he had enrolled in hither Gaul, brought up the whole line of march. 9. The Sequani, through whose territories

1. The relative clause is regularly placed immediately after the word to which the relative pronoun refers (the antecedent). The order in each of the Latin sentences in the exercise should be observed.

2. Translate *in* by *against*.

3. In such phrases as the city of Rome, the province of Gaul, where the city is Rome, etc., Latin does not use the genitive, but puts the words in the same case.

we had marched, were going to rebuild the towns which had been burnt. 10. Dumnorix had command of the cavalry which had been sent.

LESSON XL.

Expectandus est,	<i>he should be awaited.</i>
Equus removendus est,	<i>the horse must be removed.</i>
Lēgātus mittendus erat,	<i>an ambassador ought to have been sent.</i>
Locus mūniendus erit,	<i>the place will have to be fortified.</i>
Castra mūnenda erant,	<i>the camp had to be fortified.</i>
Bellum gerendum est,	<i>war is to be waged.</i>
Lēgātī mittendī sunt,	<i>ambassadors ought to be sent.</i>
Legiō expectanda erit,	<i>the legion will have to be awaited.</i>
Cōpiæ expectandæ erant,	<i>the forces should have been awaited.</i>

Observation.—Formation in the different conjugations of the new part¹ of the verb here joined with the verb **sum** (see the first four examples). Changes in the ending of the gerundive. The various translations given for each tense.

EXERCISE XL.

I.—1. Bellum gerendum erat. 2. Lēgātī ad Caesarem mittendī sunt. 3. Altera pars vicī Gallīs concēdenda est, altera cohortibus. 4. Injūriæ Aeduōrum nōn negligendæ erant. 5. Proelium committendum est. 6. Ab injuriā prohibendī eritis. 7. Omnia² unō tempore agenda erant. 8. In hiberna redūcendī sumus. 9. Coercendus atque dēterrendus erās. 10. Hieme nāvēs aedificandæ, veterēsque reficiendæ sunt. 11. Exercitus trānsportandus est. 12. Lēgātī audiendī erant. 13. Hostēs sunt opprimendī. 14. Aeduōs ab injuriā dēfendī. 15. Cōpiæ hostium submovendæ erant.

II.—1. All the horses should have been removed out of sight. 2. The arrival of the cohorts which Cæsar sent must be awaited.

1. This form is called the *Gerundive*; it expresses duty or necessity, and is always passive.

2. See footnote 2, page 56.

3. The opportunity is not to be lost. 4. The camp ought to be fortified with a double wall. 5. The line of battle had to be drawn up. 6. The hostages will have to be restored. 7. Two cohorts should have been sent to the smaller camp, which was three miles distant. 8. Peace must be established with the nearest states. 9. The war ought to be renewed. 10. The baggage should have been stationed in one place. 11. Forces had to be raised. 12. The rest of the army is to be led into the country of the Morini. 13. The soldiers should be recalled from work. 14. You should have been sent in advance. 15. The camp must be defended.

LESSON XLI.

Commōti sunt quod m̄agna	<i>they were alarmed because a large</i>
pars exercitūs interfecta	<i>part of the army had been</i>
erat,	<i>slain.</i>
Dum Rōmāni castra pōnunt,	<i>while the Romans were pitching</i>
hostēs impetum subitō fē-	<i>their camp, the enemy sud-</i>
cērunt,	<i>denly made an attack.</i>
Ubi parāti sunt, oppida omnia	<i>when they were ready, they burned</i>
incendērunt,	<i>all their towns.</i>
Postquam pervēnit, obsidēs	<i>after (or when) he arrived, he de-</i>
poposcit,	<i>manded hostages.</i>
Simul atque dē adventū Cae-	<i>as soon as they were informed of</i>
saris certiorēs facti sunt,	<i>Cæsar's arrival, they sent am-</i>
lĕgātōs misērunt,	<i>bassadors.</i>
Obsidēs, ut imperāverat, ad-	<i>the hostages were brought, as he</i>
ducti sunt,	<i>had ordered.</i>

Observation.—How are the ideas *because, while, when, after, as soon as* and *as* expressed in Latin? What peculiarity in the tense used with **dum**?¹ What tense is used after **ubi, postquam, simul atque**?² The position of the dependent clause in each sentence.

1. Latin uses the present tense with *dum*, where the imperfect might have been expected.

2. Latin uses the perfect tense with *ubi, postquam* and *simul atque*, where English could use either the past or the past perfect forms.

EXERCISE XLI.

I.—1. Summa erat difficultās quod milites magnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressi sunt. 2. Ubi lēgātī ad Caesarem revertērunt, obsidēs quīngentōs poposcit. 3. Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiaē in ūnum locum coāctae sunt, ad flūmen Axonam, quod est in finibus Rēmōrum, contendērunt. 4. Dum bellum cum Venetīs geritur, Sabinus cum cōpiīs quās ā Caesare accēperat, in finēs Rēmōrum pervēnit. 5. Miserior et gravior est fortūna Sēquanōrum, quod sōlī auxilium implōrāre nōn audent. 6. Cōpiaē¹ simul atque in āridō cōstitērunt, in hostēs impetum fēcērunt. 7. Ut postea ex captivīs comperit, adventus Labiēni nōn cōgnitus erat. 8. Hostēs¹ ubi equitēs cōspexērunt, impetum subitō fēcērunt. 9. Bellum gerendum erat in locīs ubi² alter lēgātus interfectus est, atque unde alter profūgerat. 10. Helvētiī, quod pridīe Rōmānī proelium nōn commiserant, novissimum agmen lacessere coepērunt.

II.—1. When neither army begins the battle, Cæsar leads his forces back to the camp. 2. Of all the Gauls the Belgians were the bravest, because they were the nearest to the Germans, with whom they were continually waging war. 3. We are going to march through the province, because we have no other road. 4. When the Helvetians were informed of (*literally, about*) Cæsar's arrival, they sent ambassadors. 5. He ordered the Helvetians to rebuild all the towns which they had burned, because the place whence they had departed was unoccupied. 6. The forces had to be led back to the province, because there³ was a scarcity of corn. 7. While the ships were assembling, ambassadors came from a large part of the Morini to Cæsar. 8. As soon as he learned of (*literally, about*) Cæsar's departure, he began to collect forces. 9. Because he was eighteen miles from the largest town of the Aedui, he turned (his) march aside from the Helvetians. 10. The barbarians were alarmed because the town had been taken by storm.

1. Often in Latin the subject (or some other prominent word) of a dependent sentence beginning with a conjunction, is placed before the conjunction. This is especially common where the subject is the same as that of the leading verb.

2. *Ubi* means *where* as well as *when*.

3. See footnote 1, page 45.

LESSON XLII.

The declension of the pronouns *ego* (*I*), *tū* (*you*), and *is, ea, id* (*he, she, it*), is given in Part III., sections 18, 19 and 22.

Observation.—The translation of the various forms of the personal pronouns.¹

EXERCISE XLII.

I.—1. *Pācem vōbiscum*² *fēcerāmus*. 2. *Ab eīs circur-veniēmur*. 3. *Impetum in nōs fēcērunt*. 4. *Māgnam inter eōs auctōritātem habēbat*. 5. *Nihil ā vōbīs postulō*. 6. *Ubi lēgātōs dē dēditione ad eum mīsērunt, adventum Caesaris eōs exspectāre jūssit*. 7. *Tēcum*² *remittendī sunt*. 8. *Mīrum mihi vidētur*. 9. *Duo frātrēs eīs praeerant*. 10. *Jūssit eōs impedīmenta in ūnum locum collocāre et eum mūnīre*. 11. *Ego vōbīs rēgna conciliābō*. 12. *Nūntius ā tē missus erat*. 13. *Id ab eō comperit*. 14. *Nōbīs nocēbat*. 15. *Mihi, nōn tibi, indulgēbat*. 16. *Eīs satisfēcimus dē injūriīs quās intulerāmus*. 17. *Tū, Labiēne, mihi reiūque pūblīcae ūtilis fuistī*. 18. *Alteram partem vicī eīs concēssit*.

II.—1. They sent ambassadors to him. 2. They will not spare you. 3. Hostages will be given up to us by you. 4. Peace must be established with them. 5. We slew a large part of them. 6. When we were informed of Cæsar's arrival, we sent ambassadors to him. 7. He ordered us to select a suitable place and fortify it with a double wall. 8. They favor us, not you. 9. The citizens fear you. 10. I had not made war on³ the Gauls, but the Gauls on me. 11. We do not believe him. 12. They will come with you. 13. We were eight miles from him. 14. He is not likely to persuade her. 15. He strove with us for many years about the leadership. 16. (His) son will have to be restored to him. 17. We shall aid the Gauls, who are wintering with us, neither with corn nor (any) other thing. 18. He sent an army into the country of the Morini, because ambassadors had not come from them.

1. The nominative of these pronouns should be used only when the subject of the verb is to be emphasized.

2. With the ablative (both singular and plural) of *ego*, *tu*, *sui*, and generally of *qui* and *quis*, the preposition *cum* is placed after the pronoun, forming one word with it. The accent, in such cases, is on the syllable preceding *cum*.

3. The phrase for *make war on* is *bellum infero*, with the dative case expressing the idea of *on*.

LESSON XLIII.

Bellum à Rōmānīs gestum erat,	<i>war had been waged by the Romans.</i>
Bellum Rōmānīs gerendum erat,	<i>war should have been waged by the Romans, or the Romans should have waged war.</i>
Acies à Caesare instructa est,	<i>the line was drawn up by Caesar.</i>
Acies Caesarī instruenda est,	<i>the line must be drawn up by Caesar, or Caesar must draw up the line.</i>
Occasio à me nōn amittetur,	<i>the opportunity will not be lost by me.</i>
Occasio mihi nōn amittenda est,	<i>the opportunity must not be lost by me, or I must not lose the opportunity.</i>

Observation.—How is the personal agent expressed in Latin with ordinary passive forms? with the gerundive? Notice also the free translation of the gerundive by the active voice.¹

EXERCISE XLIII.

I.—1. Caesarī omnia² unō tempore erant agenda; vexillum prōpōnendum,³ signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī milites quī castra mūnīre coeperant, acies instruenda. 2. Allobrogibus vel persuasūrī sumus, vel vī coactūrī. 3. Cōpiae hostium Sabīnō destinendae erunt. 4. Clāssis, quae ab eis missa est, nobīs est expectanda. 5. Loca superiōra occupātūrī sunt. 6. Postquam equitātus in cōspectum vēnit, hostēs terga vertērunt magnusque eōrum numerus est occisus. 7. Nullam partem noctis iter vōbīs intermittendum est. 8. Mihi nōn amittenda erat occasiō. 9. Rēs tibi cōgitanda est. 10. Castra erant angustiora quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiōnēs transportāverat. 11. Dum reliquae cōpiae

1. There is no form in the Latin active voice corresponding to the gerundive of the passive voice, but by a change in the form of the English sentence, duty or obligation expressed in the active voice may be rendered into Latin by the passive gerundive.

2. See footnote 2, page 56.

3. With each of the gerundives *erat* (or *erant*) is to be understood.

conveniunt, lēgātī ad eum vērērunt. 12. Complūrēs ex eis occidērunt.

II.—1. Ambassadors should have been sent to him by us. 2. You must not lead a larger number of men across. 3. Cæsar will have to raise large forces. 4. When Cæsar found it out, he ordered them to hasten with us to the river. 5. We are not going to make war on¹ them, because the winters are very early in Gaul. 6. Opportunity had been given him.² 7. Labienus must seize the heights. 8. The army will have to be led across without baggage, on account of the scarcity of ships. 9. Some had to fill up the trenches, others to tear down the walls. 10. I must not neglect the wrongs of the Aedui. 11. He was going to break up camp the next night in the fourth watch. 12. They must await the arrival of the forces. 13. As soon as they made an attack on us, Cæsar had to remove all the horses out of sight. 14. The Morini, from whom ambassadors have not come, are going to collect very large forces and renew the war.

LESSON XLIV.

- (a) *Sē* abdidit, *he hid himself.*
Sē abdidērunt, *they hid themselves.*
Duās legiōnēs sēcum ēdūxit, *he led out two legions with him.*
Duās legiōnēs cum eō misit, *he sent two legions with him.*

Observation.—The declension of the word from which *sē* comes (Part III., section 20). How are the singular and plural to be distinguished? Two translations (*e.g.*, *him* and *himself*) given. Difference between *sē* and *is*. Position when used with *cum*.³

- (b) *Meum* adventum exspec- *he awaited my arrival.*
tāvit.
Tuum adventum, Caesar, *he awaited your arrival, Caesar.*
expectāvit,
Nostrum adventum exspec- *he awaited our arrival.*
tāvit.

1. See footnote 3, page 61.

2. Literally, *to him*.

3. See footnote 2, page 61.

Vestrum adventum exspec-	<i>he awaited your arrival, citizens.</i>
tāvit, olvēs,	
Nōs adventum suum ex-	<i>he ordered us to await his arrival.</i>
spectāre jūssit,	
Nōs adventum ejus exspec-	<i>they ordered us to await his ar-</i>
tāre jūssērunt,	<i>rival.</i>
Nōs adventum suum ex-	<i>they ordered us to await their</i>
spectāre jūssērunt,	<i>arrival.</i>
Nōs adventum eōrum ex-	<i>he ordered us to await their ar-</i>
spectāre jūssit,	<i>rival.</i>

Observation.—Manner of expressing in Latin the possessive pronouns, *my, your, our, his (her, its), their*. For the declension of the Latin possessive pronouns see Part III., section 21. Difference between *tuus* and *vester*, *suus* and *ejus*, *suus* and *eōrum*.

(c) Arma trādidērunt,	<i>they gave up their arms.</i>
In officiō permanēbimus,	<i>we shall remain in our allegiance.</i>
Fillium mīsit,	<i>he sent his son.</i>
Fillium suum mīsit,	<i>he sent his own son.</i>

Observation.—When are the English possessive pronouns not expressed in Latin?¹ What is the effect if they are expressed when not needed for clearness' sake?

EXERCISE XLIV.

I.—1. In cōspectū exercitūs nostrī, agrī eōrum vastātī erant.
 2. Eōrum fugā nostrī² erant perterritī. 3. Cūr dē tuā virtūte aut dē meā diligentīā dēspērās? 4. Sē suaque² omnia sine morā eī dēdidērunt. 5. Eōs suum adventum exspectāre jūssit. 6. Ubi dē ejus adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt. 7. Frātre tuum ad sē vocat. 8. Helvētīi quī vōs nōn solum in suis sed etiam in vestrīs finibus superāvērunt, nostrō exercitui nōn parēs sunt. 9. Ego meīs cōpiīs meōque exercitū vōbīs rēgna conciliābō. 10. Legiō, quam sēcūm habēbat, in nostrōs² impetum fēcit. 11. Sēquanīs, quī intrā finēs suōs eum recēpērunt, quōrum

1. See footnote 2, page 13.

2. *Nostrī* is often used without a noun, in the sense of *our men*; so *sui* may mean *his (or their) men, friends, people*, and *sua* (neuter plural), *their possessions*.

omnia oppida in potestāte ejus sunt, omnēs cruciātūs s. . . perferendī. 12. Rēgnum in civitāte suā occupātūrus est. 13. Vestrae salūtis causā suum periculum neglēxērunt. 14. Sēsē in silvās abdidērunt. 15. Caesar primum suum deinde omnium equōs ex cōspectū remōvit. 16. Sē in montem recēpērunt. 17. Sē ad suōs recēpit.

II.—1. He resolved to lead out with him two legions. 2. The Helvetians had now led their forces into the territories of the Aedui, and were laying waste their fields. 3. He gave the signal to his men.¹ 4. He ordered us to obey him. 5. He hastens to them and sends all the cavalry before him. 6. They will not withstand the attacks of our men.¹ 7. On his arrival they withdrew themselves and all their possessions¹ into the town. 8. They were waging war with your allies. 9. The cavalry betook themselves to him. 10. For the sake of their safety I neglected my own danger. 11. They are going to join battle with our men.¹ 12. Cæsar was restraining his men¹ from battle. 13. We learned it through their messengers. 14. Cæsar ought to lead the legions which he has with him across into our province. 15. We are going to march through your territories. 16. They will surrender themselves to him.

LESSON XLV.

Adventū Caesaris commōti sunt,	<i>they were alarmed by Cæsar's arrival.</i>
Adventū Caesaris commōti, lēgātōs misērunt,	<i>alarmed (or being alarmed) by Cæsar's arrival, they sent hostages.</i>
Cōplae in ūnum locum coāctae erant,	<i>the forces had been gathered to one place.</i>
Cōplae in ūnum locum coāctae, in prōvinciam mittentur,	<i>the forces, after being gathered (or on being gathered) to one place, will be sent into the province.</i>
Legiō dēlēcta est,	<i>a legion was chosen.</i>
Legiōnem dēlēctam misit,	<i>he sent a chosen legion.</i>

1. See footnote 2, page 64.

Observation.—The use and force of *commōti*, *coāctae*, *dēlēcta*, when no longer joined with parts of the verb *sum*.¹ The different translations given. The voice. The relation in point of time of the participle and the principal verb. The formation and declension of the participle.

EXERCISE XLV.

I.—1. Nostrō adventū commōtus, Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā cōscribit. 2. Nōnnūllī pudōre adductī remanēbunt. 3. Vulneribus cōfectī, barbarī sē in fugam contulērunt.² 4. Repentinō ejus adventū prohibitus, cōpiās in finēs suōs redūxit. 5. In nostrōs disiectōs impetum fēcērunt. 6. In omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspexit. 7. Spē praedae adductī, in Galliam contendērunt. 8. Hostēs vulneribus cōfectōs ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulimus. 9. Barbarī commōti quod oppidum, et³ nātūrā locī et manū mūnitum, expūgnātum erat, mājorēs cōpiās parāre coepērunt. 10. Omnēs Belgārum cōpiae, in ūnum locum coāctae, ad eum veniēbant. 11. Impulsī ā principibus, ā nōbis dēfectūrī erant. 12. Hostēs undique circumventī, fugā salūtem petiērunt. 13. Celeritāte Rōmānōrum commōti, lēgātōs ad eum dē dēditione mittunt. 14. Alteram partem vicī Gallis concēssit, alteram vacuam ab eīs relictam cohortibus attribuit. 15. Helvētī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs ad eum misērunt.

II.—1. After being driven back into the town they made a sally. 2. They withdrew themselves and all their possessions into a place excellently fortified by nature. 3. Alarmed by the want of supplies, he hastened the next day to the province. 4. The Aedui, after being called brothers by the senate, are held in bondage by him. 5. Being defeated by the first attack of our men, they betook themselves to the camp. 6. Dumnorix on being recalled had resisted the cavalry. 7. The Aedui, being defeated by him, had suffered great loss. 8. The soldiers, weighed down by the heavy burden of their armor, had to join battle with the enemy

1. This part of the verb is known as the *Perfect Participle Passive*.

2. *Contulerunt* is from *confero*.

3. *Et . . . et* here, as often, means *both . . . and*.

at an unfavorable time. 9. Cæsar, on being informed of their approach, leads out with him all the cavalry and hastens to them. 10. Led by his influence, they detained the ambassadors sent by him. 11. Dismayed by the appearance of the ships, the barbarians halted. 12. The Aedui, having been crushed by the battles and disasters, had given hostages to him. 13. The Helvetians, alarmed by his sudden approach, are going to send ambassadors to him. 14. He has led his forces across into Gaul, having been asked and invited by the Gauls. 15. Driven by madness and folly, they have made war¹ on us.

LESSON XLVI.

Turning to Part III., section 39, examine the inflection of the verb *capitō*, in the indicative (active and passive), the present infinitive active, and the gerundive passive.

Observation.—The peculiarities of inflection in verbs like *capitō*.²

EXERCISE XLVI.

I.—1. Accipiet. 2. Sē recipiunt. 3. Faciendum est. 4. Tēla conjiciēbant. 5. Nūntiat. 6. Rēs est suscipienda. 7. Sē in oppidum recipere coepērunt. 8. Suscipiētur. 9. Superiōra loca multitūdine hostium complēta cōspiciēbantur. 10. Perfacile est cōnāta perficere. 11. Mūnitiōnēs perficientur. 12. Lēgātōs interficiunt. 13. Ex oppidō profugere nōn audēbunt. 14. Condiōnēs pācis accipiendae erant. 15. Ab amicitia populī Rōmānī dēficiēbant. 16. Nōn solum vīrēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficiunt.

II.—1. The Roman people makes peace with them. 2. They undertake the war. 3. They were marching through the province. 4. The war should not have been undertaken. 5. We fortify. 6. Supplies will fail us. 7. He will be put to death by them. 8. They were ordered to hurl their darts. 9. The fortifications must be finished. 10. We receive. 11. They will make an attack. 12. They will announce. 13. They hesitate to revolt from the Aedui. 14. He undertakes the matter. 15. They perceive him. 16. They were fleeing.

1. See footnote 3, page 61.

2. See Part III., section 67.

LESSON XLVII.

(a) Turn to Part III., section 23.

Observation.—The declension of *hic* and *ille*.

(b) *Prōvincia mea haec est, illa* this is my province, that (is) yours.
vestra,

Eum locum mūniverunt, they fortified that place.

In eōs qui haec faciēbant they made an attack on those who
impetum fecerunt, were doing this (literally,
these things).¹

Lēgātī pacem ā Caesare pe- the ambassadors asked peace of
tiērent. Ille haec re- Caesar. He answered as fol-
spondit, lows (literally, these things).

Observation.—The various translations of *hic*, *ille* and *is*. What word is used for *that* (*those*) when emphatic (by contrast)? when the antecedent of a relative? When is *ille*, not *is*, used for *he* (*they*, etc.)?²

EXERCISE XLVII.

I.—1. Haec omnia¹ Gallis erant incōgnita. 2. Gallōs, qui ea loca incoluerant, expulērunt. 3. Hōs Germanōs Helvētiī, nōn solum in suis, sed etiam in illōrum finibus, superāverant. 4. Haec cōsuētūdō victūs cum illā nōn comparanda est. 5. Hī in armis sunt, illī domī remanent. 6. Ad eam sententiam haec ratiō dēdūxit. 7. Dum haec in his locis geruntur, ad maritimās regiōnēs, quibus quattuor rēgēs praeerant, nūntiōs mittit. 8. Nostri pila in hostēs conjiciunt. Illi primō concursū in fugam conjecti proximās silvās petiērunt. 9. Hōc latus insulae pertinet circiter millia passuum quingenta. 10. Ab iis, quōs miserat, explorātōribus haec cōgnōvit. 11. Hunc illi comprehenderant. 12. Hūjus loci haec erat nātūra. 13. Ūnī ex omnibus, Sēquanī nihil eārum rērum faciēbant, quās ceteri fecerant. 14. Illum prō amicō, tē prō hoste habēbō.

1. See footnote 2, page 56.

2. *Ille* is practically an emphatic *is*; hence when *he* or *they* is emphasized, *ille* should be used. This includes the case where there is a change of subject, as in the last example.

II.—1. The Helvetians on the following day move their camp from that place. 2. On being informed of these things, he orders them to give up all their arms. They quickly do (his) commands. 3. We shall defend those into whose territories Cæsar has sent this army. 4. Alarmed by all these things, they send ambassadors to him. 5. These do¹ not agree with those. 6. The width of this forest extends a nine days' journey. 7. Of all these the Belgians are the bravest, because they are nearest to the Germans. 8. By this speech he persuades them. 9. On their arrival he leads his forces into the country of the Morini. They flee into the woods and swamps. 10. This legion Cæsar had indulged. 11. At that time he held the leading place in this state. 12. They hasten towards the camp and those who were finishing the fortifications. 13. Our men drove them into the woods, but lost a few of (*literally, out of*) their comrades. 14. As soon as Cæsar came to the border of these woods, they betook themselves to their friends, and Cæsar led his forces into winter quarters.

LESSON XLVIII.

(a) Turn to Part III., section 33.

Observation.—The formation in each conjugation of the present participle active.

(b) **Adventum Cæsaris exspectans magnâs cōplâs coëgit,** *while awaiting Cæsar's approach he raised large forces.*

Adventum Cæsaris expectantēs castra mūnīemus, *while awaiting Cæsar's approach we shall fortify the camp.*

Lēgātum fortiter resistentem vulnerāvērunt, *they wounded the lieutenant while he was bravely resisting.*

In cōs fugientēs inpetum fecimus, *we made an attack on them as (or while or when) they were fleeing.*

1. See footnote 2, page 19.

Observation.—Declension and agreement of present participle active. The different translations given. The voice. The relation in point of time of the participle and of the principal verb.

(c) *Equitēs revocārī jūssit,* *he ordered the cavalry to be recalled.*

Fossās complērī jūssit, *he ordered the trenches to be filled.*

Nāvēs cōgī jūssit, *he ordered ships to be collected.*

Castra mūnīrī jūssit, *he ordered a camp to be fortified.*

Observation.—The formation in each conjugation and the translation of the present infinitive passive.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

I.—1. Discēdēns ab hiberniis in Italiā, jūssit plūrimās hieme nāvēs aedificārī. 2. Lēgēs Aeduōrum duo ex ūnā familiā magistrātūs creārī vetant. 3. Māgnum numerum eōrum fugientium concīdērunt. 4. Haec flēns ā Caesare petīvit. 5. Nāvēs paulum removērī et rēmīs incitārī et ad¹ latus apertum hostium cōstituit jūssit. 6. Succurrit illi Vorēnus et labōrantī subvenit. 7. Equitēs cēdere sēque in castra recipere, simul castra altiōre vallō mūnīrī jūssit. 8. Caesar petentibus Aeduīs concēssit. 9. Scaphās militibus complērī jubet, et subsidia eis quōs labōrantēs cōspicit submittī. 10. Hunc fugientem silvae tēxērunt. 11. Obsidēs in continentem addūci jūssit. 12. Fortiter pūgnāns interfectus est. 13. Hostēs, hīs rēbus permōti, Lutētiam incendi, pontēsque ejus oppidī rescindi jubent.

II.—1. He orders the ambassadors to be called to him. 2. Cæsar, while expecting a larger uprising of Gaul, began to hold a levy. 3. Weeping they besought him. 4. He ordered the camp to be fortified by a wall. 5. We made an attack on the enemy as they were betaking themselves to the camp. 6. Our men, while resisting bravely, were surrounded by the enemy's cavalry. 7. He ordered the enemy to be dislodged and driven off with slings and arrows. 8. Lucius Cotta while fighting is slain with a very large portion of the soldiers, the rest betake themselves to the camp. 9. On departing they order cavalry to be procured. 10.

1. Translate *ad* here by *on*.

Influenced by their statements, he ordered the battle to be begun. 11. The enemy, because they had a larger number of men, surrounded our men as they were fighting. 12. We seized him as he was fleeing.

LESSON XLIX.

(a) Turn to Part III., section 23.

Observation.—The declension of *ipse* and *idem*.

(b) *Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus castra mūnīre jubet, ipse in Galliam contendit,* *he orders Labienus with two legions to fortify the camp, he himself hastens to Gaul.*

Ab Aeduis ipsis certior factus est, *he was informed by the Aedui themselves.*

Sē ad castra recēpērunt, *they betook themselves to the camp.*

Eādem cōpiās reliquit, *he left the same forces.*

Observation.—The translation of *ipse* and *idem*. The difference between *sē* and *ipse*.¹

EXERCISE XLIX.

I.—1. Eōdem tempore Caesarem certiōrem faciunt dē ejus adventū. 2. Omnibus Gallīs idem² est faciendum, quod Helvētīī fēcērunt. 3. Aquilam intrā vallum prōjēcit, ipse prō castrīs pūgnāns occiditur. 4. Postulat eadem.² 5. Haec ipsī ab aliīs audīverant. 6. Eōdem diē hostēs sub monte cōnsēderant millia passuum ab Caesaris castrīs octo. 7. Neque Caesaris ipsius adventus neque Labiēnī cōgnitus erat. 8. Ab eīdem nostra cōsilia hostibus ēnūntiantur. 9. Cōstituit cohortēs duās in prōvinciā collocāre, et ipse cum reliquīs ejus legiōnis cohortibus hiemāre. 10. Hōrum auctōritāte adductī, eādem dē causā lēgātōs retinent. 11. Eādem nocte sē interficiunt. 12. Eīdem prīncipēs quī³ ante vēnerant ad eum revertērunt. 13. Ipse in Aeduōs, quae cīvitas

1. *Se* is the reflexive pronoun of the third person ; *ipse* is used purely for emphasis, and may be used of any person.

2. See footnote 2, page 56.

3. Notice that, after *idem*, *qui* may be translated *as*, instead of *who*.

propinqua his locis erat, contendit. 14. His de rebus Caesar certior factus, quod ipse longē aberat, nāvēs aedificārī, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā instituī, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī jubet.

II.—1. On the same day ambassadors sent by the enemy came to Cæsar. 2. He himself drew up a triple line of four legions. 3. He hastens to them by the same route and sends all the cavalry before him. 4. He had learned this from the Romans themselves through the same messengers. 5. He ordered them to be sent to him. 6. The same night the camp was moved. 7. These are the same enemies with whom the Helvetians have waged war. 8. They themselves sought denser forests. 9. The enemy betook themselves to the camp. 10. The next day they move the camp from that place; Cæsar does the same. 11. Supplies began to fail the enemy themselves. 12. Hostages were given up, and the two sons of the king himself. 13. They were ordered to give themselves up to him. 14. The Sequani remained silent in the same dejection. 15. He himself began the battle on (*literally, from*) the right wing. 16. The town was protected by the very nature (*literally, the nature itself*) of the place.

LESSON L.

- (a) **Castris munitis, copias in-** *the camp having been fortified, he*
struxit, *drew up his forces.*
- Obsidibus acceptis, pacem** (literally, hostages having been
fecit, *received) having received*
hostages (or after receiving
hostages), he made peace.
- Armis traditis, pacem fecit,** (literally, arms having been given
up) when (or as) the arms
were given up, he made peace.
- Impetū factō, nostrōs per-** (literally, an attack having been
turbāverunt, *made) making an attack, they*
threw our men in confusion.
- Cognitō Caesaris adventū,** (literally, Cæsar's arrival having
légatōs mittunt, *been learned) on learning of*
Cæsar's arrival, they send
ambassadors.

Observation.—The nature of the ablative absolute.¹ The various translations for the ablative absolute in the perfect participle passive. The absence of a perfect participle active in Latin.

(b) **Nostris castra oppugnanti-** while (or as) our men were assault-
bus, eruptionem hostes ing the camp, the enemy made
fecerunt, a sally.

Observation.—The translation of the ablative absolute in the present participle active. The position of the ablative absolute clause.

EXERCISE L.

I.—1. Hōc proeliō factō, exercitum trādūcit. 2. Datō signō ex castris ērumpunt. 3. Vicis aedificiisque eōrum incēnsis, Caesar exercitum redūxit. 4. His rēbus expositis, signum dat. 5. His nūntiis acceptis, cōsiliū convocā it. 6. Colle occupātō, mille passūs ab nostris mūnitiōnibus cōsīdunt. 7. Germānī clāmōre auditō, armīs abjectis sē ex castris ējēcērunt. 8. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus quās in Italiā cōscripserat in castris relictis, reliquās sex legiōnes prō castris in aciē cōstituit. 9. His nūntiis litterisque commōtus, rē frumentāriā comparātā, castra movet. 10. Nūllō hoste prohibente, legiōnem in prōvinciam perdūxit, ibique hiemāvit. 11. His cōstitūtis rēbus, paulum suprā eum locum pontem fēcērunt. 12. Dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptis, praesidia dēdūcent. 13. Itinere conversō, novissimum agmen laceessere coepērunt. 14. Multa, ipsō praesente, in conciliō Gallōrum dicta erant. 15. Phalange disjectā equitibusque repulsis, impetum in eōs fēcērunt. 16. Impedimentis relictis ēruptiōne factā, eisdem itineribus quibus pervēnerant, ad flūmen Rhēnum contendērunt. 17. Celeritāte nostrōrum permōti, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt, et petentibus Rēmīs impetrant. 18. Itaque rē frumentāriā prōvisā equitātūque comparātō, in hostium finēs exercitum intrōdūxit. 19. Nihil timentibus nostris, hostēs impetum fēcērunt. 20. Instrūctō exercitū ut loci nātūra postulābat, proelium commisit. 21. Helvētiī impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt, ipsī rējectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciē succēssērunt. 22. Caesar, primum suō deinde omnium ex cōspectū remōtis equis, proelium commisit.

1. See more fully Part III., section 85, o.

II.—1. After receiving many wounds, they betook themselves to the woods. 2. Having pitched the camp, they determined to await his arrival. 3. Collecting large forces, he drives him out of the state. 4. When several towns had been taken by storm, Cæsar determined to await the fleet. 5. Having procured supplies and selected the cavalry, he began to march into that country. 6. Drawing their swords, they seized the gates. 7. Having sent ambassadors, they had sought peace from him. 8. As a large number had been slain, the rest cast themselves into the river. 9. After capturing a large number of men and cattle and laying waste the fields, he compelled them to give hostages. 10. As our men were in distress, he ordered the third line to make an attack on the enemy's forces. 11. When several battles had been fought, they sent ambassadors to Cæsar and surrendered themselves to him. 12. On learning this (*literally, these things*), he sends Labienus in advance with three legions; he himself with the remaining two hastened to the river. 13. While these were fighting, a few fled to the camp. 14. Having slain a third part of them, our men began to attack the town. 15. On learning of his arrival, the enemy, collecting large forces, began a cavalry battle with our men on the march; then on their cavalry being defeated, they suddenly disclosed the infantry which they had stationed in ambush. 16. As (but) a few are defending (it), they are likely to take the town by storm. 17. Having thus routed all the forces of the enemy, they withdrew themselves to their own camp. 18. He himself, after drawing up a triple line of battle, advanced to the enemy's camp. 19. The signal being given, our men made an attack on the enemy's line. 20. Having in one summer finished two very important (*literally, great*) wars, Cæsar withdrew the army into winter quarters; he himself wintered in hither Gaul. 21. As these were resisting bravely, he ordered the ships to be removed.

LESSON LI.

Quis tibi persuasit?

who has persuaded you?

Quem usum belli habent?

what experience of war have they?

Quid vēnistis?

why have you come?

Quanta est Insula?*how large is the island?***Uter est celerior?***which (of the two) is the swifter?***Cūr mē accūsās?***why do you accuse me?*

Observation.—The difference between the English and the Latin verb in asking a question.¹ The declension of the interrogative pronouns. (For **quis** and **quī**, see Part III., section 25; for **uter**, section 14.)

EXERCISE LI.

I.—1. Quanta est insulae magnitūdō? 2. In utram partem² flūmen fluit? 3. Quis ejus cōsiliū auctor fuit? 4. Quā dē causā³ discēdunt? 5. Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū, bellum parāre coepērunt. 6. Quae et quantae nātiōnēs Britanniam incolunt? 7. Quid mihi faciendum est? 8. Primā lūce prōductis omnibus cōpiis, duplici acie instructā, hostēs exspectābat. 9. His rēbus cōgnitis, eum ad sē vocārī jubet. 10. Cūr ab officiō discēssūrus es? 11. Quibus ex regiōnibus³ vēnistis, quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōvistis? 12. Quid dubitās? 13. Quid petunt aliud Rōmānī? 14. Quid illō bellō simile fuit? 15. Cūr dē vestrā virtūte aut dē meā diligentia dēspēratis? 16. Hāc orātiōne habitā, concilium dīmisit.

II.—1. What states are in arms? 2. Why have they led their forces across into our territories? 3. What⁴ was said in the council of the Gauls about him? 4. Alarmed by the scarcity of corn and supplies, he hastened the next day into the province, after burning all the buildings of that village. 5. What⁴ is being done in the enemy's camp? 6. In what³ place have the forces of the enemy encamped? 7. How large a number of men are they likely to send to that war? 8. The enemy, after losing all their baggage, fled. 9. What (*literally, of what sort*) is the nature of the mountain? 10. On giving this answer he withdrew. 11. In

1. In English the order is often different in a statement and in a question, the subject (unless it is itself the interrogative pronoun) coming after either the whole or part of the verb; e.g., *he has come, has he come?* No such difference is found in Latin. See also footnote 2, page 19. In both Latin and English the interrogative begins the sentence.

2. *In . . . partem = in . . . direction, literally, into . . . quarter (or part).*

3. When the interrogative pronoun agrees with a noun which depends on a preposition of one syllable, the order is pronoun, preposition, noun; this order is usual with the relative pronouns also, and is often found with emphatic adjectives.

4. The neuter plural, *literally, what things*, is very commonly rendered by *what*. See footnote 2, page 56.

what¹ place is Cæsar? 12. In what¹ direction are the enemy marching? 13. With whom are they waging war? 14. What² have you heard or learned about this matter? 15. On receiving hostages he leaves Labienus with the cavalry in the same village; he himself hastens to the nearest town. 16. What is more disgraceful? 17. Which is the more disgraceful deed?

LESSON LII.

- (a) **Longè, far;** **longius, farther;** **longissimè, farthest, or very far.**
- Liberè, freely;** **liberius, more liberimè, most, or very freely.**
- Ācriter, fiercely;** **ācrius, more ācerrimè, most, or very fiercely.**
- Fortiter, bravely;** **fortius, more fortissimè, most, or very bravely.**
- Diligenter, care- diligētius, diligētissimè, most, or fully;** **more carefully. very carefully.**

Observation.—The regular formation of adverbs from adjectives in the positive, comparative and superlative degrees.³

(b) Turn to Part III., section 17.

Observation.—Irregular formation and comparison of adverbs.

- (c) **Quam mǎximās cōplās coë-** he collected forces as large as pos-
git, **sible.**
- Quam longissimè.** **as far as possible.**

Observation.—The translation of a superlative modified by *quam*.

EXERCISE LII.

I.—1. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciæ longissimè absunt. 2. Inter-

1. See footnote 3, page 75.

2. See footnote 4, page 75.

3. The corresponding adjectives are *longus, a, um*; *liber, e, i, erum*; *acer, acris, acre*; *fortis, e*; *diligens, entis*.

pretibus remōtis, dicit liberius atque audācius. 3. Sē in currīs citissimē recipiunt. 4. Ea rēs legiōnī feliciter ēvēnit. 5. Novō genere pūgnae perterritis nostris, illi per mediōs audācissimē per-rūpērunt. 6. Quam māximis itineribus in Galliam ūlteriōrem contendit. 7. Id quod ipsī aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ille ūnō diē fēcit. 8. Cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amicitiam appetunt. 9. Militēs legiōnis decimae, cui quam māximē cōfidēbat, ācriter pūgnāvērunt. 10. Quā minimē arduus ascēsus erat, ex oppidō ēruptiōnem subitō fēcērunt. 11. Facillimē impetūs hostium diū-tius sustinēbimus. 12. Haec civitās longē plūrimum tōtius Galliae valet. 13. Haec civitās diū plūrimum tōtius Galliae valēbat. 14. His rēbus quam mātūrrimē occurrere cōstituit. 15. Huic legiōnī Caesar indulserat praecipuē, et propter virtūtem cōfidē-bat māximē. 16. Omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pūgnāvērunt. 17. Quam aequissimum locum dēlēgit, atque castra quam māximē contrāxit.

II.—1. They will resist us less easily. 2. They are approaching nearer. 3. After procuring supplies as quickly as possible, he hastens by forced marches towards Ariovistus. 4. Our men were greatly alarmed. 5. They began to resist more boldly and fight more bravely. 6. He persuades them more easily because the Helvetians are hemmed in on all sides by the nature of the country. 7. Our men hesitated to leap down, chiefly on account of the depth of the sea. 8. He forbade the soldiers to depart too far¹ from the line of march. 9. Our men, quickly making an attack on them, fought long and vigorously. 10. He ordered as many ships as possible to be collected in that winter. 11. The right of ambas-sadors must be more carefully upheld. 12. Many ships were most seriously shattered. 13. He demanded as large a number of soldiers as possible. 14. He stationed the army in winter quarters in those states which had last made war. 15. He himself is slain while fighting bravely. 16. He determined to have an escort as friendly as possible. 17. He has waged many wars with the neighboring states most successfully.

1. Translate *too far* by the comparative • literally, *farther (than they should)*.

LESSON LIII.

(a) Morābantur , <i>they were de-</i>	Secūtī erant , <i>they had followed.</i>
<i>laying.</i>	Sequī coepit , <i>he began to follow.</i>
Morātus , <i>after delaying.</i>	Potitur , <i>he gains.</i>
Verētur , <i>he fears.</i>	Potitus , <i>having gained.</i>
Veritus , <i>fearing.</i>	Prōgreditur , <i>he advances.</i>

Observation.—To what voice do these verb-forms belong (a) with respect to their form, (b) with respect to the translation? ¹

(b) **Sequēns**, *while following.*

Secūtūrī sunt, *they are going to follow.*

Observation.—To which voice do these forms belong?

For a synopsis of the deponent verb in all conjugations, see Part III., section 40.

EXERCISE LIII.

I.—1. Dum in his locis Caesar morātur, tempestās subitō coorta est. 2. Helvētiī, oppidis suis vicisque exūstis, cum eis proficiscuntur. 3. Lēgātōs cōnantēs dicere prohibuit. 4. Hostēs impeditōs nostrī cōsecūtī, māgnū numerum eōrum concidērunt. 5. Inopiam frūmentī veritus, cōstituit nōn prōgredi longius. 6. Nostris militibus cunctantibus, centuriō deōs contestātus dēsilit. 7. Id cōspicātī, Helvētiī, itinere conversō, nostrōs insequi āc lacessere coepērunt. 8. Dum civitās jū suū exsequi cōnātur, Orgetorix mortuus est. 9. Germānōs cēdentēs insequi ausi erant. 10. Cohortātus suōs, hostēs aggressus est. 11. Nē in locis quidem superiōribus hostēs cōsistere patiuntur. 12. Repulsī ab equitatū sē in silvās abdidērunt, locum nactī ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnitum. 13. Hī nostrōs adorti proelium renovant. 14. Hīs cōstitutis rēbus, nactus idōneam tempestātem, tertiā vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in ūlteriōrē portum prōgredi et sē sequi jūssit. 15.

1. Such verbs are called *Deponents*. The principal parts, as given in the vocabulary, differ, of course, from those of the regular active verb; e.g., *moror*, *ari*, *atus sum*; *sequor*, *i*, *secutus sum*. Of these the first is the present indicative, the second the infinitive marking the conjugation (see Lesson XLVIII., c), and the third the perfect indicative.

Equitātā suō pulsō atque insequentibus nostrīs, subitō pedestrēs cōpiās ostendērunt.

II.—1. Cæsar, after encouraging his men, gives the signal. 2. The Aedui had promised corn. 3. He did not allow the soldiers to go outside of the fortifications. 4. On the interpreters being removed he converses with him more freely. 5. After advancing seven miles from that place, he drew up the line of battle. 6. A sudden war arose in Gaul. 7. When this battle had been reported, those who had come to the Rhine began to return ; he himself set out for hither Gaul. 8. He ordered the Helvetians to return to their own territories, from which they had set out. 9. They have not ventured to attack us. 10. They will attempt to seize the higher ground. 11. He himself sets out with all his forces. 12. At daybreak, leaving the camp of the Helvetians, they hastened to the territories of the Germans. 13. A great storm having arisen, all the ships were most seriously shattered. 14. Suddenly attacking them, they slew a large number. 15. With whom (*plural*) does he hold converse ?

LESSON LIV.

- (a) **Virtūte præstant,** *they are superior in valor.*
Celeritāte omnēs præcē- *they excel all in speed.*
dund,
Oppida numerō duodecim, *towns twelve in number.*
Oppidum nōmine Bibrax, *a town Bibrax by name.*

Observation.—The use of the ablative without a preposition to specify in what respect a statement or term is to be applied.

- (b) **Fortiōres quam Galli sunt,** *they are braver than the Gauls.*
Hibernia est minor quam *Ireland is smaller than Britain.*
Britannia,
Amplius octingentæ nāvēs *more than eight hundred vessels*
erant visæ, *had been seen.*
Militēs minus septingenti *less than seven hundred soldiers*
conveniunt *assemble.*

Observation.—The force of *quam* after a comparative.¹ The omission of *quam* with numerals.²

EXERCISE LIV.

I.—1. Haec civitas hominum multitudine praestabat. 2. Magis virtute quam dolō contendimus. 3. Venetī scientiā atque ūsū nauticarum rerum reliquos Gallōs antecēdunt. 4. Virtute omnibus praestātis. 5. Ūnō diē amplius vīgintī urbēs incenduntur. 6. Praestat omnia ā populō Rōmānō patī quam ab Gallis interficī. 7. Flūmen ab castris nōn amplius millia passuum decem aberat. 8. Germānōs Galli virtute superābant. 9. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacī et³ virtute et auctoritate et hominum numerō valent. 10. Haec rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit.⁴ 11. Aquitāniā et³ regiōnum lātitudine et multitudine hominum tertia pars Galliae est aestimanda. 12. Gallōs dispersō adortus, magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtute vicit. 13. Plū tertiā parte interfectā, reliquos in fugam conjiciunt.

II.—1. The Helvetians surpass in valor all the rest of the Gauls. 2. They are strong in infantry. 3. He himself was not farther than a mile and a half from the enemy's camp. 4. Our fleet was superior in swiftness. 5. They themselves have not more than three hundred cavalry. 6. They are going to burn all their own towns, twelve in number. 7. The Gauls do not compare themselves with them in valor. 8. The lot of the Sequani is more wretched and bitter than (that) of the others. 9. Our men were equal to the enemy both in valor and in number. 10. The nights are shorter than in Gaul. 11. Labienus has collected all the ships, two hundred in number. 12. It is better to be slain in battle (*use acie*) than not to regain our liberty.

1. So also after words implying comparison, e.g., *praestat*, it is better. The use of the ablative of comparison is omitted here because of its rarity in Cæsar.

2. So only after *amplius*, *plus*, *minus* and *longius*.

3. See footnote 3, page 66.

4. From *affero*.

LESSON LV.¹

- (a) **Respondent Rōmānōs ve-** *they answer that the Romans are*
nire, *coming.*
Existimat Gallōs esse in- *he thinks that the Gauls are hos-*
imicōs, *tile.*
Certior factus est Helvētiōs *he has been informed that the Hel-*
iter facere, *vetians are marching.*
Intellegit nostrōs castra *he perceives that our men are*
movēre, *breaking up camp.*

Observation.—The Latin equivalent for English clauses introduced by *that* after verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving. Mood. Case of subject. Translation of *that*.

- (b) **Respondent Rōmānōs vē-** *they answer that the Romans have*
nisse, *come.*
Existimat Gallōs fuisse in- *he thinks that the Gauls have been*
imicōs, *hostile.*
Intellegit nostrōs castra *he perceives that our men are*
mōtūrōs (esse), *going to move the camp.*
Respondet sē nōn ventūrum *he answers that he will not come.*
(esse),
Respondent eum nōn ven- *they answer that he will not come.*
tūrum (esse),

Observation.—The formation of the various tenses of the infinitive active, and their translation after verbs of saying, thinking, etc. (See Part III., section 31, and for the verb *sum*, section 41.) The changes of form in the future infinitive.² Use of *sē* and *eum* as subject of an infinitive.³

1. On account of the length and difficulty of this lesson, the exercise is so arranged that sections (a), (b) and (c) may be taken as separate lessons. See more fully Part II., sections 12 and 16, and Part III., section 101, b.

2. The future infinitive is made up of the future participle in *-urus* and the infinitive of *sum*, but *esse* is generally omitted. The participle in *-urus* will, of course, agree in gender, number and case with the person to whom it refers, i.e., its subject.

3. *Sē* regularly in short sentences refers to the subject of the verb on which the infinitive depends. As there are no personal endings with the infinitive, the subject should always be expressed by a noun or pronoun in the accusative case.

- (c) **Certior factus erat eōs iter** *he had been informed that they*
facere, *were marching.*
Respondērunt Rōmānōs venire, *they answered that the Romans*
were coming.
Respondērunt Rōmānōs venisse, *they answered that the Romans*
had come.
Existimābat cōpiās ventūrās (esse), *he thought that the forces would*
come.

Observation.—The translation of the various tenses of the infinitive, when the verb of saying, thinking, etc., is in a past tense, *i.e.*, imperfect, perfect (= English past) or pluperfect.¹

EXERCISE LV.

I.—(a) 1. Renūntiant Gallōs ex vicō discēdere. 2. Intellegit Nervīōs bellum parāre. 3. Nostrōs ex nāvī dēsiliire cōspiciunt.² 4. Hostem intrā portās esse existimant.² 5. Dicit cōpiās hostium fossās complēre vallumque scindere. 6. Vidētis nihil esse arduum.

(b) 7. Sē obsidēs recipērātūrū existimat. 8. Cōgnōscit nāvēs in continentem revertisse. 9. Duās vēnisse legiōnēs videt. 10. Nōs iter factūrōs cōgnōscit. 11. Cōpiās temperātūrās ab injūriā et maleficiō existimat. 12. Eīs sēsē vel persuāsūrōs vel vī coactūrōs existimant. 13. Omnem exercitum discēssisse renūntiant.

(c) 14. Respondit māgnam Caesarem injūriam facere. 15. Renūntiāverant Gallōs adventum Rōmānōrū expectāre cōstituisse. 16. Negāvit Aeduīs sē obsidēs redditurū esse. 17. Helvētiī angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur.³ 18. Helvētiōs temperātūrōs ab injūriā existimābat.³ 19. Ex captīvīs cōgnōvit flūmen ab castrīs suis nōn amplius millia passuum duodecim abesse, trāns id flūmen omnēs Nervīōs cōnsēdisse, adventumque ibi Rōmānōrū expectāre. 20. Hostēs simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, ad Caesarem dē pāce lēgātōs misērunt, atque obsidēs sē datūrōs polliciti sunt. 21. Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiōs iter in Aeduōrū

1. These tenses are called the *secondary* or *historical* tenses; the present, future and perfect (when translated by *have*) being called the *primary* tenses.

2. The verb of saying, thinking, etc., often follows the clause which depends on it.

3. With verbs of thinking, feeling and knowing, the imperfect tense is generally to be translated by the English past tense.

finēs facere. 22. Caesar postquam per explorātōrēs comperit hostēs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, inopiam frūmentī veritus, cōstituit nōn prōgredi longius. 23. Helvētīī timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimābant.¹ 24. Breviōrēs esse quam in Galliā noctēs vidēbāmus.¹

II.—(a) 1. He learns that the Belgians are assembling. 2. They think that Cæsar is waging war without supplies. 3. He sees that the Germans do not venture to begin battle. 4. They bring back word that the enemy's cavalry are riding up and hurling stones and weapons. 5. They understand that cavalry, ships (and) provisions are wanting. 6. He says that the corn is now ripe in the fields.

(b) 7. They perceive that Cæsar has led across the forces without baggage. 8. He thinks that Labienus will order the Aedui to send ambassadors. 9. He learns that the Britons have seized the ambassador and put (him) in chains. 10. He says that they have rested all hope of safety in valor alone. 11. They bring back word that Cæsar, after leading his army across, has broken down the bridge. 12. All the states promise to send (*literally, that they will send*) hostages.

(c) 13. He answered that he would break up camp the next night. 14. On the same day Cæsar was informed by scouts that the enemy had encamped at the foot of the mountain, eight miles from his camp. 15. He promised not to neglect² the wrongs of the Aedui. 16. He was informed that all the neighboring states were revolting. 17. They promised not to revolt.² 18. They declare that they will neither send ambassadors nor surrender their arms. 19. He said that for this reason he had been silent. 20. From these he learns that a town, protected by woods and marshes, is not far distant from that place. 21. They said that, influenced by him, they had revolted from the Aedui. 22. He declares that they have always been hostile to him. 23. Cæsar, thinking (*literally, having thought*) that this had happened quite opportunely, demands hostages. 24. He promised to finish² the war without any danger to them (*literally, of them*).

1. See footnote 3, page 82.

2. Compare sentence 12, and avoid using the *present* infinitive after verbs of promising.

LESSON LVI.

Vir máximae virtútis,	<i>a man of the greatest bravery.</i>
Clāssis nāvium viginti,	<i>a fleet of twenty ships.</i>
Novem diērum iter,	<i>a nine days' march (literally, a march of nine days).</i>
Mōns magnā altitūdine,	<i>a mountain of great height.</i>
Vir máximā virtūte,	<i>a man of the greatest bravery.</i>
Immāni corporum magnitū- dine hominēs,	<i>men of huge size (of bodies).</i>

Observation.—The cases used to describe the qualities or characteristics of objects. Which case is used when the description refers to number? which case is preferred when physical characteristics are described?¹

EXERCISE LVI.

I.—1. Reperit Nerviōs esse hominēs magnae virtūtis. 2. Quod erat civitās magnae inter Belgās auctoritātis, atque hominum multitudine praestābat, sescentōs obsidēs poposcit. 3. Volusēnus, tribūnus militum, vir et cōsiliī magnī et summae virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrit, atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docet. 4. Mercātōrēs ingentī magnitūdine corporum Germānōs esse praedicābant. 5. Nervii vallō pedum novem et fossā quīdecim² hiberna cingunt. 6. Erat inter Labiēnum atque hostem difficilī trāsitū flūmen. 7. Quibus viribus hominēs tantulae statūrae tantī oneris turrim mōtūri sunt? 8. Per explōrātōrēs certior factus est silvam esse infinitā magnitūdine. 9. Vercingetorix, summae potentiae adulēs-cēns, cūjus pater principātum Galliae tōtius obtinuerat, clientēs convocat. 10. Cēteri ējusdem generis sunt hūmāniōrēs.

II.—1. He was distant a few days' journey from him. 2. A mountain of great height takes up the rest of the space. 3. It was an enterprise of great danger. 4. A wood of immense extent stretches from the river Rhine to their territories. 5. They

1. See more fully Part III., sections 81, c, and 85, c.

2. The height of the wall and the breadth of the trench are the important measurements. Compare sentence 6 in the English.

brought back word that the Germans were (men) of incredible bravery. 6. They are going to fortify the town with a rampart twelve feet high (*literally, of twelve feet*). 7. He found that Dumnorix was (a man) of the utmost boldness, and of great influence with the Gauls on account of his liberality. 8. He sends to them Valerius, a young man of the highest valor and accomplishments. 9. He did not think that men of an unfriendly disposition would refrain from wrong-doing and mischief. 10. This state was powerful, and was of great weight among them.

LESSON LVII.

- (a) **Certior factus est agrös** *he was informed that the fields*
vastärl, *were being laid waste.*
Respondērunt agrös vastä- *they answered that their fields had*
tös et oppida incēsa *been laid waste and their*
esse, *towns burned.*
Polliciti sunt sē secūtūrös *they promised to follow (literally,*
(esse), *that they would follow).*
Dixit eös loqui cōnātös esse, *he said they had attempted to*
speak.

Observation.—Formation of present and perfect infinitive passive (see Part III., section 32). Changes in form of the perfect infinitive passive. Infinitive of Deponents (see Part III., section 40). Compare Lesson LV.

- (b) **Praesidiō castris erant,** *they were a protection (literally,*
for a protection) to the camp.
Omnia quae erant ūsul *all things which were of service*
nostris, *(literally, for an advantage)*
to our men.
Nostris erat impedimentō, *it was a hindrance (literally, for*
a hindrance) to our men.
Equitēs auxiliō nostris mī- *they sent the cavalry as aid (liter-*
sērunt, *ally, for an aid) to our men,*
or to aid our men.

Observation.—The case used as a predicate to state the purpose a person or thing serves.¹

EXERCISE LVII.

I.—1. Respondit omnēs eōrum cōpiās ā sē pulsās āc superātās esse. 2. Multitūdine hostium castra complērī et nostrās legiōnēs premī vidērunt. 3. Eāsdem cōpiās praesidiō castris reliquit. 4. Renūntiant Helvētiōs iter per prōvinciam facere cōnārī. 5. Haec rēs māgnō ūsuī fuit. 6. Dēmōnstrat idem omnibus Gallis esse faciendum. 7. Equitēs nūntiāvērunt superiōre nocte, mǎximā coortā tempestāte, omnēs nāvēs afflictās esse. 8. Equitēs ab hostibus urgērī cōspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostris mīsit. 9. Gallis māgnō erat impedimentō. 10. Arbitrātī eum nōn longius prōgredi cōnātūrum, in finēs suōs revertērunt. 11. Respondērunt nōn sē hostem verērī sed magnitūdinem silvārum. 12. Certiōrēs factī sunt Caesarem, praesidiō quīnque cohortium impedimentis relictō, cum reliquīs cōpiis primā lūce profectum esse. 13. Hōc māgnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābantur.²

II.—1. He found that their arrival was being awaited by the enemy. 2. He was afterwards informed that Labienus' approach had not been discovered by the enemy. 3. The two legions which had been last enrolled were left as guard for the baggage. 4. He promised to follow Caesar. 5. Those who were coming to the aid of the Belgians learned that several towns had been taken by storm. 6. He was informed that a sudden war had arisen in Gaul. 7. One thing was a great advantage to our men. 8. They answered that the friendship of the Roman people was an honor and a safeguard, not a loss. 9. These informed Caesar that the two ambassadors had been put to death. 10. All (things) were wanting which were of use for (*use ad*) these purposes. 11. He said that the Aedui had been compelled to give hostages. 12. He said that he would set out for the province the next day. 13. He perceived that our men were being surrounded by the enemy.

1. This use of the dative is found chiefly with the words given above. It should be noticed that there is generally another dative telling the person to whom the thing spoken of is a benefit or injury, and often to be translated by *for*.

2. See footnote 3, page 82.

LESSON LVIII.

Māgnā celeritātē decurrerunt, *they ran down with great swift-
ness.*

Aliā ratiōne bellum gerunt, *they carry on the war in another
manner.*

Summō studiō castra mūniant, *they fortify the camp with the
greatest zeal.*

Suā cōsuētūdine dēsiluerunt, *they leaped down, according to
their custom.*

Caesaris voluntātē profecti *they set out with Caesar's consent.*
sunt,

Observation.—The use and translation of the ablative expressing the manner in which, or that in accordance with which, something is done.

EXERCISE LVIII.

I.—1. Equitibus nostris pulsīs, incēdibilī celeritātē ad flūmen decurrunt. 2. Gallis māgnō erat impedimētō quod nūdō corpore pūgnāverunt. 3. Ab eīs cōgnōvit Gallōs mōre suō conciliō habitō, nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmisisse. 4. Hostēs māximō clāmōre scālis vallum ascendere coepērunt. 5. Cōsuētūdine suā Caesar cohortēs complūrēs praesidiō castris reliquerat. 6. Repperit id flūmen per finēs Aeduōrum in Rhodanum influere incēdibilī lēnitātē. 7. Ad castra māgnō cursū contendērunt. 8. Cōsēnsū omnium Gallōrum, pāce factā, Germānī hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerunt. 9. Ad haec Caesar respondit sē nunquam aliā ratiōne bellum gestūrum. 10. Summō studiō militēs nāvēs aedificāre veterēsque reficere coepērunt.

II.—1. He ordered the camp to be moved with greater noise and confusion. 2. He said this in a loud voice. 3. They reported that all the Gauls with loud weeping began to ask aid from Caesar. 4. Having with incredible speed covered a great distance, they reached the camp on the eighth day. 5. According to their custom, they leap down and fight on foot. 6. They brought back word that the camp had not been fortified with the same care on

(*use ex*) all sides. 7. He answered that he would not come on any other condition. 8. With the same speed they hastened towards our camp. 9. With the approval of all, they sent ambassadors to him and promised to give hostages. 10. He found out through scouts that, according to the practice of the Roman people, the enemy were fortifying a camp.

LESSON LIX.

Impetum tam subitō faciunt *they make an attack so suddenly*
ut nēmō resistat, *that no one resists.*
Impetum tam subitō fēcērunt *they made an attack so suddenly*
ut nēmō resisteret, *that no one resisted.*
Tantus timor hostēs occupāvit *such a panic seized the enemy that*
ut proelium committere *they did not dare to join*
nōn audērent, *battle.*
Accidit ut castra militēs mū- *it happened that the soldiers were*
nīrent, *fortifying the camp.*

Observation.—Formation of the subjunctive in the present and imperfect active of all conjugations. (See Part III., section 29.)¹ The translation and use of these tenses of the subjunctive in dependent sentences of result.² Position of the clause introduced by *ut*.³

EXERCISE LIX.

I.—1. Tam subitō impetum fēcērunt ut hostēs terga verterent. 2. Nōn tam barbarus sum ut haec nōn sciam. 3. Ita Helvētīi institūtī sunt ut obsidēs accipere nōn dare soleant. 4. Tantus fuit timor ut discēdere ab signīs nōn audērēmus. 5. Accidit ut Gallī cōpiās comparārent. 6. Ita currūs collocant ut expeditū ad suōs receptum habeant. 7. Tantum potentiā antecēsserant ut

1. See also Part III., section 39, for the subjunctive of the verbs in *-io* of the third conjugation.

2. In these lessons it will be sufficient to notice that the tenses of the subjunctive are translated in the same way as the indicative is; the present like the present indicative, the imperfect like the imperfect or perfect (= English past) indicative, the perfect like the perfect indicative, and the pluperfect like the perfect (= English past) or pluperfect indicative. This is for beginners a safer guide in translation than the rules for the "Sequence of Tenses."

3. Notice that except after verbs of happening (the result of chance), some word containing the idea of *so* or *such* precedes the *ut* clause.

Galliae tōtius principātum obtinērent. 8. Tam celeriter ēruptiōnem faciunt ut nēmō resistat. 9. Tantam sibi auctōritātem comparāverat ut undique ad eum lēgatiōnēs concurrerent. 10. Tantum exercitātiōne efficiunt ut in praecipiti locō equōs brevi moderārī soleant. 11. Sic nostrōs contempsērunt ut fossās complēre audērent. 12. Hostēs tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut altissimās ripās ascendere audērent.

II.—1. The enemy were so terrified that they fled to the woods. 2. So great was the valor of the soldiers that all fought fiercely and bravely. 3. On their arrival such a change occurred (*literally, was made*) that our men at once renewed the battle. 4. It happened that the soldiers were leaving the standards. 5. Such was the swiftness of the Germans that they equalled the speed of their horses. 6. So great is the panic that we do not venture to engage battle with them. 7. So great a storm arose that very few of all the ships reached land. 8. The enemy have been so alarmed by his arrival that they are sending ambassadors about peace. 9. They fought so fiercely that no one dared leave the standards. 10. They display such valor that the neighboring states eagerly seek their friendship. 11. They have such influence among the Belgians that no one dares to lay waste their fields. 12. So quick were they (*literally, so great was their quickness*) that he with difficulty saved himself from the enemy's hands.

LESSON LX.

Cum frumentum nostrī com-	when our men were bringing in
portārent, certior factus	corn, he was informed
est	
Cum haec vidisset, equitēs	when he saw (<i>literally, had seen</i>)
misit,	this, he sent the cavalry.
Cum agrōs vastāvissent, oppi-	when (or after, or since) they had
da oppūgnāvērunt,	laid waste the fields (or after
	laying waste the fields), they
	attacked the towns.
Cum mille passūs abesset, cer-	when he was a mile distant, he
tior factus est	was informed

Observation.—Formation of pluperfect subjunctive active of all conjugations (see Part III., section 29).¹ The subjunctive of *sum* (see Part III., section 41). The use and translation of *cum* and the subjunctive.² The difference between the imperfect and the pluperfect subjunctive after *cum*.³ The position of the clause introduced by *cum*.

EXERCISE LX.

I.—1. Cum per eōrum finēs quattuor diēs iter fēcisset, ad flūmen pervēnit. 2. Caesar⁴ cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum duodecim millia abesset, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur. 3. Ibi⁴ cum alii fossās complērent, alii tēla ex locō superiōre conjicerent, nostrī subitō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. 4. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna. 5. Cum appropinquārent Britanniae, tempestās subitō coorta est. 6. Cum sine impedimentis Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāvisset, castra erant angustiora. 7. Eō⁴ cum dē imprōvisō vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae sunt, ad eum lēgātōs mīsērunt. 8. Nostrī⁴ cum sē in castra reciperent, hostibus occurrunt. 9. Caesar⁴ cum septimam legiōnem urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, equitēs subsidiō mīsīt. 10. Cum jam nōn solum vīrēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius instārent, et fossās complēre coepissent, Volusēnus ad eum accurrit, atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docet. 11. Tanta est equitum virtūs ut hostēs nōn parēs sint.

II.—1. When Caesar was in hither Gaul in winter quarters he was informed that all the Belgians were conspiring. 2. When our men saw that the camp was being filled with a multitude of the enemy, they betook themselves to flight. 3. After he had ordered corn to be brought in, he was informed by scouts that all the Gauls had departed. 4. So great a storm arose that the rest of the ships were useless. 5. It happens that the nights are shorter. 6. When the Germans were marching into our province, they left three thousand men as a guard for⁵ the baggage. 7. When he had

1. See footnote 1, page 88.

2. See footnote 2, page 88.

3. As both are often rendered by the same English tense, it is important to notice that with the imperfect the time of both verbs is the same, while the pluperfect refers to a time earlier than that of the principal verb.

4. See footnote 1, page 60.

5. See footnote 1, page 86.

approached nearer, he was ordered to throw away his arms. 8. So great is the scarcity of all things that we are in very great danger. 9. When he was a few days' march from their territories, ambassadors came to him. 10. When the Gauls saw that our legions were being hard pressed, they hastened towards the camp. 11. On learning that Cæsar was going to set out that night, they stationed an ambush in the woods. 12. It happened that the camp was smaller.

LESSON LXI.

Hæc facere possum,	<i>I am able to do this, or I can do this.</i>
Cum hæc facere nōn possent,	<i>when they were not able to do this, or when they could not do this.</i>
Dixit sē hæc facere posse,	<i>he said that he could do this.</i>
Dixit sē hæc facere potuisse,	<i>he said that he could have done this (literally, had been able to do).</i>
Hæc facere nōn potuerunt,	<i>they were unable to do this, or they could not do this.</i>
Submovēri nōn possunt,	<i>they cannot be driven off.</i>

Observation.—Translation of the various forms of **possum** with the present infinitive of another verb. (For the conjugation of **possum**, see Part III., section 42.) Position of the infinitive.¹

EXERCISE LXI.

I.—1. Nālli cīvitātī Germanōrum persuādēre potestis. 2. Vōbīs possumus ūtilēs esse amīcī. 3. Ab hīs sē dēfendere, trāditīs armīs, nōn possunt. 4. Minus facile eam rem cōsequī poterunt. 5. Cum oppidum expūgnāre nōn potuissent, agrōs populātī sunt. 6. Nē ipse quidem spērat nostrum exercitum superārī posse. 7. Quid sine reliquīs legiōnibus efficere potestis? 8. Id efficere

1. The infinitive is used with **possum** in the same way as is illustrated in Lesson XIX.

nōn potuerant. 9. Cum iter in prōvinciam nostram facerent, ea impedimenta, quae sēcum portāre nōn poterant, citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēposuērunt. 10. Tanta est Germānōrum virtūs ut nē dī quidem immortalēs parēs esse possint. 11. Cum ab proximīs Germānis impetrāre nōn possent, ūteriōrēs temptant. 12. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dixit. 13. Nostris subsidio venīre nōn poterāmus. 14. Oppidum oppugnāre cōnāti, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem expugnāre nōn potuērunt. 15. Haec quis patī potest ?

II.—1. They cannot defend their own territories. 2. He thinks that he can do this without danger. 3. When they could not persuade these, they send ambassadors to us. 4. He was informed that they had not been able to hold out (any) longer. 5. They could not withstand the attacks of our men. 6. He has been unable to advance farther. 7. We had not been able to storm the camp. 8. We could not take up arms quickly. 9. Such a storm arose that we were not able to finish the work. 10. They did not think that even (*literally, they thought that not even*) their first attack could be withstood. 11. We can very easily prevent them. 12. So great was the alertness of our men that nothing could be accomplished. 13. You cannot be seen from the enemy's camp. 14. We have been so alarmed by these things, that we can less easily resist the enemy. 15. They could not pursue the enemy, because the cavalry had been unable to set out.

LESSON LXII.

(a) Study the formation of the perfect subjunctive active of all conjugations (Part III., section 29),¹ and of the subjunctive passive, all tenses (Part III., section 30).²

(b) **Rogat quis tibi persuāserit,** *he asks who has persuaded you.*
Rogāvit quis tibi persuā- *he asked who had persuaded you.*
sisset,

1. See footnote 1, page 88, and refer also to Part III., sections 41 and 42, for the perfect subjunctive of *sum* and *possum*.

2. See footnote 1, page 88, and compare also the subjunctive of the deponent verbs in Part III., section 40.

Quem ūsum belli habeant *he inquires what experience of*
war they have.
quaerit,

Quem ūsum belli habērent *he learned what experience of war*
they had.
cōgnōvit,

Quid vēnissētis nōn intel- *I did not understand why you*
had come.
legēbam,

Quanta facultās darētur *they pointed out what an oppor-*
tunity was afforded.
dēmōstrāvērunt,

Observation.—The mood used in dependent sentences introduced by an interrogative.¹ Contrast the independent sentences given in Lesson LI. The translation of the different tenses of the subjunctive.²

EXERCISE LXII.

I.—1. Ab hīs quaesivit quae civitatēs in armīs essent. 2. Rogat quās³ in partēs hostēs iter faciant. 3. Ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur cōspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs misit. 4. Rogāvit cūr eōs ab officiō discēssūrōs iudicārēmus. 5. Quibus³ in locīs sit Caesar ex captivīs quaerunt. 6. Ostendit quae⁴ in conciliō Gallōrum dē eō sint dicta. 7. Intellegēbat quantō³ cum periculō legiōnem ex hibernīs ēductūrus esset. 8. Eius rei quae causa esset mirātus erat. 9. Caesar intellegēbat quā³ dē causā ea dicerent. 10. Ibi ex captivīs cōgnōscit quae⁴ in hostium castrīs gerantur. 11. Flūmen est incredibili lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs, in utram partem fluat, iudicārī nōn possit. 12. Insidiās verēbātur quod quā³ dē causā discēderent hostēs nōndum perspexerat.

II.—1. He asked him why they were coming to him. 2. They asked in what³ direction they were being led. 3. He could discover neither what (*literally, how great*) was the size of the island, nor what nations inhabited (it). 4. They know what⁴ he does, with whom he converses. 5. They ask the merchants from what³ districts they come, and what things they have learned there. 6. Although Caesar understood for what³ reason they had said this, he yet ordered him to come to him with two hundred hostages.

1. The verbs upon which these subjunctive clauses depend are verbs of asking, learning, knowing, telling, perceiving and deciding.

2. See footnote 2, page 88. 3. See footnote 3, page 75. 4. See footnote 4, page 75.

7. We had learned how great a number they had promised for (*use ad*) that war. 8. They compel the traders to declare *what*¹ they have heard or learned about these things. 9. He shows *what*¹ is being done in Gaul. 10. He could not discover *what*¹ was being done in our camp. 11. When Cæsar learned where (*literally, in what*² *place*) the enemy's forces had encamped, he left ten cohorts as guard for the ships. 12. They are unable to find out *what* (*literally, of what kind*) is the nature of the mountain.

LESSON LXIII.

Haec facere vult.	<i>he wishes to do this.</i>
Haec facere nōlēbat.	<i>he did not wish to do this, or he was unwilling to do this.</i>
Haec facere mālunt.	<i>they prefer to do this, or they had rather do this.</i>

Observation.—Translation of *volō*, *nōlō* and *mālō*, with the present infinitive. For the conjugation of these verbs, see Part III., section 43.³

EXERCISE LXIII.

I.—1. Quās² in partēs vultis proficisci? 2. Quae¹ vellet ostendit. 3. Servīre quam pūgnāre mālunt? 4. Quod fortunam temptāre nōlēbat, posterō diē in prōvinciam reverti cōstituit. 5. Mōns, quem Labiēnum occupāre voluistis, ab hostibus tenētur. 6. Respondit sē velle dē rē publicā cum eō agere. 7. Eōs interficiet quod haec facere nōlunt. 8. Rogāvit quid vellent. 9. Cum post tergum hostem relinquere nōllet, obsidēs sescentōs poposcit. 10. Praesidium quam amīcissimum habēre volēbat. 11. Respondērunt sē aquilam hostibus prōdere nōluisse. 12. Pācem nōbiscum facere vult. 13. Certior factus est eōs obsidēs dare nōlle.

II.—1. He wishes war to be carried on. 2. He did this be-

1. See footnote 4, page 75.

2. See footnote 3, page 75.

3. Apart from the peculiar principal parts, these verbs are precisely like those of the third conjugation, except in the *present tense* and in the *imperfect subjunctive*.

cause he did not wish that place to be unoccupied. 3. They answered that they had been unwilling to come to him. 4. He asked why we were more willing to submit than to fight. 5. The Helvetians, whom we were unwilling to leave, had turned aside their line of march from the Arar. 6. He said that he wished to treat with him about these things. 7. You wish to settle in their territories. 8. As he wished the business to be finished, he set out at once. 9. They are so alarmed by his arrival, that they are unwilling to join battle. 10. We had rather be slain than betray the eagle to the enemy. 11. He asked why they were unwilling to hold the place. 12. They said that they were unwilling to return. 13. When he had set out for Britain, because he wished to become acquainted with those regions, a sudden war arose in Gaul.

LESSON LXIV.

Hostēs lēgātum, qui missus erat, retinuērunt,	<i>the enemy have detained the ambassador who had been sent.</i>
Renūntiant hostēs lēgātum, qui missus esset, retinuisse,	<i>they bring back word that the enemy have detained the ambassador who had been sent.</i>
Lēgātum quem retinent interficient,	<i>they will put to death the ambassador whom they are detaining.</i>
Cōgnōscit lēgātum quem retineant eōs interfectūrōs esse,	<i>he learns that they will put to death the ambassador whom they are detaining.</i>
Existimābat lēgātum quem retinērent eōs interfectūrōs esse,	<i>he thought that they would put to death the ambassador whom they were detaining.</i>
Galli commōti sunt quod Germāni cōplās coēgerant,	<i>the Gauls were alarmed because the Germans had collected forces.</i>
Certior factus est Gallōs commōtōs esse quod Germāni cōplās coēgissent,	<i>he was informed that the Gauls were alarmed because the Germans had collected forces.</i>

Observation.—The difference between English and Latin usage in relative or other subordinate sentences when put in indirect narration.¹

EXERCISE LXIV.

I.—1. Certior factus est lēgātōs ab omnibus nātiōnibus, quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, ad sē venīre. 2. Respondet cum sōlā decimā legiōne, dē quā nōn dubitet, sē proelium commissūrum. 3. Nūntiāvērunt omnēs nāvēs afflictās esse quod nautae vim tempestātis patī nōn potuissent. 4. Respondērunt impulsōs ā suis principibus, quī dicerent Aeduōs ab Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs esse, sē ab Aeduīs dēfēcisse. 5. Renūntiāvērunt Gallōs proelium eō diē nōn commissūrōs, quod ampliōrēs cōpiās, quae nōndum convēnissent, exspectārent. 6. Certiōrem Caesarem faciunt Venetōs nāvēs habēre plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre soleant. 7. Animadvertit Caesar Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere quās cēteri facerent. 8. Respondit miseriōrem et graviōrem esse fortunam Sēquanōrum quam² reliquōrum quod sōlī querī nōn audērent. 9. Ex captīvīs cōgnōvit omnēs Gallōs ad oppidum quod circiter millia passuum quinque abesset cōfūgissee. 10. Per explorātōrēs comperit Ariovistum omnēs cōpiās quās coēgissee trāns Rhēnum trādūxissee.

II.—1. These informed Cæsar that the Germans who dwell across the Rhine are in arms. 2. They think that they will recover the hostages which they have given to Crassus. 3. He perceived that our men were being thrown into great confusion, because they were unable to keep their ranks. 4. On the same day Cæsar was informed by scouts that the enemy had encamped at the foot of a mountain, which was eight miles from his camp. 5. They promised to do what³ he had commanded. 6. He was informed that all the Belgians were conspiring, because they did not wish a Roman army to winter in Gaul. 7. He thought⁴ that they would not do what³ they were promising. 8. He had learned that the Germans were awaiting the cavalry which had been sent

1. For the rendering of the various tenses of the subjunctive, see footnote 2, page 88. Notice that this subordinate clause in the subjunctive regularly depends on another clause whose verb is in the infinitive after a verb of saying, thinking, etc.

2. In translating this sentence supply the word *that*.

3. See footnote 4, page 75.

4. See footnote 3, page 82.

across the Rhine. 9. They answered that the leading men who had said this had fled to Britain, because they understood in what (*literally, how great*) danger they were. 10. Cæsar thought terms should not be received from those who, after seeking peace, had voluntarily made war.

LESSON LXV.

Turn to the conjugation of the verb *ferō*, Part III., section 44.

Observation.—The irregularities in the inflection of *ferō* and its compounds.¹

EXERCISE LXV.

I.—1. Nocte clam ex castris exercitum dūcit et ad Caesarem auxilium fert. 2. Quae audivērunt ad lēgātōs dēferunt. 3. Tanta erat militum virtūs ut nē ūnum quidem nostrōrum impetum hostēs ferrent. 4. Respondērunt impulsōs ā principibus populō Rōmānō sē bellum intulisse. 5. Frūmentum ex agris in castra cōferēbat. 6. Servitūtem perferre mālunt. 7. Dēfertur ea rēs ad Caesarem. 8. In silvās ac palūdēs sē suaque omnia contulērunt. 9. Imperium populi Rōmānī nōn perferēmus. 10. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī pedem referre coepērunt. 11. Respondit nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse. 12. Tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut nāvēs ad Galliam referrentur. 13. Comissō proeliō, nostrōrum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuerant. 14. Multum ab reliquīs differtis. 15. Impeditis hostibus propter ea quae ferēbant onera, nostrī subitō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt.

II.—1. He was informed that all who could bear arms were assembling to one place. 2. The Aedui said that the corn was being collected. 3. Alarmed by these things the barbarians retreated. 4. They understand how great a disaster they have brought on the state. 5. He promised not to make war² on them

1. Apart from the peculiar principal parts, *fero* is irregular in the *present indicative*, *present infinitive*, *imperfect subjunctive* and the *imperative*, but in all the other forms is precisely like verbs of the third conjugation. Study carefully also the variations in form of the principal parts of compounds of *fero*.

2. See footnote 2, page 83, and footnote 3, page 61.

or their allies. 6. On this answer being brought back to Cæsar, he a second time sends ambassadors to him. 7. The report is carried with incredible speed to Labienus. 8. They found out what he had said and reported (it) to Cæsar. 9. The ambassadors denied that the Germans were making war on the allies of the Roman people. 10. All these differ from one another¹ in language and laws. 11. He explains how (*literally, in what*) these nations differ from one another.¹ 12. Galba is slain and his head brought back to the camp. 13. He attacked them when the Helvetians could not bring aid to their friends.² 14. Such was the strength of the ships that they easily withstood the storm. 15. He ordered the baggage to be collected to (*literally, into*) one place, and that (place) to be fortified.

LESSON LXVI.

- (a) **Profectus est ut oppidum oppugnâret,** *he set out that (or in order that) he might attack the town, or he set out to attack the town.*
- Portas claudi jubet, nē injuria accipiâtur,** *he orders the gates to be closed, that (or in order that) injury may not be received, or lest injury be received.*

Observation.—The mood used to express purpose. The difference between *ut* and *nē*. The various translations. The tenses used in sentences of purpose.³ The position of the clause of purpose.

- (b) **Lēgātōs misērunt qui pācem peterent,** *they sent ambassadors to seek peace (literally, who were to seek peace, or who should seek peace).*

1. *From one another, literally, among themselves.*

2. See footnote 2, page 64.

3. The present subjunctive is used where English would use *may*, i.e., after the *primary* tenses (see footnote 1, page 82), the imperfect where English would use *might*, i.e., after the *secondary* tenses. Notice also that in clauses of purpose the subjunctive is not to be translated, as is generally the case, by the English indicative (see footnote 2, page 88).

Observation.—The use and translation of the subjunctive denoting purpose with the relative pronoun.¹

(c) *Militēs cōhortātus est nē he urged the soldiers not to be perturbārentur, dismayed.*

Petere coepit ut in Galliā he began to ask to be left in Gaul. relinquerētur,

Observation.—The use and translation of the subjunctive with *ut* or *nē* after verbs of requesting, urging, etc.²

EXERCISE LXVI.

I.—1. *Vadis repertis, cōpiās trānsducere cōnātī sunt ut oppidum expugnārent et agrōs populārentur.* 2. *Cohortēs longiōre itinere circumductae sunt nē ex hostium castris cōspici possent.* 3. *Cicerōnem hortātur ut pristinam virtutem retineat.* 4. *Tantae tempestātēs cōsecutae sunt ut nostrī opus perficere nōn possent.* 5. *Lēgātī ad eum missī sunt quī obsidēs sē datūrōs pollicērentur.* 6. *Suōs³ intrā castra continet nē ea rēs ad hostēs perferri possit.* 7. *Caesar omnium ex cōspectū remōvit equōs ut spem fugae tolleret.* 8. *Lēgātī ad Caesarem vñērunt quī pācem peterent.* 9. *Equitēs monet ut quam lātissimē pervagentur.* 10. *Ita perterritī sunt ut lēgātī statim ad Caesarem mitterentur.* 11. *Phalangem faciēmus ut celeriter perrumpere possimus.* 12. *Nūntiōs praemittit qui Bōiōs dē suō adventū doceant, hortenturque ut hostium impetum sustineant.* 13. *Caesar cum duābus legiōnibus et māgnō numerō equitātūs in Britanniam proficiscitur, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur.*

II.—1. *He left two legions in the camp that the enemy might not be able to surround our men.* 2. *The cavalry fought most bravely to wipe out the disgrace of the flight.* 3. *The Helvetians had left their homes to make war on the whole of Gaul.* 4. *He urges the Nervii not to lose the opportunity.* 5. *Ambassadors were sent to ask aid.* 6. *They decided to return home that they*

1. This in *Caesar* is chiefly used after verbs of *sending*.

2. The infinitive should not be used in *Latin* after verbs meaning to urge, ask, command (except *jubeo*), advise or persuade, or generally to express purpose.

3. See footnote 2, page 64.

might carry on the war in their own territories. 7. He urged him to remain in his allegiance. 8. They ask Cæsar (*literally, from Cæsar*) to come to them. 9. Such a storm arose that the work could not be finished. 10. He led the rest of the forces across that he might pursue the Helvetians. 11. He determined to lead the army across in order to punish the Germans. 12. That he may not be compelled to spend the summer in Gaul, he orders¹ him to come to him with two hundred hostages.

LESSON LXVII.

Turn to the conjugation of the verbs *eō* and *fiō*, Part III., sections 45 and 46.

Observation.—The irregularities in the inflections of *eō* and *fiō* and their compounds.²

EXERCISE LXVII.

I.—1. Trāseunt Rhēnum nāvibus ratibusque. 2. Explōrātōrēs jūssit quid fieret cōgnōscere. 3. Eās nātiōnēs adire volēbat. 4. Ignēs fieri jubet ut significātiō adventūs Caesaris fiat. 5. Quid fieri velit docet. 6. Ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. 7. Ipsi trānsire flūmen nōn dubitāverant. 8. Pontem fieri jūssit ut minōre cum periculō flūmen trānsiret. 9. His rēbus fiēbat³ ut minus facile fīnitimīs bellum inferre possent. 10. Eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit. 11. Iter per Alpēs patefierī volēbat. 12. Captīvōs interfici jūssit. 13. Rhodanus vadis trānsitur. 14. Hōc idem reliquīs fit³ diēbus. 15. Locum duplici fossā mūnivit nē impetus ab hostibus fieri posset. 16. Rogāvit num hostēs palūdem trānsirent. 17. Militēs cohortātus ut fortiter pūgnārent, quid fieri velit ostendit. 18. Cum sōlā decimā legiōne ibō.

1. This sentence may be translated in two ways, using *impero* or *jubeo* for order; see footnote 2, page 99.

2. Notice that *eo*, while very irregular, resembles verbs of the fourth conjugation, while *fiō* is exactly like a verb of the fourth conjugation, except in the *present infinitive* and *imperfect subjunctive*. Notice also that while *fiō* serves as the passive of *facio*, its forms are active.

3. In the third person singular *fiō* often means *it comes about, happens*, generally with an *ut* clause of result following.

II.—1. He orders a sally to be made. 2. That river the Helvetians were crossing. 3. He declares that he will go with the tenth legion alone. 4. He did not wish that country to be unoccupied, lest the Germans should cross into the Helvetians' territories. 5. They will not allow the Helvetians to go through their territories. 6. In order that an attack might be made on the enemy from all sides at one time, he sent Labienus in advance with two legions and all the cavalry. 7. He ordered those through whose territories they had gone to bring the Helvetians back. 8. He declares that he knows what is being done. 9. The river can be crossed by a ford. 10. He showed what he wished done (*literally, to be done*). 11. He was informed that those who had crossed the river had not been able to bring aid to their friends. 12. The Helvetians are informed about his arrival. 13. That was being done at that time. 14. While crossing the river they are surrounded by our cavalry. 15. He thought that this could be done. 16. About fifteen thousand Germans have crossed the Rhine. 17. The enemy will not cross the river. 18. He is informed that the Germans who are crossing into Gaul have been invited by the Sequani.

LESSON LXVIII.

Oppugnandi causā¹ conveniunt,	<i>they come together for the purpose of attacking, or to attack.</i>
Dimicandi facultātem habent,	<i>they have an opportunity of fighting.</i>
Parātus ad proficiscendum,	<i>ready for setting out, or ready to set out.</i>
Nāvēs inūtilēs erant ad nāvīgandum,	<i>the ships were useless for sailing.</i>

Observation.—Formation and translation of the gerund (see Part III., section 35). Voice of gerund. How may the gerund

1. *Causā*, for the purpose (or sake), always follows the genitive which depends on it.

be used to express purpose?¹ How does the gerund differ from the gerundive in its forms?

EXERCISE LXVIII.

I.—1. Reliquās nāvēs parātās ad nāvigandum invēnit. 2. Omni spē impetrandi ademptā, principēs Galliae sollicitāre coepit. 3. Cōgnōverat equitātum praedandī³ causā trāns Rhēnum missum esse. 4. Caesar loquendī² finem facit. 5. Ulciscendī² Rōmānōs occāsionem dīmittere nōlēbant. 6. Hunc ad ēgrediendum² nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātur. 7. Cum finem oppūgnandī nox fēcisset, lēgātī dē pāce ad eum vērērunt. 8. Ea, quae ad oppūgnandum ūsuī erant, comparāre coepit. 9. Equitēs frūmentandī² causā praemittendī erant. 10. Nostri, dēpositis armīs, in mūniendō occupātī sunt.

II.—1. They saw that our men were advancing into unfavorable ground in order to fight. 2. This was the reason for (*literally, of*) crossing the Rhine. 3. He had got suitable weather for sailing. 4. Time for (*literally, of*) hurling their javelins at the enemy is not given. 5. When they saw that our men had crossed the river, they left the camp in order to pillage. 6. They had made our men more eager for fighting. 7. Suddenly making a sally, they leave the enemy no opportunity of learning what was being done. 8. They had collected large forces for an attack (*literally, for attacking*). 9. They made an end of pursuing. 10. They made an attack so suddenly, that time for (*literally, of*) taking up arms was not given.

LESSON LXIX.

Praesidium pontis tuendī cau- sā pōnit,	<i>he stations a garrison for the purpose of protecting the bridge, or to protect the bridge (literally, for the sake of the bridge to be defended).</i>
--	---

1. Caesar uses *ad* and the gerund to express *with regard to* rather than *for the purpose of*.

2. For the gerund of deponent verbs, see Part III., section 68, a

Difficultās faciendī pontis,	<i>the difficulty of building a bridge</i> (literally, of, or as regards, ¹ the bridge which is to be built).
Lēgātōs misērunt ad pācem petendam,	<i>they sent ambassadors to seek peace</i> (literally, for the peace which was to be sought).
In petendā pāce haec dī- xērunt,	<i>in asking peace, they spoke thus.</i>

Observation.—The use of the gerundive instead of the gerund with an object.² How may purpose be expressed by the gerundive construction? How is this gerundive construction to be distinguished from the use of the gerundive given in Lesson XL.?

EXERCISE LXIX.

1.—1. His rēbus coāctī, lēgātōs ad eum pācis petendae causā mittunt. 2. Nāvēs lātiōrēs facit ad multitūdinem jūmentōrum trānsportandam. 3. In agris vastandis occupātī sunt. 4. Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur. 5. Gallī in cōsiliis capiendis mōbilēs sunt. 6. Spē expūgnandī oppidī adductus, mājōrēs cōpiās cōgere coepit. 7. Reditiōnis spē sublātā,³ parātiōrēs ad omnia subeunda erunt. 8. Haec faciunt recipiendōrum suōrum causā. 9. Ibi discit Litaviceum ad sollicitandōs Aeduōs profectum esse. 10. Nēminem bellī inferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōfidēbant.

II.—1. They are assembling from all sides to defend the Remi. 2. Influenced by all these things, he set out for the province to ask aid. 3. Orgetorix is chosen to carry out these arrangements. 4. He gave the signal for (*literally, of*) joining battle. 5. Caesar had set out to harass the enemy. 6. They promised a sufficiently large number of ships to transport two legions. 7. They hasten to Caesar for the purpose of lending aid. 8. He sends a lieutenant in

1. The genitive is often to be rendered by *as regards* (or an equivalent expression), rather than by *of*.

2. See more fully Part III., section 104, *b*. This gerundive construction is regularly preferred to the use of the gerund with an object in the accusative.

3. *Sublata* is from *tollo*.

advance to ascertain these (things). 9. He answered that the seventh legion had been sent to seek supplies. 10. Caesar runs down to encourage the soldiers.

LESSON LXX.

Pontem rescindi jussit nē quis flūmen trānsiret, *he ordered the bridge to be cut down, lest any one should cross the river, or that no one might cross the river.*

Aliquōs ex nāvi ēgredientēs cōspexērunt, *they saw some leaving the ship.*

Quisque in cōspectū Caesaris pugnabat, *each was fighting in Caesar's sight.*

Comprehendunt utrumque, *they seize each (or both).*

Neque turpius quicquam habetur, *nor is anything considered more disgraceful.*

Quidam centuriō ad eum accurrit, *a certain centurion runs up to him.*

Observation.—Use and translation of **quis**, **aliquis**, **quisque**, **uterque**, **quisquam**, **quidam**. For the declension of these pronouns, see Part III., section 26. Which of the two words for *any* is used after **nē**? Which of the two words for *each* implies *each of two*?

EXERCISE LXX.

I.—1. Principēs cūjusque civitātis ad sē vocat. 2. Proximō diē Caesar ex castris utrīque cōpiās dūxit. 3. Aliquem dē mōtū Gallōrum nūntium sē acceptūrōs existimābant. 4. Idōneum quendam hominem dēlēgit ex iīs quōs sēcum habēbat. 5. Cum Rōmānis sē bellum gestūrōs dixērunt, neque cūjusquam¹ imperiō obtemperātūrōs. 6. Militēs ex oppidō exīre jussit nē quam¹ injūriam acciperent. 7. Ab Ariovistō postulāvit nē quōs Rhēnum

1. *Neque quisquam*, literally, and not (or nor) any one, may often be well rendered by *and no one*. Similarly, *ne quis* may often be rendered by *that no one*, or (in agreement with a noun) *that no*.

trānsire paterētur. 8. Uterque sē lēgibus creātum esse dicit. 9. Quātam quisque multitudinem ad¹ id bellum pollicitus esset cōgnōverant. 10. Ēruptiōnem subitō fieri jūssit nē quis² arma capere posset.

II.—1. Certain of (*literally, out of*) these came to him by night. 2. He orders each to return. 3. They have lands and villages on (*use ad*) each bank of the river. 4. He ordered all the horses to be removed, lest any hope remain (*literally, be left*) in flight. 5. The rest resist most vigorously, nor does any one turn his back. 6. Some opportunity will be given of crossing the river. 7. They inquire what each of them has learned about each matter. 8. He hopes that there will be some opportunity of fighting. 9. He requests him not to bring any large number of Germans into Gaul. 10. After selecting certain cohorts, he ordered both legions to follow him.

1. Translate *ad* by *for*.

2. See footnote 1, page 104.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES.

I.

(*This exercise may be introduced after Lesson XXIII.*)

Ad initium silvārum Caesar pervēnit, et castra mūnīre instituit. Rōmānī in opere dispersi sunt. Subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae hostēs ēvolāvērunt et in militēs impetum fēcērunt. Rōmānī celeriter arma cēpērunt hostēsque in silvās repulērunt et multōs interfēcērunt. Omnēs hostium agrī ā Rōmānīs vastātī sunt, viciūque incēnsī. Caesar exercitum redūxit et in finitimīs civitātibus in hibernīs collocāvit.

—(*Adapted from Caesar, B. G., III., 28, 29.*)

II.

(*This exercise may be introduced after Lesson XXXII.*)

Britanniae interior pars ab iis¹ incolitur; quī² nātī³ sunt in insulā, maritima pars ab iis, quī praedae causā ex Belgio trānsiērunt⁴ et ibi permānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est infinita multitūdo, crēberrimaque⁵ aedificia. Loca⁶ sunt temperātiōra quam⁷ in Galliā. Insula nātūrā⁸ est triquetra, cūjus⁹ ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Ex his¹⁰ omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī¹¹ Cantium incolunt. Interiōrēs frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte¹² et carne vīvunt, pellibusque sunt vestītī.¹³ Omnēs sē¹⁴ Britannī vitrō inficiunt, quod¹⁵ caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc¹⁶ horridiōrēs sunt in pūgnā. Ūnā¹⁷ ex parte est Hibernia, minor quam⁷ Britannia, et complūrēs minōrēs subjectae sunt insulae. Breviōrēs sunt quam⁷ in continentī noctēs.

—(*Adapted from Caesar, B. G., V., 12-14.*)

1. = *Those*. 2. = *Who*. 3. *Nati sunt* = *have been born*. 4. *From transeo*. 5. *Supply there are*. 6. = *The climate, literally, the regions*. 7. = *Than*. 8. = *In shape*. 9. = *Of which*. 10. = *These*. 11. = *Those who*. 12. *Translate ablative by on, literally, by means of*. 13. = *Clothed*. 14. = *Themselves*. 15. = *Which*. 16. = *Thus*. 17. *Una ex parte* = *on one side*.

III.

(This exercise may be introduced after Lesson XXXIX.)

Galli, qui magnās cōpiās peditātūs equitātūsque cōgerant et Labiēnum cum unā legiōne, quae in finibus Aeduōrum hiemāverat, adoriri¹ parābant, jam ab eō² millia passuum quīndecim aberant cum³ adventum duārum legiōnum, quae ā Caesare missae erant, cōgnōscunt. Castra pōnunt et auxilia Germānōrum expectāre cōstituunt. Labiēnus, qui hostium cōgnōverat cōnsilium, praesidium sex cohortium impedimentis⁴ relinquit atque cum viginti quattuor cohortibus et duobus millibus equitum contrā hostēs prōcēdit, et circiter mille passūs ā locō in quō Galli cōnsēderant, castris⁴ idōneum locum dēligit. Sēdecim cohortēs in armīs esse⁵ jūssit, octo reliquae castra commūniunt.

—(Adapted from Caesar, B. G., VI., 7, and I., 49.)

IV.

(This exercise may be introduced after Lesson XLVI.)

Hōrā circiter diēi quartā cum primīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit, atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspexit. Erat⁶ ob hās⁷ causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitudinem nisi⁸ in altō cōstituī nōn poterant, militibus autem,⁹ magnō et gravi onere armōrum oppressis, ordinēs in fluctibus servandī erant; hostēs vērō¹⁰ ab latere apertō tēla conjiciēbant. Nostri, simul atque in aridō cōstitērunt, in hostēs impetum fēcērunt, atque eōs in fugam dedērunt.¹¹ Hostēs proelio¹² superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt.

—(Adapted from Caesar, B. G., IV., 23-27.)

1. = To attack. 2. = Him. 3. = When. 4. Translate the dative by *for*. 5. *In armīs esse* = to remain under arms. 6. = There was. 7. = These (or the following). 8. *Nisi . . . constitui non poterant* = could be stationed only. 9. = While. 10. = Moreover. 11. = Put, and translate *in* by *to*. 12. = In battle.

V.

(*This exercise may be introduced after Lesson LIII.*)

His rēbus gestis, Labiēnō in continentī cum tribus legiōnibus et equitum millibus duōbus relictō, ipse cum quinque legiōnibus et eōdem numerō equitum, quem in continentī reliquerat, sōlis occāsū nāvēs solvit. Omnēs nāvēs ad Britanniam accēssērunt circiter meridiem, neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus, sed ut¹ postea Caesar ex captivīs cōgnōvit, māgnae cōpiae, quae convēnerant, multitudīne nāvium perterritae ā litore discēsserant ac sē in² superiōra loca abdiderant. Caesar, expositō exercitū et locō castris³ idōneō captō, cohortibus decem ad⁴ mare relictis et equitibus trecentis, tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit. Millia passuum circiter duodecim prōgressus, hostium cōpiās cōspiciātus est.

—(*Adapted from Caesar, B. G., V., 8, 9.*)

VI.

(*This exercise may be introduced after Lesson LVII.*)

Caesar Avarici⁵ complūrēs diēs commorātus, summamque ibi cōpiam frūmentī et reliquī commeātūs nactus, exercitum ex⁶ labōre atque inopiā reficit. Jam prope hieme cōfectā, lēgātī ad eum Aeduōrum veniunt, quī haec locūtī sunt: duo magistrātum gerere, et utrumque⁷ eōrum sē lēgibus creatum esse dicere; hōrum esse alterum Convictolitāvem, flōrentem et illustrem adulēscentum, alterum Cotum, antiquissimā familiā nātum,⁸ atque ipsum hominem summae potentiae et māgnae cōgnātiōnis; civitatem esse omnem in armīs; divīsum⁹ senātum, divīsum populum. Caesar, etsī ā bellō discēdere dētrimentōsum esse existimābat, tamen ipse in Aeduōs proficisci statuit, senātumque omnem ad sē ēvocāvit.

—(*Adapted from Caesar, B. G., VII., 32, 33.*)

1. = *As*. 2. = *In*. 3. Translate dative by *for*. 4. = *By* or *at*. 5. = *At Avaricum*. 6. = *After* or (literally) *from*. 7. = *Each* (*que* is part of the word, and does not mean *and*). 8. *Natus* with the ablative = *born of*, *descended from*. 9. i.e., *divisum esse*.

VII.

(*This exercise may be introduced after Lesson LXII.*)

Caesar cum in Britanniam proficisci cōstituisset, magnō sibi fore ūsul arbitrābatur si¹ reperire posset quanta esset insulae magnitūdō, et quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, et quem ūsum belli habērent. Itaque vocātis ad sē undique mercātōribus, cum haec omnia ferē eis essent incōgnita, Volusēnum praemittit et jubet eum, explorātis omnibus rēbus, ad sē quam primum² reverti. Nāvibus interim circiter octōgintā coactis, ipse tertiā ferē vigiliā lēni ventō³ solvit. Cum nāvēs appropinquārent Britanniae tanta tempestās subitō coorta est, ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed permultae ad inferiōrem partem insulae dējicerentur. Eādē nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, ut⁴ nōnnūllae nāvēs, ancoris jactis, aestū complērentur.

—(*Adapted from Caesar, B. G., IV., 20-29.*)

VIII.

(*This exercise may be introduced after Lesson LXIX.*)

Caesar, his rēbus administrātis, ad cohortandōs militēs dēcurrit et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Militēs cohortātus ut suae⁵ pristinae virtūtis memoriā retinērent, hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, proeliū committendū⁶ signum dedit, atque in alteram partem⁷ item cohortandī causā profectus est. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās, hostiumque tam parātus ad dimicandum animus, ut etiam ad galeās induendās tempus dēfuerit.⁸ Quae⁹ prima quisque¹⁰ signa cōspexit, ad¹¹ haec cōstitit,¹² nō in quaerendis suis,¹³ pugnandī⁶ tempus dīmitteret.

—(*Adapted from Caesar, B. G., II., 21.*)

1. = *If*. 2. = *As soon as possible*. 3. Translate the ablative by *with*. 4. = *So that*. 5. = *Their*. 6. Translate the genitive by *for*. 7. = *Side*. 8. From *desum*; translate by the English past tense. 9. = *Whatever*; with *signa*. 10. = *Each*. 11. = *By*. 12. From *consisto*. 13. = *His comrades*.

REVIEW EXERCISES ON THE ACCIDENCE.¹

I. Decline the following combinations of a noun with an adjective in agreement :

Duplex fossa, commūne cōnsilium, reliqua cohors, alia rēs, regiō finitima, omnis pars, longius[†] iter, incredibilis virtūs (s.),² mājor pars, manus dextra, tōta aciēs (s.), omnis annus, Belgae sōli (p.),² injūria vetus, ūlla nāvis, pūgna superior, nāvis longa, (exercitus noster,) vir fortis, rēs familiāris, idōneus locus, omnis cōpia, utra pars, ager ferax, locus superior, reliquī Belgae (p.), aciēs triplex (s.), vetus nāvis, tōta prōvincia, omne genus, proelium equestre, continēns impetus, prīmus ōrdō, complūrēs annī (p.), caput solum, homō nōbilis, omnia arma (p.), nūllus ager, omnis equitātus (s.), ūnum proelium, castra mājōra (p.), nūllus commūnis magistrātus, prīmum agmen, altera pars, equitātus noster (s.), omnis ōrdō, silva continēns, proxima nox, par bellum, tōta civitās, castra nāvālia (p.), latus apertum, omne tempus, altius vallum, rēs opportūna, commūne periculum, silva dēnsior, alia pars, humilior nāvis, eques Rōmānus, reliqua legiō, ūnum latus, nūllus hostis, legiō-nārius miles, signum militāre, commūnis salūs (s.), locus dēclivis, commūne periculum, mājor cōpia, aliud tempus, pedestre iter, ingēns māgnitūdo (s.), continuī complūrēs diēs (p.), māgnum iter, omnis spēs (s.), ūllus diēs, cōpiae pedestrēs (p.), superior diēs, miles integer ac recēns, summa spēs (s.).

II. Give the other degrees of comparison of the following adjectives, in the same case, gender and number as the form given :

(Facillimō, ācrem, altissimae, breviorum,) mājōribus, optimārum,

1. These exercises are intended to be suggestive merely, for which reason the examples given to illustrate many of the most valuable kinds of drill are few in number, the teacher being left to add, as he easily can, further examples of the same nature.

2. The letters (s) and (p) mean that the combined phrase is to be declined in the singular or plural only, as the case may be.

fortis, crēbris, veteris, multōs, dītissimī, humiliōrī, primā, difficilia, dēnsissimā, superiōre, gravium, proximum, celerrimās, māgnae, ferōcissimam, potentēs, plēnō, antiquam, parvum.

III. *Change the following adjectives to agree with the nouns in parentheses :*

Omnis (rērum), complūrēs (annōrum), paucus (diēbus), māgnus (cōpiās), plūs (loca), ingēns (māgnitūdine), omnis (nōbilitātis), omnis (annōs), novus (rērum), māgnus (auctōritātis), plūrimus vetusque (nāvēs), noster (marī), reliquus (ōrdinēs), māximus (multitūdini), finitimus (partem), inīquior (locum), dexter (cornū), alter (castra), summus (duce), omnis (hibernīs), singulāris (studiō).

IV. *Give the Latin numerals for the following numbers, in agreement with the nouns in parentheses :*

3 (hōrās), 200 (obsidibus), 2 (legiōnibus), 3rd (diē), 3 (diērum), 20 (vīcōs), 1000 (equitēs), 1000 (equitibus), 1500 (Belgās), 1 (proeliō), 1 (cohortis), 10th (legiōnem), 10 (legiōnum), 1st (aciē), 12 (annōs), 1st (impetū), 4th (nocte), 3 (millia), 2 (millibus), 13th (legiō), 4th (diem), 1892nd (annō).

V. *Decline the following combinations of a pronoun and noun in agreement :*

Nostra castra, utrumque latus, illa pars, hōc proelium, utraque castra, quīdam mīles, hīc locus, is collis, hōc ipsum flūmen, quodque tempus (s.), idem illud cōnsilium, quī diēs, qua legiō, meus filius, haec civitās, eadem rēs.

VI. *Write those forms of hīc, is, suus, ille, quī, idem, which will agree with the following words :*

Legiōne, cōnsilium, loca, locum, rem, militum, cohortī, diēbus, annōs, diē.

VII. *Give the other degrees of comparison of the following adverbs :*

Audācius, saepissimē, multum, minus, māximē, fortiter, ācrius, melius, mātūrē, facile, liberrimē, diū, satis.

VIII. Circumveniō, *surround*; collocō, *station*; dō, *give*; interficiō, *kill*; jubeō, *order*; mittō, *send*; accipiō, *receive*; relinquiō, *leave*; veniō, *come*; videō, *see*.

Cōnor, *attempt*; experior, *try*; polliceor, *promise*; proficiscor, *set out*; prōgredior, *advance*.

1. *Write out the principal parts of these verbs.*

2. *Under each of the principal parts (a) of mittō, (b) of cōnor, write out the names of the moods and tenses which are formed from it.*

3. *Name and write out in full the tenses of the indicative whose first person singular means:*

I shall send, I have given, I am coming, I had left, I shall order, I receive, I was coming, I shall have seen, I station, I saw.

I was ordered, I shall be sent, I have been left, I used to be sent, I am ordered, I had been ordered.

I had promised, I shall attempt, I advance, I advanced, I shall set out, I have tried.

4. *Translate the following forms:*

Circumventī erant, interficit, accipiētur, vōnerāmus, dabunt, mittēris, vidēris, collocantur, jūssae estis, relinquer.

Pollicēbantur, prōgredimur, cōnātus est, experiēminī, proficiscitur.

5. *Translate the following forms:*

We shall leave, they will station, he had sent, they come, they were killed, you shall have seen, we were giving, it has been received, you are being surrounded, I shall order.

We shall attempt, he tried, she had promised, I was setting out, they advance.

6. *Translate the following:*

Cum vidisset, nē interficerēmur, cum collocārent, ut veniret, nē accipiātur, quod reliquerit, quis interfectus esset, cum jubeat, nē dētur.

Cum proficiscerētur, nē cōnantur, quod pollicitus sis, ut experiāmur, cum prōgressi essent.

7. *Write out (a) the third singular imperfect subjunctive passive, the third plural present subjunctive active, and the first plural plu-*

perfect subjunctive active and passive, of mittō, circumveniō, dō, videō and interficiō ; and (b) the third singular present and pluperfect subjunctive and the third plural imperfect subjunctive of cōnor, experior, polliceor, proficiscor and prōgredior.

8. *Write out and name all the infinitives, active and passive, of relinquo, accipio, colloco, video, circumveniō.*

9. *Translate :*

(Dicit eōs) mittere, reliquisse, interfectōs esse, collocārī, ventūrōs esse, profectūrōs esse, prōgredi, cōnātōs esse.

(Dixit eōs) venīre, dedisse, circumventōs esse, mittī, acceptūrōs esse, cōnātūrōs esse, cōnārī, pollicitōs esse.

(Jūssus est) venīre, interficī, proficisci.

10. *Write out and name all the participles, active and passive, of jubeō, interficiō, colloco, mittō, circumveniō, cōnor, prōgredior, experior, polliceor, proficiscor.*

11. *Write out the participles meaning while coming, after advancing, after being surrounded, while attempting, in agreement with the following words: militibus, Caesarem, legiōne, legiōnis equitum, exercituī.*

12. *Write out the genitive of the gerund of dō, veniō, prōgredior, videō and relinquo ; and all cases of the gerund of proficiscor.*

13. *Write out the following parts :*

Third singular pluperfect subjunctive active of dō, mittō.

Second plural present subjunctive active of veniō, colloco.

Third plural imperfect indicative passive of interficiō, relinquo.

First plural future indicative active of dō, veniō, videō

Perfect infinitive active of videō, veniō, interficiō.

Present infinitive passive of accipio, dō, mittō.

Future participle active feminine plural accusative of videō, relinquo.

Gerundive ablative singular neuter of accipio, dō, jubeō.

14. *Name fully the following forms :*

Viderēmur, accipiētis, reliquit, interficiendōs, cōnātī sunt, proficisci, prōgressī, interfēcī, jubentem, data essent, det, videris.

15. *Write the corresponding active or passive form (as the case may be) of the following:*

Interfēcit, relinquam, reliquisset, datum est, vidētur, accipieris, accipere, datum esse.

16. *Write the corresponding form in the indicative or subjunctive (as the case may be) of the following:*

Dabat, mīsisset, vērērunt, circumveniātur, relictī essent, jūsseram, jubeō, interficitur.

17. *Translate:* He promises to come, he was ordered to come, he was asked to come, so terrified as to come, it is difficult to come, he did this in order to come; they said that he had come, so important that he had come, he did this that he might come; they attack the soldiers who are coming, he learns who are coming, they attack those who are coming, he learns that they are attacking the soldiers who are coming.

IX.—1. *Write out the principal parts of* sum, possum, ferō, eō, volō, nōlō, mālō, fiō.

2. *Write out in full the present indicative and subjunctive of these verbs.*

3. *Write out the following parts:*

First singular imperfect and future indicative of sum, possum, eō.

Third singular imperfect subjunctive of sum, possum, ferō, eō, volō, fiō.

Present participle, nominative and genitive singular, of possum, absum, eō.

Present imperative of ferō, eō, nōlō.

Genitive of gerund of ferō, eō.

4. *Write out the principal parts of the compounds of* ferō *with* in, ex, ab, ad, dis, sub, con, ob; *of* eō *with* prō and re; *and of* sum *with* ab and prō.
-

PART II.

PREPARATORY LESSONS IN CONTINUOUS
READING.

1. A Brave General's Death.

Dux quīdam, proeliō cum Gallis commissō, gravissimō vulnere afflictus erat, et humi moribundus jacēbat. Subitō ūnus ex iīs qui circumstābant militibus clāmāvit: "Ecce fugiunt." "Qui fugiunt?" rogat dux. "Galli," respondet miles. Tum dux, "Jam moriar," inquit, "fēlix." Quae cum dixisset, statim exanimātus est. 5

Notes.—1. **proello commissō**: abl. absolute; render in English by the active voice. 2. **ex iīs**: "of the," with *militibus*; *ex* is often used for the partitive gen., especially after numerals. 5. **Quae**: to indicate more clearly the connection with the preceding words, Latin constantly uses *qui* for *hic* or *is*, and places it before even a conjunction; so here *quae* is used for *haec* "this"; literally, "which things."

2. A Lesson from a Cockfight.

Bellō Persicō, cum Themistoclēs māgnō cum exercitū iter in hostēs faceret, duōs gallōs vīdit in viā dimicantēs. Tum militēs ad spectāculum convocāvit, et hanc ōrātiōnem habuit: "Hī gallī nōn prō patriā dimicant, nōn prō dīs, nōn prō glōriā, nōn prō libertāte, nōn prō liberis; dē nullā rē dimicant nisi dē victōriā." Hāc ōrātiōne animōs militum excitāvit, nec hostēs eōrum impetum sustinēre poterant. 5

N.—1. **Bello Persico**: in which the Greeks were repelling a Persian invasion. 2. **gallos**: this, notice, is not *Gallos*. 2. **dimicantes**: present participle, agreeing with *gallos*. Translate "fighting," not "while fighting." 3. **hanc...habuit**: freely, "addressed them as follows." 4. **non**: "nor." 4. **dīs**: from *deus* (see Part III., section 9). 5. **liberis**: from *liberi*.

3. The Nemean Lion.

(The First of the Twelve Labors of Hercules.)

In valle Nemeae leō ingēns vivēbat, et pecora hominēsque cotidiē interficiēbat. Eurystheus, rēx Tīrynthīs, Hērculem ad sē advocāvit, eīque dixit: "Jubeō tē hunc leōnem quam celerrimē inter-

ficere." Statim proficiscitur Hērclēs. Clāvā sagittisque frūstrā ūsus, tandem impetū factō manibus interfecit. Tum ad Eury-
stheum reversus est, mortuum leōnem umeris impositum ferēns.

N.—1. **vivebat, interficiebat**: render the imperfect here by "used to." 5. **usus**: perfect participle of *utor*; translate, "when he had used." 6. **umeris impositum**: *umeris* is dative; literally, "placed-on with-reference-to-the-shoulders"; translate simply, "on his shoulders," omitting "placed."

4. The Happiest Man.

Ōlim Croesus Solōnem, virum sapientissimum, percontātus est: "Quem iūdicās omnium hominum beātissimum?" Solōn respondit: "Meō quidem iūdictiō, beātissimus fuit Tellus Athēniēnsis. Nam flōrente civitatē filiōs habuerat, bonōs virōs honestōsque, eōsque omnēs superstitēs; idemque vītāe finem habuit praeclārissimum; 5 nam in pūgnā, prō patriā fortissimē pūgnāns, repulsis hostibus, interfectus est; tum Athēniēnsēs eum publicē sepelivērunt, et māgnō in honōre semper habēbant."

N.—1. **Croesus**: king of Lydia in Asia Minor, and proverbial for his great riches. 1. **Solonem**: Solon was one of the "seven wise men" of Greece, who in his extensive travels once came to Croesus' court. 3. **quidem**: best rendered by emphasis on the word "my." 4. **flōrente civitate**: abl. absolute; "while his country was prosperous." 4. **eosque**: English idiom would omit "those": *eos* refers to the same persons as *filiōs* and *virōs*. 5. **idem**: render, "he also"; literally, "he the same man." 8. **habebant**: "held."

5. The Death of Epaminondas.

Epaminōndās nōn solum inter Thēbānōs, sed etiam inter omnēs Graecōs ejus temporis praeclārissimus fuit, et fortiter prō patriā animam dēposuit. Nam cum oppidum Mantinēam oppūgnāret, hostēs in eum impetū factō graviter vulnerāvērunt. Postea cum in castra reportātus esset, et moribundum sē esse sēnsisset, rogāvit 5 num scūtum salvum esset. Amicī cum salvum esse respondissent, ad sē afferri jussit. Tum rogāvit num victi essent hostēs. Acceptō respōnsō superātōs esse omnēs et in fugam conjectōs, "Jam satis est," inquit, "invictus enim morior." Tum extrahī tēlum ē vulnere jussit atque statim mortuus est.

10

N.—2. **temporis**: "age" or "period"; it was in 362 B.C. that he fell. 3. **Mantineam**: in apposition with *oppidum*: English idiom is "the town of Mantinea." 6. **Amici**: subject of *respondissent*; translate after *cum*. 6. **esse, afferri**: understand *id*, that is, *scutum*. 9. **enim**: is never the first word in its clause, as is the English "for."

6. Caesar's Gallic Wars.

Jūlius Caesar cum Lūciō Bibulō cōsul factus est. Proximō annō dēcrēta est ei Gallia cum legiōnibus decem. Is primum vicit Helvētiōs, deinde per bella gravissima usque ad Ōceanum prōceasit. Domuit annis novem omnem Galliam, quae inter Alpēs, flūmen Rhodanum, Rhēnum et Ōceanum est. Britannis mox bellum intulit, quī ante eum nē nōmen quidem Rōmānōrum cōgnōverant; et eōs quoque, obsidibus acceptis, stipendiariōs fecit. Atque Germanōs trāns Rhēnum aggressus multis proeliis vicit.

N.—2. *decreta est*: the governors of the Roman provinces were appointed by the Senate; the usual expression for this is *provincia decreta est*. 3. *per*: "by." 4. *annis novem*: 58 to 50 B.C. 5. *est*: "lies." 6. *ne quidem*: note the position.

7. The Rival Painters.

Zeuxis et Parrhasius pictōrēs fuērunt nōbilissimī. Hī quondam inter sē dē arte contendēbant. Zeuxis ūvās pinxit ita callidē ut avēs ad tabulam advolārent, ūvās comedere cupientēs. Tum Parrhasius linteum pinxit. Hōc cum Zeuxis vidisset, existimāns vērū esse linteum, quō tabula occultārētur, dixit: "Removē linteum et ostende pictūram." Mox cōgnitō errōre, victōriam dedit Parrhasiō, dixitque: "Victus sum; nam ego avēs fefelli, tū autem ipsum Zeuxim."

N.—2. *inter se*: "with one another." 2. *uvās*: English idiom would add "some." 5. *esse, occultaretur*: in Zeuxis' own thoughts these would be *est* and *occultatur*. 7. *tu....Zeuxim*: understand *fefellisti*.

8. Not at Home.

Scīpiō Nāsīca ōlim ad poētā Ennium vēnit. Sed cum eum ab ōstiō quaesivisset, ancilla dixit eum domī nōn esse. Sēnsit autem Scīpiō illam dominī jussū dixisse et illum intus esse. Paucis post diēbus ad Nāsīcam vēnit Ennius et eum ā jānuā quaesivit. Exclāmat ipse Nāsīca sē domī nōn esse. Tum Ennius, "Quid?" inquit, "ego nōn cōgnōscō vōcem tuam?" Respondit autem Nāsīca: "Homō es impudēs. Ego, cum tē quaererem, ancillae tuae crēdidī tē domī nōn esse; tū mihi nōn crēdis ipsī?"

N.—1. *eum....quaesivisset*: "asked for him at the door"; so in line 4. 3. *paucis post diebus*: literally, "afterwards (or later) by a few days." 7. *ancillae*: *credo* governs the dative instead of the accusative. 8. *ipsi*: dative, emphasizing *mihi*.

9. How Torquatus Received his Name.

Galli contrā Rōmānōs pūgnābant. Interim Gallus quīdam, torque decorātus, quī et viribus et māgnitudine cēterōs praeſtābat, prōceſſit et vōce māgnā fortissimum Rōmānōrum ad pūgnam prōvocāvit. Nēmō audēbat prōdire, propter ējus māgnitudinem. Deinde Gallus irridēre coepit Rōmānōs. Tum indignātus Titus 5 Mānlius, nōbilissimus juvenis, prōceſſit et contrā Gallum cōstitit. Diū et ācriter, utrōque exercitū inspectante, pūgnāvērunt. Tandem Mānlius Gallum occidit, torqueſque dētrāxit eamque in col-lum suum imposuit. Itaque ipse posterīque ējus Torquātī sunt appellāti.

10

N. 1. Galli : in the fourth century B.C., hordes of Gauls invaded Italy, burned Rome, and only after years of fighting were driven back to the northern part of Italy, where they settled. **2. viribus :** see Part III., section 9; abl. of specification, defining "in what respect." **6. nobilissimus :** referring to birth. **7. utroque :** from *uterque*; render freely by "both"; abl. absolute.

10. Varus.

Quīntilius Vārus, dux Rōmānus, ab Arminiō in Germāniā proeliō victus est. Quī cum vīdisset jam nūllam esse spem salūtis, gladiō dēstrictō, sēsē occidit. Caput ējus postea ā principe Germānōrum ad Augustum Rōnam missum est. Ea clādēs tantō dolore Augustum affēcit, ut multōs postea mēnsēs cotidiē exclāmāret : 5 "Redde mihi, Vāre, meās legiōnēs."

N.—1. Arminio : the Latin form of *Hermann*. It was Arminius who prevented the Romans from adding Germany to their empire. **2. Qui :** see note on 1, 5. **4. Romam :** with the names of cities and towns motion towards is expressed by the accusative *without a preposition*.

11. Union is Strength.

Agricola senex cum mortem sibi appropinquāre sentīret, filiōs convocāvit (quōs interdum inter sē discordāre sciēbat), et fascem virgārum afferri jussit. Quibus allātis, filiōs hortābātur ut hunc fascem frangerent. Quod cum facere nōn possent, distribuit singulis singulās virgās ; eisque celeriter frāctis, docuit filiōs quam 5 firma rēs esset concordia, quamque imbēcillis discordia.

N.—1. sibi : with *appropinquare*. English would omit the pronoun. **2. inter se :** see note on 7, 2. **3. Quibus** and **4. Quod :** see note on 1, 5. **3. ut :** after verbs of urging, asking, etc., Latin uses *ut* and the subjunctive where English uses the infinitive with "to." **4. singulis singulas :** "one rod to each"; literally, "to single (sons) single rods." **5. quam :** "how"; followed by the subjunctive *esset* of indirect question.

12. Alexander's War-horse.

Alexander rēx equum nōmine Būcephalum habēbat. Hīc equus, ubi ōrnātus erat armātusque ad proelium, nēmīnem sē cōnscendere, nisi rēgem, passus est. Bellō Indicō Alexander imprōvīsō in hostium multitudinem incidit. Conjectisque undique in rēgem tēlis, equus vulneribus multis in cervice atque in latere perfossus est. 5 Moribundus tamen ē mediis hostibus rēgem citissimē rettulit; atque cum eum extrā tēla extulisset, statim concidit. Tum rēx Alexander, partā victōriā, oppidum in eisdem locis condidit, idque Būcephalam appellāvit.

N.—2. **ad**: "for." 6. **Moribundus**: add in the English "although." 6. **ē mediis hostibus**: "out of the midst of the enemy." To express "the middle of," Latin uses an adjective, *medius*, in agreement; compare our "mid-stream," "mid-ocean." 8. **parta**: from *pario*. 8. **locis**: "spot."

13. The Legend of Corvinus.

Cōpiæ Gallōrum māgnæ agrum Rōmānum insēderant, cōsulēsque Rōmānī aciem instruēbant. Dux intereā Gallōrum, vir ingentī prōcērītate, venīre jussit et congregī, sī quis pūgnāre sēcūm ex omnī Rōmānō exercitū auderet. Tum Mārcus Valerius adulēscēns, tribūnus militum, sē obtulit. Sed cum prōcessisset armātus, 5 corvus repentē advolat et suprā galeam insistit. Mox commissō proeliō, corvus in Gallī ōs atque oculōs pūgnāre coepit; manum unguibus laniābat, atque revolābat in galeam tribūnī. Sic Valerius, suā virtūte nīxus et operā corvī adjūtus, ducem hostium ferōcissimum vicit interfēcitque. Ita corvus nōn solum victōriam eī, sed 10 etiam nōmen, dedit. Nam postea Corvinus est dictus.

N.—1. **Gallorum**: see note on 9, 1. 2. **ingenti proceritate**: abl. of characteristic; translate by "of." 3. **si quis**: literally "if any one...he bade (him)," etc.; translate "bade any one who...to come." 7. **pugnare in**: "to attack." 8. **laniabat, revolabat**: render the imperfect by "would."

14. The Battle of Thermopylæ.

Cum Xerxēs bellum Græciæ inferret, Græcī angustias, nōmine Thermopylās, occupāre cōstituērunt. Itaque octo millia militum ad illum locum missa sunt. Hīs cōpiīs Leōnidam, rēgem Lacedæmoniōrum præfēcērunt. Is trecentōs Lacedæmoniōs contrā Persās ēdūxit, et cum cēteris cōpiīs Græcōrum in Thermopylis Persarū adventum exspectāvit. Xerxēs autem cum comperisset

quantae cōpiae angustias dēfenderent, primō risit ; tum lēgātum ad eōs misit, et jussit arma pōnere. Sed is rediit infectā rē. Nam cum Lacedaemoniis dixisset : “ Sagittae nostrae lūcem sōlis obecurābunt,” responderunt illi : “ Itaque in umbrā dimicābimus.” 10

Quattuor diēs Xerxēs cum multis suis millibus hominum expectāvit ; quintō diē, cum Leōnidās cōpiās nōn abdūxisset, proelium commisit. Sed māgnus numerus Persarum aut vulnerātus aut interfectus est ; reliquī fūgerunt. Tum decem millia ēlēctorum militum ā rēge in angustias missa sunt. Sed etiam hī cessērunt. 15 Cum rēx jam dē victoriā dēspērāret, prōditor inventus est. Ephialtēs enim, pecūniā corruptus, Persās certiōrēs fēcit viam esse quā trānsire possent, et ā tergō impetum in Graecōs facere. Cum Leōnidās haec audīvisset, māgnam partem exercitūs remisit. Ipse cum exiguis cōpiis mānsit. Accēperat enim hōc ōrāculum : 20 “ Aut dēlēbitur Sparta, aut rēx interficiētur.” Trecenti igitur illi Lacedaemonii et septingenti Thespiēnsēs Persarum impetum sustinuerunt, et cum diū fortissimē pūgnāvissent, multosque hostēs interfēcissent, omnēs cecidērunt.

N.—1. **bellum** : the last attempt of Persia to conquer Greece, in 480 B.C. 7. **quantae** : “ what small ” ; literally, “ of what size,” and generally, from the context, meaning “ how great.” 10. **itaque** : “ in that case.” 17. **esse** : “ that there was.”

15. Pyrrhus and the Romans.

Bellō indictō, Tarentīni Pyrrhum, Ēpiri rēgem, contrā Rōmānōs auxilium poposcērunt. Is mox ad Ītaliā vēnit, tumque primum Rōmāni cum trāsmarinō hoste dimicāvērunt. Pūblius Valerius Laevinus cōsul, quī contrā eum missus est, cum explorātōrēs Pyrrhī cēpisset, jussit eōs per castra dūcī. Cum omnem exercitum 5 vīdissent, eōs dīmisit ut renūtiārent Pyrrhō quae ā Rōmānis agerentur. Commissā mox pūgnā, Pyrrhus elephantōrum auxiliō vicit, quī incōgnitī Rōmānis erant. Sed nox proeliō finem dedit ; Laevinus per noctem fūgit, Pyrrhus Rōmānōs mille octingentōs cēpit et occīsōs sepelivit. Hōs cum adversō vulnere et truci vultū 10 etiam mortuōs jacēre vīdisset, sustulit ad caelum manūs et dīxit : “ Tōtius orbis dominus esse potuī, sī tālēs militēs habuissem.”

N.—1. **Bello** : an unsuccessful attempt from 282-272 B.C., to prevent Rome from becoming mistress of Southern Italy. 2. **poposcerunt** : takes two accusatives, of the person asked and the thing asked for. 10. **adverso vulnere** : “ with their wounds in front.” 11. **mortuos** : “ in death.” 12. **esse potui, si habuissem** : “ I might have been, if I had had.”

16. The Story of Croesus.

Croesus, rēx Lȳdōrum, māgnās sibi divitiās parāverat. Itaque fāma divitiārum ējus nōn solum Asiam sed etiam Eurōpam pervāserat, multique vērunt ut rēgem vidērent. Inter eōs fuit Solōn Athēniēnsis, qui inter septem sapientēs numerābatur. Tum ex eō Croesus quaeſivit nōne ipse omnium hominum fēlicissimus esset. 5 Solōn autem respondit: "Nēmō ante mortem beātus est iūdicandus." Hōc respōsum rēgi tum displicuit; sed postea sēnsit quam vērū esset.

Illis enim temporibus Cȳrus Mēdōrum et Persārum rēgnum obtinēbat, et gentēs propinquae victōriis ējus terrēbantur. Ut 10 hunc impediret et coerceret, Croesus bellum contrā eum parāvit. Eōdem tempore ōrāculum Delphicum per lēgātōs dē exitū belli interrogāvit. Respondit deus: "Croesus trānsitū flūminis quod interest inter Persās et Lȳdōs, māgnū rēgnum dēlēbit."

Croesus, cum hōc respōsum comperisset, victōriam certam 15 spērābat, et cōpiis suis in Cȳrī rēgnum invāsīt. Is autem cōpiis māgnis coāctis Lȳdōs superāvit et Croesum ipsum cēpit.

Tum Croesus ā Cȳrō damnātus est ut ignī cremārētur. Cum māgna cōpia lignōrum coacervāta esset, et Croesus, in rogam impositus, jam mortem expectāret, māgnā vōce clāmāvit: "Ō 20 Solōn, Solōn, Solōn!" Cȳrus autem, cum hōc audīvisset, quaeſivit quid illis verbis significāret. Tum Croesus narrāvit quid Solōn Athēniēnsis dē fortunā hūmānā docuisset. His verbis Cȳrus ita commōtus est ut Croesum liberāret et amicum appellāret.

N.—1. Croesus: see note on 4, 1. 5. **ipse:** that is, Croesus. 6. **est iudicandus:** "should be considered." 7. **tum:** "at the time." 12. **oraculum Delphicum:** at Delphi in Greece was the famous temple of Apollo, who through his priestess was believed to foretell the future to those who came to consult the oracle. The answers were often, as on this occasion, ambiguous. 18. **ut cremaretur:** "to be burned."

17. The Story of Regulus.

Hōc proeliō superātī, Carthāginiēnsēs auxilium ā Lacedaemoniīs petiērunt. Xanthippus ā Lacedaemoniīs missus est, et Rōmānōrum dux Rēgulus victus est māgnā cum caede. Nam vix duo millia ex omnī Rōmānō exercitū refūgērunt; quīngentī cum imperātōre Rēgulō captī sunt; trigintā millia occīsa sunt, et Rēgulus 5 ipse in catēnās coniectus est. Sed post quīnque annōs Carthāgini-

ēnsēs, māgnīs calamitātibus acceptīs, ā Rēgulō petiērunt ut Rōmam proficiscerētur, et pācem ā Rōmānīs impetrāret. Atque jūrejūrandō cum obstrinxērunt, nisi redditi essent Carthāginiēnsibus captivī nōbilēs quidam, sēsē ipsum Carthāginem reditūrum. Ille 10 Rōmam cum vēnisset, senātum hortātus est nē pācem cum Poenīs facerent. Dixit enim illōs, tot cāsibus frāctōs, nūllam spem habēre; neque dēbēre tot millia captivōrum reddī propter ūnum sē et paucōs quī ex Rōmānīs capti essent. Itaque lēgātī Carthāginiēnsēs dimissi sunt infectā pāce. Rēgulum amīcī Rōmae tenēre 15 cōnātī sunt. Sed ille uxōrem ā complexū remōvit, dixitque sē illō diē, quō in potestātem Āfrōrum vēnisset, Rōmānum esse dēsiisse; neque in eā urbe mānsūrum in quā, postquam Āfris serviisset, dignitātem honestī cīvis habēre nōn pisset. Regressus igitur ad Āfricam, omnibus suppliciis necātus est. Neque vērō Ignōrābat 20 sē ad crūdēlissimum hostem et ad exquisita supplicia proficisci; sed jūsjūrandum cōservandum esse putābat.

N.—1. **proello**: this was in 255 B.C., in the first war between Rome and Carthage. 7. **petierunt**: "asked Regulus to proceed to Rome." 8. **jurejurando**: from *jusjurandum* (see Part III., section 9). 9. **redditi essent**: "should be (or were) restored;" literally, "should have been restored." Notice that *rediturum*, in line 10, is from a different verb. 11. **hortatus est ne**: "urged the senate not to," etc. 14. **ex Romanis**: see note on 1, 2; in translation connect it with *paucos*, not with *qui*. 15. **Romae**: the so-called locative case; "at Rome." 17. **quo**: "when"; literally, "on which." 20. **omnibus**: "all manner of." 22. **conservandum esse**: see note on 16, 6.

18. Roman Discipline.

Disciplīna militāris diū et ācritē retenta prīncipātum Ītaliae Rōmānō populō peperit; multās urbēs, māgnōs rēgēs, validissimās gentēs in diciōnem redēgit; urbemque Rōmam, ortam ē parvulā Rōmulī casā, tōtīus terrārum orbis fēcit dominam.

N.—2. **populo**: dative; render by "for." 3. **ortam**: "which sprang."

19. Victory and Shipwreck.

Mārcus Aemilius Paulus, Servius Fulvius Nōbilior cōsulēs ad Āfricam profecti sunt cum trecentārum nāvium classe. Prīmum Poenōs nāvālī certāmine superant. Aemilius cōsul centum et quattuor nāvēs hostium dēmersit, trigintā cum nautīs cēpit, quīndecim millia hostium aut occīdit aut cēpit, exercitum suum ingentī 5 praedā dītavit. Et subācta Āfrica tum esset, nisi tanta famēs

fuiſſet ut diſtius manēre exercitus nōn poſſet. Cōſulēs cum victriēlī clāſſe redeuntēs circā Siciliam naufragium paſſi ſunt. Et tanta tempeſtās fuit, ut ex quadringentis ſexāgintā quattuor nāvibus, vix octōgintā ſervārī poſſent; neque illō tempore tanta 10 maritima tempeſtās audita eſt. Rōmānī tamen ſtatim ducentās nāvēs reparāvērunt, neque animus infractus fuit.

N.—1. **consules**: in 255 B.C. (the year when Regulus was taken prisoner), during the First Punic war. 6. **subacta esset, nisi fuiſſet**: "would have been subdued had there not been"; compare note on 15, 12. 8. **redeuntes**: present participle of *redeo*. 10. **ullo**: that is, "any other."

20. An Honorable Foo.

Cum rēx Pyrrhus populō Rōmānō bellum intuliſſet, atque bis prōſperē pūgnāviſſet, tum medicus Pyrrhī ad Cāium Fabricium cōſulem clam nocte vēnit, eiſque eſt pollicitus, ſi praeſtium ſibi dediſſet, ſē in Pyrrhī caſtra reditūrum et eum venenō necātūrum. Hunc Fabricius vinctum reduci juiſſit ad Pyrrhum, et monuit 5 rēgem ut inſidiās cavēret. Tum rēx, admirātus eum, dixit: "Fabricius difficilīus ab honeſtāte, quam ſolū ā cursū ſuō, āvertī pot'eſt."

N.—1. **bellum**: ſee note on 15, 1. 4. **dediſſet**: "gave" or "should give"; ſee note on 17, 9. 5. **vinctum**: "in chains." 7. **difficilius**: compar. adverb.

31. A Dishonorable Trick.

Post Cannēſem pūgnam Hannibal ex captivīs decem Rōmam ad ſenātum miſit ut permūtātiō captivōrum fieret. Omnēs, priusquam proficiſcerentur, jūrātī ſunt ſē in caſtra Poena reditūrōs, niſi dē captivīs impetrāviſſent. Cum Rōmam vēniſſent, rēs ſenātui nōn placuit. Tum ex decem illis novem ſtatim ad Hannibalem 5 revertērunt; ūnus Rōmae remanet. Nam paulō poſtquam ēgreſſus erat ē caſtris, redierat, quaſi aliquid eſſet oblītus. Itaque reditū in caſtra liberātum ſē eſſe religiōne dixit. Haec fraus et calliditās tam eſſe turpis exiſtimāta eſt, ut ab omnibus civibus contemptus ſit; atque ſenātus dēcrēvit ut vinctus ad Hannibalem 10 reducērētur.

N.—1. **Cannensem pugnam**: in 216 B.C., the third year of Hannibal's invasion of Italy, he inflicted on the Romans at Cannae the most crushing defeat they ever suffered. It was his last important success, however. 1. **Romam**: ſee note on 10, 4. 4. **impetravissent**: ſee note on 20, 4. 4. **res**: "the proposal." 6. **Romae**: ſee note on 17, 15. 9. **existimata est**: the singular verb is often used in Latin with two subjects which form one notion.

22. Hannibal's First Campaigns in Italy.

Dum haec geruntur, nūntius victōriæ ad Cannās Carthāginem vēnerat Māgō Hamilcaris filius. Is rēs gestās in Ītaliā ā frātre Hannibale expōnit; cum sex imperātōribus, quōrum quattuor cōsulēs, duo dictātōr āc magister equitum fuerint, eum conflixisse; occīdisse suprā ducenta millia hostium, suprā quīnquāgintā millia 5 cēpisse. Ex quattuor cōsulibus duōs occīdisse; ex duōbus reliquīs saucium esse alterum, alterum tōtō āmissō exercitū vix cum quīnquāgintā hominibus effūgisce. Magistrum equitum fūsum fugātumque esse; dictātōrem, quia sē in aciem numquam commiserit, ūnicum habērī imperātōrem. Bruttios Āpulōsque et partem 10 Samnītiū āc Lūcānōrum dēfēcisse ad Poenōs; Capuam, quod caput nōn Campāniæ modo sed post Cannēnsē pūgnam Ītaliæ sit, Hannibalī sē trādīdisce.

N.—1. **nuntius**: predicate nom., agreeing with *Mago*; literally, "as messenger or announcer"; translate freely, "had come with news." 1. **Cannas**: see note on 21, 1. 2. **res gestas**: before Cannæ had come the victories at the Ticinus, Trebia and Lake Trasimenus. 5. **occīdisce**: notice the difference in the quantity of *occīdisce*, line 6. 7. **amisso**: abl. absolute; render freely "after the loss." 10. **haberi**: "was considered." 10. **Bruttios**, etc.: these tribes comprised practically all southern Italy. 11. **quod**: the relative, taking its gender from *caput*.

23. Hannibal Defeated at Nola.

Eādē aestate Mārcellus, quī Nōlam praesidiō obtinēbat, crēbrās excursiōnēs in agrum Samnītiū fēcīt, omniaque ferrō atque ignī vāstāvit. Itaque extēplō lēgātī ad Hannibalem missī sunt ā Samnītibus. Hannibal partem cōpiārum in agrum Nōlānum mīsīt. Mārcellus, ubi hōc animadvertit, extēplō in aciem cōpiās ēdūxit; 5 neque Hannibal certāmen dētrectāvit. Mille ferē passuum inter urbem erant castraque; eō spatiō concurrērunt. Proelium diū erat anceps; summā vī et ducēs hortābantur et militēs pūgnābant. Tandem terga Poenī dedērunt atque in castra compulsī sunt. Hostium quīnque millia caesa eō diē, vivī captī sescentī et sīgna 10 militāria ūndēvigintī et duo elephantī; Rōmānōrum vix mille interfectī.

N.—1. **aestate**: this was in 215 B.C., the year after Cannæ, when the war was beginning to turn in favor of the Romans. 6. **Mille passuum**: for the more usual *mille passus*. 8. **et...et**: "both....and"; but it is often more convenient, as here, to omit "both" in translating. 10. **caesa, captī**: supply *sunt*, as also with *interfectī*, line 12.

24. Babylon Taken by Cyrus.

Erat autem Babylōn urbs opulentissima et potentissima, ad Euphrātem flūmen sita. Ante mūrōs proeliō commissō, Cýrus Babylōniōs primō impetū fugāvit. Sed cum urbem obsidēre coepisset, propter cōpiam cibōrum quam incolae prōviderant et propter ingentēs mūrōs, magna erat difficultās. Itaque Cýrus 5 dolum adhibuit. Fossam enim ab eō locō ubi flūmen ad urbem accēdebat ad eam partem dūxit ubi flūmen ex urbe veniēbat. Id fēcit noctū nē Babylōniū sentirent. Itaque cum fossa complēta esset, aqua in flūmine ipsō deerat, et per alveum vacuum militibus Cýri via in urbem parāta est. Ita militēs in urbem nocte ingressi 10 sunt, et mūrōs portāsque occupāverunt. Tanta autem urbs erat, ut, cum jam partēs mūrīs propinquae ā Cýri militibus expūgnātae essent, ei quī in mediā urbe habitābant dē illā rē nūntium nōndum accēpissent. Cum urbem expūgnāvisset Cýrus, Jūdaeōs quī ā rēgibus Babylōniōrum capti et abducti erant, in patriam remisit. 15

N.—1. **autem**: "now." 1. **ad**: "on." 3. **ne sentirent**: "that they might not," etc.; subjunctive of purpose. 8. **completa**: does not mean "completed," which would be "confecta." 9. **deerat**: from *desum*. 9. **militibus**: dative; render by "for." 13. **media urbe**: see note on 12, 6.

25. Scipio's Answer.

Mārcus Naevius, tribūnus plēbis, accūsāvit Scīpiōnem ad populum; dixitque eum accēpisse ā rēge Antiochō pecūniam ut conditionibus mollibus pāx cum eō fieret. Tum Scīpiō "Memoriā," inquit, "Quiritēs, repetō diem esse hodiernum, quō Hannibalem Poenum magnō proeliō in Āfricā vicī, pācemque et victōriam vōbīs 5 peperī praeclāram. Nōn igitur dēbēmus in deōs ingrātī esse. Relictō igitur nebulōne hōc, ire hinc dēbēmus ad deōs grātulandōs." Id cum dixisset āvertit, et ire ad Capitōlium coepit. Tum cōntiō ūniversa, quae ad sententiam dē Scīpiōne ferendam convēnerat, relictō tribūnō, Scīpiōnem in Capitōlium comitāta est; 10 atque inde ad aedēs ējus cum laetitiā et grātulātiōne prōsecūta est.

N.—1. **Scipionem**: who ended the Second Punic war by defeating Hannibal at Zama, in Africa, 202 B.C. 2. **Antiocho**: king of Syria, who, after two years' war, was conquered by the Romans in 190 B.C., and compelled to sue for peace. Scipio was one of the commissioners sent to fix the terms of peace. This accusation was brought by his political enemies at Rome five years later. 4. **diem**, etc.: "that this is the day"; literally, "that it is to-day." 7. **nebulone hoc**: that is, Naevius. 7. **ad gratulandos**: the gerundive construction, expressing purpose: so line 9.

26. The Defeat and Death of Pompey.

Pompēius, cum equitātum suum pulsum vīdisset, aliīs quoque diffisus, aciē excessit, prōtinusque sē in castra contulit. Castra ā cohortibus, quae ibi praesidiō erant relictāe, industriē dēfendēbantur. Neque diū multitudinem tēlōrum sustinēre potuerunt, sed cōfectī vulneribus, in altissimōs montēs, quī ad castra pertinē- 5 bant, cōfūgērunt. Pompēius equum nactus decumānā portā sē ex castris ējēcit, prōtinusque equō citātō Lārissam contendit. Neque ibi cōstitit, sed nocturnō itinere ad mare pervēnit, nāvem-que frūmentāriam cōnscendit.

Caesar omnibus rēbus relictīs persequī Pompēium cōstituit, 10 nē rūsus cōpiās comparāre aliās et bellum renovāre posset. Pompēius bīduum tempestāte retentus, tandem in Aegyptum pervēnit. Ibi ad rēgem Ptolemaeum mīsīt ut Alexandriā reciperētur atque in calamitāte tegerētur; sed amīcī rēgis, timōre adductī, iīs quī erant ā Pompēiō missī palam liberāliter respondērunt, eumque ad 15 rēgem venīre jussērunt; ipsī clam Achillam, singulārī hominem audaciā, et Lūcium Septimium, tribūnum militum, ad interficiendum Pompēium mīsērunt. Ab hīs liberāliter appellātus, nāviculam parvulam cōnscendit cum paucīs suis: ibi ab Achillā et Septimiō interficitur. 20

N.—1. **Pompeius**: Caesar and Pompey were the two foremost men of their day in Rome. Each aimed at supreme power in the state, and mutual jealousy led to civil war in 49 B.C. The following year Pompey was defeated at Pharsalia, in northern Greece. 1. **aliis**: "the others," that is, the infantry. 2. **acie excessit**: "left the battle-field." 3. **praesidio**: "on guard"; literally, "for a guard," dative case. 7. **Larissam**: see note on 10, 4. 13. **Ptolemaeum**: it was largely through Pompey's influence that Ptolemy's father, seven years before, had been restored to the throne of Egypt, after a rebellion. Pompey, therefore, confidently appealed to the son for aid. 13. **Alexandria**: "in Alexandria." 17. **audacia**: see note on 13, 2. 17. **ad interficiendum**: see note on 25, 7.

27. A Skirmish for a Hill.

Inter oppidum Herdam et proximum collem, ubi castra Afrānius habēbat, tumulus erat. Hunc sī superāvisset Caesar, ab oppidō et commeātū omni sē interclūsūrum hostēs cōfidēbat. Hōc spērāns legiōnēs trēs ex castris ēdūcit, et ūnam legiōnem prōcur- 5 rere atque eum tumulum occupāre jubet. Afrānī cohortēs breviōre itinere ad eundem occupandum locum mittuntur. Proelium committunt, et quod prius in tumulum hostēs vēnerant, nostrī

repelluntur atque terga vertere sēque ad sīgna legiōnum recipere cōguntur. Caesar, cohortātus suōs, legiōnem nōnam subsidiō dūcit; hostem suppressit sēque ad oppidum Ilerdam recipere et 10 sub mūrō cōsistere cōgit.

N.—1. Ilerdam : in Spain, where Caesar in 49 B.C. defeated Pompey's lieutenant, Afranius, before following Pompey himself to Greece. **2. si superavisset :** "if he could gain"; literally, "if he should have gained." See note on 17, 9. **3. Hoc sperans :** "with this hope (or idea)." **5. Afrani :** proper names in -ius have the genitive -ii contracted to -i. **7. quod :** the conjunction. **9. subsidio :** "to their support"; literally, "for a support"; compare 26, 3.

28. How Horatius Kept the Bridge.

Tarquinius, ab Rōmānīs exāctus, ad Lārtē Porsenam, Clūsī-
num rēgem, perfūgerat, ōrābatque nē sē in exiliō vivere paterētur.
Porsena igitur Rōmam māgnō cum exercitū vēnit. Cum hostēs
adessent, omnēs in urbem ex agrīs dēmigrāvērunt; urbem ipsam
praesidiīs firmāvērunt. Pōns Sublicius iter paene hostibus dedit; 5
sed ūnus vir, Horātius Cocles, quī forte in statiōne pontis positus
erat, cum Jāniculum repentinō impetū captum esse vidisset,
admonuit ut pontem ferrō atque ignī interromperent. Prōmisit
sē, quantum vir ūnus posset, hostēs sustentūrum esse. Vādīt inde
ad primum aditum pontis; duōs tamen ex Rōmānīs pudor cum eō 10
tenuit, Spurium Lārtium ac Titum Herminium. Cum hīs hostēs
parumper sustinuit. Deinde eōs quoque ipsōs, exiguā parte
pontis relictā, in tūtum cedere cōegit. Circumferēns inde oculōs
ad procerēs Etruscōrum, nunc singulōs prōvocābat, nunc omnēs
increpābat. Aliquamdiū cunctātī sunt; pudor deinde commōvit 15
aciem, et clamōre sublātō undique in eum tēla conjiiciunt. Cum
nihilōminus obstinātus ille pontem obtinēret, jam impetū factō
virum dētrūdere cōnābantur cum fragor ruptī pontis clāmorque
Rōmānōrum pavōre subitō impetum sustinuit. Tum Horātius,
"Tiberine pater," inquit, "tē precor ut haec arma et hunc mīlitem 20
propitiō flūmine accipiās." Inde armātus in Tiberim dēsiluit,
multisque superincēdentibus tēlīs, incolumis ad suōs trānāvīt.

N.—1. Tarquinius : the last king of Rome, banished in 510 B.C., because of his tyranny and the cruel misdeeds of his family. **2. ne pateretur :** "not to suffer." **6. forte :** "as it happened." **8. admonuit ut :** "advised them to," etc. **9. quantum :** "so far as." **12. exigua :** "only (or but) a small." **14. provocabat, increpabat :** see note on 13, 8. **18. conabantur :** translate the tense carefully. **20. pater :** the Romans believed that each river had its god or guardian spirit. **22. multisque, etc. :** translate the abl. absolute by "although."

29. An Extraordinary Disaster.

Cum eae rēs agerentur, nova clādēs nūntiāta est, Lūcium Postumium in Galliā ipsum atque exercitum dēlētōs esse. Silva erat vāsta, quā exercitum trāductūrus erat. Eīus silvae arborēs circā viam Gallī ita incidērunt ut immōtae stārent, mōmentō levī impulsae conciderent. Legiōnēs duās Rōmānās habēbat Postumius 5 et quīndecim millia sociōrum. Gallī ōram silvae circumsedēbant; atque ubi intrāvit agmen saltum, tum extrēmās arborum succīsarum impellunt. Hae, alia in aliam incidentēs, tantā strāge arma, virōs, equōs obruērunt, ut vix decem hominēs effugerent. Nam exanimātī plērīque sunt arborum truncīs rānisque; et cēterōs, 10 inopinātō malō trepidōs, Gallī interfecērunt; paucī quī pontem flūminis petēbant, interclūsī captīque sunt. Ibi Postumius omnī vī, nē caperētur, dīmiciāns occubuit.

N.—2. **Gallia**: the northern part of Italy, having been settled by Gauls (see note on 9, 1), was therefore called *Gallia Cisalpina* ("Gaul on this side of the Alps"). Their descendants joined Hannibal when he invaded Italy, and the incident here reported occurred in 215 B.C., a few months after the defeat at Cannæ. 3. **qua trāducturus erat**: "through which he was intending to lead." 4. **immotae**: "while untouched." 4. **impulsae**: "but if pushed." 7. **succisarum**: "which had been cut." 8. **alia in aliam**: "one against another"; in apposition with *hae*. 11. **trepidōs**: "who were panic-stricken." 12. **fluminis**: "over the river." 12. **ne caperetur**: "to avoid capture."

30. Darius and the Scythians.

Dārius Persārum rēx bellum Scythīs intulit et cum omnibus cōpiis in Eurōpam profectus est. Scythae autem proelium committere nōlēbant. Tandem Dārius, missō lēgātō ad Scythārum rēgem, dixit dēbere eum aut pūgnāre aut terram et aquam ferentem in colloquium venīre. Ad haec Scythārum rēx respondit, 5 nōlle sē pūgnāre, quod oppida nōn habēret quae dēfenderet; prō autem terrā et aquā, quās Dārius postulāvisset, dōna alia missūrum. Posterō diē Scythae lēgātum mīsērunt quī dōna ferēbat, avem et mūrem et rānam et quīnque sagittās. Dixitque lēgātus Persās, sī sapientēs essent, posse cōgnōscere, quid haec 10 dōna significārent. Dārius quidem putābat Scythās sēsē et terram et aquam trādere; quod mūs in terrā viveret, rāna in aquā, avis autem sine equō; dēnique tēla trādere quibus solīs sē dēfendere possent. Gābrus autem, ūnus ex prīncipibus quōs

sēcum habēbat Dārius, putābat dōna haec significāre ; nisi avēs 15 facti Persae ēvolārent, aut in mūrēs conversi terram subirent, aut rānārum modō in palūdēs insilirent, sagittās Scythārum nōn effugere posse.

N.—1. **Darius** : became king of Persia eight years after the death of Cyrus the Great. The unsuccessful invasion of Scythia (now southern Russia) about 508 B.C., was a prelude to the invasion of Greece, which was repelled at Marathon, 490 B.C. 4. **terram et aquam** : these the Persians used to demand as a token of submission. 6. **oppida . . . defenderet** : "he had no towns to defend." 11. **quidem** : "for his part." 13. **equo** : the Scythians, like the modern Cossacks, were all expert horsemen.

31. Rome Taken by the Gauls.

[Rōmānī ā Brennō, rēge Gallōrum, ad flūmen Alliam superātī erant, et māxima pars exercitūs Vēiōs fūgerat.]

Galli haud multō ante sōlis occāsum ad urbem Rōmam perveniunt. Equitēs praegressi nōn portās clausās esse, nōn stationem prō portis excubāre, nōn armātōs esse in mūrō rettulērunt. 5 Itaque insidiās veritī, extrā Rōmam cōnsēdērunt, et explorātōrēs mīsērunt circā moenia. Rōmānī interim tōtam paene urbem lāmentis complēbant, et cum dēfendī urbs nōn posset, tam parvā relictā manū, cum conjugibus āc liberis in arcem concessērunt. Galli, ingressi posterō diē urbem, in forum perveniunt. Inde, modicō 10 relictō praesidiō, dilābuntur ad praedam. Rōmānī interim ex arce plēnam hostium urbem cernēbant. Galli, incēnsā urbe, impetum facere in arcem statuunt. Primā lūce, signō datō, multitūdō omnis in forō instruitur ; inde, clāmōre sublātō āc testūdine factā, subeunt. Rōmānī, ad omnēs aditūs stationibus firmātis, scandere 15 sinunt hostem. Mediō ferē clivō restitērunt, atque inde ex superiore locō, impetū factō, Gallōs māgnā strāge fūdērunt.

N.—1. **Gallorum** : see note on 9, 1. 1. **Alliam** : the defeat at the Allia, in 390 B.C., leading to the capture of Rome, was always regarded as the blackest day in Roman history. 4. **non portas**, etc. : the accusative and infinitive construction depending on *rettulerunt*. 6. **insidias** : the real cause was the panic among the survivors in Rome. 9. **arcem** : on the Capitoline hill. 11. **ad** : "in quest of" ; literally, "for." 15. **ad** : "at." 16. **Medio clivo** : "half way up the hill" ; see note on 12, 6.

32. The Capitol Saved by Geese.

Interim arx Rōmae, Capitōlium, in ingentī periculō fuit. Namque Galli, quī arcem obsidēbant, vestīgium notāvērunt hūmānum,

quā nūntius ā Vēiis pervēnerat. Itaque nocte sublūstrī inermem Gallum, quī tentāret viam, praemisērunt ; inde reliquī tantō silentiō in summum evāsērunt, ut nōn custōdēs solum fallerent, sed nē 5 canēs quidem excitārent. Ānserēs nōn fefellērunt, quī Jūnōnī sacrī erant. Namque clāmōre eōrum ālārumque crepitū excitus est Mārcus Mānlius, vir bellō ēgregius. Is, armīs arreptīs, Gallum quī jam in summō cōnstitērat, dēturbat. Ējus cāsus proximōs Gallōrum sternit ; trepidantēs aliōs, quī, omissis armīs, saxa mani- 10 bus amplectēbantur, trucīdat Mānlius. Jamque aliī congregātī tēlis saxisque prōturbant hostēs. Lūce ortā, vocātis ad concilium militibus, Mānlius primum ob virtūtem laudātus est ; tum vigilēs citātī sunt. Hīs omnibus culpam in ūnum vigilem conjicientibus, illum Quīntus Sulpicius, tribūnus militum, approbantibus cūctīs, 15 dē saxō dējēcit.

N.—1. Interim : the Gauls, foiled in their first attempt (see 31), laid siege to the citadel, while the greater number roamed about the country, pillaging it. **3. nuntius :** he had come from the Romans who had escaped after Allia to Veii, to concert measures with the Romans in the citadel. **4. qui tentaret :** "to make trial of." **5. evaserunt :** "made their way." **6. Junoni :** whose temple was on the Capitoline hill. **8. bello :** see note on 9, 2. **10. omissis armis :** freely, "had dropped their arms and." **14. His conjicientibus :** "as these laid." **15. approbantibus cunctis :** "with the approval of all."

33. A Young Roman Girl.

(From a letter of Pliny's.)

Tristissimus haec tibi scribō. Fundānī nostrī filia minor dēfūncta est. Quā puellā nihil umquam erat fēstīvius, nihil amābilius nec longā vitā dignius. Nōndum annōs quattuordecim implēverat, et jam prūdentiam mātērōnālem gravitātemque praestābat, et tamen suāvitātem puellārem cum virginālī verēcundiā. Ut illa patris 5 cervicī inhaerēbat ! Ut nōs amicōs paternōs et amanter et modestē complectēbātur ! Ut nūtricēs, ut praeceptōrēs diligēbat ! Quā illa temperantiā, quā patientiā, quā etiam cōstantiā novissimam valētūdinem tulit ! Medicīs obsequēbātur, sorōrem patrem adhortābātur. Dūrāvit vigor animī illī ūsque ad extrēmum, nec aut 10 spatiō valētūdinis aut metū mortis infractus est. Itaque plūrimās gravissimāsque nobīs causās reliquit et dēsideriī et dolōris. Ō triste acerbūque fūnus ! Jam dēstināta erat ēgregiō juvenī, jam ēlectus nūptiārum diēs, jam nōs vocātī. Hōc gaudium maerōre mūtātum est. Nōn possum exprimere verbīs quantum animō 15

vulnus accēperim, cum audivī Fundānium ipsum praecipientem, ut quod in vestēs, margarīta, gemmās fuerat erogātūrus, hōc in tūs et unguenta et odōres impenderētur.

N. Pliny, who wrote this and the following letter, lived from 61 A.D. to about 113 A.D. 1. **Fundani**: see note to 27, 5. 1. **nostri**: "our friend." 2. **Qua puella**: "than this maiden"; abl. of comparison. 3. **vita**: abl. after *dignus*; render by "of." 4. **Jam**: "already." 5. **Ut**: "how" (exclamatory). 6. **inhaerebat**: render this and the following imperfects by "would" or "used to." 7. **Qua**: "with what." 10. **illi**: "with her"; literally, "for her." 14. **maerore mutatum**: "changed to grief." The abl. of price is used of that for which anything is exchanged. 17. **ut quod fuerat erogaturus hoc impenderetur**: "that what he had intended to expend . . . should be devoted."

34. An Exemplary Old Age.

Māne Spūrinna lēctulō continētur, hōrā secundā calceōs poscit, ambulat millia passuum tria, nec minus animum quam corpus exercet. Si adsunt amīcī, honestissimī sermōnēs explicantur; sī nōn, liber legitur. Deinde cōnsidit, et liber rūsus aut sermō; mox vehiculum ascendit, adsūmit uxōrem vel aliquem amīcōrum. Per-⁵ āctis septem millibus passuum, iterum ambulat mille, iterum residit, vel sē cubiculō ac stilō reddit. Scribit enim, et quidem utrāque linguā, doctissimē. Ubi hōra balineī nūntiāta est (est autem hieme nōna, aestāte octāva), in sōle, sī caret ventō, ambulat nūdus. Deinde movētur pilā vehementer et diū; nam hōc quoque¹⁰ exercitātiōnis genere pūgnat cum senectūte. Lōtus accubat et paulisper cibum differt; interim audit legentem remissius aliquid et dulcius. Appōnitur cēna nōn minus nitida quam frūgī in argentō pūrō et antīquō. Hanc rēgulam Spūrinna cōstantissimē servat. Inde illī post septimum et septuāgēsimum annum aurium et¹⁵ oculōrum vigor integer, inde agile et vīvidum corpus. Hanc ego vītā ingrediar avidissimē; interim mille labōribus conteror, quōrum mihi et sōlācium et exemplum est Spūrinna; nam ille quoque obiit officia, gessit magistrātūs, prōvinciās rēxit, multōque labōre hōc ōtium meruit.

20

N.—1. **Spurinna**: flourished in the latter half of the first century A.D. 1. **lectulo continetur**: "keeps his couch"; that is, for study and reflection. 3. **honestissimi**: devoid, that is, of scandal or vulgar gossip. 7. **cubiculo**: the *lectulus* of line 1. 7. **et quidem**: "and that, too." 8. **utraque**: Greek and Latin. 9. **caret**: the subject is *sol*. 10. **movetur pila vehementer**: "takes vigorous exercise at tennis." 12. **remissius**: the Latin comparative often means "somewhat" or "rather." 15. **illi**: dative; supply *est*, of which *vigor* (and *corpus*) will be the subject; render freely, "he possesses." 17. **quorum**: "in which."

35. The Helvetian War.

Helvētiī proximī sunt Germānis, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt ; reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecedunt, quod ferē cotidiānis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt. Sed undique locī nātūrā continentur : ūnā ex parte est flūmen Rhēnus altissimus et lātissimus ; alterā ex parte mōns Jūra altissimus ; tertiā ex parte flūmen Rhodanus 5 nostram prōvinciam ab Helvētiīs dividit. Hīs dē causis Helvētiī nōn lātē vagārī potuerunt, nec facile finitimīs bellum inferre. Itaque, cum essent hominēs bellandī cupidī, angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur. Hīs rēbus adductī, dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exīre cōstituērunt et optimam partem tōtīus Galliae 10 occupāre. Itineribus omnīnō duobus domō exīre poterant ; quōrum ūnum erat per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile ; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius. Caesar, cui prōvincia Gallia eō annō dēcrēta erat, audīvit Helvētiōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī. Statim ab urbe proficiscitur et in Galliam pervenit. 15

Ubi dē ejus adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt ; sed Caesar negat sē posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via. Mox Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiōs per agrum Sēquanōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, quī nōn longē ā prōvinciā nostrā absunt. Intellegēbat periculō- 20 sum prōvinciae fore, sī hominēs bellicōsī, populī Rōmānī inimicī, prōvinciae finitimī essent. Ob eas causās in Ītaliā contendit ; duās ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trēs ex hibernīs dūcit ; cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus in Galliam per Alpēs ire contendit. Helvētiī jam per finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Aedu- 25 ōrum finēs pervēnerant, eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Itaque nē omnēs fortūnae sociōrum cōnsūmerentur, Caesar ē castris profectus ad Helvētiōs pervēnit. Trēs jam partēs Helvētiōrum flūmen Ararim trānsierant ; reliquōs aggressus, māgnam partem eōrum concēdit, reliquī sēsē in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Hōc proeliō 30 factō, ut reliquās cōpiās cōsequī posset, pontem facit, atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Tum per multōs diēs Caesar Helvētiōs īsequitur, novissimumque agmen lacessit.

Tandem ut rei frūmentariae prōspiceret, iter ab Helvētiīs avertit, atque ad oppidum Aeduōrum māximum et cōpiōsissimum ire 35 contendit. Helvētiī Rōmānōs timōre perterritōs esse et discēdere ā sē existimābant. Itaque, itinere conversō, nostrōs īsequī ac

laccessere coep̄runt. Postquam id animadvertit, Caesar cōpiās suās in proximum collem subducit, aciemque instruit. Helvētīi impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt ; ipsī sub prīmam nostram 40 aciem successērunt. Caesar, cohortātus suōs, proelium commisit. Diū atque ācriter pūgnāvērunt. Sed cum diūtius sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, Helvētīi lēgātōs dē dēditionē ad Caesarem misērunt. Caesar Helvētīōs in finēs suōs, unde profectī erant, revertī jussit, et oppida vicōsque restituere. Helvētīōrum 45 trecenta et sexāgintā octo millia domō exierant ; vix centum et decem millia domum rediērunt.

N.—1. **Helvetii** : Helvetia (the modern Switzerland) was reckoned part of Gaul. 2. **virtute** : see note on 9, 2. 4. **una ex parte** : "on one side." 4. **altera** : "a second," but in line 12, **alterum** is "the other." 6. **provinciam** : since 118 B.C. the southern part of Gaul had been a Roman province. (Hence the modern name *Provence*.) 8. **cum essent** : "being." 13. **eo anno** : 59 B.C. 14. **decreta erat** : see note on 6, 2. 15. **urbe** : that is, Rome. 17. **ulli** : dative ; see Part III., section 14. 18. **relinquebatur** : "there was left." 18. **renuntiatur** : "word is brought" ; literally, "it is reported." 21. **fore** : from *sum* ; see Part III., section 41. 22. **essent** : "should (*or were to*) be." 27. **ne consumerentur** : see note on 24, 8. 28. **pervenit ad** : "came up with." 30. **in** : takes the accus., because motion *into* is implied. English would say "in." Compare line 40. 45. **restituere** : for they had burnt them down on leaving home.

36. The Fox and the Grapes.

Famē coācta vulpēs altā in vīneā
Ūvam appetēbat, summīs saliēns vīribus ;
Quam tangere ut nōn potuit, discēdēns ait :
"Nōndum mātūra est, nōlō acerbam sūmere."

N.—2. **summīs** : "all its" ; literally, "its greatest." 3. **Quam** : see note on 1, 5. 3. **ut** : "when," in which sense it is followed by the indicative. 4. **acerbam** : understand *uvam*.

37. Substance and Shadow.

Per pontem frūstum carnis cum ferret canis,
Lymphārum in speculō vidit simulācrum suum ;
Aliamque praedam ab alterō ferri putāns,
Ēripere voluit ; vērum dēcepta aviditās,
Et quem tenēbat ore dīmisit cibum,
Nec quem petēbat potuit adeō attingere.

5

N.—1. **Per** : "over." 4. **dēcepta** : understand *est*. 5. **quem** : the antecedent *cibum* should be translated first.

38. The Fox and the Goat.

Cum dēcidisset vulpēs in puteum inscia,
 Et altiōre clauderētur margine,
 Dēvēnit hircus sitiēns in eundem locum ;
 Simul rogāvit, esset an dulcis liquor
 Et cōpiōsus ? Illa fraudem mōliēns :
 Dēscende, amīce ; tanta bonitās est aquae
 Voluptās ut satiārī nōn possit mea.
 Immisit sē barbātus. Tum vulpēcūla
 Ēvāsit puteō, nīxa celais cornibus,
 Hircumque clausō liquit haerentem vadō.

5

10

N.—2. **altiore margine** : “by the sides which were too high for her.” The Latin comparative often means “too.” 5. **Illā** : “the other.” Understand *respondit* or *dixit*, which are often omitted in Latin. 10. **clauso vado** : “the deep-fenced pool.”

39. Cupboard-Love.

Dōnec eris fēlix, multōs numerābis amīcōs ;
 Tempora sī fuerint nūbila, sōlus eris.
 Aspicias, ut veniant ad candida tēcta columbae,
 Accipiat nullās sordida turris avēs ?
 Horrea formīcae tendunt ad inānia numquam ;
 Nullus ad āmissās ibit amīcus opēs.

5

N.—1. **eris** : “you are” ; literally, “you shall be.” So, *fuerint*, “are” ; literally, “shall have been.” Latin is far more exact than English in indicating the relation in time of a principal and a dependent clause. 3. **ut** : “how” ; with the subjunctive of indirect question. 6. **ibit** : “will come” ; from *eo* (Part III., section 45).

40. The Circle of the Year.

Diffūgēre nivēs, redeunt jam grāmina campīs
 Arboribusque comae ;
 Frīgora mitescunt Zephyrīs, vēr prōterit aestās
 Interitūra, simul
 Pōmifer Autumnus frūgēs effūderit, et mox
 Brūma recurrit iners.

5

N.—1. **Diffugere** : for *diffugerunt*. (See Part III., section 27, footnote 1.) 2. **comae** : also subject of *redeunt*. 3. **ver** : accus. 4. **Interitura** : “itself doomed to perish” ; literally, “about to perish.” 4. **simul** : for *simul atque*. 5. **effuderit** : future perfect ; freely, “has,” etc. ; see note on 39, 1.

41. The Joys of Country Life.

Beātus ille qui procul negōtiis,
 Ut prisca gēns mortālium,
 Paterna rūra bōbus exercet suis,
 Solūtus omni faenore,
 Neque excitātur classicō miles truci
 Neque horret irātum mare,
 Forumque vitat et superba civium
 Potentiōrum limina.

5

N.—2. **Ut**: "like." The Roman poets often speak of the early simple ages of the world as the happiest. 4. **faenore**: he has nothing to do with the money-lenders; as we might say with the stock-market. 5. **excitatur**: the subject is still *qui*, with which *miles*, "as a soldier," is in apposition. 6. **horret**, etc.: he is no trader by sea in search of wealth. 7. **Forum**, etc.: he is no politician or office-seeker.

42. The Death of the Pet Sparrow.

Lūgēte, ō Venerēs Cupīdinēsque;
 Passer mortuus est meae puellae,
 Passer, dēliciae meae puellae,
 Quem plūs illa oculis suis amābat.
 Nam mellītus erat, suamque nōrat
 Ipsam tam bene quam puella mātrem;
 Nec sēsē ā gremiō illius movēbat.
 Sed circumsiliēns modo hūc, modo illūc,
 Ad sōlam dominam ūsque pīpilābat;
 Quī nunc it per iter tenebricōsum
 Illūc unde negant redire quemquam.
 At vōbis male sit, malae tenebrae
 Orcī, quae omnia bella dēvorātis;
 Tam bellum mihi passerem abstulistis.
 Ō factum male, iō miselle passer,
 Tuā nunc operā, meae puellae
 Fiendō turgidulī rubent ocelli.

5

10

15

N.—2. **meae puellae**: "my lady's." 4. **illa**: "she." 4. **oculis**: abl. of comparison. 5. **suam ipsam**: "his own mistress." 5. **norat**: for *noverat*. 6. **puella**: the reference is general, not to the *puellae* of line 2. Understand *novit* from *noverat*. 10. **per**: "along." 11. **negant quemquam**: "they say no one." 12. **At**: "now"; marking a sudden outburst of passion. 13. **bella**: from *bellus*, adj. 17. **turgidulī rubent**: "are swollen and red." Notice the frequent diminutives in the concluding lines, to indicate tender sympathy.

PART III.

INFLECTION.

I. PARADIGMS OF INFLECTION

(4) THE NOUN.¹

1. First Declension.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nominative.</i>	mēnsa, F.	mēnsae
<i>Genitive.</i>	mēnsae	mēnsārum
<i>Dative.</i>	mēnsae	mēnsīs
<i>Accusative.</i>	mēnsam	mēnsās
<i>Vocative.</i>	mēnsa	mēnsae
<i>Ablative.</i>	mēnsā	mēnsīs

2. Second Declension.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nominative.</i>	servus, M.	servī
<i>Genitive.</i>	servī	servōrum
<i>Dative.</i>	servō	servīs
<i>Accusative.</i>	servum	servōs
<i>Vocative.</i>	serve	servī
<i>Ablative.</i>	servō	servīs

1. Generally speaking, the nominative represents a noun as subject, the accusative as direct object; the genitive denotes the relation expressed by *of*; the dative (the case of the indirect object) denotes the relation expressed by *to* or *for*, and the ablative that expressed by *with*, *by*, *from* or *in*; the vocative is used in direct address.

The genitive, dative, accusative and ablative are called the *Oblique Cases*.

3. Second Declension (*continued*).

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	puer, m.	vir, m.	ager, m.	templum, n.
<i>Gen.</i>	puerī	virī	agrī	templī
<i>Dat.</i>	puerō	virō	agrō	templō
<i>Acc.</i>	puerum	virum	agrum	templum
<i>Voc.</i>	puer	vir	ager	templum
<i>Abl.</i>	puerō	virō	agrō	templō

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	puerī	virī	agrī	templa
<i>Gen.</i>	puerōrum	virōrum	agrōrum	templōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puerīs	virīs	agrīs	templīs
<i>Acc.</i>	puerōs	virōs	agrōs	templa
<i>Voc.</i>	puerī	virī	agrī	templa
<i>Abl.</i>	puerīs	virīs	agrīs	templīs

4. Third Declension—Masculine and Feminine Nouns.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	rēx, m.	cōnsul, m.	mīles, m.	pater, m.
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgis	cōnsulis	militis	patris
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgī	cōnsulī	militī	patri
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgem	cōnsulem	militem	patrem
<i>Voc.</i>	rēx	cōnsul	mīles	pater
<i>Abl.</i>	rēge	cōnsule	militē	patre

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	rēgēs	cōnsulēs	militēs	patrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgum	cōnsulum	militum	patrum
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgibus	cōnsulibus	militibus	patribus
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgēs	cōnsulēs	militēs	patrēs
<i>Voc.</i>	rēgēs	cōnsulēs	militēs	patrēs
<i>Abl.</i>	rēgibus	cōnsulibus	militibus	patribus

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	homō, M.	hiems, F.	virtūs, F.	regiō, F.
<i>Gen.</i>	hominis	hiemis	virtutis	regiōnis
<i>Dat.</i>	hominī	hiemī	virtutī	regiōnī
<i>Acc.</i>	hominem	hiemem	virtutem	regiōnem
<i>Voc.</i>	homō	hiems	virtūs	regiō
<i>Abl.</i>	homine	hieme	virtute	regiōne

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	hominēs	hiemēs	virtūtēs	regiōnēs
<i>Gen.</i>	hominum	hiemum	virtutum	regiōnum
<i>Dat.</i>	hominibus	hiemibus	virtutibus	regiōnibus
<i>Acc.</i>	hominēs	hiemēs	virtūtēs	regiōnēs
<i>Voc.</i>	hominēs	hiemēs	virtūtēs	regiōnēs
<i>Abl.</i>	hominibus	hiemibus	virtutibus	regiōnibus

5. Third Declension—Neuter Nouns.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	nōmen, N.	corpus, N.	opus, N.	iter, N.
<i>Gen.</i>	nōminis	corporis	operis	itineris
<i>Dat.</i>	nōminī	corporī	operī	itinerī
<i>Acc.</i>	nōmen	corpus	opus	iter
<i>Voc.</i>	nōmen	corpus	opus	iter
<i>Abl.</i>	nōmine	corpore	opere	itinere

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	nōmina	corpora	opera	itinerā
<i>Gen.</i>	nōminum	corporum	operum	itinerum
<i>Dat.</i>	nōminibus	corporibus	operibus	itineribus
<i>Acc.</i>	nōmina	corpora	opera	itinerā
<i>Voc.</i>	nōmina	corpora	opera	itinerā
<i>Abl.</i>	nōminibus	corporibus	operibus	itineribus

6. Third Declension—I-stems.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	urbs, F.	ignis, M.	nūbēs, F.	mare, N.
<i>Gen.</i>	urbis	ignis	nūbis	maris
<i>Dat.</i>	urbī	ignī	nūbī	marī
<i>Acc.</i>	urbem	ignem	nūbem	mare
<i>Voc.</i>	urbs	ignis	nūbēs	mare
<i>Abl.</i>	urbe	ignī	nūbe	marī

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	urbēs	ignēs	nūbēs	maria
<i>Gen.</i>	urbium	ignium	nūbium	marium
<i>Dat.</i>	urbibus	ignibus	nūbibus	maribus
<i>Acc.</i>	urbēs ¹	ignēs ¹	nūbēs ¹	maria
<i>Voc.</i>	urbēs	ignēs	nūbēs	maria
<i>Abl.</i>	urbibus	ignibus	nūbibus	maribus

7. Fourth Declension.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	fructus. M.	fructūs	cornū, N.	cornua
<i>Gen.</i>	fructūs	fructuum	cornūs	cornuum
<i>Dat.</i>	fructuī	fructibus	cornū	cornibus
<i>Acc.</i>	fructum	fructūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Voc.</i>	fructus	fructūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Abl.</i>	fructū	fructibus	cornū	cornibus

8. Fifth Declension.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	rēs, F.	rēs	diēs, M.	diēs
<i>Gen.</i>	rei	rērum	diēi	diērum
<i>Dat.</i>	rei	rēbus	diēi	diēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	rem	rēs	diem	diēs
<i>Voc.</i>	rēs	rēs	diēs	diēs
<i>Abl.</i>	rē	rēbus	diē	diēbus

9. Nouns Irregular in Declension.

(The forms in parentheses should be avoided in writing Latin; the forms in italics are scarcely classical.)

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	vīs, F.	vīrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	(vīs)	vīrium
<i>Dat.</i>	(vī)	vīribus
<i>Acc.</i>	vim	vīrēs
<i>Voc.</i>		vīrēs
<i>Abl.</i>	vī	vīribus

1. The accusative plural of i-stems is also written *urbis*, *nūbis*, *ignis*.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	deus, M.	bōs, M. and F.
<i>Gen.</i>	deī	bovis
<i>Dat.</i>	deō	bovī
<i>Acc.</i>	deum	bovem
<i>Voc.</i>	deus	bōs
<i>Abl.</i>	deō	bove

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	dī (deī, diī)	bovēs
<i>Gen.</i>	deōrum, deūm	boum (bovum)
<i>Dat.</i>	dīs (deīs, diīs)	būbus (bōbus)
<i>Acc.</i>	deōs	bovēs
<i>Voc.</i>	dī (deī, diī)	bovēs
<i>Abl.</i>	dīs (deīs, diīs)	būbus (bōbus)

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	domus, F.	Juppiter, M.
<i>Gen.</i>	domūs (locative domī)	Jovis
<i>Dat.</i>	domuī (domō)	Jovī
<i>Acc.</i>	domum	Jovem
<i>Voc.</i>	domus	Juppiter
<i>Abl.</i>	domō (domū)	Jove

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	domūs
<i>Gen.</i>	domuum (domōrum)
<i>Dat.</i>	domibus
<i>Acc.</i>	domōs (domūs)
<i>Voc.</i>	domūs
<i>Abl.</i>	domibus

Rēspūblica, gen. *reīpūblicae*, and *jūsjurandum*, gen. *jūrisjurandī*, are really compound words, consisting of a noun and an adjective in agreement, both of which are declined. *Rēspūblica* is often, and *jūsjurandum* sometimes, written as two words.

Paterfamiliās or *paterfamiliae*, and *māterfamiliās* or *māterfamiliae*, (literally, the father, or mother, of a household), have only the first part, *pater* and *māter*, declined. Occasionally, *familiārum* is found in the plural. The form *familiās* is an old genitive singular.

(B) THE ADJECTIVE.

10. First and Second Declensions.

SINGULAR.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>Voc.</i>	bone	bona	bonum
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Voc.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Abl.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
SINGULAR.			
<i>Nom.</i>	liber	libera	liberum
<i>Gen.</i>	liberī	liberae	liberī
<i>Dat.</i>	liberō	liberae	liberō
<i>Acc.</i>	liberum	liberam	liberum
<i>Voc.</i>	liber	libera	liberum
<i>Abl.</i>	liberō	liberā	liberō
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>Gen.</i>	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
<i>Acc.</i>	liberōs	liberās	libera
<i>Voc.</i>	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>Abl.</i>	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
SINGULAR.			
<i>Nom.</i>	aeger	aegra	aegrum
<i>Gen.</i>	aegrī	aegrae	aegrī
<i>Dat.</i>	aegrō	aegrae	aegrō
<i>Acc.</i>	aegrum	aegram	aegrum
<i>Voc.</i>	aeger	aegra	aegrum
<i>Abl.</i>	aegrō	aegrā	aegrō

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegrae</i>	<i>aegra</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>aegrōrum</i>	<i>aegrārum</i>	<i>aegrōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>aegrōs</i>	<i>aegrās</i>	<i>aegra</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegrae</i>	<i>aegra</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>

11. Third Declension.

SINGULAR.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ācrēs</i> ¹	<i>ācrēs</i> ¹	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>

SING.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUTER.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>fortis</i>	<i>forte</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>fēlix</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>fortis</i>	<i>fortis</i>	<i>fēlicis</i>	<i>fēlicis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>fortī</i>	<i>fortī</i>	<i>fēlicī</i>	<i>fēlicī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>fortem</i>	<i>forte</i>	<i>fēlicem</i>	<i>fēlix</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>fortis</i>	<i>forte</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>fēlix</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>fortī</i>	<i>fortī</i>	<i>fēlicī</i>	<i>fēlicī</i>

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>fortēs</i>	<i>fortia</i>	<i>fēlicēs</i>	<i>fēlicia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>fortium</i>	<i>fortium</i>	<i>fēlicium</i>	<i>fēlicium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>fortibus</i>	<i>fortibus</i>	<i>fēlicibus</i>	<i>fēlicibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>fortēs</i> ¹	<i>fortia</i>	<i>fēlicēs</i> ¹	<i>fēlicia</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>fortēs</i>	<i>fortia</i>	<i>fēlicēs</i>	<i>fēlicia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>fortibus</i>	<i>fortibus</i>	<i>fēlicibus</i>	<i>fēlicibus</i>

1. The accusative plural is also written *ācrie*, *fortis*, etc., (compare section 6).

12. Declension of Comparatives and Superlatives.

SING.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUTER.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	fortior	fortius		plūs
<i>Gen.</i>	fortiōris	fortiōris		plūris
<i>Dat.</i>	fortiōrī	fortiōrī		
<i>Acc.</i>	fortiōrem	fortius		plūs
<i>Voc.</i>	fortior	fortius		
<i>Abl.</i>	fortiōre	fortiōre		(plūre)

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	fortiōrēs	fortiōra	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Gen.</i>	fortiōrum	fortiōrum	plūrium	plūrium
<i>Dat.</i>	fortiōribus	fortiōribus	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Acc.</i>	fortiōrēs	fortiōra	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Voc.</i>	fortiōrēs	fortiōra	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Abl.</i>	fortiōribus	fortiōribus	plūribus	plūribus

Complūrēs, a compound of *plūrēs*, is declined like it.

All superlatives end in *us*, *a*, *um*, and are declined like *bonus* (section 10).

13. Comparison of Adjectives.

I. Adjectives are regularly compared by changing the ending (*i*, or *is*) of the genitive singular to *ior*, *ius*, for the comparative degree, and to *issimus*, *a*, *um*, for the superlative degree (see Lesson XXVIII., page 43).

II. Adjectives ending in *-er* form the superlative by adding *-rimus* to the nominative in *-er*: e.g., *ācer*, *ācerrimus*; *miser*, *miserimus*.

III. Six adjectives in *-ilis* form the superlative by changing *-ilis* to *-illimus*. These adjectives are *facilis*, *difficilis*, *similis*, *dissimilis*, *gracilis*, *humilis*.

IV. The following adjectives are quite irregular in their comparison:¹

1. See further, section 60.

<i>good.</i>	bonus	melior	optimus
<i>rich.</i>	dīves	dīvitior, dītior	dīvitissimus, dītissimus
<i>great.</i>	māgnus	mājor	māximus
<i>small.</i>	parvus	minōr	minimus
<i>evil.</i>	malus	pējor	pessimus
<i>much.</i>	multus	plūs (neut.)	plūrimus
<i>young.</i>	juvenis	jūnior	(minimus nātū)
<i>old.</i>	senex	senior	(māximus nātū)
<i>early.</i>	mātūrus		mātūrrimus
<i>near.</i>		citerior	citimus
<i>water, power.</i>		dēterior	dēterrimus
<i>inner.</i>		interior	intimus
<i>former.</i>		prior	prīmus
<i>earlier.</i>		propior	proximus <i>next</i>
<i>near.</i>		ūterior	ūltimus
<i>further.</i>		exterior	extrēmus, extimus
<i>under.</i>	exterus	inferior	īnīmus, īnus
<i>low.</i>	īnferus	posterior	postrēmus, postumus
<i>back.</i>	posterus	superior	suprēmus, summus
	superus		

14. Irregular Declension.

SING.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	neuter	neutra	neutrum
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	neutrīus	neutrīus	neutrīus
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	neutrī	neutrī	neutrī
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	neutrum	neutram	neutrum
<i>Voc.</i>	ūne	ūna	ūnum			
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	neutrō	neutrā	neutrō
PLURAL.						
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnī	ūnae	ūna	neutrī	neutrae	neutra
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnōrum	ūnārum	ūnōrum	neutrōrum	neutrārum	neutrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs	neutrīs	neutrīs	neutrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnōs	ūnās	ūna	neutrōs	neutrās	neutra
<i>Voc.</i>	ūnī	ūnae	ūna			
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs	neutrīs	neutrīs	neutrīs

The following adjectives of the first and second declensions have

their genitive singular in *-ius*,¹ and their dative singular in *i*, in all genders.

(*alius*, a, um *another* (*whole alt*) (*alter*, era, erum *the other* (*of the*)

nūllus, a, um *no* (*neither*) (*neither*) (*neither*)

(*sōlus*, a, um *only or alone*) (*unus*, a, um *one*) (*uter*, tra, trum *which of two*)

(N.B.—*Alius* has in the genitive singular, *aliūs*; in the dative singular, *aliī*. The genitive *aliūs* is, however, seldom found, *alterius*, or in the possessive sense, *aliēnus*, a, um, being used instead.)

15. List of Numerals.

CARDINALS.

1. *ūnus*, a, um, *one*
2. *du-o*, -ae, -o, *two*
3. *trēs*, *tria*, *three*
4. *quattuor*, *four*
5. *quīque*, *etc.*
6. *sex*
7. *septem*
8. *octo*
9. *novem*
10. *decem*
11. *ūndecim*
12. *duodecim*
13. *tredecim*
14. *quattuordecim*
15. *quīndecim*
16. *sēdecim*
17. *septendecim*
18. *duodēvigintī*²
19. *ūndēvigintī*²
20. *vīgintī*
21. { *ūnus et vīgintī*
 vīgintī ūnus
28. *duodētrīgintā*²
29. *ūndētrīgintā*²

ORDINALS.

- prīmus*, *first*
- secundus*, *second* (*also alter*)
- tertius*, *third*
- quārtus*, *fourth*
- quīntus*, *etc.*
- sextus*
- septimus*
- octāvus*
- nōnus*
- decimus*
- ūndecimus*
- duodecimus*
- tertius decimus*
- quārtus decimus*
- quīntus decimus*
- sextus decimus*
- septimus decimus*
- duodēvicēsīmus*
- ūndēvicēsīmus*
- vicēsīmus*
- prīmus et vicēsīmus*
- vicēsīmus prīmus*
- duodētrīcēsīmus*
- ūndētrīcēsīmus*

1. In poetry the genitive often occurs in *-ius*, not in *-iūs*, with many of these words. With *alter* this seems to have been the rule in prose as well.

2. Literally, *two (one) from twenty (thirty)*, etc. The compound forms also occur, e.g., *decem et octo*, *octodecim*, etc.

CARDINALS.

30.	trigintā
40.	quadragintā
50.	quingūagintā
60.	sexāgintā
70.	septuāgintā
80.	octōgintā
90.	nōnāgintā
100.	centum
101.	{ centum ūnus centum et ūnus
200.	ducentī, ae, a
300.	trecentī, ae, a
400.	quadringentī, ae, a
500.	quingentī, ae, a
600.	sescentī, ae, a
700.	septingentī, ae, a
800.	octingentī, ae, a
900.	nōngentī, ae, a
1000.	mille
2000.	duo millia (mīlia)

ORDINALS.

tricēsimus
quadragēsimus
quingūagēsimus
sexagēsimus
septuagēsimus
octogēsimus
nōnagēsimus
centēsimus
centēsimus primus
centēsimus et primus
ducentēsimus
trecentēsimus
quadringentēsimus
quingentēsimus
sescentēsimus
septingentēsimus
octingentēsimus
nōngentēsimus
millēsimus
bis millēsimus

16. Declension of Numerals.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria	millia
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	millium
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	millibus
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs	tria	millia
<i>Voc.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria	millia
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	millibus

For the declension of *ūnus*, see section 14.

The hundreds, from *ducentī* to *nōngentī*, are declined like the plural of *bonus*, section 10.

All the other cardinal numerals are indeclinable.

The ordinal numerals are all declined like *bonus*, section 10, except *alter*, for which see section 14.

(C) THE ADVERB.

17. Formation from Adjectives, and Comparison.

I. Adverbs are regularly formed from adjectives in the following manner :

(a) In the positive, by changing the ending of the genitive singular of adjectives of the first and second declensions to *-ē*, of adjectives of the third declension to *-iter* (or, in a few cases, to *-ter*).

(b) In the comparative, by taking the neuter accusative singular of the comparative of the adjective, that is, by changing *-or* of the comparative of the adjective to *-us*.

(c) In the superlative, by changing *-us* of the superlative of the adjective to *-ē*.

For examples, see Lesson LII., page 76.

II. In many cases the accusative singular neuter, or the ablative singular, is used as an adverb ; *e.g.* :

ADJECTIVE.	ADVERB.	ADJECTIVE.	ADVERB.
multus	multum	plūrimus	plūrimum
facilis	facile	prīmus	prīmum
subitus	subitō	certus	certō
crēber	crēbrō	ūnus	ūnā

III. The following are irregular in formation or comparison :

bene	melius	optimē
parum	minus	minimē
[māgnopere]	magis	māximē
diū	diūtius	diūtissimē
saepe	saepius	saepissimē

(D) THE PRONOUN.

18. First Person.

SINGULAR.

Nom. ego

Gen. mei

Dat. mihi

Acc. mē

Voc.

Abl. mē

19. Second Person.

tū

tuī

tibi

tē

tū

tē

20. Third

Person Reflexive.

sui

sibi

sē (sēsē)

sē (sēsē)

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	nōs	vōs	
<i>Gen.</i>	nostrūm, nostrī	vestrūm, vestrī	sui
<i>Dat.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	nōs	vōs	sē (sēsē)
<i>Voc.</i>		vōs	
<i>Abl.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē (sēsē)

21. Possessive Pronouns.

meus, a, um, <i>my, mine</i>	noster, nostra, nostrum, <i>our, ours</i>
tuus, a, um, <i>your, yours</i>	vester, vestra, vestrum, <i>your, yours</i>
suus, a, um, <i>his, her, hers, its</i>	suus, a, um, <i>their, theirs</i>

These are all declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions, section 10, except that the vocative singular masculine of *meus* is *mī*, rarely *meus*.

22. Third Personal, and Demonstrative Pronoun.

Is, he, she, it, etc. ; that.

SINGULAR.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id
<i>Gen.</i>	ejus	ejus	ejus
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	eī, iī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

23. Demonstrative Pronouns.

*Hic, this.**Ille, that.*

SING.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hūjus</i>	<i>hūjus</i>	<i>hūjus</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hi</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>

The pronoun *iste, a, ud, that of yours*, is declined exactly like *ille*.

*Ipsē, -self.**Idem, the same.*

SING.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>Idem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>idem</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ējusdem</i>	<i>ējusdem</i>	<i>ējusdem</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	{ <i>eīdem</i> , <i>iīdem</i>	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	{ <i>eīsdem</i> , <i>iīsdem</i> ¹	<i>eīsdem</i> , <i>iīsdem</i> ¹	<i>eīsdem</i> , <i>iīsdem</i> ¹
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	{ <i>eīsdem</i> , <i>iīsdem</i> ¹	<i>eīsdem</i> , <i>iīsdem</i> ¹	<i>eīsdem</i> , <i>iīsdem</i> ¹

1. For *iīsdem* we often find *īsdem*.

24. Relative Pronoun.

SINGULAR.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod
<i>Gen.</i>	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus

25. Interrogative Pronoun.

The Interrogative Pronoun differs from the relative pronoun in having *quis* in Nom. Sing. Masc., and *quid* in Nom. and Acc. Sing. Neut. There is also the Interrogative Pronominal Adjective *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, declined exactly like the Relative Pronoun.

26. Indefinite Pronouns.

The Indefinite Pronouns are compounds of *quis* or *quī*, and are for the most part declined like them.¹

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
aliquis, aliquī	aliqua	aliquid, aliquod

(The neuter plural, as well as the feminine singular, has *-qua* for *-quae*.)

quis, quī	qua	quid, quod
-----------	-----	------------

(The neuter plural, as well as the feminine singular, has *qua* for *quae*.)

quisque	quaeque	quicque or quidque, quodque
quisquam		quicquam or quidquam

(The plural and the feminine singular are not used.)

1. In this list where a word has both *quis* and *quī*, or both *quid* and *quod*, the forms in *quī* and *quod* are generally used adjectively, the others substantively.

MASCULINE.

quisquis

FEMININE.

(quaeque)

NEUTER.

quicquid or quidquid

(Only *quisquis*, *quicquid* or *quidquid* and *quodquod* are in common use.)

quidam

quaedam

quiddam, quoddam

(*Quidam* changes *m* to *n* before *-dam*.)

quicunque

quaecunque

quodcunque

quivis

quaevis

quidvis, quodvis

quispiam

quaepiam

quidpiam or quippiam, quod-
piam

quilibet

quaelibet

quidlibet, quodlibet

also

uterque

utraque

utrumque

Uterque has the first part declined like *uter*, section 14.

26a. Correlatives.

Of the pronouns which have corresponding forms, the commonest are the following :

INTERROGATIVE.

quis,
who?

DEMONSTRATIVE.

is
(hic, ille, iste)

RELATIVE.

qui

INDEFINITE.

aliquis
quis, quisquam,
quivis, quidamquālis,
of what sort?

tālis

quālis

quantus,
how great?

tantus

quantus

aliquantus

quot,
how many?

tot

quot

aliquot

uter, which
of the two?uterque,
neuter, alter

(E) THE VERB.

27. Indicative Mood, Active Voice.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

<i>First Conjug.</i>	<i>Second Conjug.</i>	<i>Third Conjug.</i>	<i>Fourth Conjug.</i>
1. amō	monēō	regō	audiō
2. amās	monēs	regis	audis
3. amat	monet	regit	audit

PLURAL.

1. amāmus	monēmus	regimus	audīmus
2. amātis	monētis	regitis	auditis
3. amant	monent	regunt	audiunt

SINGULAR.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

1. amābam	monēbam	regēbam	audiēbam
2. amābās	monēbās	regēbās	audiēbās
3. amābat	monēbat	regēbat	audiēbat

PLURAL.

1. amābāmus	monēbāmus	regēbāmus	audiēbāmus
2. amābātis	monēbātis	regēbātis	audiēbātis
3. amābant	monēbant	regēbant	audiēbant

SINGULAR.

FUTURE TENSE.

1. amābō	monēbō	regam	audiam
2. amābis	monēbis	regēs	audiēs
3. amābit	monēbit	reget	audiet

PLURAL.

1. amābimus	monēbimus	regēmus	audiēmus
2. amābitis	monēbitis	regētis	audiētis
3. amābunt	monēbunt	regent	audient

(E) THE VERB.

28. Indicative Mood, Passive Voice.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

<i>First Conjug.</i>	<i>Second Conjug.</i>	<i>Third Conjug.</i>	<i>Fourth Conjug.</i>
1. amor	moneor	regor	audior
2. amāris ¹	monēris ¹	regeris ¹	audīris ¹
3. amātur	monētur	regitur	audītur

PLURAL.

1. amāmur	monēmur	regimur	audīmur
2. amāminī	monēminī	regiminī	audīminī
3. amantur	monentur	reguntur	audiuntur

SINGULAR.

<i>First Conjug.</i>	<i>Second Conjug.</i>	<i>Third Conjug.</i>	<i>Fourth Conjug.</i>
1. amābar	monēbar	regēbar	audiēbar
2. amābāris ¹	monēbāris ¹	regēbāris ¹	audiēbāris ¹
3. amābātur	monēbātur	regēbātur	audiēbātur

PLURAL.

1. amābamur	monēbāmur	regēbāmur	audiēbāmur
2. amābāminī	monēbāminī	regēbāminī	audiēbāminī
3. amābantur	monēbantur	regēbantur	audiēbantur

SINGULAR.

<i>First Conjug.</i>	<i>Second Conjug.</i>	<i>Third Conjug.</i>	<i>Fourth Conjug.</i>
1. amābor	monēbor	regar	audiā
2. amāberis ¹	monēberis ¹	regēris ¹	audiēris ¹
3. amābitur	monēbitur	regētur	audiētur

PLURAL.

1. amābimur	monēbimur	regēmur	audiēmur
2. amābiminī	monēbiminī	regēminī	audiēminī
3. amābuntur	monēbuntur	regentur	audientur

FUTURE TENSE.

1. For *-ris, -re* also is found, especially in the imperfect and future tenses.

27. Indicative Mood, Active Voice (*continued*).

PERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

<i>First Conjug.</i>	<i>Second Conjug.</i>	<i>Third Conjug.</i>	<i>Fourth Conjug.</i>
1. amāvi	monui	rēxi	audīvi
2. amāvisti	monuisti	rēxisti	audīvisti
3. amāvit	monuit	rēxit	audīvit

PLURAL.

1. amāvimus	monuimus	rēximus	audīvimus
2. amāvistis	monuistis	rēxistis	audīvistis
3. amāverunt ¹	monuērunt ¹	rēxērunt ¹	audīverunt ¹

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. amāveram	monueram	rēxeram	audīveram
2. amāverās	monuerās	rēxerās	audīverās
3. amāverat	monuerat	rēxerat	audīverat

PLURAL.

1. amāverāmus	monuerāmus	rēxerāmus	audīverāmus
2. amāverātis	monuerātis	rēxerātis	audīverātis
3. amāverant	monuerant	rēxerant	audīverant

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. amāverō	monuerō	rēxerō	audīverō
2. amāveris	monueris	rēxeris	audīveris
3. amāverit	monuerit	rēxerit	audīverit

PLURAL.

1. amāverimus	monuerimus	rēxerimus	audīverimus
2. amāveritis	monueritis	rēxeritis	audīveritis
3. amāverint	monuerint	rēxerint	audīverint

1. For *-erunt*, *-ere* also is found, especially in poetry.

28. Indicative Mood, Passive Voice (*continued*).

PERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

<i>First Conjug.</i>	<i>Second Conjug.</i>	<i>Third Conjug.</i>	<i>Fourth Conjug.</i>
1. amātus ¹ sum	monitus ¹ sum	rēctus ¹ sum	auditus ¹ sum
2. " es	" es	" es	" es
3. " est	" est	" est	" est

PLURAL.

1. amātī ¹ sumus	monitī ¹ sumus	rēctī ¹ sumus	audītī ¹ sumus
2. " estis	" estis	" estis	" estis
3. " sunt	" sunt	" sunt	" sunt

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. amātus ¹ eram	monitus ¹ eram	rēctus ¹ eram	auditus ¹ eram
2. " erās	" erās	" erās	" erās
3. " erat	" erat	" erat	" erat

PLURAL.

1. amātī ¹ erāmus	monitī ¹ erāmus	rēctī ¹ erāmus	audītī ¹ erāmus
2. " erātis	" erātis	" erātis	" erātis
3. " erant	" erant	" erant	" erant

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. amātus ¹ erō	monitus ¹ erō	rēctus ¹ erō	auditus ¹ erō
2. " eris	" eris	" eris	" eris
3. " erit	" erit	" erit	" erit

PLURAL.

1. amātī ¹ erimus	monitī ¹ erimus	rēctī ¹ erimus	audītī ¹ erimus
2. " eritis	" eritis	" eritis	" eritis
3. " erunt	" erunt	" erunt	" erunt

1. Instead of *amatus* and *amati*, *amata* or *amatum* are used in the singular and *amatae* or *amata* in the plural, if the subject is feminine or neuter instead of masculine. So in all conjugations.

29. Subjunctive Mood, Active Voice.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

<i>First Conjug.</i>	<i>Second Conjug.</i>	<i>Third Conjug.</i>	<i>Fourth Conjug.</i>
1. amem	moneam	regam	audiam
2. amēs	moneās	regās	audiās
3. amet	moneat	regat	audiat

PLURAL.

1. amēmus	moneāmus	regāmus	audiāmus
2. amētis	moneātis	regātis	audiātis
3. ament	moneant	regant	audiant

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. amārem	monērem	regerem	audīrem
2. amārēs	monērēs	regerēs	audirēs
3. amāret	monēret	regeret	audiret

PLURAL.

1. amārēmus	monērēmus	regerēmus	audirēmus
2. amārētis	monērētis	regerētis	audirētis
3. amārent	monērent	regerent	audirent

PERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. amāverim	monuerim	rēxerim	audīverim
2. amāveris	monueris	rēxeris	audiveris
3. amāverit	monuerit	rēxerit	audiverit

PLURAL.

1. amāverimus	monuerimus	rēxerimus	audīverimus
2. amāveritis	monueritis	rēxeritis	audiveritis
3. amāverint	monuerint	rēxerint	audiverint

30. Subjunctive Mood, Passive Voice.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

<i>First Conjug.</i>	<i>Second Conjug.</i>	<i>Third Conjug.</i>	<i>Fourth Conjug.</i>
1. <i>amer</i>	<i>monear</i>	<i>regar</i>	<i>audiar</i>
2. <i>amēris</i> ¹	<i>moneāris</i> ¹	<i>regāris</i> ¹	<i>audiāris</i> ¹
3. <i>amētur</i>	<i>moneātur</i>	<i>regātur</i>	<i>audiātur</i>

PLURAL.

1. <i>amēmur</i>	<i>moneāmur</i>	<i>regāmur</i>	<i>audiāmur</i>
2. <i>amēmini</i>	<i>moneāmini</i>	<i>regāmini</i>	<i>audiāmini</i>
3. <i>amentur</i>	<i>moneantur</i>	<i>regantur</i>	<i>audiantur</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. <i>amārer</i>	<i>monērer</i>	<i>regerer</i>	<i>audīrer</i>
2. <i>amārēris</i> ¹	<i>monērēris</i> ¹	<i>regerēris</i> ¹	<i>audirēris</i> ¹
3. <i>amārētur</i>	<i>monērētur</i>	<i>regerētur</i>	<i>audirētur</i>

PLURAL.

1. <i>amārēmur</i>	<i>monērēmur</i>	<i>regerēmur</i>	<i>audirēmur</i>
2. <i>amārēmini</i>	<i>monērēmini</i>	<i>regerēmini</i>	<i>audirēmini</i>
3. <i>amārentur</i>	<i>monērentur</i>	<i>regerentur</i>	<i>audirentur</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

1. <i>amātus</i> ² <i>sim</i>	<i>monitus</i> ² <i>sim</i>	<i>rēctus</i> ² <i>sim</i>	<i>audītus</i> ² <i>sim</i>
2. " <i>sīs</i>	" <i>sīs</i>	" <i>sīs</i>	" <i>sīs</i>
3. " <i>sit</i>	" <i>sit</i>	" <i>sit</i>	" <i>sit</i>

PLURAL.

1. <i>amātī</i> ² <i>sīmus</i>	<i>monitī</i> ² <i>sīmus</i>	<i>rēctī</i> ² <i>sīmus</i>	<i>audītī</i> ² <i>sīmus</i>
2. " <i>sītis</i>	" <i>sītis</i>	" <i>sītis</i>	" <i>sītis</i>
3. " <i>sint</i>	" <i>sint</i>	" <i>sint</i>	" <i>sint</i>

1. For *-ris*, *-re* also is found.

2. See footnote 1, page 155.

29. Subjunctive Mood, Active Voice (*continued*).

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

<i>First Conjug.</i>	<i>Second Conjug.</i>	<i>Third Conjug.</i>	<i>Fourth Conjug.</i>
1. amāvissem	monuissē	rēxissem	audīvissem
2. amāvissēs	monuissēs	rēxissēs	audīvissēs
3. amāvisset	monuisset	rēxisset	audīvisset

PLURAL.

1. amāvissēmus	monuissēmus	rēxissēmus	audīvissēmus
2. amāvissētis	monuissētis	rēxissētis	audīvissētis
3. amāvissent	monuissent	rēxissent	audīvissent

31. Infinitive Mood, Active Voice.

PRESENT.

amāre	monēre	regere	audire
-------	--------	--------	--------

PERFECT.

amāvisse	monuisse	rēxisse	audīvisse
----------	----------	---------	-----------

FUTURE.

amātūrus esse ¹	monitūrus esse ¹	rēctūrus esse ¹	audītūrus esse ¹
----------------------------	-----------------------------	----------------------------	-----------------------------

33. Participle, Active Voice.

PRESENT.

amāns	monēns	regēns	audiēns
-------	--------	--------	---------

FUTURE.

amātūrus	monitūrus	rēctūrus	audītūrus
----------	-----------	----------	-----------

¹ See footnote 2, page 81.

30. Subjunctive Mood, Passive Voice (*continua*)**PLUPERFECT TENSE.****SINGULAR.**

	<i>First Conjug.</i>	<i>Second Conjug.</i>	<i>Third Conjug.</i>	<i>Fourth Conjug.</i>
1.	amātus ¹ essem	monitus ¹ essem	rēctus ¹ essem	auditus ¹ essem
2.	" essēs	" essēs	" essēs	" essēs
3.	" esset	" esset	" esset	" esset

PLURAL.

1.	amātī ¹ essēmus	monitī ¹ essēmus	rēctī ¹ essēmus	audītī ¹ essēmus
2.	" essētis	" essētis	" essētis	" essētis
3.	" essent	" essent	" essent	" essent

32. Infinitive Mood, Passive Voice.**PRESENT.**

amārī	monērī	regī	audīrī
-------	--------	------	--------

PERFECT.

amātus esse ²	monitus esse ²	rēctus esse ²	auditus esse ²
--------------------------	---------------------------	--------------------------	---------------------------

FUTURE.

amātum irī	monitum irī	rēctum irī	auditum irī
------------	-------------	------------	-------------

34. Participles, Passive Voice.**PERFECT.**

amātus	monitus	rēctus	auditus
--------	---------	--------	---------

GERUNDIVE.

amandus	monendus	regendus	audiendus
---------	----------	----------	-----------

1. See footnote 1, page 165.

2. The perfect infinitive is made up of the perfect participle passive in *-us* and the infinitive of *sum*, which is sometimes omitted. The participle will, of course, agree in gender, number and case with the person or thing it refers to, i.e., the subject.

35. Gerund, Active Voice.

	<i>First Conj.</i>	<i>Second Conj.</i>	<i>Third Conj.</i>	<i>Fourth Conj.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	amandī	monendī	regendī	audiendī
<i>Dat.</i>	amandō	monendō	regendō	audiendō
<i>Acc.</i>	amandum	monendum	regendum	audiendum
<i>Abl.</i>	amandō	monendō	regendō	audiendō

36. Supine, Active Voice.

<i>Acc.</i>	amātum	monitum	rēctum	audītum
<i>Abl.</i>	amātū	monitū	rēctū	auditū

37. Imperative Mood, Active Voice.**PRESENT TENSE.**

<i>Sing. 2.</i>	amā	monē	rege	audi
<i>Plur. 2.</i>	amāte	monēte	regite	audite

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing. 2.</i>	amātō	monētō	regitō	auditō
3.	amātō	monētō	regitō	auditō
<i>Plur. 2.</i>	amātōte	monētōte	regitōte	auditōte
3.	amantō	monentō	reguntō	audiuntō

38. Imperative Mood, Passive Voice.**PRESENT TENSE.**

<i>Sing. 2.</i>	amāre	monēre	regere	audire
<i>Plur. 2.</i>	amāmini	monēmini	regimini	audimini

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing. 2.</i>	amātor	monētor	regitor	auditor
3.	amātor	monētor	regitor	auditor
<i>Plur. 3.</i>	amantor	monentor	reguntor	audiuntor

29. Verbs in *iō* of Third Conjugation.¹

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

	<i>Active Voice.</i>	<i>Passive Voice.</i>	<i>Active Voice.</i>	<i>Passive Voice.</i>
<i>Sing.</i> 1. capiō	capior	capiam	capiar	
2. capis	caperis	capiās	capiāris	
3. capit	capitur	capiat	capiātur	
<i>Plur.</i> 1. capimus	capimur	capiāmus	capiāmur	
2. capitis	capimini	capiātis	capiāmini	
3. capiunt	capiuntur	capiant	capiantur	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. capiēbam	capiēbar	caperem	caperer
2. capiēbās	capiēbāris	caperēs	caperēris
3. capiēbat	capiēbātur	caperet	caperētur
<i>Plur.</i> 1. capiēbāmus	capiēbāmur	caperēmus	caperēmur
2. capiēbātis	capiēbāmini	caperētis	caperēmini
3. capiēbant	capiēbantur	caperent	caperentur

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. capiam	capiar
2. capiēs	capiēris
3. capiet	capiētur
<i>Plur.</i> 1. capiēmus	capiēmur
2. capiētis	capiēmini
3. capient	capientur

PERFECT TENSE.²

<i>Sing.</i> 1. cēpī	captus sum	cēperim	captus sim
----------------------	------------	---------	------------

PLUPERFECT TENSE.²

<i>Sing.</i> 1. cēperam	captus eram	cēpisset	captus essem
-------------------------	-------------	----------	--------------

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.²

<i>Sing.</i> 1. cēperō	captus erō
------------------------	------------

1. For a list of the verbs belonging to this class, see section 67.

2. In the perfect tenses, *capio* is inflected exactly like the verbs of the four regular conjugations.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

	<i>Active Voice.</i>	<i>Passive Voice.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	capere	capi
<i>Perf.</i>	cēpisse	captus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	captūrus esse	captum iri

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i>	capiēns	<i>Perf.</i>	captus
<i>Fut.</i>	captūrus	<i>Gerun.</i>	capiendus

GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i>	capiendi
<i>Dat.</i>	capiendō
<i>Acc.</i>	capiendum
<i>Abl.</i>	capiendō

SUPINE.

<i>Acc.</i>	captum
<i>Abl.</i>	captū

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing. 2.</i>	cape	capere
<i>Plur. 2.</i>	capite	capimini

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing. 2.</i>	capitō	capitor
3.	capitō	capitor
<i>Plur. 2.</i>	capitōte	
3.	capiuntō	capiuntor

40. Synopsis of Deponent Verbs.

INDICATIVE.

	<i>First Con.</i>	<i>Second Con.</i>	<i>Third Con.</i>	<i>Fourth Con.</i>	<i>Verbs in is.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	hortor	vereor	loquor	potior	patior
<i>Impf.</i>	hortābar	verēbar	loquēbar	potiēbar	patiēbar
<i>Fut.</i>	hortābor	verēbor	loquar	potiar	patiar
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus	veritus	locūtus	potītus	passus
	sum	sum	sum	sum	sum
<i>Plup.</i>	hortātus	veritus	locūtus	potītus	passus
	eram	eram	eram	eram	eram
<i>Fut. P.</i>	hortātus	veritus	locūtus	potītus	passus
	erō	erō	erō	erō	erō

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	horter	verear	loquar	potiar	patiar
<i>Impf.</i>	hortārer	verērer	loquerer	potirer	paterer
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus	veritus	locūtus	potītus	passus
	sim	sim	sim	sim	sim
<i>Plup.</i>	hortātus	veritus	locūtus	potītus	passus
	essem	essem	essem	essem	essem

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	hortāri	verēri	loqui	potiri	pati
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus	veritus	locūtus	potītus	passus
	esse	esse	esse	esse	esse
<i>Fut.</i>	hortātūrus	veritūrus	locūtūrus	potītūrus	passūrus
	esse	esse	esse	esse	esse

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i>	hortāns	verēns	loquēns	potiēns	patiēns
<i>Fut.</i>	hortātūrus	veritūrus	locūtūrus	potītūrus	passūrus
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus	veritus	locūtus	potītus	passus
<i>Ger.</i>	hortandus	verendus	loquendus	potiendus	patiendus

GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i>	hortandi	verendi	loquendi	potiendi	patiendi
-------------	----------	---------	----------	----------	----------

SUPINE.

	<i>First Con.</i>	<i>Second Con.</i>	<i>Third Con.</i>	<i>Fourth Con.</i>	<i>Verbs in id.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	hortātum	veritum	locūtum	potitum	passum

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	hortāre	verēre	loquere	potīre	patere
<i>Fut.</i>	hortātor	verētor	loquitur	potitor	patitor

IRREGULAR VERBS.

41. Sum, esse, fui, to be.

42. Possum, posse, petui,
to be able, can.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE. INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. sum	<i>I am.</i>	sim	possum	possim
	2. es		sis	potes	possis
	3. est		sit	potest	possit
<i>Plur.</i>	1. sumus		simus	possumus	possimus
	2. estis		sitis	potestis	possitis
	3. sunt		sint	possunt	possint

IMPERFECT.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. eram	<i>I was</i>	essem	poteram	possem
	2. erās		essēs	poterās	possēs
	3. erat		esset	poterat	posset
<i>Plur.</i>	1. erāmus		essēmus	poterāmus	possēmus
	2. erātis		essētis	poterātis	possētis
	3. erant		essent	poterant	possent

FUTURE.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. erō	<i>I shall be.</i>	poterō
	2. eris		poteris
	3. erit		poterit
<i>Plur.</i>	1. erimus		poterimus
	2. eritis		poteritis
	3. erunt		poterunt

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE. INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

I was here 2. **PERFECT.**

<i>Sing.</i> 1. fui	fu ^{er} im	potu ⁱ	potuerim
2. fuisti	fu ^{er} is	potuisti	potueris
3. fuit	fu ^{er} it	potuit	potuerit
<i>Plur.</i> 1. fuimus	fu ^{er} imus	potuimus	potuerimus
2. fuistis	fu ^{er} itis	potuistis	potueritis
3. fuērunt	fu ^{er} int	potuērunt	potuerint

I had been **PLUPERFECT.**

<i>Sing.</i> 1. fueram	fui ^{ss} em	potueram	potuiss ^{em}
2. fuerās	fui ^{ss} ēs	potuerās	potuissēs
3. fuerat	fui ^{ss} et	potuerat	potuisset
<i>Plur.</i> 1. fuerāmus	fui ^{ss} ēmus	potuerāmus	potuissēmus
2. fuerātis	fui ^{ss} ētis	potuerātis	potuissētis
3. fuerant	fui ^{ss} ent	potuerant	potuissent

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have been

<i>Sing.</i> 1. fuerō	potuerō
2. fueris	potueris.
3. fuerit	potuerit
<i>Plur.</i> 1. fuerimus	potuerimus
2. fueritis	potueritis
3. fuerint	potuerint

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	esse	posse
<i>Perf.</i>	fuisse	potuisse
<i>Fut.</i>	futūrus esse or fore	

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i>	potēns
<i>Fut.</i>	futūrus

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres. Sing.</i> 2. es
<i>Plur.</i> 2. este
<i>Fut. Sing.</i> 2. estō
3. estō
<i>Plur.</i> 2. estōte
3. suntō

43. Volō, Nōlō, Mālō.¹

Volō, velle, volui.	<i>be willing, will, wish.</i>
Nōlō, nōlle, nōlui.	<i>be unwilling, will not.</i>
Mālō, mälle, mālui.	<i>be more willing, prefer.</i>

INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvis
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nolumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
<i>Impf.</i>	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
<i>Fut.</i>	volam	nōlam	mālam
<i>Perf.</i>	voluī	nōluī	māluī
<i>Plup.</i>	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
<i>Fut. P.</i>	voluērō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velis	nōlis	mālis
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmūs
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
<i>Impf.</i>	vellem	nōllem	māllem
	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
	vellet	nōllet	māllet
	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
	vallētis	nōllētis	māllētis
	vellent	nōllent	māllent
<i>Perf.</i>	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
<i>Plup.</i>	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	velle	nōlle	mālō
<i>Perf.</i>	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

1. See footnote 3, page 94.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. *volēns* *nōlēns*

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. *nōli*

nōlite

Fut. *nōlitō*

nōlitō

nōlitō'e

nōluntō

44. *Ferō.*¹

Ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, bear, carry, endure.

INDICATIVE.

*Active.**Passive.*

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ferō</i>	<i>ferimus</i>	<i>feror</i>	<i>ferimur</i>
	<i>fers</i>	<i>fertis</i>	<i>ferris</i>	<i>ferimini</i>
	<i>fert</i>	<i>ferunt</i>	<i>fertur</i>	<i>feruntur</i>

Impf. *ferēbam*

Fut. *feram*

Perf. *tuli*

Plup. *tuleram*

Fut. P. *tulerō*

ferēbar

ferar

lātus sum

lātus eram

lātus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. *feram*

Impf. *ferrem*

Perf. *tulerim*

Plup. *talissem*

ferar

ferrer

lātus sim

lātus essem

INFINITIVE.

Pres. *ferre*

Perf. *tulisse*

Fut. *lāturus esse*

ferri

lātus esse

lātum iri

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. *ferēns*

Fut. *lāturus*

Perf. *lātus*

Ger. *ferendus*

1. See footnote 1, page 97. For the compounds of *fero*, see section 71, b.

GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i>	ferendī
<i>Dat.</i>	ferendō
<i>Acc.</i>	ferendum
<i>Abl.</i>	ferendō

SUPINE.

<i>Acc.</i>	lātum
<i>Abl.</i>	lātū

IMPERATIVE.

	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
<i>Pres. Sing. 2.</i>	fer	ferre
<i>Plur. 2.</i>	ferite	ferimini
<i>Fut. Sing. 2.</i>	fertō	fertor
	3. fertō	fertor
<i>Plur. 2.</i>	fertōte	
	3. feruntō	feruntor

45. Eō.¹46. Fīō.¹

Eō, ire, il, (ivī), itum, go.

Fīō, fieri, factus, sum, be made, become, happen.

INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	eō	imus	fīō	fīmus
	īs	itis	fīs	fītis
	it	eunt	fīt	fīunt
<i>Impf.</i>	ībam		fīēbam	
<i>Fut.</i>	ībō		fīam	
<i>Perf.</i>	īi		factus sum	
<i>Plup.</i>	ieram		factus eram	
<i>Fut. P.</i>	ierō		factus erō	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	eam, eās, etc.	fīam
<i>Impf.</i>	īrem	fīerem
<i>Perf.</i>	ierim	factus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	iissem	factus essem

1. See footnote 2, page 100.

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ire</i>	<i>feri</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>iisse</i>	<i>factus esse</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>itūrus esse</i>	<i>factum iri</i>

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>iēns, Gen. euntis</i>	<i>Perf. factus</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>itūrus</i>	<i>Ger. faciendus</i>

GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eundī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eundō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eūndum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eundō</i>

SUPINE.

<i>Acc.</i>	<i>itum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>itū</i>

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres. Sing. 2. i</i>	<i>Pres. Sing. 2. fi</i>
<i>Plur. 2. ite</i>	<i>Plur. 2. fitē</i>
<i>Fut. Sing. 2. itō</i>	
<i>3. itō</i>	
<i>Plur. 2. itōte</i>	
<i>3. euntō</i>	

II. INFLECTION: EPITOME OF RULES AND REGULATIONS

47. General Rules for Gender.

(a) Names of males are masculine ; names of females, feminine.

(b) The gender of other words is to be determined not from their meaning, but by the rules for gender (according to the ending of the nominative singular) given under each declension.

(c) But as a rule, irrespective of endings, names of *ivers, winus* and *months* are masculine ; names of *ities, islands, countries, trees, plants* and *abstract qualities* are feminine ; and indeclinable nouns are neuter.

48. Nouns of the First Declension. (See also section 1.)

(a) THE STEM¹ ends in *a*, and is like the nominative singular.

(b) IRREGULAR CASE ENDINGS.—

Genitive singular in *-āī*, archaic and found in poetry.

Genitive singular in *-ās*, in *familiās* (see section 9).

Genitive plural in *-ūm*, in words of Greek origin and in poetry.

Dative and ablative plural in *-abus*, often in *deābus* and *filiābus*.

(c) GENDER.—Nouns of this declension are feminine. EXCEPTIONS: nouns denoting males are masculine, *e g.*, *navita* ; *Belgae* (name of a tribe) ; *Cotta* (a man's name) ; so, also, *Hadria*.

(d) DECLENSION OF GREEK NOUNS.—These end in *ē* feminine, *ās* or *ēs* masculine. In the plural the regular Latin endings are used ; in the singular, either the Latin endings or the following, borrowed from the Greek :

Nom. <i>ē</i> ,	Gen. <i>ēs</i> ,	Acc. <i>ēn</i> ,	Voc. <i>ē</i> ,	Abl. <i>ē</i> .
" <i>ās</i> ,		" <i>ān</i> ,	" <i>ā</i> ,	
" <i>ēs</i> ,		" <i>ēn</i> ,	" <i>ē, ā</i> ,	" <i>ē</i> .

(e) The LOCATIVE² case ends in *-ae*, *e.g.*, *Rōmae, militiae*.

1. The stem of a word is the fundamental part, containing the meaning, to which the inflectional endings are attached.

2. The Locative is a survival from what was once a separate case, denoting the place where.

49. Nouns of the Second Declension. (See also sections 2, 3.)

(a) The STEM ends in *o*, and, except in quantity, is like the dative singular. This *o* is generally either weakened to *u* or lost.

(b) IRREGULAR CASE ENDINGS.—

Genitive singular in *ī* regularly contracted to *i* (without affecting the accent).¹

Vocative singular of *filius* and proper names in *-ius* regularly contracted from *-ie* to *-i* (without affecting the accent).

Genitive plural in *-ūm*, in words denoting money and measures, in words of Greek origin, and in poetry.

For the declension of *deus* see section 9.

(c) GENDER.—Nouns ending in *us*, *er*, *ir*, are masculine, in *um* neuter. EXCEPTIONS: Feminine in *us* are names of cities, islands, trees, e.g., *Corinthus*, *fāgus*; also *domus*, *humus*, *alvus*, *carbasus*; neuter are *vulgus*, *pelagus*, *vīrus*.

(d) DECLENSION OF GREEK NOUNS.—These end in *os* or *ōs* masculine, *on* neuter. In the plural the regular Latin endings are used; in the singular either the Latin endings or the following, borrowed from the Greek:

Nom. <i>ōs</i> ,	Gen. <i>ō</i> ,	Acc. <i>ōn</i> , <i>ō</i> .	Voc. <i>ōs</i> ,
" <i>os</i> ,		" <i>on</i> ,	
" <i>on</i> ,		" <i>on</i> ,	" <i>on</i> .

(e) The LOCATIVE case ends in *-ī*, e.g., *Corinthī*, *humī*, *domī*.

50. Nouns of the Third Declension. (See also sections 4-6.)

(a) The STEM ends either in a consonant or in *i*.² In most cases it may be obtained by dropping *-um* from the genitive plural.

(b) IRREGULAR CASE ENDINGS.—No exceptional endings occur, but a variation in certain cases is often found, due chiefly to confusion between the consonant-stems and the *i*-stems.³ The latter originally had in the singular, accusative *-im*, ablative *-ī*; in the plural, genitive *-ium*, accusative *-īs*, and, in neuters, nominative and accusative *-ia*. For *-īs* in the accusative, *-ēs* may always be used, and is generally printed in Latin books. The other endings of the *i*-stems (*-im*, *-ī*, *ium*, *-ia*) are regular in (a) *vīs*, *sītis*, *febris*, *puppis*, *secūris*, *turris*⁴; (b) neuters in *-e*, *-al*, *-ar*; (c) some names of rivers and towns, e.g., *Tamesis*, *Tiberis*, *Neāpolīs*.

1. In many Latin texts *-ī* is retained except in *filius* and proper names in *-ius*.

2. There are also two words whose stem ends in *u*, *sus* and *grus*.

3. The tendency is for nouns to take the endings of the consonant-stems, and for adjectives to take those of the *i*-stems.

4. These, except *vīs* and *sītis*, occasionally have *-em* also.

The following have **-ī** and **-ium** only : *ignis*, *nāvis* and *continēns* (which also has **-e**).

The following have **-ium** only : (a) nouns in **-is** or **-ēs**, not increasing in the genitive (except *canis*, *juvenis*, and often *mēnsis*) ; (b) nouns in **-s** or **-x** preceded by a consonant (except *parēns* and nouns in **-ps**) ; (c) *nox*, *carō*, *imber*, *linter*.

For the declension of *vis*, *bōs* and *Juppiter*, see section 9.

(c) **GENDER**.—The Gender endings and chief exceptions are as follows :

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
ō	<i>carō</i> , and nouns in - <i>dō</i> , - <i>gō</i> and - <i>iō</i> (except <i>ōrdō</i>)	
or	<i>arbor</i>	<i>aequor</i> , <i>cor</i>
ōs	<i>dōs</i>	<i>ōs</i> (<i>ōris</i>), also <i>os</i> (<i>ossis</i>)
er	<i>linter</i>	<i>īter</i> , also <i>vēr</i>
es	<i>seges</i>	<i>aes</i>
ēs increasing in gen.	<i>abiēs</i> , <i>quiēs</i> , <i>mercēs</i>	
<i>ūs</i> , <i>vas</i> (<i>vadis</i>)	as , ās	<i>fūs</i> , <i>nefūs</i> , <i>vās</i> (<i>vāsis</i>)
nouns in -nis , also <i>collis</i> , <i>lapis</i> , <i>orbis</i> , <i>mēnsis</i> , <i>pulvis</i> , <i>sanguis</i>	ēs not increasing in gen.	
<i>dēns</i> , <i>fōns</i> , <i>mōns</i> , <i>pōns</i>	is	
most nouns in -ex (except <i>lēx</i> , <i>nex</i>)	s preceded by a con- sonant	
	x	
	us or ūs , with gen. in -dis or -tis	
<i>lepus</i> , <i>mūs</i>	<i>tellūs</i>	us or ūs , with gen. in -ris
<i>sāl</i> , <i>sōl</i>		e , e , l , t , men
<i>lar</i> , <i>vultur</i> , <i>fūr</i>		ar , ur

(d) **DECLENSION OF GREEK NOUNS**.—These frequently have the regular Latin endings ; of the endings borrowed from the Greek, the commonest are : Singular, Gen. **os**, Acc. **a** ; Plural, Nom. **es**, Acc. **as**. The other chief irregularities are as follows :

Nouns in **is** have Acc. **in**, as well as the Latin ending **im**.

" **ys** " Acc. **yn**.

" **ō** " Gen. **ūs**, Dat., Acc., Voc. and Abl. **ō**.

" **ēs** " Gen. **is** or **I**, Acc. **em** or **ēn**.

" **eus** " Gen. **eos**, Dat. **ei** or **I**, Acc. **eum**, Voc. **eu**, but

these last more often take the endings of the second declension.

(e) The **LOCATIVE** case ends in **-I**, e.g., *rūrī*, *Carthāginī*.

51. Nouns of the Fourth Declension. (See also section 7.)

(a) The **STEM** ends in **u**, and, except in quantity, is like the ablative singular.

(b) **IRREGULAR CASE ENDINGS**.—

Dative singular in **-ū**, contracted for **-uī**.

Dative and Ablative plural in **-ubus**, found in dissyllabic words in **-cus** (e.g., *lacus*), also in *artus*, *tribus*, *portus*, *genū*.

For the declension of **domus**, see section 9.

(c) **GENDER**.—Nouns ending in **us** are masculine, in **ū** neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.—Feminine in **us** are names of trees, e.g., *laurus*; also *domus*, *manus*, *tribus*, *Īdūs* (plural only).

52. Nouns of the Fifth Declension. (See also section 8.)

(a) The **STEM** ends in **-ē**, and is like the ablative singular.

(b) **IRREGULAR CASE ENDINGS**.—

Genitive singular in **-ī** or **-ē** for **-ēī**.¹

(c) **GENDER**.—All nouns end in **-ēs**, and are regularly feminine.

EXCEPTIONS.—Masculine are *diēs*,² and its compound *meridiēs*.

53. Nouns Defective or Peculiar in Number.

(a) The *singular only* of the following nouns is ordinarily found :

1. Proper names of places or persons, e.g., *Rōma*, *Juppiter*.
2. Single natural objects, e.g., *lūna*, *tellūs*.
3. Names of materials (not ordinarily counted), e.g., *aurum*, *aes*, *lūc*.
4. Names of abstract qualities, e.g., *īra*, *siccitās*.
5. Collective nouns, e.g., *equitātus*, *vulgus*.

(b) The *plural only* of the following nouns is ordinarily found :

1. Certain names of places, e.g., *Athēnae*, *Pompēī*.
2. Names of days and festivals, e.g., *Calendāe*, *Īdūs*, *Bacchanālia*.
3. Names of classes or groups, e.g., *liberī*, *mājōrēs*, *posterī*.
4. Names of certain parts of the body, e.g., *faucēs*, *praecordia*.

1. In the genitive and dative singular the regular ending **-ēī** is shortened to **ēī** after a consonant.

2. *Dies* is sometimes feminine in the singular, chiefly in the sense of *a set day*.

5. Many other words, *e.g.*, *angustiae*, *arma*, *castra*, *deliciae*, *divitiae*, *indutiae*, *insidiae*, *moenia*, *nuptiae*, *reliquiae*, *tenebrae*.

(c) Many nouns found ordinarily in the singular only are used in a special sense in the plural :

1. Names of persons, to denote the family or individuals of the same type, *e.g.*, *Catōnēs*, the Catos, or men like Cato.
2. Names of single natural objects, in a transferred sense, *e.g.*, *sōlēs*, days.
3. Names of materials, to denote objects made of them, *e.g.*, *aera*, bronzes, coppers.
4. Abstract nouns, to denote various manifestations of the quality, *e.g.*, *īrae*, bursts of passion ; *siccitātēs*, droughts.¹

(d) Some nouns have a different meaning in the singular and plural, *e.g.*,

SINGULAR.

aedēs, temple ;

auxilium, aid ;

cōpia, abundance ;

finis, end ;

impedimentum, hindrance ;

littera, letter (of the alphabet) ;

mōs, habit, custom ;

PLURAL.

aedēs, house, palace.

auxilia, auxiliary troops.

cōpiae, troops, stores.

finēs, territory.

impedimenta, baggage.

litterae, letter (of correspondence), literature.

mōrēs, character.

54. Nouns Defective in Case.

- (a) Used in but one case : *Noctū*, *jussū*, *injussū*, *nātū*.
- (b) Used in but two cases : *Fors*, *forte* ; *fās*, *nefās*, *īnstar*, *nihil*, *opus* (need), in nom. and acc. singular.
- (c) Used in but three cases : *Nēmō*, *nēmīnī*, *nēmīnem*.
- (d) Defective in both singular and plural : *Impetus* (found in nom., acc. and abl. singular, and nom. and acc. plural) ; [*diciō*] (lacking the nom. singular and all the plural).
- (e) Defective in singular, regular in plural : *Vīs* (see section 9) ; [*ops*] (lacking the nom. and dat. singular).
- (f) Defective in plural, regular in singular : All words of the fifth declension except *diēs* and *rēs* (many of these have no plural ; *aciēs*, *spēs*, and a few others have the nom. and acc. plural) ; *rūs*, *jūs* have in the plural only nom. and acc. ; *lūx*, *ōs* (*ōris*), *pāx*, *sōl*, and many other monosyllables of the third declension lack the gen. plural.

1. Sometimes the singular of a concrete noun is used as a collective, chiefly in poetry, *e.g.*, *mīles*, the soldiery. Again, the poets often use the plural for the singular in order to heighten the effect (the 'plural of majesty').

55. Heterogeneous Nouns.

Some nouns have the same stem, but vary in gender :

(a) Several nouns of the second declension have forms in both *-us* and *-um*, e.g., *clipeus*, *clipeum*.

(b) Many nouns are of different genders in the singular and the plural, e.g., sing. *epulum*, *ī*, N.; plur. *epulae*, *ārum*, F.; sing. *locus*, *ī*, M.; plur. *loca*, *ōrum*, N. (also *locī*, *ōrum*, M., chiefly in the sense of passages or topics in a book).

56. Heteroclite Nouns.

Some nouns have their forms partly of one declension and partly of another.

(a) Many nouns which follow the first declension have also certain forms (nom., acc., and abl. singular) of the fifth declension, e.g., *māteria*, *māteriēs*.

(b) Many names of trees, generally of the second declension, have also forms of the fourth declension (chiefly the abl. singular, and nom. and acc. plural), e.g., *laurus*, *pīnus*. For *domus*, also of both second and fourth declensions, see section 9.

(c) *Famēs* and *requiēs* of the third declension have respectively the abl. singular and the acc. and abl. singular of the fifth declension.

(d) *Jugerum*, *ī*, has in the plural generally *jūgera*, *um*, of the third declension ; while *vās*, *vāsis*, has in the plural *vāsa*, *ōrum*.

57. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions. (See also sections 10 and 14.)

Of the adjectives of this declension ending in *-er*, the majority are declined like *aeger* ; the exceptions are *asper*, *lacer*, *liber*, *miser*, *tener*, compounds in *-fer* and *-ger*, and sometimes *dexter*.

Adjectives in *-ius* do not contract the genitive ending *-iī*, or the vocative ending *-ie*, as do the nouns.

58. Adjectives of the Third Declension. (See also sections 11 and 12.)

(a) These are commonly divided into adjectives of *one*, *two* or *three* terminations, according to the number of forms used in the nominative singular for the different genders. Adjectives of three terminations end in *-er*, *-is*, *-re* ; those of two terminations in *-is*, *-e*, or *-ior* *-ius* (comparatives) ; those of one termination in *-x*, *-s* (chiefly *-ns*), *-l* or *-r*.

(b) As a rule all adjectives of this declension have *-ī* in the ablative singular, *-ium* in the genitive plural, and *-ia* in the nominative and accusative plural. The following are exceptions:

i. All comparatives: these have *-e*, *-um*, *-a* (except *plūs*).

ii. Many adjectives of one termination, viz.:

With *-um*: all those which in the genitive singular have *-is* preceded by a short vowel and a single consonant; as *inopis*, *veteris*, but not *ferōcis* or *prudentis*.

With *-e*: *vetus*, *pauper*, and adjectives in *-es*, gen. *-itis* or *-idis*, e.g., *dives*.

With *-a*: *vetus*.

(c) Present participles have *-ia* and *-ium*; when used as adjectives they have *-ī* in the abl. sing.; when used as participles, *-e*.

59. Defective and Indeclinable Adjectives.

Because of their meaning *ambō*,¹ *complūrēs*, *paucī* and *plērīque* are not in use in the singular. *Plūrēs*, too, is found as an adjective only in the plural, *plūs*, the singular, being a substantive.

The following adjectives are undeclinable: *frūgī*, *nēquam*, *necesse*, *tot*, *quot*, *aliquot*, and most cardinal numerals. (See section 16.)

60. Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs. (See also sections 13 and 17.)

To the instances of irregular comparisons given in sections 13 and 17 the following may be added:

(a) Cases where deficiencies are supplied from other adjectives:

<i>senex</i>	<i>senior</i> or <i>mājōr nātū</i> ²	<i>māximus nātū</i> ²
<i>juvenis</i>	<i>jūnior</i> or <i>minor nātū</i> ²	<i>minimus nātū</i> ²
<i>vetus</i>	<i>vetustior</i>	<i>veterrimus</i>
<i>novus</i>	<i>recentior</i>	<i>novissimus</i>

(b) Comparison can be expressed with words not themselves compared, by adding the adverbs *magis* (more) and *māxime* (most).

(c) <i>male</i>	<i>pējus</i>	<i>pessimē</i>
<i>prope</i>	<i>propius</i>	<i>proximē</i>
<i>multum</i>	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plūrimum</i>
<i>matūrē</i>	<i>matūrius</i>	<i>matūrissimē</i>
	<i>potius</i>	<i>maturrimē</i>
	<i>prius</i>	<i>potissimum</i>
		<i>primum</i>
<i>nūper</i>		<i>nūperrimē</i>
<i>secus</i>	<i>sēcius</i> or <i>sētius</i>	

1. *Ambo* is declined like *duo*, section 16.

2. *Natu* (literally by birth) is also often omitted.

61. Numerals. (See also sections 15 and 16.)

(a) In combining numerals up to 100, either the ten without *et*, or the unit with *et*, precedes.¹ But the forms expressing subtraction, e.g., *duodēvigintī*, are more common than those expressing union. In combining numerals above 100, the order is thousands (if present), hundreds, tens, units; with three numerals, *et* is regularly omitted.

(b) In compound ordinals *alter* is preferred to *secundus*.

(c) The distributive numerals are: 1. *singulī*, 2. *binī*, 3. *ternī*, 4. *quaternī*, 5. *quinī*, 6. *senī*, 7. *septēnī*, 8. *octōnī*, 9. *novēnī*, 10. *dēnī*, 20. *vicēnī*, 100. *centēnī*, etc. They are declined like the plural of *bonus* (see section 10), but often have *-ūm* for *-ōrum* in the genitive.

The distributives are numeral adjectives used (1) to signify (*so many*) *each*, or *apiece*, (2) in multiplication (*bis septēnī*, *twice seven*, not *bis septem*, except in poetry, (3) with nouns used in the plural only, in place of the cardinals (except that *ūnī* is used for *one*, and *trīnī*, not *ternī*, for *three*), (4) to express pairs or groups of objects, (5) in poetry often for the cardinal.

(d) The numeral adverbs are: 1. *semel*, *once*, 2. *bis*, *twice*, 3. *ter*, 4. *quater*, 5. *quinquies*, 6. *sexies*, 7. *septies*, 8. *octies*, 9. *novies*, 10. *decies*, 20. *vicies*, 100. *centies*, 1000. *millies*. For the forms in *-ēs*, *-ēns* is also found.

(e) *Mille* in the singular is regularly an indeclinable adjective in agreement with its substantive; rarely (generally in the nominative or accusative) a neuter noun, followed by the genitive.

Millia (or *Milia*), the plural, is a neuter noun, followed by the genitive. If *to millia* is added some smaller number, a noun preceding the combination is in the genitive, but a noun following the combination is in the same case.

62. Personal, Possessive and Reflexive Pronouns. (See also sections 18-21.)

(a) In the partitive sense, the genitives *nostrūm* and *vestrūm* are used; in the objective sense, the genitives *meī*, *tuī*, *sui*, *nostrī* and *vestrī*; in the possessive and subjective senses, the adjectives *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster* and *vester*.

(b) With *ego*, *tū*, *sui*, the preposition *cum* is regularly suffixed to the ablative it governs, the accent being on the syllable preceding *-cum*.

1. Compare English *twenty-one* or *one and twenty*, but notice that the latter is unusual in ordinary prose English, while *unus et vigintī* is good prose Latin.

(c) For *mihi*, the contracted form *mi* also occurs. These pronouns are emphasized by the addition of certain particles, especially *-met* (added to all forms of *ego*, *tū* and *mi*, except *tū* and the genitive plural) and *-pte* (added to the ablative singular of the possessives). *Sēsē* in usage is interchangeable with *sē*; reduplication in other pronouns indicates emphasis.

(d) In the first and second persons, the personal pronouns serve also as the reflexive pronouns.

(e) The reflexive pronouns with *inter* are equivalent to the reciprocal *each other* or *one another* (including often the preposition governing these words), e.g., *inter nōs amāmus*, *inter sē pūgnant*.

63. Demonstrative Pronouns. (See also sections 22 and 23.)

(a) *Hic*, *ille* and *iste* are often emphasized by the addition of *-ce* (sometimes shortened to *-c*) to the various cases.¹ Of these forms, *istūc* is commoner than *istud*.

(b) For the dative singular and nominative plural of *ille*, *olli* is found (from an archaic *ollus*).

(c) Often in poetry the genitive singular of *ille* and *iste* is *illius* and *istius*, not *illius* and *istius*; and the dative singular of *is*, *eī*, not *eī*.

(d) Of the alternative forms given for the nominative, dative and ablative plural of *is* and *idem*, those in *eī* are the rarer. *Idem* and *iisdem* are often, and with greater correctness, written *īdem* and *īdem*.

64. Relative, Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns. (See also sections 24-26.)

(a) An ablative singular form *quī* occurs; as a relative it is used chiefly with *cum*²; as an interrogative it is an adverb, meaning *how*? *Quis* occurs for the dative and ablative plural.

(b) With the relative and interrogative pronouns, the preposition *cum* is (except very rarely) suffixed to the ablative it governs, the accent being on the syllable preceding *-cum*.

(c) In the interrogative and indefinite pronouns, the distinction between adjective and substantive forms (sections 25 and 26) is less carefully observed in the masculine than in the neuter.

Quis in the neuter has sometimes *quae* in the feminine singular and neuter plural.

1. The *-c* of *hic*, *hunc*, *hoc*, *haec*, is a remnant of this same suffix *-ce*.

2. Cicero prefers *quicum* to *quocum* or *quacum*.

The two parts of *quicumque* are often divided by another word.

(d) The interrogative is often strengthened by the addition of *ec-* or *-nam*; *ecquis* (*ecquī*), etc., and *quisnam* (*quīnam*), etc.

65. Verb Stems and Principal Parts.

The PRINCIPAL PARTS of a Latin verb are the present indicative, present infinitive, perfect indicative and (except in deponent verbs) the supine.¹ These give the main stems from which, as starting points, all parts of a verb are formed, according to a fixed system.

The stems of an active verb may be found by omitting *-re*, *-ī* and *-um* respectively in the present infinitive, perfect indicative and supine of the principal parts. These stems are called respectively the present, perfect and supine stems.

The stems of a deponent verb may be found by omitting *-ri* of the present infinitive (but in the third conjugation by changing *-ī* to *-e*) for the present stem; and by omitting *-us sum* of the perfect indicative for the supine stem. The perfect stem does not occur.

67. Irregular Forms in the Conjugation of the Regular Verb.

(a) Perfects in *-āvi*, *-ēvi*, and also *mōvi* and *nōvi* (from *moveō* and *nōscō*) often, before *-is-*, *-er-* or *-ēr-* drop *v* and contract the two vowels thus brought together to *ā*, *ē*, *ō* respectively; e.g., *nōrat* for *nōverat*,

Perfects in *-īvi* also drop *v* before *-is-*, *-er-* or *-ēr-*, but the vowels thus brought together are contracted (to *ī*) only before *-is-*. Before *-er-* and *-ēr-*, *ī* is shortened to *i*.

But *eō* and its compounds, also *petō* and *dēsīnō*, drop *v* also in the first and third singular and first plural of the perfect indicative.

(b) For *-ērunt* of the perfect indicative *-ēre* is used, especially in poetry.

For *-ris* of the second singular passive *-re* is used, but rarely in the present indicative.

The gerund and gerundive of the third and fourth conjugations have sometimes, especially after *i*, *-undī* and *-undus* for *-endī* and *-endus*.

(c) The imperative, second singular present active, of *dīcō*, *dūcō*, *faciō*, *ferō*, is *dīc*, *dūc*, *fac*, *fer*. These forms are retained in compounds, except in those compounds of *faciō*, which change to *-fītīō*,

1. As the supine is a somewhat infrequent form, many books give the perfect participle passive instead of the supine.

(d) The archaic *-ier* for *-ī* of the present infinitive passive is used by the poets.

Sometimes in poetry *-is-*, *-iss-* or *-sis-* is dropped in forms from perfects in *-sī* or *-xī*; e.g., *dixī* for *dixistī*.

An archaic future perfect indicative in *-sō* and perfect subjunctive in *-sim* are found in poetry; e.g., *faxō* (for *faciō*), *ausim*.

(e) In the compound tenses of the regular verb, *esse* is very often omitted, especially in the future infinitive active; so also *est* and *sunt*, but chiefly in poetry.

67. Verbs in *-iō* of the Third Conjugation. (See also section 39.)

In the tenses formed from the present stem, these verbs retain *-i* of the stem wherever in the fourth conjugation we have two successive vowels, e.g., *capīunt*; in other cases (that is, before *i*, *ī* or *er*) they drop *-i* of the stem, e.g., *capere*.

The verbs so conjugated are *capīō*, *cupīō*, *facīō*, *fodīō*, *fugīō*, *jacīō*, *parīō*, *quatīō*, *sapīō*; *mortior*, *patior*; and compounds (of rare or obsolete verbs) ending in *-gredior*, *-licīō*, *-spiciō*.

Orior also, though regularly of the fourth conjugation, has very commonly in the present indicative and imperfect subjunctive the forms of the third conjugation.

68. Deponent Verbs.

A synopsis of the conjugation of deponent verbs (which may be defined as verbs which no longer retain the active forms, but use the passive forms with an active meaning), is given in section 40.

(a) The PRINCIPAL PARTS of deponents necessarily differ from those of the regular active verb. (See section 65.)

(b) The forms of the ordinary deponent are not all passive, nor is the meaning of all its parts active. The deponent verb has regularly from the active voice the *present* and *future participles*, the *future infinitive*, the *gerund* and the *supine*; while again the *gerundive* is regularly passive in meaning.

(c) SEMI-DEPONENTS are certain verbs which are deponent in the perfect tenses only, viz.: *audeō*, *ēre*, *ausus sum*; *gaudeō*, *ēre*, *gāvissus sum*; *fidō*, *ere*, *fissus sum* (and compounds); *soleō*, *ēre*, *solitus sum*.

Fīō, *fieri*, *factus sum* (section 46) is practically a semi-deponent; while *revertor*, *reverti*, perfect *reverti* (not *reversus sum*) is the converse.

(d) Several verbs otherwise active are deponent in the perfect participle, e.g., *perōdī*, *perōsus*; *suēscō*, *suētus*; *adolēscō*, *adultus*.

Certain also of the impersonal verbs have in the perfect both active and deponent forms, *e.g.*, *placet* has *placuit* and *placitum est*; so *licet*, *pudet*, *piget*.

In a very few other verbs both active and deponent forms are in common use, *e.g.*, *mereō* (*mereor*) and *populō* (*populor*). In a larger number of verbs the perfect participle alone is passive in meaning, *e.g.*, *partior*, *dīmētor*, *tueor*.

69. The Periphrastic Conjugations.

All compound forms of the verb might strictly be called periphrastic, but the term is usually limited to two sets of forms:

(a) The *active* periphrastic conjugation, viz., the future participle active, in *-ūrus*, with the various parts of the verb *sum*, to denote intended or impending action.

(b) The *passive* periphrastic conjugation, viz., the gerundive, in *-ndus*, with the various parts of the verb *sum*, to denote necessary or obligatory action.

70. The Verb SUM and its Compounds. (See also sections 41 and 42.)

For the imperfect subjunctive, *essem*, etc., there occur also the forms *forem*, *forēs*, *foret* and *forent*.

Sum is compounded with many of the prepositions, in most cases with no irregularity: *absūm* (perf. *āfuī*), I am absent, distant; *adsum*, I am present; *dēsum*, I am wanting; *īsum*, I am in; *intersum*, I am between, differ, am present at (*interest*, impersonal, it concerns); *obsum*, I am against, hinder; *praesum*, I am over, command; *prōsum*, I am for, benefit; *subsum*, I am under, near (no perf.); *supersum*, I am left over, survive.

Prōsum has *prōd-*, not *prō-*, before all forms of *sum* beginning with *e*.

Possūm is a compound of *potis*, able, and *sum*, *t* of *pot-* being changed to *s* before another *s*.

A present participle occurs only in the compounds *absūm* and *praesūm* (*absēns*, *praesēns*). *Possūm* has *potēns* used adjectively.

71. (a) The Verb EŌ and its Compounds.¹ (See also sec. 45.)

Some of the compounds of *eō* (*e.g.*, *adeō*, *circumeō*, *ineō*, *trānseō*, *praeterēō*) are transitive and have passive forms, formed in the usual way from the active endings, *e.g.*, the present indicative of *adeō* is *adeor*, *adīris*, *adītur*, *adīmur*, *adīmīnī*, *adeuntur*. *Eō* itself

1. *Queo*, *nequeo* and *vēneo* are conjugated like *eo*.

also has passive forms in the third person used intransitively, e.g., *itur*, *iri*, *eundum*.

In the perfect tenses *ii* is far commoner than *ivi*, and in the compounds is the almost invariable form.

(b) The Verb **FERŌ** and its Compounds. (See also sec. 44.)

The prepositions with which *ferō* is compounded often undergo changes to harmonize their final sound with the letters *f*, *t* and *l* of the three stems of *ferō*.

ab	au-ferō	au-ferre	abs-tuli	ab-lātum
ad	af-ferō	af-ferre	at-tuli	al-lātum
con	cōn-ferō	cōn-ferre	con-tuli	col-lātum
dis	dif-ferō	dif-ferre	dis-tuli	dl-lātum
ex	ef-ferō	ef-ferre	ex-tuli	ē-lātum
in	in-ferō	in-ferre	in-tuli	il-lātum
ob	of-ferō	of-ferre	ob-tuli	ob-lātum
re	re-ferō	re-ferre	ret-tuli	re-lātum
sub	suf-ferō	suf-ferre	sus-tuli	sub-lātum ¹

(c) The Verb **FĪŌ** and its Compounds. (See also section 46.)

Fīō is compounded with verbal stems or with adverbs, e.g., *patefierī* (*patefaciō*); *satisfierī* (*satisfaciō*); very rarely, and only in isolated forms, with prepositions, as *cōnfierī*, *dēfit*, *īnfīt*. The passive of compounds of *faciō* with prepositions is formed regularly from the active, e.g., *interficior*, *interfici*; *cōnficior*, *cōnfici*.

72. Defective Verbs.

(a) **COEPĪ**, I began, is used in the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect tenses only. (The other tenses are supplied by *incipiō*.) A passive form, *coeptus sum*, is used with the same force as *coepī*, when a passive infinitive follows. There is also a future participle, *coeptūrus*.

(b) **MEMINĪ**, I remember, and **ŌDĪ**, I hate, are used in the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect tenses only, with the meaning of the present, imperfect and future, respectively. *Meminī* has also the imperative second singular *mementō*, plural *mementōte*; *ōdī* has a perfect participle *ōsus*, and a future participle *ōsūrus*.

(c) **ĀIŌ**, I say, is scarcely found except in the forms, present indicative, *āiō*, *ais*, *ait*, *aiunt*; imperfect indicative, *āiēbam*, etc.

1. *Sustuli*, *sublatum*, however, on the score of meaning, are assigned in the vocabularies to *tollō*, not to *suffero*.

(d) **INQUAM**, I say, is scarcely found except in the forms, first person *inquam*, third person *inquit*.

(e) **FARI**, to speak, a deponent of the first conjugation, has in use the present indicative *fātur*, the future indicative *fābitur*, the perfect and pluperfect indicative and subjunctive, the infinitive *fārī*, the imperative *fāre*, the gerund *fandī*, etc., the participles *fātus*, *fandus* and (*fāns*) *fantis*.

(f) **QUAESŌ**, I beg, is used in the first person singular *quaesō*, and plural *quaesumus*.

73. Impersonal Verbs.

(a) Many verbs having no definite subject, and hence called *Impersonal*, are found only in the third person singular and in the infinitive. Of these, some refer to the weather (e.g., *pluit*, it rains), and some express the existence of certain feelings (e.g., *miseret*, *paenitet*, *pudet*, *pijet*, *taedet*).

(b) Many other verbs are said to be used *impersonally* in the third singular when a clause or phrase furnishes a subject (e.g., *licet haec facere*, it is permissible to do this). So *licet*, *oportet*, *necesse est*, *accidit* (and other verbs of happening), *cōstat*, *praestat*, *restat*, *superest*, *interest*, *rēfert*, *juvat*.

(c) The passive of many intransitive verbs is used in the third singular *impersonally*, the subject being contained in the verb itself; e.g., *pūgnātur*, there is fighting going on; *nōn dubitandum est*, there must not be hesitation.

(d) In all compound tenses of impersonal verbs the participle is neuter.

74. Inceptives, Frequentatives and Desideratives.

(a) **INCEPTIVES** or **INCHOATIVES** are verbs of the third conjugation, ending in *-scō*, which denote the *beginning* of an action, or the *entrance* into a condition; as, *cōnsuēscō*, I became accustomed. They are formed chiefly from the present stem verbs, and are themselves used only in the present stem.

(b) **FREQUENTATIVES**, **INTENSIVES** or **ITERATIVES** are verbs of the first conjugation, ending in *-tō* or *-sō*, which denote *repeated* or *vigorous* action; as, *jactō*, I brandish, from *jaciō*, I hurl. They are formed generally from the supine stem of verbs.

(c) **DESIDERATIVES** are verbs of the fourth conjugation, ending in *-uriō*, which denote a *desire* to do something; as, *ēsuriō*, I desire to eat, I am hungry. They are formed from the supine stem.



PART IV.

SELECTIONS FROM NEPOS AND CÆSAR.

WITH ANNOTATIONS.

CORNELII NEPOTIS

VITAE.

I. THEMISTOCLES.

Themistocles' parentage. His ill-spent youth is followed by devotion to the public service and by early fame.

- 1 1. Themistoclē, Neoclis filius, Athēniēnsis. Hūjus vitia ineun-
tis adulēscētiæ māgnis sunt ēmendāta virtūtibus, adeō ut an-
2 teferātur huic nēmō, paucī parēs putentur. Sed ab initiō est
ōrdiendum. Pater ējus Neoclēs generōsus fuit. Is uxōrem Hali-
carnassiam cīvem dūxit, ex quā nātus est Themistoclēs. Quī cum
minus esset probātus parentibus, quod et liberius vīvēbat et rem
3 familiārem negligēbat, ā patre exhērēdātus est. Quae contumēlia
nōn frēgit eum, sed ērēxit. Nam cum iudicāset sine summā
industriā nōn posse eam exstinguī, tōtum sē dēdidit rei pūblicae,
diligentius amīcis fāmaeque serviēns. Multum in iudiciis privātis 10
versābātur, saepe in cōtiōnem populī prōdibat; nūlla rēs māior
sine eō gerēbātur; celeriter quae opus erant repēiebāt, facile
4 eadem ōrātiōne explicābat; neque minus in rēbus gerendis promp-
tus quam excōgitandis erat, quod et dē instantibus. ut ait Thūcý-
didēs, vērissimē iudicābat et dē futūris callidissimē conjiciēbat. 15
Quō factum est ut brevī tempore illūstrārētur.

*By his advice the Athenians build a fleet and become a naval power.
To these 'wooden walls' they retire in the Persian war.*

1 2. Primus autem gradus fuit capessendae rei publicae bellō Cor-
cyracō : ad quod gerendum praetor ā populō factus nōn solum
praesentī bellō, sed etiam reliquō tempore ferōciōrem reddidit
2 civitatem. Nam cum pecūnia publica, quae ex metallis redibat,
largitiōne magistrātuum quotannis interiret, ille persuāsit populō 5
3 ut eā pecūniā classis centum nāvium aedificārētur. Quā celeriter
effectā primum Corcyracōs frēgit, deinde maritimōs praedōnēs cōn-
sectandō mare tūtum reddidit. In quō cum divitiis ornāvit, tum
4 etiam peritissimōs bellī nāvalis fecit Athēniēnsēs. Id quantae
salūtī fuerit ūniversae Graeciae, bellō cōgnitum est Persicō. 10
Nam cum Xerxēs et mari et terrā bellum ūniversae inferret
Eurōpae, cum tantis cōpiis quantās neque ante nec postea habuit
5 quisquam ; hūjus enim classis mille et ducentārum nāvium longā-
rum fuit, quam duo millia onerāriarum sequēbantur, terrestres
autem exercitus septingenta peditum, equitum quadringenta millia 15
6 fuērunt. Cūjus dē ad entū cum fāma in Graeciam esset perlāta et
māximē Athēniēnsēs petī dicerentur propter pūgnam Marathō-
niam, misērunt Delphōs cōsultum, quidnam facerent dē rēbus
suīs. Dēliberantibus Pythia respondit, ut moenibus ligneis sē
7 mūnīrent. Id respōsum quō valeret cum intellexeret nēmō, 20
Themistoclēś persuāsi cōsiliū esse Apollinis, ut in nāvēs sē
suaque cōferrent : eum enim ā deō significārī mūrum ligneum.
8 Tālī cōsiliō probātō addunt ad superiōrēs totidem nāvēs trirēmēs
suaque omnia, quae movērī poterant, partim Salamīna, partim
Troezēna dēportant : arcem sacerdotibus paucisque mājoribus nātū 25
ad sacra prōcūranda trādunt, reliquum oppidum relinquunt.

*The Greek land-forces are defeated at Thermopylae. The fleet engages
the enemy at Artemisium, and then withdraws to a better position
at Salamis.*

1 3. Hūjus cōsiliū plērisque civitatibus displicēbat et in terrā
dīmīcārī magis placēbat. Itaque missī sunt dēlectī cum Leōnidā,
Lacedaemoniōrum rēge, quī Thermopylās occupārent longiusque
barbarōs prōgredi nōn paterentur. Iī vim hostium nōn sustinuē- 30
runt eoque locō omnēs interiērunt. At classis commūnis Graeciae
trecentārum nāvium, in quā ducentae erant Athēniēnsium, pri-

num apud Artemisium inter Euboeam continentemque terram cum classiâriis rêgîis cōfligit. Angustiâs enim Themistoclês quae-
 3 rêbat, nē multitudīne circumīrētur. Hic etsi parī proeliō dis-
 cesserant, tamen eōdem locō nōn sunt ausi manēre, quod erat
 periculum, nē, si pars nāvium adversâriōrum Euboeam superâsset, 5
 4 ancipiti premerentur periculō. Quō factum est ut ab Artemisiō
 discēderent et exadversum Athēnâs apud Salamīna classem suam
 cōstituerent.

Xerxes takes Athens. Themistocles, fearing the other Greeks would return to defend their own cities, by a stratagem brings on an immediate engagement, in which the Greeks win.

1 4. At Xerxēs Thermopylis expūgnâtis prōtinus accessit astu
 idque nullis dēfendentibus, interfectis sacerdotibus, quōs in arce 10
 2 invēnerat, incendiō dēlēvit. Cūjus flammā perterriti classiârii
 cum manēre nōn audērent et plūrimī hortārentur ut domōs suâs
 discēderent moenibusque sē dēfenderent, Themistoclês ūnus re-
 stitit et ūniversōs parēs esse posse aiēbat, dispersōs testābatur
 peritūrōs, idque Eurybiadī, rêgī Lacedaemoniōrum, quī tūm sum- 15
 3 mae imperiī praeerat, fore affirmābat. Quem cum minus quam
 vellet movēret, noctū dē servis suis quem habuit fidēlissimum ad
 rêgem misit, ut ei nūntiāret suis verbis, adversâriōs ejus in fugā
 4 esse: quī si discessissent, mājore cum labōre et longinquiōre tem-
 pore bellum cōfectūrum, cum singulōs cōsectārī cōgerētur; quōs 20
 si statim aggredērētur, brevī ūniversōs oppressūrum. Hōc eō
 5 valēbat, ut ingrātis ad dēpūgnandum omnēs cōgerentur. Hāc rē
 audītā barbarus, nihil dolī subesse crēdēns, postridiē aliēnissimō
 sibi locō, contrā opportūnissimō hostibus adeō angustō mari cōn-
 fligit, ut ejus multitudō nāvium explicārī nōn potuerit. Victus 25
 ergō est magis etiam cōsiliō Themistoclis quam armīs Graeciae.

He then by a second stratagem induces Xerxes to retreat with his land army to Asia, and thus Themistocles saves Greece.

5. Hic etsi male rem gesserat, tamen tantās habēbat reliquiâs
 cōpiarū, ut etiamtum iis opprimere posset hostēs. Iterum ab
 eōdem gradū dēpulsus est. Nam Themistoclês, verēns nē bellāre
 perseverāret, certiorē eum fēcit id agī, ut pōns, quem ille in 30
 Hellēspontō fēcerat, dissolverātur ac reditū in Asiam exclūderētur;

2 idque ei persuasit. Itaque quā sex mēnsibus iter fēcerat, eādem
minus diēbus trigintā in Asiam reversus est sēque ā Themistocle
3 nōn superātum, sed cōservātum iūdicāvit. Sic ūnius virī prū-
dentiā Graecia liberāta est Eurōpaeque succubuit Asia. Haec est
altera victōria, quae cum Marathōniō possit comparārī tropaeō. 6
Nam parī modō apud Salamīna parvō numerō nāvium māxima post
hominum memoriā classis est dēvicta.

*The jealous Spartans seek to prevent the rebuilding of the city walls.
Themistocles undertakes an embassy to Sparta.*

1 6. Māgnus hōc bellō Themistoclēs fuit neque minor in pāce.
Cum enim Phalēricō portū neque māgnō neque bonō Athēniēnsēs
ūterentur, hūjus cōnsiliō triplex Piraeī portus cōstitūtus est iisque 10
moenibus circumdatus, ut ipsam urbem dignitāte aequiperāret,
2 utilitāte superāret. Idem mūrōs Athēniēnsium restituit praecipuō
suō periculō. Namque Lacedaemoniū causam idōneam nactī prop-
ter barbarōrum excursiōnēs, quā negārent oportēre extrā Pelopon-
nēsum ūllam urbem mūrōs habēre, nē essent loca mūnita, quae 15
hostēs possiderent, Athēniēnsēs aedificantēs prohibēre sunt cōnātī.
3 Hōc longē aliō spectābat atque vidērī volēbant. Athēniēnsēs enim
duābus victōriis, Marathōnia et Salamīniā, tantam glōriam apud
omnēs gentēs erant cōsecūtī, ut intellexerent Lacedaemoniū dē
4 principātū sibi cum iis certāmen fore. Quārē eōs quam infirmis- 20
simōs esse volēbant. Postquam autem audiērunt mūrōs struī,
lēgātōs Athēnās mīsērunt, quī id fierī vetārent. His praesentibus
5 dēsiērunt ac sē dē eā rē lēgātōs ad eōs missūrōs dixerunt. Hanc
lēgātiōnem suscipit Themistoclēs et sōlus primō profectus est :
reliquī lēgātī ut tum exirent, cum satis altī tuendō mūrī exstrūctī 25
vidērentur, praecēpit : interim omnēs, servī atque liberī, opus
facerent neque ūllī locō parcerent, sive sacer, sive privātus esset
sive pūblicus, et undique, quod idōneum ad mūniendum pu-
tārent, congererent. Quō factum est ut Athēniēnsium mūrī ex
sacellis sepulcrisque cōstārent.

30

By playing a bol-l game he succeeds in outwitting the Spartans.

1 7. Themistoclēs autem, ut Lacedaemonem vēnit, adire ad magi-
strātūs nōluit et dedit operam, ut quam longissimē tempus dūceret,
2 causam interpōnēs sē collēgās exspectāre. Cum Lacedaemoniū

quererentur opus nihilō minus fieri eumque in eā rē cōnāri fallere, interim reliquī lēgātī sunt cōsecūtī. A quibus cum audisset nōn multum superesse mūnitiōnis, ad ephorōs Lacedaemoniōrum accessit, penes quōs summum erat imperium, atque apud eōs contendit falsa iis esse dēlāta : quārē aequum esse illōs virōs bonōs nōbīlēsque mittere quibus fidēs habērētur, quī rem explorārent : intereā sē obaidem retinērent. Gestus est ei mōs, trēsque lēgātī fūctī summīs honōribus Athēnās missī sunt. Cum hīs collēgās suōs Themistoclēs iussit proficisci iisque praedixit, ut nē prius Lacedaemoniōrum lēgātōs dīmitterent quam ipse esset remissus. Hōs postquam Athēnās pervēnisse ratus est, ad magistrātūs senātumque Lacedaemoniōrum adiit et apud eōs liberrimē professus est : Athēniēnsēs suō cōnsiliō, quod commūnī jūre gentium facere possent, deōs pūblicōs suōsque patriōs ac penātēs, quō facilius ab hoste possent dēfendere, mūrīs saepsisse, neque in eō quod infūtile esset Graeciae fēcisse. Nam illōrum urbem ut prōpugnāculum oppositum esse barbaris, apud quam jam his classēs rēgiās fēcisse naufragium. Lacedaemoniōs autem male et injūstē facere, quī id potius intuerentur, quod ipsōrum dominātiōnī quam quod ūniversae Graeciae ūtile esset. Quārē, si suōs lēgātōs recipere vellent, quōs Athēnās miserant, sē remitterent, cum aliter illōs numquam in patriam essent receptūrī.

Themistocles becomes unpopular and is ostracized and afterwards condemned for treason. After many wanderings he comes to Ephesus, in Asia Minor.

1 8. Tamen nōn effūgit cīvium suōrum invidiam. Namque ob eundem timōrem, quō damnātus erat Miltiadēs, testulārū suffragiis ē civitāte ējectus Argōs habitātum concessit. Hīc cum propter multās virtūtēs magnā cum dignitāte vīveret, Lacedaemoniī lēgātōs Athēnās miserunt, quī cum absentem accūsārent, quod societātem cum rēge Persē ad Graeciam opprimendam fēcisset. 3 Hōc crimine absēns prōditiōnis damnātus est. Id ut audīvit, quod nōn satis tūtum sē Argīs vidēbat, Corcyrā dēmigrāvit. Ibi cum ejus principēs animadvertisset timēre, nē propter sē bellum iis Lacedaemoniī et Athēniēnsēs indicerent, ad Admētum, Molossū regem, cum quō ei hospitium erat, cōnfūgit. Hūc cum vēnisset et in praesentiā rēx abesset, quō mājore religiōne sē receptum

tuērētur, filiam ejus parvulam arripuit et cum eā sē in sacrārium, quod summā colēbātur caerimōniā, conjēcit. Inde nōn prius ēgressus est, quam rēx eum datā dextrā in fidem reciperet ; quam
 5 praestitit. Nam cum ab Athēniēnsibus et Lacedaemoniis exposce-
 rētur publicē, supplicem nōn prōdidit monuitque ut cōsuleret 5
 sibi : difficile enim esse in tam propinquō locō tūtō eum versārī.
 Itaque Pydnam eum dēdūcī jussit et quod satis esset praesidiū
 6 dedit. Hīc in nāvem omnibus ignōtus nautīs ēscendit. Quae
 cum tempestāte māximā Naxum ferrētur, ubi tum Athēniēnsium
 erat exercitus, sēnsit Themistoclēs, sī eō pervēnisset, sibi esse 10
 pereundum. Hāc necessitāte coāctus dominō nāvis, quis sit, aperit,
 7 multa pollicēns, sī sē cōservāset. At ille clārissimī virī captus
 misericordiā diem noctemque procul ab insulā in salō nāvem tenuit
 in ancorīs neque quemquam ex eā exire passus est. Inde Ephesum
 pervēnit ibique Themistoclem expōnit ; cui ille prō meritis postea 15
 grātiā rettulit.

*He writes to Artaxerxes recounting his services to his father, Xerxes,
 and asking for the Persian king's friendship.*

1 9. Sciō plērōsque ita scripsisse, Themistoclem Xerxe rēgnante
 in Asiam trānsisse. Sed ego potissimum Thūcýdidi crēdō, quod et
 aetāte proximus dē iīs, quī illōrum temporum historiam reliquē-
 runt, et ejusdem civitātis fuit. Is autem ait ad Artaxerxēn eum 20
 2 vēnisse atque hīs verbīs epistulam mīsisse : “Themistoclēs vēnī ad
 tē, quī plūrima mala omnium Grāiōrum in domum tuam intulī,
 quamdiū mihi necesse fuit adversum patrem tuum bellāre patriam-
 3 que meam dēfendere. Idem multō plūra bona fēcī, postquam in
 tūtō ipse et ille in periculō esse coepit. Nam cum in Asiam 25
 revertī vellet proeliō apud Salamīna factō, litterīs eum certiōrem
 fēcī id agī, ut pōns, quem in Hellēspontō fēcerat, dissolverētur
 atque ab hostibus circumīrētur : quō nūntiō ille periculō est
 4 liberātus. Nunc autem cōnfūgi ad tē exagitātus ā cūctā Graeciā,
 tuam petēns amicitiam : quam sī erō adeptus, nōn minus mē 30
 bonum amicum habēbis, quam fortem inimicum ille expertus est.
 Tē autem rogō, ut dē iīs rēbus, quas tēcum colloquī volō, annum
 mihi tempus dēs eōque trānsactō ad tē venīre patiāris.”

The king receives him with kindness and grants him three cities for his support. He dies, some say by his own hand.

1 10. Hūjus rēx animī māgnitūdinem admīrāns cupiēnsque tālem
virum sibi conciliārī veniam dedit. Ille omne illud tempus litteris
sermōnique Persārum dēdidit : quibus adeō eruditus est, ut multō
commodius dicātur apud rēgem verba fēcisse, quam ī poterant quī
2 in Perside erant nātī. Hīc cum multa rēgī esset pollicitus grātis- 5
simumque illud, sī suis, ūtī, cōsiliis vellet, illum Graeciam bellō
oppressūrum, māgnīs mūneribus ab Artaxerxe dōnātus in Asiam
3 rediit domiciliumque Māgnēsiae sibi cōstituit. Namque hanc
urbem eī rēx dōnārat, hīs quidem verbīs, quae eī pānem praebēret
(ex quā regiōne quīnquāgēna talenta quotannis redībant), Lam- 10
psacum autem, unde vīnum sūmeret, Myunta, ex quā obsōnium
habēret.

Hūjus ad nostram memoriam monumenta mānsērunt duo : se-
pulcrum prope oppidum, in quō est sepultus, statua in forō Māg-
4 nēsiae. Dē cūjus morte multis modīs apud plērōsque scriptum est, 15
sed nōs eundem potissimum Thūcŷdidem auctōrem probāmus, quī
illum ait Māgnēsiae morbō mortuum neque negat fuisse fāmam,
venēnum suā sponte sūmpsisse, cum sē, quae rēgī dē Graeciā
5 opprimendā pollicitus esset, praestāre posse dēspērāret. Idem
osso ējus clam in Atticā ab amīcīs sepulta, quoniam lēgibus nōn 20
concēderētur, quod prōditiōnis esset damnātus, memoriae prōdidit.

II. ARISTIDES.

In spite of Aristides' reputation for uprightness, his rival, Themistocles, succeeds in having him banished for ten years.

1 1. Aristīdēs, Lysimachī filius, Athēniēnsis, aequālis ferē fuit
Themistocli, atque cum eō dē principātū contendit ; namque ob-
2 trectārunt inter sē. In hīs autem cōgnitum est, quantō antestāret
ēloquentia innocentiae. Quamquam enim adeō excellēbat Aristīdēs 25
abstinentiā, ut ūnus post hominū memoriam, quem quidem nōs
audierimus, cōgnōmine Jūstus sit appellātus, tamen ā Themistocle
3 collabefactus testulā illā exsiliō decem annōrum multātus est. Quī
quidem cum intellegeret reprimī concitātam multītūdinem nōn
posse, cēdēnsque animadvertisset quendam scribentem ut patriā 30

4 pelleretur, quaesisse ab eo dicitur, quare id faceret aut quid Ari-
 stides commisisset, cum tantam poenam dignus duceretur. Cui ille
 respondit se ignorare Aristidem, sed sibi non placere quod tam
 5 cupidum laborasset ut praeter ceteros Iustus appellaretur. Hic
 decem annorum legitimam poenam non pertulit. Nam postquam
 Xerxes in Graeciam descendit, sexto fere anno quam erat expul-
 sus, populi scito in patriam restitutus est.

*He returns to take part in the Persian war, and is instrumental in
 having the leadership in naval matters transferred from Sparta
 to Athens.*

1 2. Interfuit autem pugnae navali apud Salamina, quae facta est
 prius quam poenam liberaretur. Idem praetor fuit Atheniensium
 apud Plataeas in proelio, quo fusus barbarorum exercitus Mardo- 10
 2 niusque interfectus est. Neque aliud est illum huius in re
 militari illustre factum quam huius imperii memoria, iustitiae vero
 et aequitatis et innocentiae multa, in primis quod ejus aequitate
 factum est, cum in communi classe esset Graeciae simul cum
 Pausania (quo duce Mardonius erat fugatus), ut summa imperii 15
 maritimi ab Lacedaemoniis transferretur ad Athenienses: namque
 3 ante id tempus et mari et terra ducēs erant Lacedaemonii. Tum
 autem et intemperantiam Pausaniae et iustitiam factum est Aristidis
 ut omnes fere civitates Graeciae ad Atheniensium societatem se
 applicarent et adversus barbaros hos ducēs deligerent sibi. 20

*He fixes the amount of tribute to be paid by the several members of the
 Delian Confederacy. He dies poor.*

1 3. Quos quo facilius repellerent, si forte bellum renovare cona-
 rentur, ad classes aedificandas exercitusque comparandos quantum
 pecuniae quaeque civitas daret, Aristides delictus est qui constitu-
 eret, ejusque arbitrio quadringena et sexagena talenta quotannis
 Delum sunt collata: id enim commune aerarium esse voluerunt. 25
 2 Quae omnis pecunia postero tempore Athenas translata est. Hic
 qua fuerit abstinentia, nullum est certius indicium quam quod,
 cum tantis rebus praefuisset, in tanta paupertate decessit, ut qui
 3 efferreretur vix reliquerit. Quo factum est ut filiae ejus publice
 alerentur et de communi aerario dotibus datis collocarentur. 30
 Decessit autem fere post annum quartum quam Themistocles
 Athenis erat expulsus.

III. HANNIBAL.

Hannibal, a military leader of unparalleled skill. But for his country-men's jealousy he would never have been beaten.

- 1 1. Hannibal, Hamilcaris filius, Carthāginiēnsis. Sī vērum est, quod nēmō dubitat, ut populus Rōmānus omnēs gentēs virtūte superārit, nōn est infitiandum Hannibalem tantō praestitisse cēterōs imperātōrēs prūdentīā, quantō populus Rōmānus antecēdat
2 fortitudīne cūctās nātiōnēs; nam quotiēnsūmque cum eō congressus est in Ītaliā, semper. discessit superior. Quod nisi domī cīvium suōrum invidiā dēbilitātus esset, Rōmānōs vidētur superāre potuisse. Sed multōrum obtrectātiō dēvīcit ūnūs virtūtem.
- 3 Hīc autem velut hērēditātē relictum odium paternum ergā Rōmānōs sic cōservāvit, ut prius animam quam id dēposuerit, quī
10 quidem, cum patriā pulsus esset et aliēnārum opum indigēret, numquam dēstiterit animō bellāre cum Rōmānīs.

Hannibal tells king Antiochus how, when he was a mere child, his father had him swear eternal hatred to the Romans.

- 1 2. Nam ut omittam Philippum, quem absēns hostem reddidit Rōmānīs, omnium iīs temporibus potentissimus rēx Antiochus fuit. Hunc tantā cupiditatē incendit bellandī, ut ūsque ā rubrō marī
15 2 arma cōnātus sit inferre Ītaliae. Ad quem cum lēgātī vēnissent Rōmānī, quī dē ējus voluntātē explōrārent darentque operam cōsiliīs clandestīnis ut Hannibalem in suspīciōnem rēgī addūcerent, tamquam ab ipsis corruptum alia atque antea sentire, neque id frūstrā fēcissent idque Hannibal comperisset sēque ab interiōribus
20 3 cōsiliīs sēgregārī vidisset, tempore datō adiit ad rēgem, eīque cum multa dē fidē suā et odiō in Rōmānōs commemorāset, hōc adjūxit: “Pater meus,” inquit, “Hamilcar, puerulō mē, utpote nōn amplius novem annōs nātō, in Hispāniam imperātor profici-
4 scēns Carthāgine, Jovī optimō māximō hostiās immolāvit. Quae 25 dīvinā rēs dum cōfi iēbātur, quaesivī ā mē vellemne sēcum in castra proficisci. Id cum libenter accēpissem atque ab eō petere coepissem nē dubitāret dūcere, tum ille ‘Faciam,’ inquit, ‘sī mihi fidem quā postulō dederis.’ Simul mē ad aram addūxit apud quam sacrificāre instituerat, eamque cēteris remōtis tenen- 30

5 tem jūrāre jussit numquam mē in amicitia cum Rōmānis fore. Id
 ego jūsjūrandum patrī datum ūsque ad hanc aetātem ita cōnser-
 vāvī, ut nēmīnī dubium esse dēbeat, quān reliquō tempore eādem
 6 mente sim futūrus. Quārē sī quid amicē dē Rōmānis cōgitābis,
 nōn imprūdentē fēceris, sī mē cēlāris; cum quidem bellum parā- 5
 bis, tē ipsum frūstrāberis, sī nōn mē in eō prīncipem posueris."

*Becoming commander-in-chief before twenty-five, he subdues all Spain,
 and marches through Gaul and over the Alps into Italy.*

1 3. Hāc igitur quā dīximus aetāte cum patre in Hispāniam pro-
 fectus est; cūjus post obitum, Hasdrubale imperātōre suffectō,
 equitātū omnī praefuit. Hōc quoque interfectō exercitus sum-
 mam imperiū ad eum dētulit. Id Carthāginem delātum publicē 10
 2 comprobātum est. Sic Hannibal, minor quīque et vīgintī annis
 nātus imperātor factus, proximō trienniō omnēs gentēs Hispāniae
 bellō subēgit, Saguntum, foederatam civitatem vī expūgnāvit, trēs
 3 exercitūs māximōs comparāvit. Ex hīs ūnum in Africam mīsīt,
 alterum cum Hasdrubale frātre in Hispāniā reliquit, tertium in 15
 Ītaliā sēcum dūxit. Saltum Pŷrēnaeum trānsiit; quācumque
 iter fēcit, cum omnibus incolīs cōflīxit; nēmīnem nisi victum
 4 dīmīsīt. Ad Alpēs posteaquam vēnit, quae Ītaliā ab Galliā sējūn-
 gunt, quās nēmō umquam cum exercitū ante eum praeter Hērcu-
 lem Grāiū trānsierat (quō factō is hodiē saltus Grāius appellātur), 20
 Alpicōs cōnantēs prohibēre trānsitū concīdit, loca patefēcīt, itinera
 mūniit, effēcīt ut eā elephāntus ōrnātus ire posset, quā antea ūnus
 homō inermis vix poterat rēpere. Hāc cōpiās trādūxit in Ītaliā-
 que pervēnit.

He defeats the Romans in a series of battles.

1 4. Cōflīxerat apud Rhodanum cum P. Cornēliō Scīpiōne cōn- 25
 sule eumque pepulerat. Cum hōc eōdem Clastidiū apud Padum
 2 dēcernit sauciumque inde ac fugātum dimittit. Tertiō idem Scīpiō
 cum collēgā Ti. Longō apud Trebiam adversus eum vēnit. Cum
 iīs manum cōnseruit, utrōsque prōflīgāvit. Inde per Ligurēs
 3 Appennīnum trānsiit, petēns Etrūriam. Hōc itinere adeō gravī 30
 morbō afficitur oculōrum, ut postea numquam dextrō aequē bene
 ūsus sit. Quā valētūdine cum etiamtum premerētur lecticāque

ferrētur, C. Flāminium cōnsulem apud Trasumēnum cum exercitū insidiis circumventum occidit, neque multō post C. Centēnium
 4 praetōrem cum dēlēctā manū saltūs occupantem. Hinc in Āpūliam pervēnit. Ibi obviam eī vērunt duo cōsulēs, C. Terentius et L. Aemilius. Utriusque exercitūs ūnō proeliō fugāvit, Paulum
 5 cōnsulem occidit et aliquot praetereā cōsulārēs, in iis Cn. Servilium Geminum, quī superiōre annō fuerat cōsul.

He outmanœuvres the Roman dictator, and wins such successes that no one ventures to take the field against him.

1 5. Hāc pūgnā pūgnātā Rōmam profectus est nullō resistente. In propinquis urbī montibus morātus est. Cum aliquot ibi diēs castra habuisset et Capuam reverterētur, Q. Fabius Māximus, dictātōr
 2 Rōmānus, in agrō Falernō eī sē objēcit. Hic clausus locōrum angustis noctū sine ūllō dētrīmentō exercitūs sē expēdīvit Fabiō-
 que, callidissimō imperātōrī, dedit verba. Namque obductā nocte sarmenta in cornibus juvencōrum dēligāta incendit ejusque generis
 multitudinem māgnam dispālātā immisit. Quō repentinō objectō
 15 visū tantum terrōrem injēcit exercituī Rōmānōrum, ut ēgredi
 3 extrā vāllum nēmō sit ausus. Hanc post rem gestā nōn ita multis diēbus M. Minucium Rūfū, magistrum equitū parī ac dictātōrem imperiō, dolō prōductum in proelium fugāvit. Ti. Semprōnium Gracchum, iterum cōnsulem, in Lūcānis absēns in
 20 insidiās inductū sustulit. M. Claudium Mārcellum, quīnquiēns
 4 cōnsulem, apud Venusiam parī modō interfēcit. Longum est omnia ēnumerāre proelia. Quārē hōc ūnum satis erit dictum, ex quō intellegī possit, quantus ille fuerit: quamdiū in Ītaliā fuit, nēmō eī in aciē restitit, nēmō adversus eum post Cannēnsē pūg-
 25 nam in campō castra posuit.

Recalled to defend Carthage he is defeated by Scipio at Zama.

1 6. Hinc invictus patriam dēfēsum revocātus bellum gessit adversus P. Scīpiōnem, filium ejus Scīpiōnis, quem ipse primō
 apud Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum, tertiō apud Trebiam fugā-
 2 rat. Cum hōc exhaustis jam patriae facultātibus cupivit imprae-
 3 sentiārū bellum compōnere, quō valentior posteā congredērētur.
 3 In colloquium convēnit; condiōnēs nōn convēnērunt. Post id

factum paucis diebus apud Zamam cum eodem cōflīxit; pulsus (incrēdibile dictū) bīduō et duābus noctibus Hadrūmētum pervēnit, quod abest ab Zamā circiter millia passuum trecenta. In hāc fugā Numidae, quī simul cum eō ex aciē excesserant, insidiātī sunt eī; quōs nōn solum effūgit, sed etiam ipsōs oppressit. Hadrūmētī reliquōs ē fugā collēgit; novīs dēlēctibus paucis diebus multōs contrāxit.

Soon after peace is concluded, he is deposed from the military command and made a chief magistrate. Some years later, fearing Roman designs, he flees to Antiochus, king of Syria.

- 1 7. Cum in apparandō ācerrimē esset occupātus, Carthāginiēnsēs bellum cum Rōmānīs composuērunt. Ille nihilō sēcius exercitū postea praefuit rēsque in Āfricā gessit usque ad P. Sulpiciū C. 10
 2 Aurēliū cōsulēs. Hīs enim magistrātibus lēgātī Carthāginiēnsēs Rōmam vērunt, quī senātūi populōque Rōmānō grātiās agerent, quod cum iīs pācem fēcissent, ob eamque rem corōnā aureā eōs dōnārent simulque peterent, ut obsidēs eōrum Fregellīs essent
 2 captīvique redderentur. Hīs ex senātūs cōsultō respōsum est: 15 mūnus eōrum grātum acceptumque esse; obsidēs, quō locō rogārent, futūrōs; captīvōs nōn remissūrōs, quod Hannibalem, cūjus operā susceptum bellum foret, inimicissimū nōminī Rōmānō, etiamnunc cum imperiō apud exercitū habērent itemque frātre ējus Māgō-
 4 nem. Hōc respōsō Carthāginiēnsēs cōgnitō Hannibalem domum 20 et Māgōnem revocārunt. Hūc ut rediit, rēx factus est, postquam imperātor fuerat, annō secūdō et vicēsimo; ut enim Rōmae cō-
 5 sulēs, sic Carthāgine quotannis annuī binī rēgēs creābantur. In eō magistrātū parī diligentīā sē Hannibal prae-buit, ac fuerat in bellō. Namque effēcit ex novīs vectigālibus nōn solum ut esset 25 pecūnia, quae Rōmānīs ex foedere penderētur, sed etiam super-
 6 esset, quae in aerariō repōnerētur. Deinde annō post M. Claudiō L. Furiō cōsulibus Rōmā lēgātī Carthāginem vērunt. Hōs Hannibal ratus suū exposcendī grātiā missōs, priusquam iīs senātus darētur, nāvem ascendit clam atque in Syriam ad Antiochum 30
 7 profūgit. Hāc rē palam factā Poenī nāvēs duās, quae eum comprehenderent, si possent cōsequī, misērunt; bona ējus publicārunt, domum ā fundāmentis disjēcērunt, ipsum exsulem iudicārunt.

He induces Antiochus to make war on Rome, but fails to rouse Carthage also.

1 8. At Hannibal annō tertiō postquam domō profūgerat, L. Cornēliō Q. Minuciō cōsulibus, cum quīque nāvibus Āfricam accessit in finibus Cŷrēnaeorum, sī forte Carthāginiēnsēs ad bellum Antiochī spē fidūciāque inducerentur, cui jam persuāserat ut cum exercitibus in Ītaliā proficiscerētur. Hūc Māgōnem frātre⁵ 2 excivit. Id ubi Poenī rescivērunt, Māgōnem eādē, quā frātre, absentem affēcērunt poenā. Illi dēspērātis rēbus cum solvissent nāvēs ac vēla ventis dedissent, Hannibal ad Antiochum pervēnit. Dē Māgōnis interitū duplex memoria prōdita est: namque aliī naufragiō, aliī ā servulis ipsius interfectum eum scriptum reliquē- 10 3 runt. Antiochus autem, sī tam in gerendō bellō cōsiliis ejus pārēre voluisset, quam in suscipiendō instituerat, propius Tiberī quam Thermopylis dē summā imperiī dīmīcāsset. Quem etsī multa 4 stultē cōnārī vidēbat, tamen nullā dēseruit in rē. Praefuit paucis nāvibus, quās ex Syriā jussus erat in Asiā dūcere, iisque adver- 15 sus Rhodiōrum classem in Pamphŷliō marī cōnflīxit. Quō cum multitūdine adversāriōrum suī superārentur, ipse, quō cornū rem gessit, fuit superior.

After the defeat of Antiochus he flees to Crete, where by a trick he saves his gold from the covetous Cretans.

1 9. Antiochō fugātō, verēns nē dēderētur, quod sine dubiō acci- disset, sī suī fēcisset potestātem, Crētā ad Gortŷniōs vēnit, ut 20 2 ibi, quō sē cōferret, cōsiderāret. Vidit autem vir omnium calli- dissimus in māgnō sē fore periculō, nisi quid prōvidisset, propter avāritiā Crētēnsium; māgnam enim sēcūm pecūniā portābat, 3 dē quā sciēbat exisse fāmā. Itaque capit tāle cōsiliū. Am- phorās complūrēs complet plumbō, summās operit aurō et argentō. 25 Has praesentibus prīncipibus dēpōnit in templō Diānae, simulāns sē suās fortūnās illōrum fidei crēdere. His in errōrem inductis statuās aēneās, quās sēcūm portābat, omnī suā pecūniā complet 4 eāsque in prōpatulō domī abjicit. Gortŷniī templum māgnā cūrā custōdiunt, nōn tam ā cēteris quam ab Hannibale, nē ille īscien- 30 tibus iis tolleret sēcūmque dūceret.

He proceeds to the court of Prusias, king of Bithynia. There he plans to crush Eumenes of Pergamum, an ally of Rome.

1 10. Sic cōservātis suis rēbus Poenus, illūis Crētēnsibus omni-
bus, ad Prūsiam in Pontum pervēnit. Apud quem eōdem animō
fuit ergā Ītaliā neque aliud quicquam ēgit quam rēgem armāvit
2 et exercuit adversus Rōmānōs. Quem cum vidēret domesticis
opibus minus esse rōbustum, conciliābat cēterōs rēgēs, adjungēbat 5
bellicōsās nātiōnēs. Dissidēbat ab eō Pergamēnus rēx Eumenēs,
Rōmānis amicissimus, bellumque inter eōs gerēbātur et marī et
3 terrā. Sed utrobique Eumenēs plūs valēbat propter Rōmānōrum
societātem. Quō magis cupiēbat eum Hannibal opprimī, quem sī
remōvisset, faciōra sibi cētera fore arbitrābātur. Ad hunc inter- 10
4 ficiendum tālem iniit ratiōnem. Classe paucis diēbus erant dēcrē-
tūri. Superābātur nāvium multitudīne; dolō erat pūgnandū,
cum pār nōn esset armis. Imperāvit quam plūrimās venēnātās
5 serpentēs vivās colligi easque in vāsa fictilia conjici. Hārum cum
effēcisset māgnam multitudīnem, diē ipsō quō factūrus erat nāvāle 15
proelium, classiārīōs convocat iisque praecipit, omnēs ut in ūnam
Eumenis rēgis concurrant nāvem, ā cēteris tantum satis habeant sē
dēfendere. Id illōs facile serpentium multitudīne cōnsecūtūrōs.
6 Rēx autem in quā nāvī veherētur, ut scīrent, sē factūrum; quem
sī aut cēpissent aut interfēcissent, māgnō iis pollicētur praemiō 20
fore.

His stratagem results in the defeat of Eumenes' fleet, though Eumenes himself escapes.

1 11. Tālī cohortātiōne militum factā classis ab utrīsque in proe-
lium dēducitur. Quārum aciē cōstitūtā, priusquam signum pūg-
nae darētur, Hannibal, ut palam faceret suis quō locō Eumenēs
2 esset, tabellārium in scaphā cum cādūceō mittit. Quī ubi ad nāvēs 25
adversāriōrum pervēnit epistolamque ostendēns sē rēgem professus
est quaerere, statim ad Eumenem dēductus est, quod nēmō dubitā-
bat quīn aliquid dē pāce esset scriptum. Tabellārius, ducis nāvī
3 dēclārātā suis, eōdem unde erat ēgressus sē recēpit. At Eumenēs
solūtā epistolā nihil in eā repperit nisi quae ad irrīdendū 30
eum pertinērent. Cūjus etsī causam mirābātur neque reperiēbat,
4 tamen proelium statim committere nōn dubitāvit. Hōrum in
concursū Bithŷnii Hannibalis praeceptō ūniversī nāvem Eumenis

adolantur. Quorum vim rex cum sustinere non posset, fugam salutem petit, quam consecutus non esset, nisi intra sua praesidia se recepisset, quae in proximò litore erant collocata. Reliquae Pergamēnae naves cum adversarios premerent acrius, repente in eas vasa fictilia, de quibus supra mentionem fecimus, conjici coepta sunt. Quae jacta initio risum pugnantibus concitarent, neque quare id fieret poterat intellegi. Postquam autem naves suas opplatas conspexerunt serpentibus, novam rem perterriti, cum, quid potissimum vitarent, non viderent, puppes vertērunt seque ad sua castra nautica rettulerunt. Sic Hannibal consilio arma Pergamēnorum superavit, neque tum solum, sed saepe alias pedestribus copiis pari prudentia pepulit adversarios.

The Romans demand his surrender from Prusias. Hannibal, finding himself surrounded by an armed force, takes poison.

12. Quae dum in Asia geruntur, accidit casus ut legati Prusiae Romae apud T. Quintium Flamininum consularem cernerent, atque ibi de Hannibale mentione facta ex iis unus diceret eum in Prusiae regno esse. Id postero die Flamininus senatui detulit. Patres conscripti, qui Hannibale vivo numquam se sine insidiis futuros existimarent, legatos in Bithyniam miserunt, in iis Flamininum, qui ab rege peterent ne inimicissimum suum secum haberet sibi que dederet. His Prusias negare ausus non est; illud recusavit, ne id tam se fieri postularent, quod adversus jus hospitii esset: ipsi, si possent, comprehenderent; locum ubi esset, facile inventuros. Hannibal enim uno loco se tenebat in castello quod ei a rege datum erat muneri, idque sic aedificarat, ut in omnibus partibus aedificii exitus haberet, scilicet verens ne usum veniret quod accidit. Huc cum legati Romanorum venissent ac multitudine domum ejus circumdedissent, puer ab januam prospiciens Hannibalem dixit plures praeter consuetudinem armatos apparere. Qui imperavit ei, ut omnes fores aedificii circumiret ac properare sibi nuntiaret, num eodem modo undique obsideretur. Puer cum celeriter quid esset renuntiasset omnesque exitus occupatos ostendisset, sensit id non fortuito factum, sed se peti neque sibi diutius vitam esse retinendam. Quam ne alieno arbitrio dimitteret, memor pristinorum virtutum, venenum, quod semper secum habere consuebat, sumpsit.

The date of his death is disputed. He had found time to devote to literature.

- 1 **13.** Sic vir fortissimus, multis variisque perfunctus laboribus, annō acquiēvit septuāgēsīmō. Quibus cōsulibus interierit nōn convenit. Namque Atticus M. Claudiō Mārcellō Q. Fabiō Labeōne cōsulibus mortuum in annālī suō scriptum reliquit, at Polybius L. Aemiliō Paulō Cn. Baebiō Tamphilō, Sulpicius autem Blithō P. 5
- 2 Cornēliō Cethēgō M. Baebiō Tamphilō. Atque hīc tantus vir tantisque bellis districtus nōnnihil temporis tribuit litteris. Namque aliquot ejus librī sunt, Graecō sermōne cōfecti, in iis ad Rhodiōs 3 dē Cn. Manlii Volsōnis in Asiā rēbus gestis. Hūjus bellī gesta multī memoriae prōdidērunt, sed ex hīs duo, quī cum eō in castris 10 fuērunt simulque vīxērunt, quamdiū fortūna passa est, Silēnus et Sōsilus Lacedaemonius. Atque hōc Sōsilō Hannibal litterārum Graecārum tūsus est doctōre.

C. JULII CAESARIS
COMMENTARII
DE BELLO GALLICO.

LIBER QUARTUS.

Certain German tribes, the Usipetes and Tencteri, hard pressed by the Suebi, cross into Gaul. The organization and hardihood of the Suebi.

- 1 **1.** Eā, quae secūta est, hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompēiō, M.
Crassō cōsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tencteri māgnā cum
multitudine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā
2 mari, quō Rhēnus influit. Causa trānseundi fuit, quod ab Suēbis
complūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agricultūrā pro- 5
hibēbantur.
- 3 Suēbōrum gēns est longē māxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum
4 omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dicuntur, ex quibus quotanniē
5 singula millia armātōrum bellandī causā ex finibus ōdūcunt. Reli-
quī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt. Hī rūrsus invicem 10
6 annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sic neque agricul-
7 tūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed privātī ac
sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō
8 in locō incolendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed māxi-
mam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt multumque sunt in vērā- 15
9 tiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne et
libertāte vītae, cum ā puerīs nullō officiō aut disciplinā assuēfactī
nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciant, et virēs alit et immānī
10 corporum māgnitudine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuē-
tudinē addūxērunt, ut locīs frīgidissimīs neque vestītūs praeter 20
pellēs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitatem māgna est
corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

Their lack of intercourse with other tribes and their skill in horsemanship.

2. Mercatōribus est aditus magis eō, ut, quae bellō cēperint, quibus vēdant, habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsiderent. Quīn etiam jumentis, quibus māximē Galli dēlectantur; quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germānī importātis nōn ūtuntur, sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec 5 cotidianā exercitātiōne summī ut sint labōris efficiunt. Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis dēsiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vestigiō assuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam 10 aut inertius habētur, quam ephippiis ōtī. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvis paucī adire audent. Vinum ad sē omnīnō importārī nōn sinunt, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēmīnārī arbitrantur.

Their subjugation of their more civilized neighbors, the Ubii.

1 3. Pūblicē māximam putant esse laudem, quam lātissimē ā suis finibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē significārī māgnum numerum civitā- 15 2 tum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbis 3 circiter millia passuum sescenta agrī vacāre dicuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit civitās ampla atque flōrēs, ut est captus Germānōrum, et paulō sunt ējusdem generis cēteris hūmāniōrēs, proptereā quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs 20 mercatōrēs ventitant, et ipsī propter propinquitatem Gallicis sunt 4 mōribus assuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēbī multis saepe bellis expertī propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque civitātis finibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectigālēs sibi fēcērunt, ac multō humiliōrēs infirmīōrēsque redēgērunt. 25

Forced out of Germany, the Usipetes and Tencteri attack the Menapii and seize their lands on the Rhine.

1 4. In eādem causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tencterī, quōs suprā 2 dīximus, quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinuērunt; ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multis locīs Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt; quās regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant et ad utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs, aedificia vicōsque habēbant; 30

3 sed tantae multitudinis adventū perterriti ex iis aedificiis, quae
 trāns flūmen habuerant, dēmigrāvērunt et cis Rhēnum dispositis
 4 praesidiis Germānōs trānsire prohibēbant. Illi omnia experti cum
 neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsire
 propter custodiās Menapiōrum possent, reverti sē in suās sēdēs 5
 regiōnēsq̄ simulāvērunt, et tridui viam prōgressi rūsus revertē-
 5 runt atque omni hōc itinere unā nocte equitatū cōfectō insciōs
 6 inopinantesque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germānōrum dis-
 cessū per explorātōrēs certiōrēs facti sine metū trāns Rhēnum
 7 in suōs vicōs remigrāverant. His interfectis nāvibusque eōrum 10
 occupātis, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum, quae citrā Rhēnum
 erat, certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedi-
 ficiis occupātis reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiis aluērunt.

Caesar distrusts the loyalty of the Gauls because of their fickleness.

1 5. His dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmitātem Gallōrum
 veritus, quod sunt in cōsiliis capientiū mōbilēs et novis plērum- 15
 2 que rēbus student, nihil hīs committendum existimāvit. Est enim
 hōc Gallicae cōsuētūdinis, utī et viātōrēs etiam invitōs cōsistere
 cōgant et, quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cō-
 gnōverit, quaerant, et mercātōrēs in oppidis vulgus circumsistat,
 quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōverint, prō- 20
 3 nūntiāre cōgant. His rēbus atque auditiōnibus permōti dē summīs
 saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vestigiō poenitēre
 necesse est, cum incertis rūmōribus serviant, et plērique ad volun-
 tātē eōrum ficta respondeant.

Fearing an alliance of the Gauls and Germans, he decides to make war on the new-comers.

1 6. Quā cōsuētūdine cōgnitā Caesar, nē graviōri bellō occur- 25
 2 reret, mātūrius, quam cōsuērat, ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō
 3 cum vēnisset ea quae fore suspicātus erat facta cōgnōvit : missās
 lēgatiōnēs ab nōnnūllis civitatibus ad Germānōs invitātōsque eōs,
 utī ab Rhēnō discēderent, omniaque, quae postulāssent, ab sē fore
 4 parāta. Quā spē adducti Germānī lātius vagābantur et in finēs 30
 Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervē-
 5 nerant. Principibus Galliae ēvocātis Caesar ea, quae cōgnōverat,
 dissimulanda sibi existimāvit eōrumque animis permulsis et cōfir-
 mātis equitatūque imperātō bellum cum Germānis gerere cōstituit.

As Caesar's forces draw near, the Germans send envoys insolently justifying themselves.

1 7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlectīs iter in ea
2 loca facere coepit, quibus in locīs esse Germānōs audiēbat. Ā qui-
bus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab hīs vērunt,
3 quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō : Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō
bellum inferre neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacessantur, quīn armīs 5
contentant, quod Germānōrum cōsuētūdō sit ā mājōribus trādita,
4 quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. Haec
tamen dicere, vēnisse invitōs, ējectōs domō ; sī suam grātiā
Rōmānī velint, posse iis ūtilēs esse amīcōs ; vel sibi agrōs attribu-
5 ant vel patiantur eōs tenēre, quōs armīs possēderint : sēsē ūnīs 10
Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē diī quidem immortālēs parēs esse
possint ; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem, quem nōn
superāre possint.

Caesar declines to allow them to remain in Gaul, but offers to settle them in the land of the Ubii.

1 8. Ad haec quae vīsum est Caesar respondit ; sed exitus fuit
ōrātiōnis : Sibi nūllam cum hīs amīcitiam esse posse, sī in Galliā 15
2 remanērent ; neque vērū esse, quī suōs finēs tuērī nōn potuerint,
aliēnōs occupāre ; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs, quī darī tan-
3 tae praesertim multitudinī sine injūriā possint ; sed licēre, sī
velint, in Ubiōrum finibus cōsīdere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē,
et dē Suēbōrum injūriīs querantur et ā sē auxilium petant : hōc 20
sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.

The Germans, expecting reinforcements, ask two days to consider his proposal.

1 9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dixerunt et rē dēliberātā
post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs : intereā nē propius sē
2 castra movēret, petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī
3 posse dixit. Cōgnōverat enim māgnam partem equitātis ab iis 25
aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmentandīque causā ad Ambivari-
tōs trāns Mosam missam ; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque ējus rei
causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

Description of the course of the rivers Meuse and Rhine.

1 **10.** Mosa prouluat ex monte Vosegō, quī est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae appellatur Vacalus,
 2 Insulam efficit Batāvōrum, neque longius ab eō millibus passuum
 3 octōgintā in Ōceanum Influit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiis,
 quī Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per finēs Nantuātium, Helvēti- 5
 ōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum
 4 citātus fertur et, ubi Ōceanō appropinquāuit, in plūrēs dēfluit
 partēs multis ingentibusque Insulis effectis, quārum pars magna ā
 5 feris barbarisque nātiōnibus incolitur, ex quibus sunt, quī piscibus
 atque ōvis avium vivere existimantur, multisque capitibus in 10
 Ōceanum Influit.

The German envoys returning ask further time for negotiations with the Ubii. Caesar postpones his decision for one day.

1 **11.** Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum duodecim milli-
 bus abesset, ut erat cōstitutum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; quī
 in itinere congressī māgnopere, nē longius prōgrederētur, ōrābant.
 2 Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant, utī ad eōs equitēs, quī agmen 15
 antecessissent, praemitteret eōsque pūgnā prohiberet, sibiue ut
 3 potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum sī principēs
 ac senātus sibi jūrejūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne, quae ā
 Caesare ferrētur, sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant: ad hās rēs cōficiendās
 4 sibi trīduī spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre 20
 arbitrābātur, ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum, quī abes-
 sent, reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius millibus passuum
 5 quattuor aquātiōnis causā prōcessūrum eō diē dixit; hūc posterō
 diē quam frequentissimī convenirent, ut dē eōrum postulātis cō-
 6 gnōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs, quī cum omnī equitātū anteces- 25
 serant, mittit, quī nūntiarent, nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent et, sī
 ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent, quoad ipse cum exercitū propius
 accessisset.

The Germans make an unwarranted attack on Caesar's advance cavalry and rout them with considerable loss.

1 **12.** At hostēs ubi primum nostrōs equitēs cōspexērunt, quō-
 rum erat quīnque millium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius octin- 30
 gentōs equitēs habērent, quod īī, quī frūmentandī causā ierant

trāns Mosam, nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostris, quod
 lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque ī diēs
 indūtīs erat ab hīs petitus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs pertur-
 2 bāvērunt; rūsus resistentibus cōsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsilu-
 ērunt, subfossīs equīs complūribusque nostrīs dējectīs reliquōs in 5
 fugam conjēcērunt atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt, ut nōn prius fugā
 3 dēsisterent, quam in cōspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent. In eō
 proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur quattuor et septuāgintā,
 4 in hīs vir fortissimus, Pīsō Aquitānus, amplissimō genere nātus,
 cūjus avus in cīvitatē suā rēgnum obtinuerat amicus ab senātū 10
 5 nostrō appellātus. Hīc cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium
 ferret, illum ex periculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dējectus,
 6 quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit: cum circumventus multis vulne-
 ribus acceptīs cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī jam proeliō excesserat,
 procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque 15
 interfectus est.

*Caesar determines to show no further consideration, and when the
 leading men of the Germans return to treat with him, he seizes
 them all.*

1 13. Hōc factō proeliō Caesar neque jam sibi lēgātōs audiendōs
 neque condiciōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab iīs, quī per dolum
 2 atque insidiās petītā pāce ultrō bellum intulissent: expectāre
 vērō, dum hostium cōpiae augērentur equitātusque reverterētur, 20
 3 summae dēmentiae esse jūdicābat, et cōgnitā Gallōrum infirmitāte,
 quantum jam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōn-
 secūtī, sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capiēda nihil spatiū dandum
 4 existimābat. His cōstitutīs rēbus et cōsiliō cum lēgātīs et
 quaestōre commūnicātō, nē quem diem pūgnae praetermitteret, 25
 opportunissima rēs accidit, quod postridiē ejus diēi māne eādē et
 perfidiā et simulātiōne ūsī Germānī frequentēs omnibus principi-
 5 bus mājōribusque nātū adhibitīs ad eum in castra vēnērunt, simul,
 ut dicēbātur, suī pūrgandī causā, quod contrā atque esset dictum
 et ipsī petīssent, proelium prīdiē commīsissent, simul ut, sī quid 30
 6 possent, dē indūtīs fallendō impetrārent. Quōs sibi Caesar
 oblātōs gāvīsus illōs retinērī jussit, ipse omnēs cōpiās castris
 ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse existi-
 mābat, agmen subsequī jussit.

He at once attacks and captures the German camp.

1 14. Acīē triplici īstitutā et celeriter octō millium itinere
cōfectō prius ad hostium castra pervēnit, quam, quid agerētur,
2 Germānī sentire possent. Quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterriti
et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque cōsiliū
habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō, perturbantur, cōpiāsne
3 petere praestāret. Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū signi-
ficārētur, militēs nostrī pristini diēi perfidiā incitātī in castra
4 irrūperunt. Quō locō quī celeriter arma capere potuerunt, paulis-
per nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedimentaue proelium 10
5 commiserunt: at reliqua multitūdō puerōrum mulierumque (nam
cum omnibus suis domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant) pas-
sim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōsectandōs Caesar equitātum misit.

The Germans are completely routed and many perish in the river.

1 15. Germānī post tergum clāmōre auditō, cum suōs interfici
vidērent, armīs abjectis signisque militāribus relictis sē ex castris 15
2 ejēcērunt, et cum ad cōfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent,
reliquā fugā dēspērātā māgnō numerō interfectō reliquī sē in
flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī flūminis
3 oppressī perierunt. Nostri ad tūnum omnēs incolumēs perpaucis
vulnerātis ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum 20
quadringentōrum trigintā millium fuisset, sē in castra recēperunt.
4 Caesar iis, quōs in castris retinuerat, discēdendī potestātem fēcit.
5 Illī supplicia cruciātūsque Gallōrum veritī, quōrum agrōs vexā-
verant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dixerunt. His Caesar libertā-
tem concessit.

25

Cæsar, to overawe the Germans, decides to invade Germany.

1 16. Germānicō bellō cōfectō multīs dē causis Caesar statuit
sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa fuit iustissima, quod,
cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impelli, ut in Galliam venīrent,
suis quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellexerent et posse
2 et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsire. Accessit 30
etiam quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tencterōrum quam
suprā commemorāvī praedandī frūmentandique causā Mosam trāns-
isse neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum

3 in finēs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum iis conjūnixerat. Ad
 quōs cum Caesar nūtiōs mīsisset, quī postulārent, eōs, quī sibi
 4 Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dēderent, respondērunt ; Populī
 Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum finīre : sī sē invītō Germānōs in Gal-
 liam trānsire nōn aequum existimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse
 5 imperiī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret ? Ubiī autem,
 quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amicitiam
 fēcērant, obsidēs dederant, māgnopere ōrābant, ut sibi auxilium
 6 ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs premerentur ; vel, sī id facere
 occupātiōnibus rei pūblicae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum
 7 trānsportāret : id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis
 futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opīniōnem ējus exercitūs
 Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō etiam ad ultimās
 Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opīniōne et amicitia populī Rōmānī
 8 tūtī esse possint. Nāvium māgnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum
 15 exercitum pollicēbantur.

He proceeds to build a bridge over the Rhine.

1 [17. Caesar hīs dē causīs, quās commemorāvi, Rhēnum trānsire
 decrēverat ; sed nāvibus trānsire neque satis tūtum esse arbitra-
 bātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dignitātis esse statuēbat.
 2 Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter
 20 lātitudinem, rapiditatem altitudinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi
 contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum existimābat.]

*He then leads his army against the Sugambri, who at once flee
 into the forests.*

1 18. Diēbus decem, quibus māteria coepta erat comportārī, omni
 2 opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem
 pontis firmō praesidiō relictō in finēs Sugambrōrum contendit. 25
 3 Interim ā complūribus cīvitatibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt ; quibus
 pācem atque amicitiam petentibus liberāliter respondit obsidēsque
 4 ad sē addūcī jubet. At Sugambrī ex eō tempore, quō pōns institui
 coeptus est, fugā comparātā hortantibus iis, quōs ex Tencterīs
 atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, finibus suis excesserant sua- 30
 que omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitudinem ac silvās abdiderant.

He learns that the Suebi also have fled into the interior. Having achieved his ends, Caesar returns to Gaul.

- 1 19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus omnibus vicis
aedificiisque incēnsis frūmentisque succisis sē in finēs Ubiōrum
recēpit, atque iis auxilium suum pollicitus, si ab Suēbīs premeren-
2 tur, haec ab iis cōgnōvit: Suēbōs, posteaquam per explorātōrēs
pontem fieri comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō nūntiōs in 5
omnēs partēs dīmisisse, uti dē oppidis dēmigrārent, liberōs, uxōrēs
suaque omnia in silvis dēpōnerent, atque omnēs, qui arma ferre
3 possent, ūnum in locum convenirent: hunc esse dēlēctum medium
ferē regiōnum eārum, quās Suēbī obtinērent: hīc Rōmānōrum
4 adventum exspectāre atque ibi dēcertāre cōstituisse. Quod ubi
Caesar comperit, omnibus rēbus iis cōfectis, quārum rērum causā
trādūcere exercitum cōstituerat, ut Germānis metum injiceret,
ut Sugambrōs ulciscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne liberāret, diēbus
omninō decem et octō trāns Rhēnum cōsumptis satis et ad laudem
et ad utilitātem prōfectum arbitrātus sē in Galliam recēpit pon- 15
temque rescidit.

Having decided on an expedition to Britain, Caesar tries in vain to get information about the island from Gallic traders.

- X 1 20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsi in hīs locis, quod
omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen
in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicis
2 bellis hostibus nostris inde subministrata auxilia intellegēbat et, si 20
tempus anni ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi
ūsui fore arbitrābātur, si modo Insulam adisset et genus hominū
perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē
3 Gallis erant incōgnita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs
illō adit quisquam, neque iis ipsis quicquam praeter oram mariti- 25
mam atque eas regiōnēs, quae sunt contrā Galliās, nōtum est.
4 Itaque vocātis ad sē undique mercātōribus neque quanta esset
insulae māgnitūdō, neque quae aut quantaē nātiōnēs incolerent,
neque quem ūsum belli habērent aut quibus institūtis ūterentur,
neque qui essent ad māgnū nāvium multitudinem idōneī portūs, 30
reperire poterat.

early soon
insufficient
no more
insufficient
himself for now in fact
also rashly, without good reason
the larger size
cause

Caesar sends Volusenus to reconnoitre. Meanwhile he receives offers of submission from several states of Britain. Volusenus returns with but little information.

21. Ad haec cōmōsēnda, priusquam periculum faceret, idō-
neum esse arbitrat̃s C. Volusēnum cum nāvi longā praemittit.
Huic mandat, ut explorātis omnibus rēbus ad sē quam primum
revertatur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiis in Morinōs proficiscitur,
quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trājectus. Hūc nāvēs
undique ex finitimis regiōnibus et quam superiōre aestate ad
Veneticum bellum effecerat classem jubet convenire. Interim
cōsiliō ejus cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā com-
plūribus insulae civitatibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī polliceantur
obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus
auditis liberāliter pollicitus hortatusque, ut in eā sententiā per-
manerent, eōs domum remittit et cum iis unā Commiūm, quem
ipse Atrebatibus superātis rēgem ibi cōstituerat, cūjus et virtū-
tem et cōsiliū probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābatur,
cūjusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus magnā habebatur, mittit.
Huic imperat, quās possit, adeat civitatēs hortaturque, ut populū
Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiat.
Volusēnus perspectis regiōnibus omnibus, quantum ei facultatis
dari potuit, quī nāvi ēgredi ac sē barbaris committere nōn auderet,
quintō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset re-
nūntiat.

After receiving the submission of certain of the Morini, Caesar collects his fleet and makes his final arrangements.

22. Dum in hīs locis Caesar nāvium parandarū causā moratur,
ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vērērunt, quī sē dē
superiōris temporis cōsiliō excūsarent, quod hominēs barbari et
nostrae cōsuētūdinis imperiti bellum populō Rōmānō fecissent,
sēque ea, quae imperāssēt, factūrōs pollicērentur. Hōc sibi Caesar
satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrat̃s, quod neque post tergum
hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus
facultatem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupatiōnēs Bri-
tanniae antepōnendās iudicabat, magnum iis numerum obsidum
imperat. Quibus adductis eps in fidem recēpit. Nāvibus circiter
octogintā onerariis coactis contractisque, quot satis esse ad duās

transportandās legiōnēs existimābat, quod praeterea nāvium loc-
 4 gārū habēbat, quaestōri lēgātis praefectisque distribuit. Hūc
 accēdēbant duodēviginti onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ab
 millibus passuum octō ventō tenēbantur, quō minus in eundem
 5 portum venire possent: hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exer-
 citum Q. Tituriō Sabīnō et L. Aurunculeiō Cortae lēgātis in
 Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum, ab quibus ad eum lēgati
 6 nōn vēnerant, dūcendum dedit; P. Sulpicium Rūfū lēgātū
 cum eō praesidiō, quod satis esse arbitrābatur, portum tenēre
 jussit.

He reaches Britain, but has difficulty in getting a suitable landing-place.

23. His constitūtis rēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvīgandum tem-
 pestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum
 2 prōgredi et nāvēs cōscendere et sē sequi jussit, a quibus cum
 paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quartā
 cum primis nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus colli-
 3 bus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspexit. Cūjus loci haec
 erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbatur, uti ex
 4 necis superioribus in litus tēlum adire posset. Hunc ad egrē-
 dum nēquāquam idōneum locū arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō
 5 convenirent, ad hōram nōnam in ancoris expectāvit. Interim
 lēgātis tribūnisque militum convocātis et quae ex Volusēnō cō-
 gnōvisset, et quae fieri vellet, ostendit monuitque, ut rei militāris
 6 ratiō, māximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut quae celerem atque
 instābilem mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab
 7 suis administrārentur. His dimissis et ventum et aestum unō tem-
 pore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātis ancoris circiter millia
 passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus apertō ac plānō litore nāvēs
 constituit.

The Britons, following along the shore, vigorously oppose the landing.

24. At barbari cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō praemissō equitātū
 et essedāriis, quō plērūque genere in proeliis uti cōsuērunt,
 reliquīs cōpiis subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus egrēdi prohibēbant. Erat
 2 ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter māgnitudinē
 nisi in alto constitui nōn poterant, militibus autem ignōtis locis.

impeditis manibus, magnō et gravi onere armōrum oppressis simul
 et de nāvibus desiliendum et in fluctibus consistendum et cum
 3 hostibus erat pugnandum, cum illi aut ex aridō aut paulum in
 aquam progressi omnibus membris expeditis, notissimis locis au-
 4 dacter tela coniecerant et equis insuefactos incitarent. Quibus
 rebus nostri perterriti atque huius omnino generis pugnae imperiti
 non eadem alacritate ac studio, quō in pedestribus uti proclis
 consueverant, utebantur.

the afterthought (was)

Caesar manoeuvres to dislodge the enemy, while a brave standard-bearer gallantly heads a rush towards the shore.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, naves longas quarum et
 species erat barbaris inusitatio et motus ad usum expeditior, 10
 paulum removeri ab onerariis navibus et remis incitari et ad latus
 apertum hostium constitui atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis
 hostes propelli ac submoveri iussit; quae res magnō usui nostris
 2 fuit. Nam et navium figurā et remorum motū et inusitatō genere
 tormentorum permoti barbari constituerunt ac paulum modo pedem
 3 retulerunt. Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, maximē propter
 altitudinem maris, qui decimae legionis aquilam ferebat, con-
 4 tatus deos, ut ea res legioni feliciter eveniret: "Desilite," inquit,
 "militēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere: ego certē meum
 5 rei publicae atque imperatori officium praestiterō." Hōc cum voce
 magnā dixisset, se ex navi projecit atque in hostes aquilam ferre
 coepit. Tum nostri cohortati inter se, ne tantum dedecus admit-
 teretur, universi ex navi desilerunt. Hōs item ex proximis
 navibus cum conspexissent subsecuti hostibus appropinquarunt.

The Romans, after much fighting, gain the shore and put the Britons to flight.

26. Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter. Nostri tamen, quod
 neque ordinēs servāre neque firmiter insistere neque signa subse-
 2 qui poterant atque alius alia ex navi quibuscumque signis occur-
 3 rerat, se aggregabat, magnopere perturbabantur; hostes vērō,
 notis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquos singulāres ex navi egre-
 4 dientēs conspexerant, incitatis equis impeditos adoriēbantur, plures
 3 paucos circumsistebant, alii ab latere apertō in universos tela
 4 coniciebant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphas lon-

really in time clause introduced by cum followed

at the time of the battle

gārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia militibus compleri jussit
 5 et, quōs laborantēs cōspexerat, hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostri,
 simul in aridō cōstitērunt, suis omnibus cōsecūtis in hostēs
 impetum fecērunt atque cōs in fugam dedērunt, neque longius
 prōsequi potuerunt, quod equitēs cursum tenere atque insulam
 capere nōn potuerant. Hōc unum ad pristinam fortunam Caesari

The Britons sue for peace.

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fuga recēpērunt,
 statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs datūrōs
 2 quaeque imperāssēt factūrōs polliciti sunt. Unā cum his lēgātis
 Commius Atrebas vēnit, quem suprà dēmōstrāveram ā Caesare in
 3 Britanniam praemiisum. Hunc illi ē nāvi ēgressum, cum ad eōs
 orātōris mōdō Caesaris mandata dēferret, comprēhenderant atque
 in vincula conjēcerant, tum proeliō factō remisērunt. In petendā
 pāce ejus rei culpam in multitudinem contulērunt, et propter
 5 imprudentiam ut ignōscerētur petiverunt. Caesar questus, quod,
 cum ultrō in continentem lēgātis missis pācem ab sē petissent,
 bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere imprudentiae dixit obsi-
 6 desque imperāvit; quōrum illi partem statim dedērunt, partem
 ex longinquiōribus locis arcessitam paucis diēbus sēsē datūrōs
 7 dixērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs jussērunt, principēsque
 undique convenire et sē civitatēsque suās Caesarī commendāre
 coepērunt.

A portion of Caesar's ships crossing later is dispersed by a storm

and driven back to the mainland.

1 28. His rēbus pāce cōfirmatā post diem quārtum, quam est in
 Britanniam ventum, nāvēs duodēviginti, dē quibus suprà dēmōn-
 strātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī
 2 ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex
 castris vidērentur, tanta tempestās subito coorta est, ut nulla
 eārum cursum tenere posset, sed aliae eōdem, unde erant pro-
 3 pectae, referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem partem insulae, quae est
 tamen ancoris jactis cum fluctibus complērentur, necessariō adversā
 nocte in altum propectae continentem petiērunt.

*because in clause introduced by cum
 meaning when followed by they
 sub because in clause*

The same storm does great damage to the vessels which had crossed with Caesar, and causes much alarm in the camp. *share under*

1 29. Eādem nocte accidit, ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maximū mōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōsuēvit, nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum cūtrāverat quāsque in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligatae, tempestās afflictābat, neque ūlla nostris facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctis reliquae cum essent fūnibus, ancoris reliquaeque armamentis amissis ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, māgna, id quod necesse erat accidere, tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae, quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī, et, quod omnibus cōstābat hiemārī in Gallia oportēre, frūmentum hīs in locis in hiemem prōvisum non erat. *including whole of several*

Learning of these misfortunes, the Britons who had submitted decide to renew the war, and secretly gather forces. *absolute absence*

1 30. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis principēs Britanniae, qui post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, int̄ sē collocūtī, cum equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānis esse intellexerent et paucitatem militum ex castrōrum exiguitate cōgnōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiōnēs transportāverat, optimum factū esse dūxerunt rebellione factā frūmentō commēatūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōducere, quod hīs superātis aut reditū interclūsis nēminem postea belli inferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōfidēbant. Itaque rūsus cōiūratiōne factā paulatim ex castris discēdere et suōs clam ex agris adducere coepērunt. *the best thing to do*

Caesar, becoming suspicious, collects provisions in the camp and repairs the shattered fleet. *concluded followed by night*

31. At Caesar, etsi nōndum eōrum cōsilia cōgnōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermiserant, fore id, (quod accidit) suspiciābātur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparabat. Nam et frūmentum ex agris cotidiē in castra cōferēbat et quae gravissimē afflictāe erant nāvēs, eōrum

materia atque aere ad reliquas reficiendas usabantur et quae ad eas res erant usus ex continentis comportari iussit. Itaque, cum summo studio a militibus administraretur, duodecim navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigari commodè posset, effecit.

A legion out foraging is surprised and surrounded by the Britons.

Suppose the Britons surprise Caesar goes to its relief.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine una frumentum missa, quae appellabatur septima, neque illa ad id tempus belli suspitione interposita, cum pars hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra ventitaret, in qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant, Caesar nuntiaverunt pulverem majorem, quam consuetudo ferret, in ea parte videri, quam in partem legio iter 10 fecisset. Caesar id, quod erat, suspicatus, aliquid novi a barbaris initum consilii, cohortes, quae in stationibus erant, secum in eam partem proficisci, ex reliquis duas in stationem cohortes succedere, 3 reliquas armari et confestim sese subsequi iussit. Cum paulo longius a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus premi atque aegre sustinere et conferta legione ex omnibus partibus tela conjici animadvertit. Nam quod omni ex reliquis partibus demesso frumento pars una erat reliqua, suspicati hostes huc nostros esse venturos noctu in silvis delituerant; tum dispersos depositis armis in metendo occupatos subito adorti paucis interfectis reliquos incertis ordinibus perturbaverant, simul equitatu atque essedis circumdederant.

A description of the British mode of fighting with chariots.

33. Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae. Primo per omnes partes prequant et tela conjiciunt atque ipso terrore equorum et strepitu rotarum ordines plerumque perturbant, et cum se inter equitum turmas insinuaverunt, ex essedis desiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulatim ex proelio excedunt atque ita currus collocant, ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos receptum habeant. Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum in proe iis praestant, ac tantum usu cotidianum et exercitatione efficiunt, uti in declivi ac praecipiti loco incitatos equos sustinere et brevi moderari ac flectere et per temonem percurrere et in iugo insistere et se inde in currus citissime recipere consueverint.

Means; to arm themselves

On Caesar's approach the Britons withdraw, and spend the next few days in collecting larger forces.

1 34. Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostris novitāte pūgnae tempore
opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit: namque ejus adventū
2 hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō
ad lacessendum hostem et ad committendum proelium aliēnum
esse tempus arbitrātus suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore
3 intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris
4 omnibus occupātis, qui erant in agris reliqui discesserunt. Secū-
tae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs
5 in castris continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent. Interim
barbarī nūtiōs in omnēs partēs dimisērunt paucitātemque nos-
trōrum militum suis praedicāvērunt, et quanta praedae faciendae
atque in perpetuum sui liberandī facultās darētur, si Rōmānōs
6 castris expulissent, dēmōstrāvērunt. His rēbus celeriter magnā
multitudīne peditātis equitātisque cōctā ad castra vēērunt.

When the Britons come against his camp, Caesar meets them and routs them with great slaughter.

1 35. Caesar etsi idem, quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat, fore
vidēbat, ut, si essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte periculum effugerent,
tamen nactus equitēs circiter trigintā quos Commius Atrebas, dē
quō ante dictum est, sēcum trāsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō
2 castris cōstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum militum
3 impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quos 20
tantō spatiō secūtī, quantum cursū et viribus efficere potuērunt,
complūrēs ex iis occidērunt, deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedi-
ciis incēnsis sē in castra recēpērunt.

Having received the enemy's submission, Caesar returns to Gaul, the summer being now over.

1 36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce
2 vēērunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum, quem ante imperāverat, 25
duplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūci iussit, quod propinquā
diē aequinoctiī infirmis nāvibus hiēmī nāvigatiōnem subjiciendam
3 nōn existimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post

4 mediam noctem nāvēs solvit ; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continen-
tem pervēnerunt ; sed ex iis onerāriae duae eōdem, quōs reliqui
portūs capere nōn potuerunt et paulō infrā delātae sunt.

*A detachment of the Romans, after landing, is attacked by the
Morini, but is rescued by Caesar.*

1 37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositi militēs circiter tre-
centi atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britan-
niam proficiscēns pācātōs reliquerat, spē praedae adducti primō
nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumsteterunt ac, si sēsē interfici
2 nōllent, arma pōnere jussērunt. Cum illi orbe factō sēsē defen-
derent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter millia sex con-
venerunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castris equitātum
3 suis auxiliō misit. Interim nostrī militēs impetum hostium sus-
tinuerunt atque ~~multis~~ hōris quattuor fortissimē pugnāvērunt et
4 paucis vulneribus acceptis complūrēs ex his occiderunt. Postea
vērō quam equitātus noster in cōspectum vēnit, hostēs abjectis
armis terga vertērunt magnusque eōrum numerus est occisus. 15

After crushing this uprising Caesar arranges his winter camps.

1 38. Caesar postērō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum iis legiōnibus,
quās ex Britannia redūxerat, in Morinōs, qui rebellīōnem fēcerant,
2 misit. Quī cum propter siccitatēs palūdum, quō sē reciperent,
nōn habērent, quō superiōre annō perfugio fuerant, omnes ferē
3 in potestatem Labiēni pervēnerunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta
lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum
4 agris vāstātis, frumentis succis, aedificiis incensis, quod Menapii
sē omnes in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recē-
5 pērunt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legiōnum hiberna cōstituit.
Eō duae omnīnō civitatēs ex Britannia obsidēs misērunt, reliquae 25
neglēxērunt. His rēbus gestis ex litteris Caesaris diērum viginti
supplicatiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

*as a place of refuge. Darius
also may take a second abode used previously
as his winter quarters - He used the
men as guides. Superfluous ones
Thanksgiv*

LIBER QUINTUS.

Caesar orders more vessels to be built; he then spends the winter in attending to the affairs of his two other provinces.

1. L. Domitiō Ap. Claudiō cōsulibus, discēdēns ab hiberniis Caesar in Itāliam, ut quotannis facere cōsuērat, lēgātis imperat, quōs legiōnibus praefecerat, utī quam plūrimās possent hieme 2 nāvēs aedificandās veterēsque reficiendās curārent. Eārum modum fōrmamque dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritatem onerandī subductionēque paulō facit humiliōrēs, quam quibus in nostrō mari uti cōsuē- 3 vimus, atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās commutātiōnēs aestuum minus māgnōs ibi fluctūs fieri cōgnōverat; ad onera ac multitudinem jūmentōrum transportandam paulō lātiōrēs, quam 4 quibus in reliquis ūtimur maribus. Hās omnēs actuāriās imperat 5 fieri, quam ad rem humilitās multum adjuvat. Ea, quae sunt 6 ūsui ad armandās nāvēs, ex Hispaniā apportārī jubet. Ipse, conventibus Galliae citeriōris peractis in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod 7 a Pirūstis finitimam partem prōvinciae incursiōnibus vāstārī audiebat. Eō cum vēnisset, civitātibus milites imperat certumque in 8 locum convenire jubet. Quā rē nūntiātā Pirūstae lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, quī doceant nihil eārum rērum publicō factum cōsiliō, 9 sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōnstrant omnibus ratiōnibus dē injūriis satisfacere. Perceptā ōrātiōne eōrum Caesar obsidēs imperat 10 eōsque ad certam diem adducī jubet; nisi ita fecerint, sēsē bellō 11 civitatem persecūtūrum dēmōnstrat. Iis ad diem adductis ut imperāverat, arbitrōs inter civitātēs dat, quī litem aestiment po- 12 namque cōstituunt.

Returning in the spring he orders the fleet and army to assemble for another expedition to Britain, then goes to the country of the Treveri, whose loyalty was suspected.

1. His cōfectis rēbus conventibusque peractis, in citeriōrem 2 Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum 3 vēnisset, circuitis omnibus hiberniis singulārī militum studiō in 4 summā omnium rērum inopiā circiter sescentās ejus generis, cūjus 5 suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, nāvēs et longās viginti octō, invenit in- 6 structās, neque multum abesse ab eō, quin paucis diēbus deducī 7 possint. Collaudātis militibus atque iis quī negōtiō praefuerant, 8

Explained P. 364 (C)

personae
sub in aut interest
negotio
Quid fieri velit ostendit, atque omnēs ad portum Itium convenire jubet, quō ex portū commodissimum in Britanniam trāiectum esse cōgnōverat, circiter millium passuum trigintā ā continentī; huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum reliquit. Ipse cum legionibus expeditis quattuor et equitibus octingentis in finēs Trēverōrum pronēscitur, quod hī neque ad concilia veniēbant, neque imperiō pārēbant, Germānōsque Trānsrhēnānōs sollicitāre dicēbantur.

Two rival chiefs of the Treveri appeal to Caesar.

3. Haec civitās longē plurimum tōtius Galliae equitātū valet magnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, ut suprà dēmōstrāvimus, tangit. In eā civitatē duo dē principātū inter sē contendēbant, Indutiomarus et Cingetorix; ē quibus alter, simul atque dē Caesaris legionumque adventū cōgnitum est, ad eum venit; sē suōsque omnēs in officiō futūrōs, neque ab amicitia populi Rōmānī defectūrōs cōfirmāvit, quaeque in Trēveris gerantur, ostendit. At Indutiomarus equitātum peditātumque cōgere, iisque, quī per aetātem in armīs esse nōn poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditis, quae ingentī magnitudine per mediōs finēs Trēverōrum ā flūmine Rhēnō ad initium Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre instituit. Sed posteaquam nōnnūlli principēs ex eā civitatē et familiāritate Cingetorigis adducti et adventū nostrī exercitūs perterriti ad Caesarem vēērunt, et dē suis privātim rēbus ab eō petere coepērunt, quoniam civitatī cōsultare nōn possent, veritus nē ab omnibus dēsererētur, Indutiomarus lēgatos ad Caesarem mittit: sēsē idcirco ab suis discēdere atque ad eum venire nōluisse, quō facilius civitatē in officiō continēret, nē omnis nobilitātis discēssū plēbs propter imprudentiam liberētur; itaque esse civitatē in suā potestātē, sēsēque si Caesar permetteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum, suās civitātisque fortunās ejus fidēi permissūrum.

Caesar decides in favor of Cingetorix, while requiring the submission of Indutiomarus.

4. Caesar, etsi intellegēbat quā dē causā ea dicerentur, quaeque eum rēs ab institūtō cōsiliō deterrēret, tamen, nē aestātem in Trēveris cōsumēre cōgerētur, omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rēbus comparātis, Indutiomarum ad sē cum ducentis obsidibus venire jussit. Hīs adductis, in iis filiō propinquisque ejus omni-

bus, quōs nōminatim ēvocāverat, cōsōlātus Indutiomarum hortā-
 3 stusque est, utī in officiō manēret: nihilō tamen sēcius principibus
 Irēverōrum ad sē convocātis hōs singillatim Cingetorigi concili-
 4 āvit: quod cum meritō ejus a sē fīe. i. intelligēbat, tum magni
 interesse arbitrābatur ejus auctōritatem inter suōs quam plurimum
 5 valōre, cūjus tam ēgregiam in sē voluntātem perspexisset. Id
 tulit factum graviter Indutiomarus, suam grātiā inter suōs minui,
 et quī jam ante inimicō in nōs animō fuisset, multō gravius hōc
 dolore exārsit.

Coming to the seaport Caesar finds the fleet and army ready.

1 5. His rēbus cōstitutis Caesar ad portum Itium cum legiōnibus 10
 2 pervenit. Ibi cōgnōscit sexāgintā nāvēs, quae in Meldis factae
 erant, tempestāte rējectās cursum tenēre nōn potuisse atque
 eōdem, unde erant profectae, revertisse; reliquās parātās ad
 3 nāvigandum atque omnibus rēbus instrūctās invenit. Eōdem
 equitātus tōtius Galliae convenit numerō millium quattuor, prin- 15
 cipēsque ex omnibus civitatibus; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in
 sē fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquōs obsidum locō
 sēcum dūcere dēcrēverat, quod cum ipse abesset, mōtum Galliae
 verēbatur.

Dumnorix, a disaffected and ambitious Gaul, causes trouble.

1 6. Erat unā cum cēteris Dumnorix Aeduus, de quo ante ab 20
 nobīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in primis cōstituerat,
 quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperiī, magni
 2 animi, magnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cōgnōverat. Accēdēbat
 hūc, quod in conciliō Aeduōrum Dumnorix dixerat sibi ā Caesare
 rēgnum civitātis dēferri; quod dictum Aeduī graviter ferēbant,
 neque recūsandi aut dēprecandi causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere
 3 audēbant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cōgnōverat. Ille
 omnibus primō precibus petere contendit, ut in Galliā relinquerē-
 tur; partim quod insuētus nāvigandi mare timēret; partim quod
 religionibus impediri sēsē diceret. Posteaquam id obstinatē sibi 30
 negārī vidit, omni spē impetrandi adēptā principēs Galliae
 sollicitare, sēvocare singulōs hortārique coepit, utī in continēti
 5 remanerent; metā territāre: nōn sine causā fieri, ut Gallia omni
 nobilitate spoliārētur; id esse cōsiliū Caesaris, ut, quōs in

cōspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam
6 trāductōs necāret; fidem reliquīs interpōnere, jūsjurandum pos-
cere, ut, quod esse ex ūsū Galliae intellēxissent, cōmūnī cōsiliō
administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēfērebantur.

Caesar delays his departure in order to check/disaffection.
Dumnorix flees, but is overtaken and slain.

- 1 7. Quā rē cōgnitā, Caesar, quod tantum civitati Aeduae dignitā-
tis tribuēbat, coercendum atque dēterrendum, quibuscumque rēbus
2 posset, Dumnorigem statuēbat; quod longius ējus āmentiam prō-
gredi vidēbat prōspiciendum, nē quid sibi ac rēi publicae nocēre
3 posset. Itaque diēs circiter vīginti quinque in eō locō commo-
rātus, quod Cōrus ventus nāvigationem impediēbat, quī māgnam
partem omnis temporis in his locis flāre cōsuēvit, dabat operam,
ut in officiō Dumnorigem continēret, nihilō tamen sēcius omnia
4 ējus cōnsilia cōgnōsceret; tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem
5 milītēs equitēsque cōscendere in nāvēs jubet. At omnium im-
peditis animīs, Dumnorix cum equitibus Aeduōrum ā castris
6 insciētiā Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiatā Caesar
intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositis māgnam
partem equitātūs ad eum insequendum mittit, retrāhique imperat;
7 si vim faciat neque pāreat, interfici jubet, nihil hunc sē absente
prō sālō factūrum arbitrātus, quī praesentis imperium neglēxisset.
8 Ille enim revocātus resistere ac sē manū dēfendere suorumque
fidem implōrāre coepit saepe clāmitāns liberum sē liberaeque esse
9 civitātis. Illi, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque
interficiunt; at equitēs Aeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

Caesar crosses over to Britain and lands unopposed.

- 1 8. His rēbus gestis Labiēnō in continente cum tribus legiōnibus
et equitum millibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs tuērētur et rem
frūmentāriam prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur cōgnō-
2 sceret, cōnsiliumque prō tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse cum quin-
que legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum, quem in continentī reli-
querat, ad sōlis occāsū nāvēs solvit, et lēnī Africō prōvectus
3 mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō cursum nōn tenuit, et longius
dēlātus aestū, ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōspexit.

- 3 Tum rūsus aestūs commūtatiōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit, ut

following the change of the tide.

eam partem insulae caperet, quā optimum esse egressum superiore aestate cognoverat. Quā in re admodum fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui vectōriis gravibusque nāvigis nōn intermissō rēmi-gandi labōre longārum nāvium cursum adaequārent. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus meridiānō ferē tempore, neque 5 in eō locō hostis est visus; sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivis cognovit, cum māgnae manūs eō convēnissent, multitudīne nāvium perterritae, quae cum annōtinis privātisque, quās suī quisque commodi fēcerat, amplius octingentae unō erant visae tempore, a litore discesserant ac sē in superiora loca abdiderant.

Leaving a strong guard with the ships he advances into the interior and drives the enemy from one of their strongholds.

1 9. Caesar expositō exercitū et locū castris idōneō captō, ubi ex captivis cognovit, quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōnsēdissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relictis et equitibus trecentis, qui praesidiō nāvibus essent, de tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit, eō minus 2 veritus nāvibus, quod in litore molli atque apertō deligatās ad 15 ancoram relinquebat; et praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Atrium praefecit. Ipse noctū progressus millia passuum circiter duodecim hostium cōpiās cōspiciātus est. Illi, equitatū atque essedis ad flūmen progressi, ex locō superiore nostrōs prohibere et proelium 4 committere coeperunt. Repulsi ab equitatū sē in silvās abdi- 20 derunt locum nacti egregiē et nātūrā et opere munitum, quem domestici belli, ut vidēbantur, causā jam ante praeparāverant; 5 nam crebris arboribus succisis omnēs introitus erant praelūsi. 6 Ipsi ex silvis rārī prōpugnābant nostrōsque intrā munitiōnēs ingredi prohibēbant. At milites legiōnis septimae testūdine factā et 25 aggre ad munitiōnēs adjectō locum cēperunt eōsque ex silvis expulērunt paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eōs fugientēs longius Caesar prōsequi vetuit, et quod loci nātūrā ignōrābat, et quod māgnā parte diēi cōsumptā munitiōnī castrōrum tempus relinqui volēbat.

As troops are setting out in pursuit, news comes of serious damage caused to the fleet by a storm.

10. Postridiē ejus diēi māne tripertitō milites equitēsque in expeditionem misit, ut eōs, qui fugerant, persequerentur. His

2 aliquantum itineris prōgressis, cum jam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Ātriō ad Caesarem vēnerunt, qui nūntiarent superiōre nocte māximā coortā tempestāte prope omnēs naves afflictas atque in litore ējectas esse, quod neque ancorae fūnesque subsisterent, neque nautae gubernātōresque vim tempestātis pati possent; itaque ex eō concursū nāvium māgnū esse incommodum acceptum.

Caesar returns, arranges for the repairing of these losses, and again sets out against the enemy, now under Cassivellaunus.

1 11. His rēbus cōgnitis Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque revocārī
2 atque in itinere resistere jubet, ipse ad nāvēs revertitur; eadem
3 ferē, quae ex nūntiis litterisque cōgnōverat, cōram perspicit, sic ut 10
4 āmissis circiter quadrāgintā nāvibus reliquae tamen reficī posse
5 māgnō negōtiō vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et
6 ex continenti aliōs arcessi jubet; Labiēnō scribit, ut, quam plū-
7 rimās posset, iis legiōnibus, quae sunt apud eum, nāvēs instituat.
8 Ipse, etsi rēs erat multae operae ac laboris, tamen commodissimum 15
9 esse statuit, omnēs nāvēs subducī et cum castris unā mūnitione
10 conjungī. In his rēbus circiter diēs decem cōsumit, nē nocturnis
11 quidem temporibus ad labōrem militum intermissis. Subductis
12 nāvibus castrisque ēgregiē mūnitis eādem cōpiās, quas ante, prae-
13 sidiō nāvibus reliquit: ipse eodem, unde redierat, proficiscitur. 20
14 Eō cum vēnisset, mājōrēs jam undique in eum locum cōpiae
15 Britannōrum convēnerant, summā imperiī bellique administrandi
16 commūnī cōsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō, cūjus finēs ā maritimis
17 civitatibus flūmen dividit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā mari circiter
18 millia passuum octōgintā. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquis 25
19 civitatibus continentia bella intercesserant: sed nostrō adventū
20 permōti Britannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefecerant.

A description of the people, products and climate of Britain.

1 12. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quōs nātōs in
2 insulā ipsī memoriā prōditum dicunt; maritima pars ab iis, qui
3 praedae ac bellī inferendī causā ex Belgio trānsiērunt (quī omnēs 30
4 ferē iis nōminibus civitātum appellantur, quibus orti ex civitā-
5 tibus eō pervēnerunt) et bellō illātō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs
6 colere coepērunt. Hominum est infīnita multitūdō crēberrimaque







atque omni parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et iabrum superius.

- 4 Uxōrēs habent dēni duodēnique inter sē commūnēs, et mākīmē
5 frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque cum liberis; sed, et qui sunt ex
his nātī, eōrum habentur liberī, quō primum virgō quaeque dō-
ducta est.

*The Romans are surprised while building a camp, but drive
off the enemy.*

- 1 15. Equitēs hostium essedāriique ācritēr proeliō cum equitatē
nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, tamen ut nostrī omnibus partibus
superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās collēsque compulerint;
2 sed complūribus interfectis cupidius insecūtī nōnnullōs ex suis
3 āmisērunt. At illī intermissō spatiō imprudentibus nostris atque 10
occupātis in mūnitiōne castrōrum subitō sē ex silvis ējēcērunt,
impetūque in eōs factō, qui erant in stationē prō castris collocātī,
4 ācritēr pūgnāvērunt; duābusque missis subsidiō cohortibus ā
Caesare, atque his primis legionū duārum, cum hae perexiguō
intermissō loci spatiō inter sē cōstitissent, novō genere pūgnae
perterritis nostris, per mediōs audācissimō perrūpērunt sēque inde
5 incolumēs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. Laberius Dārus, tribūnus mili-
tum, interficitur. Illi plūribus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

*The disadvantages under which the Romans lay in fighting
with the Britons.*

- 1 16. Tōtō hōc in genere pūgnae, cum sub oculis omnium ac prō
castris dimicārētur, intellēctum est nostrōs propter gravitātem 20
armōrum, quod neque insequi cēdentēs possent neque ab signis
discēdere auderent, minus aptōs esse ad hūjus generis hostem:
equitēs autem māgnō cum periculō proeliō dimicāre, propterea
quod illī etiam cōsultō plērumque cēderent et, cum paulum ab
legionibus nostrōs remōvisent, ex essedis dēsilirent, et pedibus 25
3 dispari proeliō contenderent. Equestris autem proelii ratiō et
4 cēdentibus et insequentibus par atque idem periculum inferēbat.
Accēdēbat hūc, ut numquam cōnfertī, sed rārī māgnisque intervāllis
proeliārentur stationēsque dispositās habērent, atque aliōs aliī
dēinceps exciperent, integrīque et recentēs dēfatigātis succēderent. 30

The Romans are again attacked, but inflict such a defeat on the Britons that a large part of them dieband.

- 1 17. Posterō diē procul ā castris hostēs in collibus cōstitērunt,
rārique sē ostendere et lēnius quam pridē nostrōs equitēs proeliō
2 lacessere coepērunt. Sed meridiō cum Caesar pābulandī causā
trēs legiōnēs atque omnem equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō
mīsisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pābulatōrēs advolā-
3 vērunt, sic utī ab signis legiōnibusque nōn absterent. Nostri
ācritē in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt, neque finem sequendi
fēcērunt, quoad subsidiō cōfisi equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs
4 vidērēt, praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt; magnōque eōrum numerō in-
terfectō neque sui colligendī neque cōsistendī aut ex essedis
5 dēsiliendī facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus, quae undi-
que convēnerant, auxilia discessērunt, neque post id tempus um-
quam summis nobiscum cōpiis hostēs contendērunt.

Caesar forces a passage across the Thames.

- 1 18. Caesar cōgnitō cōsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim in finēs
Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen unō omninō locō
2 pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsiri potest. Eō cum vēnisset,
animum advertit ad alteram flūminis ripam magnās esse cōpiās
3 hostium instrūctās. Ripa autem erat acūtis sudibus praefixis
mūnita, ejusdemque generis sub aquā dēfixae sudēs flūmine tegē-
4 bantur. His rēbus cōgnitis ā captivis perfugisque Caesar prae-
5 missō equitātū cōfestim legiōnēs subsequi jussit. Sed eā celeri-
tātē atque eō impetū militēs iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā
exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinere
nōn possent, ripāsque dimitterent āc sē fugae mandārent.

Cassivellaunus, avoiding a pitched battle, harasses Caesar's line of march.

- 1 19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprà dēmōstrāvimus, omni dēpositā
spē contentiōnis, dimissis ampliōribus cōpiis, millibus circiter quat-
tuor essedariōrum relictis, itinera nostra servābat, paulumque ex
viā excēdēbat locisque impeditis āc silvestribus sēsē occultābat
atque iis regiōnibus, quibus nōs iter factūrōs cōgnōverat, pecora
2 atque hominēs ex agris in silvās compellēbat et, cum equitātus

nostro liberius praedandi vastandique causâ se in agris ejecerat, omnibus viis sēmitisque excedētiōs ex silvis ēmittēbat, et magnū cum periculō nostrū cum illis cōfligēbat atque hōc 3 metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur, ut neque longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdi Caesar paterētur, et tantum in agris vastandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus nocerētur, quantum labōre atque itinere legiōnariī milites efficere poterant.

The Trinobantes, a powerful British tribe, submit to Caesar.

1 20. Interim Trinobantēs, prope firmissima eārum regiōnem civitās ex quā Mandubracius adulescēns Caesaris fidem secutus ad eum in continentem Galliam vēnerat, cūjus pater in eā civitate 10 rēgnum obtinuerat, interfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vitāverat, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē ei deditūros atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt, ut Mandubracium ab injuriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat, atque in civitatē mittat qui 15 praesit imperiumque obtineat. Hīs Caesar imperat obsidēs quadragintā frumentumque exercitui Mandubraciumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperāta celeriter fecerunt, obsidēs ad numerum frumentumque miserunt.

Many other tribes now submit, and Caesar captures the town of Cassivellaunus.

1 21. Trinobantibus dēfēnsis atque ab omni militum injuriā prohibitis, Cenimāgni, Segontiaci, Ancalitēs, Bibroci, Cassi lēgatiō- 20 nibus missis sēsē Caesarī dēdunt. Ab hīs cōgnōscit nōn longē ex eo locō oppidum Cassivellaunī abesse silvis palūdibusque munitum, 3 quō satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum autem Britannī vocant, cum silvas impeditas vallō atque fossā muniērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vitandae causā convenire 2 cōsueverunt. Eō proficiscitur cum legiōnibus; locum reperit egregie nātūrā atque opere munitum; tamen hunc duābus ex partibus 5 oppugnāre contendit. Hostēs paulisper morāti militum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulerunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidi ejecerunt. 6 Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multique in fugā sunt comprehēsi atque interfecti.

A sudden attack on the camp by the sea is repulsed, and Cassivellaunus sues for peace.

- 1 22. Dum haec in his locis geruntur Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā demonstravimus, quibus regionibus quatuor reges praerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nuntios mittit atque his imperat, uti coactis omnibus copiis castra 2 navalia de improvisō adorianantur atque oppugnent. Hi cum ad castra venissent, nostri eruptione factā multis eorum interfectis, captō etiam nobili duce Lugotorige, suos incolumēs redūxerunt. 3 Cassivellaunus hōc proeliō nuntiātō, tot detrimentis acceptis, vastatis finibus, maximē etiam permotus defectione civitatum, legatos per Atrebatem Commium de deditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. 10 4 Caesar, cum cōstituisset hiemare in continentī propter repentinōs Galliae motūs, neque multum aestatis superesset, atque id facile extrahi posse intellexeret, obsidēs imperat, et quid in annos singulos vectigalis populo Rōmānō Britannia penderet cōstituit; 5 interdicat atque imperat Cassivellaunō, nē Mandubraciō neu Trino- bantibus nocent.

Caesar returns to the mainland.

- 1 23. Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare, naves invenit 2 refectas. His deductis, quod et captivorum magnum numerum habebat, et nonnullae tempestate deperierant naves, duobus com- 3 meatibus exercitum reportare instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex 4 tantō navium numero tot navigationibus, neque hōc neque superiōre annō ulla omnino navis, quae milites portaret, desideraretur; 5 at ex iis, quae inanes ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, et prioris commeatus expositis militibus, et quas postea Labienus faciendas curaverat numero sexaginta, perpaucae locum caperent; 6 reliquae ferē omnes rejicerentur. Quas cum aliquamdiū Caesar frustra exspectasset, nē anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessariō angustius milites collocavit, ac summā tranquillitate consecutā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, primā luce terram attigit omnesque incolumēs 30 naves perdūxit.

ANNOTATIONS ON THE SELECTIONS.¹

CORNELIUS NEPOS.

CORNELIUS NEPOS was born about the year 100 B.C., in Cisalpine Gaul, north of the Po. His birthplace has been variously given as Verona and Ticinum (the modern Pavia), the latter by the German historian Mommsen. There is also an old tradition that names Hostilia, now Ostiglia, as the favored place, and the citizens of that town erected a statue to his memory in 1868. Nepos probably removed to Rome in his youth, and spent the greater part of his life in that city. He was the contemporary and friend the scholar Atticus, the orator Cicero, and the poet Catullus. Being a student of literature, rather than a man of action, he took no part in military or political affairs. His death occurred probably about 25 B.C., during the reign of Augustus.

He wrote several works, of which there still remain *Lives of Atticus and Cato the Censor*, and a work entitled *Vitae Excellentium Imperatorum*, or more fully, *De Excellentibus Ducibus Exterrarum Gentium*, from which the three selections contained in this book are taken. In all the manuscripts, however, this last work is ascribed to a certain Æmilius Probus, who lived in the time of Theodosius, at the end of the fourth century of the Christian era. But the general opinion among the scholars of the present day is that Cornelius Nepos is undoubtedly the author of all the works that go under his name.

As his principal object was, in all probability, to convey moral instruction to his fellow-countrymen, not much reliance can be placed upon him as an historian. His biographies, however, contain a considerable amount of human interest, although he is apt to be too one-sided in his treatment of the characters of his heroes.

1. The references in the Notes are to Parts III. and V. of "The Primary Latin Book," edition of 1900.

Cf. = compare; fn. = footnote; sc. = understand; lit. = literally; trans. = translate or translation.

They are, as a rule, either models of excellence or examples of unredeemed baseness. The gray light of history seems to have nothing to recommend it in his eyes.

In style he is generally simple, elegant and lively, and in construction commonly pure; but sometimes he grows careless, and falls into anacolutha, that is, broken or unfinished constructions, or into constructions not strictly classical. At times, too, he indulges in certain syntactical mannerisms, and in the disagreeable repetition of the same words, where a change of expression would be quite practicable without injury to the sense. In his choice of single words, Nepos is, in the main, classical, but occasionally we meet with colloquial and archaic forms which are not found in the best prose writers of the Augustan age.

NOTES ON THEMISTOCLES.

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE

Themistocles is born	B.C. 514 (?)
Is Archon Eponymus	" 481
Takes part at Salamis	" 480
Is expelled from Athens	" 471
Flees to Asia	" 466
Dies at Magnesia	" 449 (?)

CHAP. 1.

1. **Hujus**: governed by the phrase *vitia ineuntis adolescentiae*, trans. 'his faults in early youth,' 'his youthful excesses.' **anteferatur**: subjunctive of result, so *putentur* (V. 29). **huic**: indirect object after *anteferatur* (V. 78, v. c). The *huic* is rather awkward after *hujus*. **pares**: for case see V. 12, b.

2. **ab initio est ordiendum**: 'we must start at the beginning,' lit. ? For impersonal use of gerundive see V. 120, ii. **duxit**: 'married,' lit. 'led home or into matrimony,' sc. *domum* or *in matrimonium*. **Qui cum**: 'when he'; to indicate more clearly the connection with the preceding words, Latin constantly uses *qui* for *hic* or *is* (V. 172). **parentibus**: dat. of reference, 'found approval in the eyes of' (V. 80, b, ii.). It is also explained as dat. of the agent, 'was approved by' (V. 80, d).

3. **Quae**: 'this'; see note on *Qui cum*, preceding section. **judicasset**: = *judicavisset* (III. 66, a). **totum**: adj., 'wholly.' **eam**: i.e., *contumeliam*, subject of *posse*. **serviens**: 'devoting

himself.' *Judicis privatis*: either (a) 'private arbitrations' as opposed to ordinary law-suits, or, perhaps better, (b) 'law-suits,' 'cases in the courts,' where private interests only are concerned, as opposed to *contio populi*, where affairs of state are discussed. *prodiat*: from *prodeo*. *major*: 'of unusual importance,' lit. 'of more consequence (than usual)' (V. 98, vi.). *opus*: pred. nom. The more usual construction would be *quibus* (abl.) *opus erat* (V. 99, ii.).

4. *in rebus gerendis*: gerundive construction (V. 119). *excogitandis*: i.e. (*in rebus*) *excogitandis*. *instantibus*: 'the present.' Notice the imperfect tenses in this sentence and the preceding one, to describe the course of conduct pursued by Themistocles for a series of years (V. 180, b). *Quo factum est*: 'the result of this was,' lit. 'from which (or whereby) it was brought about, abl. of cause. *ut . . . illustraretur*: a substantive clause of result, forming the subject of *factum est* (V. 31).

CHAP. 2.

1. *capessendae rei publicae*: 'in (lit. of) the management of public affairs,' gerundive construction with *gradus* (V. 119). *bello Coreyraeo*: this is a mistake, the war was with Ægina. *Bello* is abl. of time (V. 130). *ferocitorem*: pred. acc., goes with *praesenti bello* and *reliquo tempore*; 'more high-spirited, not only in the war which was then being waged, but for all time to come.' For case of *tempore* see V. 131, i.

2. *metallis*: the silver mines at Laurium, in the south-eastern part of Attica. They were very valuable and belonged to the State. *redibat*: 'was derived,' 'came in.' *largitione magistratuum*: 'distribution made by the magistrates' out of the public treasury. *magistratuum*: subjective gen. (V. 84). *ut . . . aedificaretur*: substantive clause of purpose, object of *persuasit* (V. 27), trans. by active infinitive with 'to.'

3. *Qua*: its antecedent is *classis*. *maritimos praedones*: another historical error. *consectando*: see V. 114, d. *In quo*: 'by this means,' lit. 'in which (proceeding).' *cum . . . tum*: 'both . . . and.' *belli*: for case see V. 90.

4. *Id*: what is the antecedent? *saluti Graeciae*: for these datives see V. 81. *fuert*: subjunctive in indirect question (V. 35). *cognitum*: with what does this word agree? *Persico*: the second Persian war, in which Salamis was fought, 480 B.C. *Nam cum*, etc.: this sentence is never finished, a parenthetical clause comes in at *hujus enim*, and a fresh start is made at *Cujus de adventu*, the author forgetting to complete his original construction. *maris et terra*: usually *terra marique*. For case see V. 127. *neque . . . nec . . . quisquam*: 'no one . . . either . . . or.'

5. **hujus**: 'his.' **navium**: gen. of characteristic in pred. (V. 87, iii.). **fuit**: 'was composed.' **fuerunt**: the subject is *exercitus*, but the verb is attracted to the number of the pred. noun *millia*.

6. **adventu**: 'advance,' 'approach,' not 'arrival.' **peti**: 'to be the objects of attack.' **dicerentur**: observe the personal construction, which is the usual one. For mood see V. 151. **consultum**: supine in *um*, denoting purpose (V. 116). **facerent**: 'what they were to do.' For subjunctive see V. 186, 1, b, i. **deliberantibus**: 'to the inquirers,' the participle is here used substantively (V. 44, i, a). **munitrent**: 'that they must (or should) defend'; for mood see V. 186, 1, c, i.

7. **quo valeret**: 'what it meant,' lit. 'in what direction it had force.' **persuasit**: sc. *iis*. **esse**: for the construction with *persuadeo*, see V. 28, v., and note on section 2 above. **ut . . . conferrent**: substantive clause of purpose in apposition with *consilium* (V. 196). **eum enim**, etc.: 'for that was the wooden wall which the god meant,' lit. 'for that was meant by the god as the wooden wall.' **eum**: has for its antecedent *naves*, but is attracted from *eas* to gender and number of *murum* (V. 13, i.). **significari**: governed by notion of saying in *persuasit* (V. 191).

8. **Tali**: nearly = *hoc*. **superiores**: 'those which they had before.' **sua omnia**: 'all their belongings,' here including women and children. **Salamina**: a Greek acc., so *Salamina* (III. 50, d); for case see V. 125. **majoribus natu**: 'elders,' i.e. 'greater in respect of birth.' **reliquum oppidum**: 'the rest of the town'; *reliquus*, like *summus*, *medius*, etc., regularly agrees with its noun (V. 86, iv. b).

CHAP. 3.

1. **Hujus**: 'his,' i.e., Themistocles's. His plan was to make the war a naval one. **dimicari**: impersonal infin., subject of *placebat* (V. 56). Trans. 'they were rather in favor of having the battle fought.' **qui . . . occuparent**: 'to seize' (V. 26). **non paterentur**: 'to prevent,' lit. ? **non sustinuerunt**: trans. 'could not withstand.' **omnes**: can refer only to the Spartans and Thespians, the others having been sent away.

2. **classis**: this word governs *Graeciae* and *navium*. Trans. 'the common fleet of Greece, consisting of three hundred ships.' **apud**: 'off.' **continentem terram**: 'the mainland.' **quaerebat**: notice the tense.

3. **pari proelio**: 'after a drawn battle,' lit. 'the battle being equal' (V. 49). **adversariorum**: here = *hostium*. *Adversarius* is properly 'an opponent in a court of justice.' **superasset**: = *superavisset* (III. 66, a), 'doubled,' 'sailed around.' This is a

subjunctive in virtual indirect narration (V. 177), and represents a future perf. indic. of the direct (V. 187, b, i.), hence lit. 'should have,' etc. *premerentur*: subjunctive after *erat periculum*, an expression of *fearing* (V. 133).

4. *Quo . . . discederent*: see notes on ch. 1, 4. *exadversum*: 'over against,' an archaic and colloquial form found in comedy.

CHAP. 4.

1. *Thermopylis expugnatis*: 'after carrying Thermopylae.' *astu*: i.e., Athens. The construction of *accedere* with a simple acc. is not found in the best prose writers, and should not be imitated. The usual construction is *ad* with the acc. *nullis defendentibus*: 'since it had no defenders,' lit. ? (V. 46).

2. *Cujus flamma*: 'by its burning' It is not likely that they saw the blaze. Herodotus says, 'the Greeks were thrown into consternation when the news was brought them.' *domos*: for case see V. 125. The plural is used of a number of people who have different homes. *discederent*: for mood see V. 27. *moenibus*: abl. of means. *universos*: 'if they kept together.' *pares esse*: sc. *eos*, representing *vos* of the original, 'be a match (for the enemy).' *dispersos*: 'if separated.' *id*: 'this,' its antecedent is the substance of the preceding statement. *regi*: 'admiral,' Eurybiades was not king. *summae imperii praeerat*: 'held the chief command,' lit. 'was in charge of (with respect to) the highest position of command.' *summae*: is a substantive; for its case see V. 78, v. c. Notice the variety of expression in *aiebat*, *testabatur*, *affirmabat*, and the force of the imperfect.

3. *vellet*: assimilated in mood to *moveret*. See V. 177, i. *de servis*, etc.: 'the most trusty slave he had.' *fidellissimum*: for position of this word see V. 173, c, iii. *regem*: the Persian king. *suis verbis*: 'in his (Themistocles's) name.' *in fuga*: 'on the point of flight.'

4. *qui si discessissent*: 'and if they departed,' lit. 'should have departed.' *discessissent* represents future perfect indicative of direct narration. See V. 187, b, i. *confecturum (esse)*: supply *eum*, i.e., the Persian king. Themistocles said *conficies* (V. 187, a). Translate freely, 'it would require greater effort and a longer time to finish the war.' *cogeretur*: represents future indicative in direct speech (V. 187, b). *quos si*: = *sed si eos*. *aggrederetur*: see V. 192. *oppressurum*: do not translate 'oppress.' *Hoc eo valebat*: 'the purpose of this was,' see on ch. 2, 7, above. *eo*: an adverb. *omnes*: 'while all together.'

5. *barbarus*: sc. *rex*. The Greeks called all non-Greeks *barbari*, which, however, meant rather foreigners than savages.

doli: partitive gen. with *nihil* (V. 36, i.). **opportunissimo**: goes with *loco*. **angusto mari**: 'narrow part of the sea.' **potuerit**: we should look for an imperfect here, but *Nepos* is fond of the perfect, as being more vivid (V. 33, iii.). **consilio**: 'cleverness,' 'sagacity.'

CHAP. 5.

1. **Hic**: adverb, 'here,' 'in this instance.' **male**. 'unsuccessfully.' **tantas reliquias copiarum**: 'so many troops left,' lit. ? **illis**: 'with them,' abl. of means (V. 99, i.). **eodem**: *Themistocles*. **gradu depulsus**: 'compelled to give way,' 'forced from his position,' i.e., the position of advantage which his numbers gave him. **ne**: 'that,' 'lest' (V. 138). **certiorem fecit**: 'informed,' followed by infin. **agi** (V. 18, ii.). **id agi . . . excluderetur**: trans. 'a plan was on foot to destroy the bridge . . . and cut off his retreat,' lit. ? **ut . . . dissolveretur**: substantive clause of purpose in apposition with *id*. **fecerat**: for mood see V. 175, i. **in Asiam**: the preposition here connects two substantives, a construction seldom met with in Latin (V. 85, v. fn.). **idque ei persuasit**: 'and convinced him of the truth of this,' lit. ? (V. 55, i.). **id**: cognate acc. (V. 72).

2. **qua . . . reversus est**: trans. 'in less than thirty days he reached Asia by the same route by which it had taken him six months to make the march (into Greece).' **qua . . . eadem**: as often in Latin, the rel. comes first; *via* (abl. of means) may be supplied with each of these words. **diebus**: not governed by *minus*, but abl. of 'time within which'; *quam* is omitted (V. 98, iv.). **reversus est**: the perfect of this verb is usually *reverti*. **se**: subject of *superatum* (*esse*) and *conservatum* (*esse*).

3. **Europae**: dat., governed by *succubuit* (V. 78, v. c). **Marathonio**: 'of (or at) Marathon.' Latin regularly uses a proper adjective where English has a preposition and a proper noun. **possit**: subjunctive in a relative clause of characteristic (V. 32). **tropaeo**: lit. 'trophy,' here used poetically for *victoria*. It is an example of the figure metonymy, the sign being used for the thing signified. **pari modo**: abl. of manner (V. 103). **numero**: abl. of means (V. 99). **post hominum memoriam**: 'within the memory of man,' or perhaps 'of which history has left any record.' The comparison in this clause is somewhat defective. The sentence might be completed thus: *Nam [quo modo apud Marathona parvo numero militum maximus exercitus devictus est], pari modo*, etc.

CHAP. 6.

1. **bello**: for case see V. 130. **minor**: 'less great.' **Phalerico**: the harbor of Phalerum was the one first used by the Athenians. It was open and unprotected. **triplex**: it consisted of three harbors or basins, *Piræus proper*, *Munychia* and *Zea*. **Piræi**:

gen. of definition (V. 89), cf. 'city of London,' or perhaps locative (V. 127, i.). *its*: here=*talibus*, 'such.' *dignitate*: 'in grandeur,' abl. of specification. So *utilitate* (V. 102).

2. *Idem*: 'he likewise' (V. 162). *restituit*: i.e., after their destruction by the Persians. *praeipuo suo periculo*: 'at special risk to himself,' abl. of manner or accompaniment. For *suo* see V. 85, iii. *qua*: abl. of cause. What is the antecedent? *qua negarent* . . . *ullam*: 'for saying that . . . no.' Relative clause of characteristic (V. 32). *oportere*: 'ought,' the subject of *oportere* is the infinitive phrase *ullam* . . . *habere*, *urbem* being the subject of *habere*. *munita*: an adjective here. *quae possiderent*: 'for the enemy to occupy.' For mood of *possiderent* see V. 26. *aedificantes*: 'in their building.' The participle implies action already begun, which would not be the case with *aedificare prohibere*.

3. *Hoc* . . . *volebant*: 'This had a far different object from what they wished to appear,' lit. 'looked in a direction far other than.' For *ac*= 'than,' see V. 168, i. *sibi* . . . *fore*: 'they would have a struggle with them,' lit. ? (V. 80, e). Before this time the Spartans were the recognized leaders of the Greek confederacy, in case of war against a common foe.

4. *quam infirmissimos*: 'as weak as possible' (V. 174, i.). *strui*: note the tense (V. 15). *qui* . . . *vetarent*: 'to forbid that being done' (V. 26). *His praesentibus*: 'as long as these were present,' abl. absolute (V. 46). *desierunt*: from *desino*. For form see III. 66, a. *eos*: i.e., *Lacedaemonios*.

5. *reliqui* . . . *exirent*: depends on *praecepit*. The indirect speech runs to *congererent*. In direct speech the subjunctives would probably be *exite*, *videbuntur*, *facite*, *parcite*, *est*, *putatis* (or *putetis* in clause of characteristic) and *congerite* respectively (V. 186); or, instead of the imperatives the direct may have jussive subjunctives in the third person plural. *ut tum* . . . *cum*: 'not . . . until,' lit. ? *satis alti tuendo*: 'high enough for safety.' *tuendo* is dat. of the gerund depending on *satis alti* (V. 114, b). *neque*: 'and not' (V. 28, ii.). *quo factum est*: see on ch. 1, 4, above. *ex sacellis sepulcrisque*: somewhat exaggerated. Thucydides, whom Nepos here follows loosely and inaccurately, merely says that many columns from tombs, and wrought stones were incorporated into the walls.

CHAP. 7.

1. *ut*: 'when,' with this meaning it takes indic. (V. 152, b). *magistratus*; i.e., the Ephors, five in number and elected annually. They exercised great power, controlling even the kings. *duceret*: 'spin out.' *causam interponens*, etc.: 'alleging as an excuse that,' etc.

2. **Cum**: 'while.' **quererentur**: for mood see V. 151. **nihilominus**: 'all the same,' lit. 'the less by nothing' (V. 101). **non multum**: 'but little.' **munitiois**: 'of the work of fortification' (V. 86). **superesse**: 'remained unfinished.' **imperium**: here = *potestas*, i.e., 'civil jurisdiction,' and not the military command, which belonged to the Spartan kings. **falsa his esse delata**: 'that false reports had been brought to them' (V. 203, *d*). **aequum esse**: for infinitive see V. 191. **illos**: subject of *mittere*, of which *viros* is the object. **quibus**: dative (V. 55, *iv*). **haberetur, explorarent, retinerent**: what forms would these verbs have respectively in direct speech? (V. 32; 26; 186, 1, *c*). **obsidem**: 'as a hostage': pred. acc. (V. 12, *c*). **retinerent**: 'let them detain.'

3. **Gestus est ei mos**: 'his advice was followed.' **ei**: dat. of interest with force of possessive (V. 80, *b*). **praedixit** = *praecipit*, 'enjoined.' **ut ne**: 'not to,' 'that . . . not,' for the usual *ne* (V. 28, *vii*). **prius**: connect closely with *quam*. **esset remissus**: for mood and tense see V. 156, *a*; 187, *b*, *i*.

4. **senatum**: the Senate at Sparta was called the 'Gerusia,' and was composed of thirty members, including the two kings. They held office for life, but had no great influence. **liberrime professus est**: 'made a clean breast of the matter,' 'avowed his trickery with the utmost frankness.' **suo**: 'his,' i.e., Themistocles's. **quod**: has for its antecedent the clause *deos . . . saepissime*. In the English translation of this sentence the antecedent clause will come first; 'they had enclosed, etc., a thing which, etc.' **quo facilius**: see V. 28, *iii*. **in eo**: 'therein,' 'in so doing'; *eo* is not the antecedent of *quod*. **esset**: subjunctive in subordinate clause in indirect narration, showing that the clause is part of the speech of Themistocles (V. 175).

5. **Nam . . . barbaris**: either (*a*) 'their city was a rampart thrown up in the way of the barbarians,' or better, (*b*) 'their city was opposed to the barbarians as a bulwark.' If (*b*) is the proper rendering, then *oppositum* is attracted from the gender of *urbem* to that of *propugnaculum*. **apud**: 'in the neighborhood of.' Marathon was twenty-five miles from Athens. **regias**: 'of the (Persian) king.' **fecisse naufragium**: 'had suffered defeat.' The expression is used figuratively, as the battle of Marathon was fought on land. For infin. *fecisse*, see on *aequum esse* in section 2 above.

6. **qui . . . intuerentur**: 'inasmuch as they were regarding,' relative clause expressing cause. The present subjunctive would be used in the direct speech (V. 171). **ipsorum**: indirect reflexive, referring to a subject not that of the principal verb. **universae**: 'as a whole.' **miserant**: for indicative see V. 175, *i*. **se**: referring to the subject of the principal verb, i.e., Themistocles.

remitterent: 'let them (or they must) send back,' for mood see V. 186, 1, c. **cum**: 'for.' **essent recepturi**: 'would get (them) back.'

CHAP. 8.

1. **civium**: subjective gen. (V. 84). **eundem timorem**: they feared he would become too powerful, and establish himself as a tyrant. **testularum suffragiis**: 'by ostracism,' lit. 'votes of the potsherds.' When an Athenian citizen became so powerful that he was considered a danger to the safety of the state, he might be 'ostracized'; that is, banished for a term of ten years without loss of citizenship or property. The votes of the citizens were given in on shells or small potsherds (*ostraka*), and six thousand votes given against a man ensured his banishment. **Argos**: acc. of limit of motion (V. 125). **habitatum**: 'to reside,' the supine, expressing purpose (V. 116).

2. **magna cum dignitate**: 'in great honor.' **absentem**: 'in his absence.' **accusarent**: subjunctive of purpose (V. 26). **fecisset**: subjunctive in virtual indirect narration. The accusation was also part of the message (V. 177). **Hoc crimine**: 'on this charge,' abl. of accompaniment (V. 103). **proditionis**: for gen. see V. 91, c.

3. **ut**: 'when.' **tutum**: pred. sc. *esse*. **videbat**: the indicative shows the reason is that given by Nepos (V. 146). **Coreyram**: for case see V. 125. **propter se**: 'on his account.' **his**: = the Coreyreans, indirect object of *indicerent*. **Molossum**: = *Molosorum*, see III. 49, b. **ei**: dat. of possessor (V. 80, e).

4. **in praesentia**: 'at the time.' **quo**: introduces clause of purpose (V. 28, iii.). **maiore religione**: 'by a stronger obligation.' **receptum**: 'when received,' = *cum receptus esset* (V. 43). **caerimonia**: 'veneration.' **in fidem**: 'under his protection.' **reciperet**: for mood see V. 156, b. **quam**: = *et eam (fidem)*, translate freely 'and he kept his word.'

5. **cum**: 'although.' **exposceretur**: 'a demand for his extradition was made.' What is the subject of *exposceretur*? -**que**: 'but.' **consuleret**: for mood see V. 27. **sibi**: 'for his own safety' (V. 79). **esse**: governed by notion of 'saying,' in *monuit* (V. 191). **tam propinquo**: 'so near (Athens).' **tuto eum versari**: 'for him to live in safety.' The introductory 'for' of the English infinitive clause has no equivalent in Latin (V. 110, fn.). **Pydnam**: of course, the king did not intend him to remain at Pydna. **esset**: subjunctive in virtual direct narration, representing the view of Admetus (V. 177). **praesidii**: partitive gen. governed by *quod* (V. 86, i.).

6. **Hic**: 'here.' **nautis**: for case see V. 78, ii. Thucydides says 'to those on board the vessel.' **Quae cum**: 'when it,' i.e.,

the ship. *pervenisset*: Themistocles's thought would be *si eo pervenero* (V. 187, b, i.). *sibi esse pereundum*: 'that he must perish.' *sibi*: dat. of apparent agent (V. 80, d). *esse pereundum*: used impersonally (V. 120, ii.). *quis sit aperit*: 'reveals his identity.' *sit*: subjunctive in indirect question (V. 35; 37). *multa pollicens*: 'making many promises.' *multa* is a cognate acc. (V. 72); see also V. 203, d. *conservasset*: in virtual indirect narration, representing fut. perf. indic. of direct (V. 177).

7. *clarissimi viri*: 'for so distinguished a man,' objective gen. (V. 85). *diem noctemque*: 'a day and a night.' *neque . . . quemquam*: 'and . . . no one.' *exponit*: historical present (V. 179, c). *eui*: i.e., the captain. *gratiam rettulit*: 'bestowed a recompense,' 'rewarded.'

CHAP. 9.

1. *ita*: 'as follows.' *Xerxe regnante*: 'it was in the reign of Xerxes that,' see V. 205, a. Xerxes reigned from 485 to 465 B.C. *et . . . et*: 'both . . . and.' *aetate*: 'in point of time' (V. 102). *de illis*: 'of those,' i.e., he was nearest to the times of which he wrote. *fuit*: 'belonged to.' *autem*: 'now,' indicating transition. *Artaxerxen*: surnamed Longimanus; for form of acc. see III. 48, d. *atque*: 'and also.' *his verbis*: 'couched in these terms,' a peculiar example of the abl. of characteristic (V. 105); it modifies *epistulam*.

2. *Themistocles*: for case see V. 10, ii. *Græcorum*: partitive gen. with *qui*. *domum*: 'house' = 'family.'

3. *Idem*: 'but I also,' 'I however,' introducing a contrast. *multo plura*: 'many more,' lit? (V. 101). *ipse*: understand *esse coepi*. *in tuto*: 'in a position of safety.' *proelio . . . facto*: 'after the battle,' lit.? *litteris*: 'by a letter,' cf. the meaning of *litteris* in ch. 10, 1. *littera* in the sing. means a letter of the alphabet. *fecerat*: see on ch. 5, 1, above. *circumiretur*: subject is *ipse*, i.e. Xerxes, understood. *quo nuntio*: 'and by this message,' abl. of means. *periculo*: abl. of separation (V. 93).

4. *a*: 'from,' 'out of.' *Quam si ero adeptus*: 'and if I win it'; for tense see V. 62. *habebis*: 'will find,' 'will have in.' *ille*: Xerxes. *de*: 'with regard to.' *quas*: in the best writers *de quibus*, and not the direct object, would be used with *colloqui*. *annuum tempus*: 'a year's time.' *des*: from *do*, for mood see V. 27. *eoque transacto*: 'and when this time has elapsed.' For future time denoted by perfect participle see V. 41. *venire*: subject is *me*, understood from *mihi* (V. 18, x.).

CHAP. 10.

1. *Hujus*: Themistocles. The gen. is governed by *animi magnitudinem*. *virum . . . conciliari*: for construction see V. 21.

veniam dedit: 'complied with his request,' 'granted the favor sought.' **litteris**: 'literature,' cf. the meaning of this word in ch. 9, 3. It here refers to reading, **sermoni** to speaking, Persian. **quibus**: instrumental abl. (V. 99); translate 'in which.' **adeo eruditus est**: 'he became so well versed.' **dicatur**: personal construction (V. 18, vii.), but trans. 'it is said that he,' etc. The present tense indicates a result continuing to the writer's time. **quam il poterant**: an obvious exaggeration, unless he is referring to Asiatic Greeks.

2. **Multa**: see on ch. 8, 6. **gratissimumque illud**: 'and the following the most acceptable,' more freely, 'of which the following was the most welcome of all.' **illud** is in the same construction as **multa**, and is explained by the infin. clause **illum . . . oppressurum** (V. 195). **uti**: 'follow,' 'adopt.' **vellet, oppressurum (esse)**: in direct speech these verbs would be *voles* and *opprimes* (V. 62). **illum**: i.e., Artaxerxes. **donatus**: for constructions with *dono* see V. 78, vi. **Asiam**: Asia Minor. **Magnesiae**: for case see V. 127, i. **sibi**: dat. of reference, here nearly = possessive 'his' (V. 80, b, i.).

3. **donarat**: for the form see III. 66, a. **his quidem verbis**: 'in these very words,' 'on exactly these terms,' abl. of accompaniment (V. 103). **Quidem** emphasizes the word it follows. **quae**: the antecedent is *urbem*. **praeberet**: representing *praebeat* in a rel. clause of purpose; so *sumat* and *habeat* (V. 26). **redibant**: indicative because in an explanatory note of the author. For force of the tense see V. 180, b. **ad nostram memoriam**: 'to our time.' **sepulcrum**: '(namely) a tomb.' **oppidum**: Magnesia. **quo**: the antecedent is *sepulcrum*.

4. **ejus**: 'his.' **scriptum est**: best turned by the active, 'many writers vary in their accounts' (V. 56). **nos**: 'I,' = the 'editorial we,' which is commoner in Latin than in English. **eundem**: agrees with *Thucydidem*, trans. 'on this point also.' **auctorem**: 'as an authority.' **morbo mortuum**: 'died a natural death.' **neque negat**: 'but does not deny,' 'though he admits.' **sumpsisse**: for construction see V. 18, ii. **cum**: 'because.' **se . . . posse**: 'of being able.' **quae**: 'what,' for *ea quae*. **pollicitus esset**: would be *pollicitus sum* in the mind of Themistocles. Notice that *quae pollicitus esset* may be briefly translated 'his promise' (V. 37).

5. **Idem . . . memoriae prodidit**: 'he also has left it on record,' 'informed us,' lit. ? **ossa . . . sepulta (esse)**: the direct object of *prodidit*. **Iegibus**: 'by law,' abl. of accompaniment, 'in accordance with the laws,' rather than abl. of means. **concederetur, esset damnatus**: subjunctives in virtual indirect narration, as quoting the reasons assigned by Thucydides. The subject of *concederetur* is *ut ossa ejus in Attica sepelirentur* understood.

NOTES ON ARISTIDES.

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE.

Aristides commands his tribe at Marathon.	B.C.	490
Is Archon Eponymus	"	489
Is ostracized	"	483
Returns to fight at Salamis	"	480
Is recalled from banishment	"	480
Acts as general at Plataea	"	479
Organizes the Athenian confederacy	"	477
Dies	"	468 (?)

CHAP. 1.

1. *aequalis*: 'contemporary.' Themistocle: gen. or dat., according as *aequalis* is noun or adjective. For form see III. 50, d. *obtrectarunt inter se*: 'proved (or became) rivals.' For the form of *obtrectarunt* see III. 66, a. *inter se*: Latin has no convenient form for 'each other' (III. 62, e).

2. In his: 'in the case of these men.' *quanto*: abl. of difference, modifying the comparative notion in *antestaret*. *antestaret*: for mood see V. 35; for tense see V. 36, fn. 1, b. *innocentiae*: for case see V. 78, v. c. *unus*: 'alone.' *audierimus*: 'have heard of,' subjunctive in a restrictive relative clause of characteristic (V. 32, ii.). For form of *audierimus* see III. 66, a. *at appellatus*: 'has been called'; the perfect, as extending down to the writer's time. *testula*: referring to the vote of ostracism. See note on Themistocles, ch. 8, 1. *exsilio*: abl. of means. *annorum*: for gen. see V. 87. Translate 'was condemned to ten years' exile.'

3. *intellegeret*: 'felt.' *cedens*: 'as he was retiring,' i.e., going away from the place where the votes were being cast. *animadvertisset*: distinguish force of tense from that of *intellegeret*. *quendam*: from *quidam*. *ut . . . pelleretur*: the object of *scribentem*. For mood of *pelleretur* see V. 28, v. Plutarch's version has more point; that an illiterate voter asked a bystander to write Aristides' name on his shell. The bystander was Aristides himself, who, on asking the man what harm Aristides had done him, was told that he was simply tired of hearing him called 'The Just.' *cur*: 'that,' lit.? *duceretur*: 'should be thought, subjunctive, not in an indirect question, but in a relative clause of characteristic (V. 32).

4. *laborasset*: for mood see V. 175; for form, III. 66, a. The clause *quod . . . laborasset* forms the subject of *placere* (V. 198). *appellaretur*: for mood see V. 24.

5. *legitimam*: 'legal.' *pertulit*: what is the force of *per* here? *postquam*: 'as soon as.' in . . . *descendit*: 'came down upon,' i.e., from the interior of Asia. *sexto fere*: 'about the sixth,' really the *fourth*, as he was banished in 483, and returned in 480 B.C. *quam*: = *postquam*, as often, the omission here being probably partly due to the presence of *postquam* in the preceding line, although Nepos is not always so particular. *erat expulsus*: pluperfect, a definite interval being specified (V. 152, b, ii.).

CHAP. 2.

1. *Interfuit*: not with the Athenian fleet, but as a free-lance. *pugnae*: for case see V. 78, v. c. *liberaretur*: we should expect the indic. here, as the clause denotes mere priority of time (V. 156, a.). *Idem*: 'also.' *praetor*: 'a general.' At Athens ten generals were chosen every year, one from each tribe. *apud*: 'near.' *est*: goes with *fusus* also.

2. *hujus*: i.e., Aristides. *re militari*: 'war.' *factum*: a noun here. *aliud . . . quam*: 'except,' lit. 'other than.' *hujus imperii memoria*: 'record of this command,' for the deeds performed during the command, *res gestae in imperio*. *justitiae, aequitatis, innocentiae*: depend on *illustria facta* (understood with *multa*), but translate freely 'many instances of.' *quod*: conjunction, 'that,' 'the fact that.' The subject of *factum est* is the result clause *ut . . . transferretur* (V. 197). *communi*: 'united,' 'joint.' *quo duce*: abl. absolute (V. 49), trans. 'under whose leadership.' *erat fugatus*: note mood. *summa imperii maritimi*: 'leadership in naval matters.' See note on Themistocles, ch. 4, 2. *duces*: e.g., Eurybiades at Salamis, Pausanias at Platæa, Leotychides at Mycæ.

3. *intemperantia*: 'arrogance' (V. 96). *civitates*: i.e., the maritime states engaged in the war, except the Peloponnesians. *hos duces sibi*: 'these (as) their leaders,' *duces* is in predicative agreement with *hos* (V. 69, v.). *sibi*: for case see V. 80, b, i.

CHAP. 3.

1. *quo*: see V. 28, iii. *conarentur*: virtual indirect discourse (V. 177). *quantum pecuniae*: 'how much money,' lit. ? (V. 86, i.). *quaque*: from *quisque*. *daret*: 'should give' (V. 186, 1, b, i.). The clause *quantum . . . daret* is governed by *constitueret*. *quadringena et sexagena*: for the distributives see III. 61, c. *Delum*: acc. owing to idea of 'motion to,' in *collata*. *id*: attracted to gender of *aerarium* (V. 13, i.). *voluerunt*: 'determined.'

'appointed.' *Quae omnis pecunia* : i.e., the accumulated amount.
postero tempore : 'at a later date.'

2. *Hic* : Aristides. *qua . . . abstinencia* : abl. of characteristic; freely, 'how disinterested he was' (V. 105, i.). *fuert* : subjunctive in indir. question governed by *est indicium* which is equivalent to a transitive verb, 'shows.' See V. 18, ii. *quod* : 'the fact that'; *quod decessit* is a noun clause subject of *est indicium* understood. *cum* : concessive 'although' (V. 65, a). *tantis rebus* : 'such immense resources.' For case see V. 78, v. c. *prae-fuisset* : 'had controlled,' 'administered.' *qui efferretur* : 'the wherewithal to bury him,' lit. '(that) wherewith he might be buried.' *qui* : abl. case (III. 64, a). *efferretur* : final subjunctive (V. 26). *reliquerit* : for tense see V. 33, iii.

3. *publice* : 'at the expense of the state.' *de communi . . . collocarentur* : 'were married off by dowries being provided from the public treasury.' *dotibus datis* : abl. absolute. The *dos* was a very necessary consideration in arranging an Athenian marriage. *post annum quartum, quam* : 'three years after,' = *anno quarto postquam*; *post* coming before *anno quarto* is felt to have the force of a preposition, and governs the acc. Observe that the Romans in reckoning from one date to another counted in both extremes, where we include but one. *erat expulsus* : for tense see last note on ch. 1, 5, above.

NOTES ON HANNIBAL.

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE.

Hannibal is born		B.C.	247
Is taken to Spain		"	238
Becomes commander-in-chief		"	221
Lays siege to Saguntum		"	219
Crosses the Alps		"	218
Wins a victory at Trasymene		"	217
Crushes the Romans at Cannæ		"	216
Withdraws to Africa		"	203
Is defeated at Zama		"	202
Goes to the Court of Antiochus		"	193
Commits suicide		"	183 (?)

CHAP. 1.

1. *verum* : for gender see V. 194, i. *quod* : = *id quod*, 'a thing which' (V. 173, d). *ut . . . superarit* : a substantive clause of

result, subject of *verum est*, for the regular acc. and inf. (V. 197, fn.). *tanto . . . quanto*: 'as much as' (V. 101). *antecedat*: for mood see V. 175.

2. *eo*: i.e., *populo Romano*. *discessit superior*: 'came off victor.' *Quod nisi*: 'and if . . . not,' 'unless, then.' *Quod*: a conjunction here, but originally a rel. pronoun, meaning 'with respect to which.' *civium*: subjective gen.: so *multorum*; see V. 84. *videtur*: sc. *Hannibal* as subject. Latin prefers the personal construction (V. 18, vii.). Translate 'it seems that he.' *potuisse*: represents *potuit* (V. 64, i.). Translate 'could (or might) have conquered.'

3. *Velut . . . paternum*: 'the hatred inherited from his sire,' lit. 'the hatred of his father, left as it were by inheritance' (V. 203, a). *hereditate*: abl. of manner. *ut . . . deposuerit*: 'that he laid it aside only with his life,' lit. (somewhat illogically) 'that he laid down his life before he laid that aside.' *deposuerit*: this verb, by a figure called *zeugma*, is used with both *animam* and *id* (sc. *odium*), in a slightly different sense. For tense see V. 33, iii. *qui quidem*: 'since (in fact) he.' *pulsus esset, indigeret*: distinguish these tenses. For mood see V. 65, a. *opum*: for case see V. 91, f. *destiterit*: subj. in a causal rel. clause (V. 171). *animo*: 'in his heart.'

CHAP. 2.

1. *ut omittam*: 'to say nothing of.' *Philippum*: Philip V., king of Macedon. *absens*: 'without meeting him in person.' Hannibal never saw the king, but arranged an alliance with him by ambassadors in B.C. 215. *Antiochus*: the Great, king of Syria. *fuit*: we should expect *Nam Antiochum, qui potentissimus fuit, incendit*. *bellandi*: obj. gen. *rubro mari*: by Red Sea the Greeks meant also the Persian Gulf and the Indian Ocean. *arma . . . inferre Italiae*: 'to carry the war into Italy.'

2. *consiliis clandestinis*: 'by intrigues,' lit. 'secret communications.' *regi*: dat. of reference, 'in the eyes of the king.' *adducerent*: subjunctive of purpose after *darent operam*. *tamquam*: 'on the ground that,' lit. 'just as if,' with *corruptum* (V. 44, iii.). *corruptum*: sc. *eum* (i.e., *Hannibalem*), subject of *sentire*. *alia atque antea sentire*: 'held different views from formerly' (V. 168, i.). The infinitive depends on the idea of thinking in *suspicionem* (V. 191). *fecissent, comperisset, vidisset*; with *cum*, l. 16. *segregari*: 'was being excluded.'

3. *tempore dato*: 'when opportunity offered.' *inquit*: repeating *adjunxit*; regularly used parenthetically as here. *puerulo me*: abl. absolute. *utpote . . . nato*: 'for I was not more than nine years of age'; for *utpote* see V. 44, iii. *annos*: for case see

V. 129 and 98, iv. **nato**: agrees with *me*. **Jovi**: i.e., to Baal, the great divinity of the Carthaginians.

4. **confitebatur**: the best writers would use the pres. ind. here (V. 153). **vellemne**: see V. 35, i. **dubitaret**: 'to hesitate' (V. 27). **dederis**: for tense see V. 62. **eam**: obj. of *tenentem*, which agrees with *me*. **numquam**: emphatic position. **in amicitia . . . fore**: 'be friends.' **fore**: see V. 17.

5. **nemini . . . quin**: 'no one should doubt that.' **quin . . . futurum**: substantive clause, subject of *debeat* (V. 139, b). **reliquo tempore**: 'for the rest of my life' (V. 131, i.). **eadem mente**: see V. 105, i.

6. **quid . . . cogitabis**: 'have any friendly intentions towards,' etc., lit.? for tense see V. 178, ii. **non . . . celaris**: 'you will act not unwisely in concealing them from me,' lit.? (V. 184, i.). **me**: acc. after *celaris*, the acc. of the thing (*id*) being understood (V. 69, vi.). **celaris**: = *celaveris*. **in eo**: = *in bello parando*. **me principem posueris**: 'put me in the chief place.'

CHAP. 3.

1. **qua diximus**: freely 'which I have mentioned'; complete the sentence thus, *qua (aetate) diximus (eum profectum esse)*. **obitum**: in 229 B.C. **praefuit**: 'was placed in command of.' **Id**: i.e., his appointment. **Carthaginem**: see on *Delum*, Aristides, ch. 3, 1. **delatum**: 'when reported' (V. 43).

2. **annis**: after *minor* (V. 98); with *natus*, the acc. as in ch. 2, 3, is usual. **triennio**: see V. 131. **Saguntum**: a corruption of the Greek Zacynthus (Zante), now Murviedro, a corruption of *muri veteres*. **foederatam civitatem**: 'a city in alliance (with Rome).' Notice the absence of connectives (*asyndeton*) in this sentence, and, indeed, in the whole chapter.

3. **Ex his**: 'of these'; see V. 86, iii. **omnibus**: scarcely correct, as many of the Gauls were friendly. **nisi victum**: 'without having first defeated him,' lit.? (V. 44, iii.).

4. **Herculem**: referring to the story that Hercules brought the oxen of the triple-bodied monster Geryon from some distant island in the west, over the Pyrenees and the Alps. **quo facto**: 'from which exploit,' causal abl. The name was really of local origin. **conantes**: 'when (or who were) endeavoring.' **transitu**: see V. 93. **loca**: 'district,' 'country.' **munit**: 'built,' 'constructed.' **ut . . . posset**: substantive clause of result, object of *effecit*; trans. 'made it possible for.' **ea . . . qua**: '(there)' . . . where.' Notice the contrast between *elephantus* and *unus homo, ornatus and inermis, ire and repere*.

CHAP. 4.

1. **Conflixerat, pepulerat**: pluperfect because *Nepos* looks forward to the more important action denoted by *decernit*. **Scipione**: father of the great *Scipio*. *Scipio* was really not present at this skirmish. **Clastidium**: locative (V. 127, i.).

2. **Tertio**: 'a third time,' adv. **utrosque**: for the usual *utrumque*. **Inde**: 'after that.' **petens**: 'on his way towards.'

3. **Hoc itinere**: see V. 130. **dextro**: sc. *oculo*. According to *Livy* he lost one eye altogether. **circumventum occidit**: best translated by two co-ordinate verbs, 'surrounded and killed,' lit.? (V. 43). **post**: adv. **occupantem**: 'while (or who was) attempting to seize.'

4. **Hinc**: from here to ch. 5, 3, there is great confusion in the order of events. **ei**: for dat. see V. 52. **utriusque**: 'of both.' **proelio**: the battle of *Cannæ*, the most signal defeat ever sustained by the Roman arms. **Paulum**: i.e., *L. Aemilium Paulum*.

CHAP. 5.

1. **pugna**: represents a cognate accusative in the active. **profectus est**: it was really not until five years later. **nullo resistente**: 'without anyone offering resistance,' lit.? **habuisset, reverteretur**: distinguish the tenses.

2. **Hic**: adverb. **exercitus**: 'to his army,' objective gen. See V. 85. **callidissimo imperatori**: 'shrewd commander as he was,' lit.? **dedit verba**: a colloquial expression, 'fooled,' 'tricked,' lit. 'gave words (only).' **obducta nocte**: 'under cover of night,' lit.? **deligata incendit**: 'he fastened . . . and set fire to' (V. 43). **eius generis**: 'tricked out in this fashion,' or 'of these,' lit.? **dispalatam immisit**: 'let loose to straggle in all directions,' 'sent straggling off' (V. 44, ii.). **Quo . . . visu**: 'by the unexpected appearance of this sight,' or 'by causing this unexpected sight to be presented to them,' abl. absolute. **terrorem iniecit exercitui**: see V. 78, v. c.

3. **rem gestam**: 'exploit.' **ita**: 'so very.' **magistrum equitum**: 'master of the horse.' This officer was usually next in command to the Dictator. **pari ac dictatorem imperio**: 'with an authority equal to that of the Dictator' (V. 105). **dictatorem**: attracted to the case of *magistrum*. **dolo . . . fugavit**: 'lured into an engagement and routed.' **iterum consulem**: for *bis consulem*; 'who had been twice consul,' lit.? **absens**: 'though he himself was not there.' **pari modo**: i.e., by an ambush.

4. **Longum est**: see V. 136, a, i. **satis**: predicate adjective. **dictum**: 'statement,' referring to *quamdiu* . . . *posuit*. **possit**:

see V. 32. *restitit*: 'successfully opposed.' *in campo*: 'in the open field,' or 'on level ground,' the Roman generals preferring to keep to the hills.

CHAP. 6.

1. *defensum*: see V. 116. *Scipionem*: the greatest of the Scipios, afterwards called Africanus.

2. *exhaustis . . . facultatibus*: abl. absolute, denoting cause. *Quo*: see V. 28, iii. *valentior*: 'with stronger forces.' *In colloquum*, etc.: 'a conference was agreed on; the terms were not agreed upon,' (or freely, 'they could not come to terms'). Notice *in*, 'with a view to,' and the change from the impersonal to the personal use of *convenio*, unless, as is possible, the first clause means 'he met him in conference' (V. 127, iii.).

3. *Post id factum*: 'after that was done.' *incredibile dictu*: referring to *biduo . . . pervenit*; for *dictu*, see V. 117. The feat is absurdly impossible.

4. *Numidae*: for gender see III. 48, c. *acie*: 'the field.' *ipso*: i.e., instead of being crushed by the Numidians, he crushed them. *Hadrumeti*: locative.

CHAP. 7.

1. *Cum*: 'although.' *occupatus*: adj. *nihilo*: see V. 101. *gessit*: what is the force of the tense? (V. 182, b.) *usque ad . . . consules*: 'down to the consulship of,' merely to mark the date.

2. *His . . . magistratibus*: abl. absolute, 'under these magistrates.' *his*: i.e., the Carthaginians; *secum* might have been used (as *suis* for *eorum*, l. 14), since the *legati* represented the Carthaginians. *fecissent*: for the subjunctive see V. 147, ii. *eos*: the Romans. *Fregellis*: see V. 127. *essent, redderentur*: see V. 27.

3. *His*: indirect object of *responsum est*. Trans. 'this answer was given them.' For the direct form of the answer see V. 193. *acceptum*: adj., 'welcome,' because *gratum*, 'pleasing.' *remissuros*: sc. *se*. *foret*:=*esset* (III. 70). *nomini*: here=*populo*. *cum imperio haberent*: 'kept in command.'

4. *domum*: see V. 125. *ut*: 'when' (V. 152, b). *rex*: the usual term is 'suffete.' *fuerat*: 'had become,' 'had been chosen' (V. 152, b, ii.). *Romae*: locative. *annui*: pred. adj. with *creabantur*, 'were elected (to hold office) for a year.' *bini*: for the force of the distributive see III. 61, c, 1 and 4.

5. *pari diligentia . . . ac*: 'as painstaking as,' here with the force of an acc. pred. adj. (V. 105, i.); for *ac* see V. 174. *quae*

penderetur: 'to pay,' lit.? relative clause of purpose, so *quae reponeretur* (V. 26). **foedere**: the treaty concluded at the end of the second Punic war.

6. **anno post**: 'a year after,' lit.? (V. 101). **consul'bus**: 'in the consulship of,' lit.? (V. 49). **Roma**: abl. of place from which (V. 126). **ratus**: 'thinking' (V. 44, ii.). **sui exposcendi gratia**: 'to demand his surrender,' gerundive expression denoting purpose (V. 119). **missos**: sc. *esse* (V. 18, iii.). **senatus**: 'an audience with the senate.' **daretur**: 'could be given,' for the mood see V. 156, b. **in Syriam, etc.**: 'to Antiochus in Syria' (V. 125, iv.).

7. **possent**: virtual indirect narration (V. 177), for *quae comprehenderent miserunt* implies a command, in direct speech *comprehendite*. **ipsum**: contrasted with *bona* and *domum*. **exsulem**: pred. acc.

CHAP. 8.

1. **domo**: see V. 126. **profugerat**: for tense see V. 152, b, ii. **consulibus**: in 193 B.C. **Africam**: see on Themistocles, ch. 4, 1. **in finibus**: we should expect *in fines*. **si . . . inducerentur**: 'in hopes of the Carthaginians being incited,' etc.; virtual indirect narration (V. 177). **Antiochi**: 'in Antiochus,' objective gen. (V. 85). **persuaserat**: as a matter of fact Antiochus did not invade Italy. **Huc**: to Cyrene.

2. **qua**: 'as' (V. 174). **absentem**: with *Magonem*. **III**: the two brothers. **desperatis rebus**: 'in despair of success,' lit.? **solvissent . . . dedissent**: 'had weighed anchor and set sail.' **duplex memoria**: 'two accounts.' **interfectum**: strictly only with *a servulis* (a case of zeugma): with *naufragio* supply *perisse*. **scriptum reliquerunt**: 'have left it on record'; *scriptum* is a pred. acc., modifying *interfectum (esse) eum*.

3. **autem**: 'now.' **tam . . . voluisset, quam**: 'had been as ready . . . as,' for mood and tense see V. 61. **ejus**: = *Hannibalis*, passing over the somewhat careless parenthesis about Mago. **susciplendo**: sc. *bello*. **instituerat**: 'had been at the outset,' sc. *parere*. **Tiberi**: dat. after *propius* (V. 78, ii.). **Thermopylis**: as a rule, the same construction follows *quam* as precedes it. This battle of Thermopylæ was fought in 191 B.C. **de summa imperii**: 'for the world's supremacy,' lit.? **Quem**: i.e., Antiochus. **etsi videbat**: see V. 65, a. **multa stulte conari**: 'formed many foolish projects' (V. 203, d). **videbat, deseruit**: sc. Hannibal. The change of tense is due to the negative (= 'in no single case').

4. **Asiam**: Asia Minor. **is**: abl. of means. **Quo**: 'in this battle'; sc. *proelio*, from *confluxit*. **cum**: 'while' (V. 151, fn.). **sui**: 'his troops'; *suus* by no means always refers to the sub-

ject of its own clause. **quo cornu** : = *eo cornu quo*, 'on the wing where' (V. 173, c, i.). **rem gessit** : 'commanded,' 'had charge.'

CHAP. 9.

1. **fugato** : at Magnesia, 190 B.C. **verens** : to avoid ambiguity trans. 'Hannibal fearing.' **ne** : 'that or lest' (V. 138). **quod** : 'which'; the antecedent is found in *dederetur*. **sui** . . . **pote-statem** : 'had put himself in his power,' lit. ? **sui** : objective gen. (V. 85). **Cretam** : 'in Crete' (V. 125, ii.). **quo se conferret** : 'whither to retreat' (V. 186, 1, b, i.).

2. **vir omnium callidissimus** : 'being the shrewdest of men,' lit. ? **nisi quid providisset** : 'unless he took some precautions.' His thought would be *ero* . . . *nisi providero* (V. 187, a, b, i.). For *quid*, see V. 166, a. **exisse** : for the form see III. 66, a.

3. **capit** : 'forms.' **tale** : 'the following.' **summas** : 'the tops,' an adjective; sc. *amphoras* (V. 86, iv. b). **praesentibus** : 'in the presence of,' etc., lit. ? (V. 46). **statuas aeneas** : 'certain bronze statues.' **domi** : 'at his house,' locative. **abiecit** : 'threw carelessly down.'

4. **a, ab** : 'against.' **ne** : 'that . . . not' (V. 24). **inscien-tibus iis** : 'without their knowledge' (V. 49). **tolleret, duceret** : sc. *amphoras*.

CHAP. 10.

1. **Poenus, Cretensibus** : both races had a reputation for cunning. **in Pontum** : 'in Pontus' (V. 125, ii.). **apud quem** : 'at his court.' **animo** : see V. 105, i. **neque** . . . **egit quam ar-mavit** : 'and had no other aim than to arm.' See on *Thermopylis*, ch. 8, 3.

2. **opibus** : see V. 102. **minus** : 'not very.' **conciliabat** : 'proceeded to win over' (V. 180, d). **eo** : i.e., Prusias.

3. **utroblque** : i.e., *et mari et terra*. **Romanorum** : see V. 84. **Quo magis** : 'so . . . the more,' lit. ? **quem si removisset** : 'for if he once had him removed from his path'; cf. on *providisset*, ch. 9, 2.

4. **erant decreaturi** : see V. 124. **Superabatur** : 'Hannibal was the weaker,' 'was overmatched.' **multitudine, armis** : see V. 102. **erat pugnandum** : 'he had to fight' (V. 120, ii.). **col-ligi** : for the infinitive passive with *impero*, see V. 22, vii. **vasa** : for declension see III. 56, d.

5. **effectisset** : 'had got together.' **ipso** : 'very.' **unam** . . . **navem** : 'the ship of Eumenes only'; *unam*, like *omnes*, in em-phatic position (V. 3, a). **a** : 'against.' **tantum** : with *defendere*. **satis habeant** : 'to be content,' lit. 'should regard it sufficient.'

id : *i.e.*, their defence. **illos** : see V. 188. **consecutus** : *sc. esse*; the notion of saying is supplied by **praecipit** (V. 191).

6. **ut scirent facturum** : 'would see that they knew', for subjunctive see V. 33, v. **cepissent**, **interfecissent** : see V. 187, b, i. **illis praemio fore** : see V. 81; freely, 'they should be well rewarded'; the subject of *fore* is the notion of capturing or slaying. On this whole passage see V. 193.

CHAP. 11.

1. **millitum** : see V. 85. **utrisque** : 'both sides'; note the force of the plural. **Quarum** : *i.e.*, *classium*. **pugnae** : 'for engaging'; objective gen. **daretur** : for mood see V. 156, b. **palam faceret** : 'make it clear'; *palam* with the force of a pred. adj. **caduceo** : equivalent to a modern flag of truce. **ut faceret**, **mittit** : for sequence of tenses with historical pres., see V. 28, iv., and cf. *concurrent*, ch. 10, 5.

2. **quin . . . scriptum** : 'that there was some written proposal,' lit. ? For *quin* with subjunctive see V. 139, b. **suis** : dat. **eodem** : adverb.

3. **quae . . . pertinerent** : 'such remarks as served to make sport of him.' For mood see V. 32. **neque reperiebat** : 'and failed to discover it'; cf. last note on ch. 8, 3. **committere dubitavit** : cf. construction after *dubitabat* in section 2.

4. **Horum** : the opposing fleets. **praecepto** : for the abl. = 'in accordance with,' see V. 103, iii. **universi adoriantur** : 'concentrate their attack on.' **quam** : 'but . . . it,' *i.e.*, *salutem*. **consecutus esset**, **recepisset** : see V. 61. **praesidia** : the *castra nautica* of section 6. **proximo** : 'neighboring.'

5. **acrius** : 'with considerable vigor,' lit. ? (V. 98, vi.). **coepta sunt** : 'began'; for the passive form see V. 22, iii. **Quae jacta** : 'the throwing of these,' more lit. 'these when thrown.' **pugnantibus** : 'in the combatants' (V. 44, i. a); for dat. see V. 80, b. **poterat intellegi** : trans. freely by active (V. 56).

6. **nova re** : 'novel device,' 'unusual spectacle.' **vitarent** : see V. 186, 1, b, i. **puppes verterunt** : after the analogy of *terga vertere*. Cf. 'to turn tail.' **castra nautica** : formed by drawing the ships up on shore and throwing ramparts about them.

7. **consilio** : 'strategy.' **alias** : adverb. **pari prudentia** : 'with a like cunning,' see V. 103. Note the alliteration in the last line.

The fact of his dealing at such length with the silly episode of the serpents, while dismissing in a few lines Hannibal's famous campaigns in Italy, goes to show that Nepos was singularly lacking in the sense of historical perspective.

CHAP. 12.

1. **geruntur**: for tense see V. 153. **cenarent, dicerent**: see V. 31. **apud**: 'at the house of.' **Id**: what is the antecedent?

2. **Patres conscripti**: the regular name for 'members of the senate'; for *patres et conscripti*, i.e., the heads of patrician families, and the plebeians afterwards enrolled. **Hannibale vivo**: 'as long as Hannibal was alive' (V. 49). **sine**: 'free from.' **existimarent**: causal subj. (V. 171). **in**: 'among.' **suum**, **sibi**: indirect reflexives (V. 164). **secum**: direct reflexive. **-que**: 'but'; sc. *ut*, from *ne*.

3. **His negare**: 'to refuse their request,' lit. ? **ausus est**: see III. 68, c. **illud . . . postularent**: 'but this he did object to, their asking him to do'; for the use of *ne* and subj. (here in apposition with *illud*), see V. 139, fn. **esset**: see V. 175. **ipsi comprehenderent**: 'let them seize him themselves' (V. 186, 1, c). **inventuros**: sc. *eos* and *esse*. For *comprehenderent* and *inventuros* following *recusavit*, see V. 191. **munerī**: 'as a gift' (V. 81). **idque**: 'and which'; for *id*, not *quod*, see V. 170, iv. **aedificarat**: 'had arranged.' **ne . . . accidit**: 'lest that should happen which did happen'; for the indic. see V. 175, i. **usu veniret**: lit. 'come as an experience,' *usu* being dat. of purpose=*usui* (III. 51, b), or perhaps, 'come about in experience,' *usu* being abl. of accompaniment.

4. **puer**: 'slave.' So in South Africa a native servant is called 'boy,' without reference to age. **plures praeter consuetudinem**: 'more than usual' or 'an unusual number,' lit. ? A somewhat pleonastic expression. **Qui**: 'Hannibal.' **num . . . obideretur**: indirect question; for force of *num* see V. 35, i.

5. **quid esset**: 'how matters stood.' **occupatos, factum**: sc. *esse*. **se peti**: 'he was the person they were seeking,' lit. ? (V. 205, a). **sibi**: see V. 80, d. **retinendam**: trans. by 'could,' as often in the case of a gerundive with a negative or *vix*. **quam . . . dimitteret**: 'that he might not give this up at another's bidding,' i.e., he wished to die free, and not to be dragged in triumph through the streets of Rome and then put to death. **arbitrio**: see V. 103, iii. **consuerat**: for the force of the pluperfect see V. 182, e.

CHAP. 13.

1. **-que**: omit in trans. (V. 205, f.) **laboribus**: see V. 54. **acquievit**: a very appropriate word after *perfunctus laboribus*. **Quibus consulibus**: 'in what consulship,' 'in what year' (V. 49); notice the indirect question introduced by abl. absolute.

The dates are 183, 182 and 181 B.C. respectively, so *septuagesimo* cannot be correct. *mortuum* . . . *reliquit* : cf. on ch. 8, 2.

2. *Atque* : 'I may add.' *hic tantus* : regularly used instead of *hic magnus*. *-que* : omit in trans. *districus* : 'though busy' (V. 42). *nonnihil* . . . *litteris* : 'devoted considerable time to literary pursuits.' *temporis* : for gen. see V. 86, i. *confecti* : 'written.' *ad Rhodios* : the title of the work ; sc. *liber ad Rhodios scriptus*. Trans. 'among them one dedicated to the Rhodians.'

3. *Hujus* . . . *gesta* : 'Hannibal's achievements in war.' *duo* : sc. *prodiderunt*, but trans. freely 'there were two.' *simul* : not = *eodem tempore*, but = *cum eo* of the preceding line. *usus est doctore* : 'had as his teacher' (V. 55, v.).

CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR.

CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR was born at Rome on the 12th of July, 100 B.C. (or, as Mommsen holds, in 102 B.C.), of one of the oldest patrician families of that city. Although of aristocratic birth he espoused the cause of the popular party, and after barely escaping with his life on the defeat of that party by Sulla in 82 B.C., he withdrew from active politics for several years. By 70 B.C., however, he had become a favorite of the people, and one of its most influential leaders. He rose rapidly through the various grades of office, being made in succession quaestor, aedile, pontifex maximus (a life-office), praetor, and finally consul in B.C. 59. The three leading men of Rome at this time were Pompey, representing the nobles; Cæsar, the leader of the popular party; and Crassus, whose influence was largely due to his immense wealth. On Cæsar's suggestion they formed a coalition (the so-called First Triumvirate), the result of which was to place the practical supremacy of the state in the hands of these three men. The powerful influence of this coalition secured for him, after his consulship, the administration for five years of the three provinces, Illyricum and Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul. In 55 B.C., by an agreement with Pompey and Crassus, this command was extended for another period of five years.

After the conquest of Gaul, which engaged the attention of Cæsar from 58 to 51 B.C., civil war arose between him and Pompey, his sole remaining rival, Crassus having fallen in battle in the East. By the overthrow of the Pompeian party Cæsar became practically supreme ruler of the Roman world. He showed unexpected clemency to his former opponents, and began a brilliant career as administrator and reformer. But the Roman aristocracy, alarmed at his great power and popularity and their own loss of prestige, formed a conspiracy to remove him, being actuated in some cases by jealousy, in others by an honest but short-sighted desire to bring back republican freedom; and on the Ides (the 15th) of March, 44 B.C., 'The foremost man of all this world' fell beneath the daggers of the conspirators, at the base of Pompey's statue. Saddest of all, one of his many wounds was dealt by the hand of his intimate friend Brutus.

We are told that in personal appearance Cæsar was noble and commanding. He was tall of stature and of slender build, his complexion was pale, his nose prominent and decidedly 'Roman,' his eyes were black, keen and full of expression. In later life he had a tendency to baldness. His constitution was naturally delicate, and he was subject to attacks of epilepsy, but by constant exercise and temperate living he managed to acquire vigorous health, so that he could endure the most prolonged toil and most arduous exertions.

The genius of Cæsar was many-sided, and he excelled in everything he undertook. Not only was he one of the greatest generals of all time, but he was pre-eminent as a law-giver, a jurist and a statesman. Moreover, he has left behind him a reputation as an orator, a poet, a mathematician, an architect and engineer, while as an historian he will ever rank with the highest. He was the author of numerous literary works, on many different subjects, but of these all that have come down to us are his *Commentarii De Bello Gallico* (from which the selections contained in this book are taken), and his *Commentarii De Bello Civili* (in three books), a history of the war between himself and Pompey.

The *Commentaries* of Cæsar are memoirs written by himself, descriptive of his different campaigns. It is uncertain whether the work was written as the war went on, and issued book by book, or whether it was composed towards the end of the war. Each book of the *Commentaries* on the Gallic War contains the account of a single year's campaign. There are seven books in all, the history of the eighth year's operations having been composed after Cæsar's death by Aulus Hirtius, one of his lieutenants.

The *Commentarii*, by universal consent, are written in the purest Latin, in a style marked by great simplicity and conciseness, and, in spite of its condensation, by singular ease and elegance. The best judges among Cæsar's contemporaries praise his literary style for its purity of diction, and its business-like directness of expression. Cicero, the best literary critic of his day, has this to say of Cæsar's *Commentaries*: "I pronounce them to be, in fact, entirely commendable; for they are simple, straightforward, of a charming elegance, stripped of all rhetorical adornments."

1. *Commentarii* (sc. *libri*), meaning *sketches, jottings*, is used as the title of a book on any subject, but especially an historical one, which is only sketched down or written without careful revision.

In the choice of single words *Cæsar* is pure and classical, as we should expect that writer to be, who, according to Aulus Gellius, the Roman grammarian, has left us the invaluable advice "to shun an uncommon or out of the way word as a ship would a rock."

NOTES ON CÆSAR, BOOK IV.

CHAP. 1.

1. *qui fuit*, etc. : 'which was the year when . . . were consuls,' lit. 'Pompey and Crassus (being) consuls' (V. 49). The consuls are named merely to fix the date, 55 B.C. For the agreement of *qui* see V. 13, i. *Germani*: the larger division to which *Usi- petes* and *Tencteri* both belonged. *multitudine*: 'almost abl. of manner' (= 'in large numbers'), as it is really included in the subject. *maris*: 'that part of the sea.' *quo*: adverb, 'into which.'

2. *Causa transeundi*: 'the reason for crossing'; contrast with the meaning and order of *bellandi causa* in section 4. *quod*: 'that,' lit. 'because' (V. 198). *annos*: with *exagitati* (V. 129). *bello*: with *premebantur*. *premebantur*: *Cæsar's* reason (V. 146). *agricultura*: see V. 93.

3. *omnium*: in emphatic position (V. 3, a).

4. *Hi*: the Suebi. *ex quibus singula milia*: 'from each of which a thousand'; lit. 'from which . . . one thousand each.' For the distributive see III. 61, c.

5. *manserunt*: 'remain,' lit. ? For tense see V. 182, c. *illos*, *ill*: 'the others.' *Hi*: refers to *reliqui*. *anno post*: 'the next year' (V. 101).

7. *agri . . . nihil est*: 'there is no . . . land' (V. 86, i.). *longius anno*: 'longer than a year' (V. 98). *licet*: 'they are allowed,' lit. ? (V. 143).

8. *multum*: adverb. *frumento*: trans. by 'on,' lit. 'by means of.' *maximam partem*: 'for the most part' (V. 72, i.). *sunt in venationibus*: 'are engaged in hunting,' lit. 'hunts.'

9. *quæ res*: 'this fact,' i.e., the frequent hunting; subject of *abit*. To indicate more clearly the connection with the preceding words, Latin constantly uses *qui* for *hic* or *is* (V. 172). *genere*: 'from (or because of) the character' (V. 96). *cum . . . faciant*: explaining *libertate vitæ*; trans. by a parenthetic clause with 'for'; lit. 'since.' *nullo . . . assuefacti*: 'as they are not accustomed to any obedience or discipline'; for the abl. see V. 99.

faciant: for mood see V. 148. **alit**: 'increases,' *immanis*, etc.: 'of huge stature,' lit.? Understand *eos*, *homines* being a factitive pred. acc. **magnitudine**: see V. 105.

10. **Atque**: 'moreover' in *eam* . . . **adduxerunt**: lit. 'have brought themselves to that (=such a) custom,' freely, 'have so accustomed themselves.' **loca frigidissimis**: 'although the climate is very cold,' lit.? (V. 49). **neque vestitus quicquam**: 'no clothing,' lit.? (V. 86, i.). **haberent**: for the mood see V. 29. Here to be translated exceptionally by the *present* tense, so *lavarentur*. See V. 36, fn. 1, b. **quarum**: trans. after *exiguitatem*, *lavarentur*: for the voice see V. 203, f. i.

CHAP. 2.

1. **Mercatoribus est aditus**: 'traders are admitted,' lit.? **eo**: adv., 'for this purpose,' explained by *ut* . . . **habeant**; omit in trans. **quibus vendant**: '(persons) to whom to sell,' freely, 'purchasers for' (V. 26). The object of the verb is (*ea*) *quae bello ceperint*. For the omission of the antecedents see V. 173, a. **habeant**: see V. 24. **ceperint**: for the mood see V. 177. **quo**: 'that or because.' **ad**: 'among.' **desiderent**: for mood see V. 147, iii.

2. **Quin etiam**: 'nay even.' **jumentis**: here 'horses,' generally beasts of burden. *Jumentis importatis* is governed by *utuntur* (V. 54); to keep the Latin order, trans. freely, 'as for horses . . . use imported ones.' **quibus**, etc.: 'in which . . . take particular pleasure,' 'for which . . . have a special fancy'; lit. 'with which.' **quaeque**: two words; trans. 'and for which they pay a high price,' lit.? **pretio**: for case see V. 100. **quae** . . . **haec**: trans. *haec* before the relative clause (V. 5, i.). **haec quae** . . . **parva**: may be freely rendered 'the native ones, which are small,' etc. **summi** . . . **efficiunt**: trans. 'they make capable of the utmost toil,' lit. 'render so that they are of the utmost endurance' (V. 87, iii.). **ut sint**: for construction see V. 33, v.

3. **pedibus**: 'on foot.' **eodem vestigio**: 'on the same spot' (V. 127, ii.). **assuefecerunt**: trans. by the present perfect. **quos**: 'and . . . them.' **cum usus est**: 'when there is need'; for mood and tense see V. 149.

4. **moribus**: abl.; trans. by 'according to' (V. 103, iii.). **turpius**: pred. nom., agreeing with *quicquam*. **habetur**: 'is regarded.' **ephippitiis**: governed by *uti*. The saddle proper was a much later invention.

5. **quemvis**: from *quivis*, with *numerus*. **adire ad**: 'advance against.' **quamvis pauci**: 'however small their numbers.' Notice the case of *pauci* (V. 66, ii.).

6. *quod* : conjunction. *ea re* : 'by it,' 'by that means,' lit. ?
homines : acc.

CHAP. 3.

1. *Publice* : not 'publicly,' but 'as a state,' 'as a community.'
quam latissime : 'as far as possible' (V. 174, i.). *vacare agros* :
 'for the country to be unoccupied,' subject of *esse* (V. 195). *hac*
re significari : 'that this indicates,' lit. ? The clause *magnum*
numerus . . . posse forms the subject of *significari*.

2. *ex* : 'on' (V. 127, v.). *a Suebis* : with the following words.
millia : see V. 128. *agri* : nom., not gen.

3. *Ad alteram*, etc. : 'on the other side the Ubii adjoin them,'
 lit. ? There would doubtless be some unoccupied country between
 them. *fuit* : 'has been,' not 'was' ; see section 4. *ut est cap-*
tus Germanorum : freely, 'according to German standards,' lit.
 'as the capacity of the Germans is,' i.e., 'as far as German ideas
 go.' *Captus* is a noun *et sunt* : contrasted with *fuit*, 'and who
 even now are.' *ceteris* : 'than the rest' (V. 98). *multum ven-*
titant ad : 'often visit.' Both *ventitant* and *sunt* depend on *quod*.
 For the frequentative form *ventitant* see III. 74, b. *moribus* :
 for the case cf. on ch. 1, 9. *sunt assuefacti* : 'have been brought
 up according to,' etc.

4. *Hos* : with *expellere*. *cum* : 'although.' *finibus* : see V.
 93. *potuissent* : for mood see V. 65, a. *vectigales* : pred. acc.
 with *eos* understood. *multo* : see V. 101. *humiliores infirmi-*
oresque : 'less important and powerful,' lit.

CHAP. 4.

1. *causa* : 'situation.' *annos* : for case see V. 129 ; so *trien-*
nium, section 2.

2. *ad extremum* : 'at last,' with *pervenerunt* only, not with
expulsi or *vagati*. *agris* : cf. on *finibus*, ch. 3, 4 *multis locis* :
 'through many parts,' lit. 'in many districts' (V. 127, ii.). *quas* :
 'these' ; meaning the districts near the Rhine. *incolebant* :
 trans. here by past indefinite, 'inhabited' ; so *habebant* by 'had.'
ad : 'on.'

3. *adventu* : 'by,' not 'on.' *his* : 'the.' *trans*, *cis* : from
 Caesar's point of view. *dispositis praesidiis* : abl. absolute ;
 trans. 'by placing,' etc. (V. 48). *transire* : 'from crossing.'
prohibebant : for force of imperfect see V. 180, d.

4. *III* : 'the latter,' marking a change of subject. *omnia*
experti cum : 'tried every device, but when,' etc. *possent* : for
 mood see V. 151. *vi contendere* : 'force a passage,' lit. 'make
 their way by force.' *reverti se* : 'to return,' lit. ? (V. 18, iv.).

5. *tridui viam*: 'a three days' journey,' lit.? for the gen. see V. 87, for the acc. V. 128. *itinerare* . . . *confecto*: 'having covered . . . distance.' *equitatu*: trans. by 'with,' lit. 'by means of.'

6. *qui* . . . *facti*: 'for when these learned . . . they'; more lit. 'who, on learning.' *per exploratores*: see V. 99, i.

7. *priusquam* . . . *certior fieret*: 'before . . . could be informed,' depending on *transierunt* (V. 156, b). *partem*: for case see V. 129. *eorum copias*: 'on their stores,' lit. 'by means of.'

CHAP. 5.

1. *veritus*: 'fearing' (V. 44, ii.). *captendis*: 'forming,' *novis rebus*: 'political changes,' 'changes in the government,' lit.? For dat. see V. 52. *Nihil committendum*: sc. *esse*: impersonal passive (V. 120, ii.). *Nihil*='not at all' (V. 72). *His* is dat. Trans. 'that no confidence should be put in them,' lit.?

What Cæsar feared was that the Gauls, soon wearying of Roman rule, would combine with these new-comers and revolt.

2. *Est enim*, etc.: lit. 'for this is of (i.e., belongs to) Gallic custom'; trans. 'for it is a Gallic custom.' *uti* . . . *cogant*: in apposition with *hoc* (V. 197); trans. by infin. with 'to.' So *quaerant*, etc. *et* . . . *et*: in trans. omit 'both.' *audierit*: = *audiverit* (III. 66, a). For the mood see V. 35; so *veniant*. *et* . . . *vulgus circumscistat* . . . *cogant*: 'and for a crowd to surround . . . and compel.' For the change of number see V. 13, N.B. *quibusque*: two words, so *quasque*.

3. *rebus*: 'statements.' *summis*: 'most important.' *quorum eos*, etc.: 'which they have to repent of at once.' *paenitere*: with object, not subject, *eos* (V. 91, d). *necesse est*: lit. 'it is necessary,' with infin. as subject (V. 141, b). *cum*: 'since.' *serviant*: 'follow blindly,' 'are slaves to' (V. 148). *plerique*: i.e., of the traders and travellers. *ad voluntatem eorum*: i.e., of the Gauls, 'to suit (lit. with a view to) their pleasure,' i.e., 'to please them.' *ficta respondeant*: 'invent answers,' more lit. 'give answers invented.'

CHAP. 6.

1. *graviori*: 'too serious,' lit. 'more serious (i.e., than he could manage)' (V. 98, vi.). *ne* . . . *occurreret*: see V. 24. *consuerat*: = *consueverat* (III. 66, a). For force of tense see V. 182, e. *exercitum*: the army had been stationed during the winter in the north-west of Gaul.

2. *Eo*: adverb; 'to it.' *ea quae*: each word is subject of an infin. Trans. 'what.' *fore*: = *futura esse*, 'would be the case.' *erat*: for mood see V. 175. i. *facta*: sc. *esse*, 'had happened.'

3. *missas, invitatos*: sc. *esse*, depending on *cognovit*, and explaining *ea . . . facta. uti . . . discederent*: 'to leave the Rhine,' i.e., to come farther into Gaul. For mood see V. 27. *postulassent*: = *postularissent* (III. 66, a); 'they asked,' lit. 'they should have asked,' not 'they had already asked.' For the mood see V. 175; for the tense (in the original words fut. perf.) see V. 187, b, i. *fore parata*: depending on an idea of promising easily supplied from *invitados*; 'with the promise that everything would be made ready.'

4. *Qua spe*: strictly a condensed expression for *cujus rei spe*. (V. 205, c.) The English has the same idiom. *vagabantur, pervenerant*: i.e., at the time of Caesar's arrival. Observe the difference in tense.

5. *dissimulanda sibi*: sc. *esse* (V. 120, i.). *animis*, etc.: 'having calmed and reassured their hearts.' *imperato*: this verb when used transitively means 'demand.' *constituit*: the context requires the meaning 'announced his resolve,' not simply 'resolved.'

CHAP. 7.

1. *in ea loca . . . quibus in locis*: 'towards the district where,' lit. ? see V. 173, b. *audiebat*: 'heard'; the imperfect implies that he continued to hear this during his march.

2. *A quibus*: sc. *locis*. *ab his*: sc. *Germanis*. *paucorum dierum iter*: 'but a few days' journey,' cf. on *tridui viam*, ch. 4, 5. *quorum haec*, etc.: 'who spoke as follows,' lit. ? *haec*: feminine sing. (V. 13, i.).

3. For all the subjunctives in sections 3, 4 and 5, except those specially mentioned, see V. 186, 2. For the primary tenses (to be translated as though secondary), see V. 187, b; see also V. 193. *neque priores*, etc.: 'were not the aggressors in making war,' etc., lit. 'were not making war the former (of the two parties).' *neque . . . neque*: here, as often, trans. 'not . . . and not.' *recusare quin . . . contendant*: 'object (or refuse) to,' etc. For *quin* and subjunctive, see V. 139, a. *quicumque*: sc. *is* as antecedent (governed by *resistere*); trans. 'if any,' lit. ?

4. *Haec*: 'this much.' *dicere*: sc. *se*. *venisse, posse*: sc. *se*; in apposition with *haec* (V. 195). *attribuant, patiantur*: trans. 'let them (i.e., the Romans),' etc. The imperative (or jussive subjunctive) would have been used by the speakers themselves (V. 186, 1, c). *eos*: i.e., *agros*. *armis*: 'in war,' lit. ?

5. *diu*: from *deus* (III. 9). *reliquum*: 'besides,' 'else,' lit. 'remaining.' *eundem*: adding emphasis, but, as often, untranslatable by any word. *in terris*: 'in the world,' or 'on earth.' *possint*: for the mood see V. 32.

CHAP. 8.

1. *quæ visum est*: 'what seemed proper'; *quæ* (= *ea quæ*) is cognate acc. after *respondere*, which is understood as subject with *visum est*. *Sibi nullam*, etc.: for the verbs in the rest of the chapter cf. on ch. 7, 3. For the change in section 2, from secondary to primary sequence see V. 190, vi. *sibi . . . cum his*: lit. 'to him with them'; trans. 'between him and them' (V. 80, e).

2. *neque*: 'and further . . . not.' *verum*: 'fair,' 'reasonable.' *suos*: 'their own.' *qui . . . occupare*: sc. *eos*, 'for those who . . . to seize' (V. 110, fn.). *alienos*: 'those of others'; understand *fines*. *neque ullos*: 'no,' lit.?

3. *licere*: 'they might,' lit.? (V. 143). *apud*: 'with.' *se*: i.e., Cæsar. *hoc . . . imperaturum*: 'that he would order the Ubii to do this,' more lit. 'would give this order,' viz., to allow them to settle among them.

CHAP. 9.

1. *post diem tertium*: 'two days later,' lit.? The Romans in reckoning from one date to another counted in both extremes, where we include but one. *ne . . . moveret*: 'not to move' (V. 27).

2. *id*: i.e., the proposed delay. *ne . . . quidem*: 'not . . . either'; he had already refused the request of ch. 7, 4. *impe-trari*: trans. by the active voice. *se*: Cæsar.

3. *aliquot diebus ante*: 'a few days before,' lit.? (V. 101), cf. *post diem tertium*, section 1. *trans Mosam*: i.e., towards the west. *expectari*, *interponi*: trans. by active voice. *eius rei causa*: 'for that reason.'

CHAP. 10.

1. *ex monte*, etc.: freely 'from that part of the Vosges mountains which is,' etc.; *qui* restricts instead of defining. *parte*: 'branch.' *quadam*: from *quidam*. *insulam efficit*: the island is thus formed by the Rhine, Meuse, Vacalus, and the Ocean.

2. *neque longius*, etc.: 'and at a distance of not more than,' etc. *millibus*: see V. 98. *eo*: i.e., the Vacalus (where it enters the Meuse).

3. *autem*: 'on the other hand.' *ex*: 'in the country of,' lit.? (V. 127, v.). *longo spatio*: 'in (lit. by) a long course.' *citatus fertur*: 'flows rapidly,' lit.?

4. *appropinquavit*: notice the tense. English would use the present. *plures*. 'several,' lit. 'more (than one).' *-que*: omit in trans. (V. 205, f).

5. *ex quibus sunt qui*: 'among whom are the people who.' *piscibus*: for abl. cf. ch. 1, 8. *capitibus*: 'mouths,' lit.? *Caput* is generally the source, just as we say 'head-waters.'

CHAP. 11.

1. *millibus*: may be abl. of comparison (cf. ch. 10, 2) or abl. of measure of difference (V. 101, i.) uninfluenced by *amplius* (V. 98, iv.). *ut erat constitutum*: 'as had been arranged' (ch. 9, 1); with the following words. *in itinere*: i.e., while he was on his march towards them. *ne progrediretur*: cf. on ch. 9, 1. *orabant*: for tense see V. 180, b. So *petebant*.

2. *impetrassent*: see III. 66, a. *petebant uti . . . prae-mitteret*: 'asked him to send on' (V. 27). *antecessissent*: see V. 175. *pugna*: for case see V. 93. *sibi . . . mittendi*: 'and to give them permission to send,' etc.

3. *fidem fecisset*: 'pledged their word,' lit. 'should have made a pledge.' The verb agrees in number with the nearer of its two subjects. For the mood see V. 187, b, i. *ea condicione . . . usuros*: 'would agree to the terms which were (being) offered,' see ch. 8, 3. For the abl. see V. 54. *daret*: cf. on *attribuant*, ch. 7, 4. Trans. 'let him give,' or '(they asked) him to give' (V. 186, 1, c).

4. *eodem illo pertinere*: 'looked in that same direction,' more freely, 'had the same object,' i.e., as that mentioned in ch. 9, 3. This object is explained more fully by the *ut* clause. *Eodem* and *illo* are both adverbs. *ut interposita . . . reverterentur*: freely 'that a delay might intervene and their cavalry return' (V. 48). *qui*: refers to *equites*, not to *eorum*. *abessent*: for mood see V. 175. *millibus*: cf. on ch. 10, 1.

5. *quam frequentissimi*: 'in as large numbers as possible' (V. 174, i). *convenirent*: 'they were to come' (V. 186, 1, c). *cognosceret de*: 'inquire into.'

6. *mittit qui nuntiarent*: 'he sends (men) to tell' (V. 173, a); for sequence see V. 28, iv. *ne lacesserent*: see V. 28, v. *proelio*: 'to (lit. by) battle.' *Proelio lacessere*, to take the offensive; *sustinere*, to keep on the defensive, to hold one's ground. *et*: 'but.' *exercitu*: often of the legions only (the regular army) as opposed to the cavalry (native auxiliaries); so also *milites*. *accessisset*: 'approached'; lit. 'should have,' etc. The direct form would be *accessero* (V. 187, b, i.).

CHAP. 12.

1. *ubi primum*: 'as soon as,' lit.? *quorum*, etc.: 'who numbered,' etc., lit.? *millium*: see V. 87, iii. *cum*: 'while'

(V. 151, fr.). *amplius octingentos*: 'more than eight hundred'; for case see V. 98, iv., and cf. *millibus*, ch. 11, 1. *nihil timentibus nostris*: 'while our men felt no fear,' explained by *quod . . . petitus* (V. 48). *Nihil*: cf. on ch. 5, 1. *is dies . . . petitus*: freely 'a truce for that day had been asked by them,' lit.? For the dat. *indutiis* see V. 81.

2. *rursus*: i.e., after the first confusion. *resistentibus*: understand *nostris* from the preceding *nostros*. *consuetudine sua*: for abl.= 'according to,' see V. 103, iii. *compluribus nostris*: 'several of our men.' *ita*: with *perterritos*. *egerunt*: 'drove them before them.' *fuga*: see V. 93. *prius . . . quam*: 'until,' lit. 'at an earlier time than.' *conspectum*: for case see V. 127, iii. *venissent*: see V. 156, iv.

4. *in*: 'among.' *Aquitanus*: not part of the man's name. *genere natus*: 'belonging to (lit. born from),' etc. For the abl. see V. 95. *amicus*: an honorary title bestowed by the Roman Senate on distinguished foreigners. *appellatus*: freely 'and had been called.'

Before translating sections 5 and 6, study carefully V. 43 and 48.

5. *cum*: 'while' (V. 151). *illum*: 'him,' emphatic; to bring out the contrast with *ipse*, trans. 'while he himself.' *equo vulnerato*: the cause of *dejectus*.

6. *id*: 'this,' referring to *cecidisset*. *proelio*: see V. 93. *obtulit*: sc. *frater*. *atque*: 'and so.'

CHAP. 13.

1. *neque jam . . . neque*: 'no longer either . . . or.' *sibi*: see V. 80, d. *ab his qui*: 'from men who.' *intulissent*: see V. 32.

2. *expectare vero*: 'while to wait'; *expectare* is subject of *esse*. *dum . . . augerentur*: 'until . . . should,' etc. (V. 155, b). *summæ dementiæ esse*: 'was the height of folly,' lit. 'was of the highest folly' (V. 86, v.). Cf. our expression, 'was a piece of folly.'

3. *quantum auctoritatis*: 'how much prestige' (V. 86, i.); so *spatii*. *hostes*: nom. *essent consecuti*: see V. 35. *quibus*: 'so (that) . . . to them.'

4. *consilio cum*, etc. . 'having announced his decision to,' etc., more lit. 'having shared it with.' *ne quem*, etc.: explains *consilio*, 'not to miss any chance of fighting,' lit. 'pass over any day of battle' (V. 196). *quod*: 'namely that'; the clause *quod . . . venerunt* being in apposition with *res* (V. 198). *postidie ejus diei*: 'on the very next day,' lit. 'on the morrow of that day.'

eadem: i.e., as narrated in ch. 12, 1. **usi**: 'displaying'; for tense see V. 44, ii. **majoribus natu**: 'elders' (V. 102).

5. **simul . . . simul**: 'both . . . and at the same time,' lit. ? **ut dicebatur**: 'as was alleged.' **sui purgandi causa**: 'to clear themselves,' see V. 119, iv. **quod . . . commississent**: 'from the charge of having,' etc.; for mood see V. 147. **contra . . . dictum**: 'contrary to what had been agreed upon'; more lit. 'otherwise than' (V. 168, i.). **esset, petissent, possent**: for mood see V. 177. **petissent**: = *petiissent* (III. 66, a). **si quid possent**: freely, 'whatever they could,' lit. 'if they could (obtain) anything'; **quid** depends on *impetrare* understood. **de**: 'in the matter of,' with *impetrarent*. **fallendo**: 'by deceit' (V. 114, d).

6. **Quos**: 'these'; subject of *oblato* (*esse*) (V. 22, ii.). **gavisus**: 'rejoicing' (V. 44, ii.); for semi-deponents see III. 68, c. **castris**: see V. 93. **quod**: conjunction. **perterritum esse**: sc. *equitatum*.

CHAP. 14.

1. **tripliciter**: the legion was usually drawn up for battle in three lines, four cohorts in the first and three in each of the others. **millium**: sc. *passuum* (V. 105). **prius . . . quam**: as in ch. 12, 2. **quid ageretur**: 'what was going on,' lit. ? **possent**: see V. 156, b.

2. **omnibus rebus**: 'by the whole state of affairs'; explained by the appositive phrases *et . . . suorum*. **discessu**: freely, 'absence.' **suorum**: referring to the *principibus majoribusque natu* of ch. 13, 4. **neque . . . dato**: freely 'and having no time.' **consilii habendi**: 'for holding a council.' Notice the change from gerundive to gerund, probably due to desire for euphony. **perturbantur**: 'are at a loss,' lit. 'are (so) confused (as to be in doubt).' **-ne . . . an . . . an**: 'whether . . . or . . . or' (V. 38). The three infinitives are subjects of *praestaret*.

3. **cum**: 'as.' **pristini diei**: 'of the day before' (V. 87).

4. **Quo loco**: 'there,' referring to *castra* (V. 127). **qui**: 'those who' (V. 173, a). **nostris**: for dat. see V. 52.

5. **suis**: masc. 'their families.' **domo excesserant**: 'had left home' (V. 126). This showed that it was not an inroad for plunder, but a migration. Plutarch tells us that this treachery on Caesar's part was severely censured at Rome.

CHAP. 15.

Before translating sections 1 and 2, study carefully V. 43 and 48.

1. **Germani**: those of ch. 14, 4. **audito, cum viderent**: 'when they heard . . . and saw.'

2. *reliqua*: 'further,' lit.? *interfecto*: giving the reason for *fuga desperata* (V. 50, vi.). *timore, lassitudine, vi*: with *oppressi*. *perierant*: from *pereo*.

3. *ad unum*: 'to a man,' lit.? *ex . . . timore*: 'after all their dread of a formidable war,' lit.? Explained by *cum . . . fuisset*. *numerus . . . millium*: cf. on ch. 12, 1. *cum*, etc.: trans. by a parenthetic clause beginning with 'for.'

4. *his*: the envoys of ch. 13, 4-6. *discedendi . . . fecit*: 'gave permission to depart.'

5. *suppliciâ cruciatusque*: 'vengeance and cruelty,' or more freely 'a cruel punishment.' *veriti*: 'fearing' (V. 44, ii.). *libertatem concessit*: i.e., he kept them with him, but no longer as prisoners.

CHAP. 16.

1. *sibi . . . transeundum*: 'that he would have to,' etc. *illa fuit justissima*: 'this was the most cogent,' or 'the strongest was.' *quod*: 'that'; *quod . . . voluit* is in apposition with *illa*. *cum videret*: 'seeing.' *ut . . . venirent*: (V. 27). *rebus . . . timere*: 'be anxious for . . . safety (interests)' (V. 79). *cum intellegeret*: 'if they understood,' lit. 'when they should understand'; for fut. indic. of Cæsar's own thought (V. 150; 175). *et posse et audere*: 'was both powerful and daring enough,' 'had both the power and the courage.'

2. *Accessit etiam quod*: 'besides this,' lit. 'there was added the fact that' (V. 198). *quam commemoravi*: 'which, as I have stated, had crossed,' lit.? (V. 18, vi.). *transisse*: = *transiisse* (III. 66, a). *proelio*: for dat. see V. 78, v. c. *se cum his conjunxerat*: 'had joined them,' lit.?

3. *quos*: the Sugambri. *intulissent*: see V. 175. *sibi dederent*: 'that they should surrender to him'; for mood see V. 186, 1, c, i.

4. *se invito*: 'against his wish,' 'without his leave,' lit. 'he (being) unwilling' (V. 49). *Germanos . . . transire*: subject of *esse* understood with *aequum*. *existimaret*: for an original pres. indic. (V. 60). *cur sui . . . postularet*: 'why did he claim that anything beyond the Rhine was under (lit. belonged to) his sway or power?' For the subjunctive see V. 186, 1, b; for the gen. V. 83, i.

5. *qui ani*: 'who alone,' subject of all three pluperfects. *ex*: see V. 86, iii. *premerentur*: for mood see V. 147.

6. *id facere*: 'from doing so' (V. 22, i.). *occupationibus rei publicae*: 'by the pressure of state affairs.' *prohiberetur*: see V. 192. *modo*: distinguish from *modō*. *transportaret*:

'let him take across' (V. 186, 1, c). For the two accusatives see V. 69, iv. *ad*: lit. 'with a view to'; trans. 'to give assistance, and hope for the future.' *temporis*: see V. 85, ii.

7. *ejus*: i.e., Caesar's. *ad*: 'among.' *possint*: 'they could'; for the change to primary sequence see V. 190, vi.

[CHAP. 17.

1. *neque . . . statuebat*: 'nor did he regard it consistent with his own dignity or that of the Roman people' (V. 83, ii.).

2. *proponebatur*: 'presented itself.' *id sibi contendendum*: 'he must devote all his energies to that end.']

CHAP. 18.

1. *Diebus decem, quibus*: 'within ten days after,' lit. 'within the ten days within which' (V. 131). *coepta erat*: 'had begun' (V. 22, iii.). *opere*: the bridge described in ch. 17. *opere . . . traducitur*: 'the work is finished and the army is led across.'

2. *ad utramque partem*: 'at each end.'

3. *quibus . . . petentibus*: 'on their asking for,' 'to their request for,' etc. This may be dat. of indirect object or abl. absolute.

4. *ex eo tempore quo*: 'ever since,' lit.? *fuga comparata*: 'had prepared for flight,' lit.? *hortantibus illis*: modifying *fuga comparata* (V. 50, vi.); 'at the instigation of those of the Tencteri whom,' etc., lit.? *ex Tencteris*: with *quos* (V. 173, c, iii.). *in . . . silvas*: 'in the solitude of the forests,' lit.? For case see V. 127, iii.

CHAP. 19.

1. *frumentis*: 'the crops.' *si*: 'in case.' *premerentur*: for an original fut. indic. (V. 62; 175). *haec*: 'as follows'; with *haec* sections 2 and 3 are in apposition.

2. *aerit*: 'was being built.' *more suo*: see V. 103, iii.; with *concilio habito*. *in . . . partes*: 'in . . . directions,' lit.? *ut . . . demigrarent*: following on the idea of *telling* implied in *nuntios dimisisse* (V. 191). Trans. 'instructing them to remove.' *possent*: see V. 32.

3. *hunc*: sc. *locum*. *medium*: 'in the centre'; predicate adj., agreeing with *hunc (locum)*, and governing *regionum* (V. 86). *expectare*: depending on *constituisset*. *ibi*: = *hic* of line 9; omit in trans.

4. *confectis, consumptis, arbitratus*: trans. by active verbs introduced by 'as.' *Rem conficere*, to attain an object. *quarum*

rerum causa: 'for which' (V. 173, *b*). **ut . . . injiceret**: 'namely, to inspire the Germans with fear'; for dat. see V. 78, *v. c*. The *ut* clauses are in apposition with and explanatory of *rebus* (V. 196). **profectum**: distinguish *prōfectum* from *profectum*. **et ad laudem**, etc.: 'for (lit. with a view to) both prestige and actual advantage.'

CHAP. 20.

1. **exigua**: emphatic from position. **parte reliqua**: equivalent to an *etsi* clause (V. 48); trans. 'although only a small part . . . and although . . . yet Cæsar made an effort.' **omnis**: 'as a whole.' **ad septentriones vergit**: 'lies towards the north.' **hostibus subministrata**: sc. *esse*; 'had been furnished to the enemy.'

2. **si**: 'even if.' **deficeret**: 'did not enable him,' lit.? **usui**: see V. 81. **fore**: the subject is contained in the clause *si modo cognovisset*. **adisset**: for *adiisset* (III. 66, *a*). For the mood and tense see V. 187, *b, i*. **genus hominum**: 'the character of the inhabitants.' **quæ omnia**: 'all of which,' lit.? (V. 36, *iv. a*). **fere**: with *omnia*.

3. **neque . . . quisquam**: 'no . . . one,' lit.? **illo**: adverb. **his**: sc. *mercatoribus*. **Gallias**: 'Gaul.' The plural with reference to the division of Gaul among the Belgæ, Galli and Aquitani, with which Cæsar begins his Commentaries on the Gallic War: *Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres*.

4. **vocatis**: trans. by 'although.' **quanta esset . . . portus**: depending on *reperire poterat*. **belli**: 'in war' (V. 85). **uterentur**: 'they had.' **qui essent . . . portus**: 'what harbors suitable for . . . existed.' **majorum**: 'larger than usual'; the war-galleys and transports being larger than the coasting vessels of those regions. **poterat**: for the imperfect see V. 180, *b*.

CHAP. 21.

1. **Ad hæc cognoscenda**: with *praemittit*, not with *idoneum*. **priusquam faceret**: 'before making' (V. 156, *b*). **idoneum**: 'a suitable person.'

2. **ut exploratis . . . revertatur**: 'to find out . . . and return' (V. 48).

3. **inde**: the straits of Dover are meant.

4. **quam . . . classem**: 'the fleet which.' **ad**: 'for.' **Venetium bellum**: the year before (56 B.C.) the tribes on the north-west coast of Gaul, headed by the Veneti, combined to recover their liberty, but were defeated by the Romans in a sea-fight.

5. **dare**: irregularly used for *se daturus esse* (V. 17). **impedito**: see V. 52.

6. **Quibus, eos** : both referring to *legati* (V. 50, iii. fn.). **liberaliter pollicitus** : '(and) having made liberal promises,' lit. ? (V. 203, d). **domum** : see V. 125. **una** : adv.

7. **superatis** : referring to 'That day he overcame the Nervii' (57 B.C.), with which people the Atrebates were allied. **constituerat** : 'had made.' **ibi** : i.e., among the Atrebates. **his** : of Gaul, not Britain. **magni habebatur** : 'was valued highly'; for *magni* see V. 88, i.

8. **quas . . . civitates** : 'all the states he can,' lit. 'the states which he can'; sc. *adire*. **possit** : see V. 175. **adeant** : with the same force as *ut adeat*; so *hortetur* and *nuntiet* (V. 186, 1, c, i.). **fidem sequantur** : 'embrace the alliance,' depending on *hortetur*.

9. **regionibus** : 'country.' **quantum, etc.** : 'so far as one could who,' etc.; more lit. 'so far as opportunity could be given to one'; for *tantum facultatis quantum*, 'according to such measure of opportunity as could be given.' **auderet** : for mood see V. 32.

CHAP. 22.

1. **moratur** : for tense see V. 153. **de . . . consilio** : 'for their previous conduct,' lit. 'with regard to the policy of previous time.' They had joined the Belgian confederacy against Cæsar two years before, and the next year had been in alliance with the Veneti. **quod, etc.** : 'in that, being uncivilized,' etc. **consuetudinis** : see V. 90. The 'custom' was, as Virgil, the Roman poet, expressed it :

'The ways of peace to proclaim,
Mercy to show to the fallen, the proud with battle to tame.'

fecissent : for mood see V. 147. **-que** : joins *excusarent* and *pollicerentur*. **imperasset** : see on *postulassent*, ch. 6, 3.

2. **satis** : 'quite.' **post tergum** : 'behind him.' **has tantularum, etc.** : 'attention to such trifling matters' (V. 85). **Britanniae** : dat. (V. 78, v. c); meaning the expedition against Britain. **his imperat** : 'requires (or demands) of them' (V. 55, iii.). **Quibus** : the hostages. **eos** : the Morini. **in fidem** : 'under his protection.'

3. **coactis contractisque** : the former of impressing into service, the latter of gathering to one place. **quot** : 'the number which,' lit. 'as many as.' **quod, etc.** : 'all the ships of war he had besides,' lit. ? (V. 86, i.). This clause furnishes the object of *distribuit*.

4. **Huc accedebant** : 'besides this there were,' lit. 'to this were added. **ab** : 'at a distance of,' with *millibus*; or used adverbially = 'away.' **tenebantur quo minus, etc.** : 'were detained . . .

and prevented from being able,' lit.? *Quo minus* may also be written as one word: *possent*: see V. 139, a.

5. *ducendum*: for the gerundive with *do*, here agreeing with *exercitum*, see V. 121.

CHAP. 23.

1. *tertia vigilia*: the time from sunset to sunrise was divided into four equal watches (*vigiliae*), and the time from sunrise to sunset into twelve equal hours (*horae*), the length of each varying with the season. *solvit*: sc. *naves*. *ulteriore*: 'farther,' i.e., up the coast. The exact localities are unknown.

2. *A quibus . . . administratum*: 'as these carried out their instructions too slowly,' lit.? For *tardius* see V. 98, vi. The result was that Cæsar reached Britain *cum primis* (not *cum omnibus*) *navibus*. *expositas copias armatas*: 'the armed forces displayed.'

8. *haec*: 'as follows'; more fully explained by *atque . . . continetur*. *ita anguste*, etc.: 'so closely bordered.' [Many editions read *angustis* (with *montibus*), meaning 'steep,' or 'close to the sea.']

4. *dum convenirent*: depending on *expectavit*; 'till . . . should,' etc. (V. 155, b). *ad*: 'until.'

5. *quae fieri vellet*: 'what he wished done' (V. 21). *monuit . . . administrarentur*: 'instructed them to do everything (promptly) at the signal and at the (proper) moment, as the science of warfare, and especially naval warfare, required, seeing that this (latter) was subject to rapid and uncertain changes.' *ut ratio . . . ut res*: *ut* = 'as,' and is repeated with each subject. *postularent*: for mood see V. 170, i. and 175. *ut quae*: sc. *maritimae res*; 'inasmuch as these'; *ut* might be omitted, and merely heightens the causal force of *quae* and the subjunctive (V. 171, i.). *monuit administrarentur*: with the same force as *monuit ut administrarentur*; cf. ch. 21, 8 (V. 186, 1, c. i.). *ad nutum et ad tempus*: the former referring to *celerem*, the latter to *instabilem*.

6. *litore*: abl. absolute; trans. by 'off.'

CHAP. 24.

1. *quo genere*: 'the sort of force that,' lit. 'which kind (i.e., of warriors),' referring to both *equitatu* and *essedariis* (V. 173, c, ii.). *consuerunt*: cf. on ch. 6, 1. *copiis*: see V. 103, ii. *egredi prohibebant*: see on ch. 4, 3.

2. *has*: referring to what follows. *nisi . . . non*: 'only,' lit.? *militibus autem . . . desiliendum erat*: 'while the sol-

diers had to leap down' (V. 120). For the dative see V. 120, i. *ignotis locis*: 'who were unacquainted with the ground'; lit. 'the ground (being) unknown'; abl. absolute (V. 49). So *impeditis manibus*. *oppressis*: dat. agreeing with *militibus*.

3. *cum illi*: 'whereas the enemy.' *ex arido*: modifies *conjicerent*. *notissimis locis*: 'being perfectly familiar with the ground,' lit.? Cf. on *ignotis locis*, section 2. *insuefactos*: 'who were trained (to this).' *conjicerent, incitarent*: see V. 151, fn.

4. *generis*: see V. 90. *eodem . . . quo*: for agreement see V. 11; for *quo*='as' see V. 174. *uti, utebantur*: 'display' or 'show.'

CHAP. 25.

1. *naves*: subject of *removeri, incitari* and *constitui*. *quarum*: 'whose.' *inusuatior*: 'less familiar,' i.e., than that of the *naves onerariae*. *et motus*, etc.: 'and (whose) movements were quicker for service.' *ad*: 'on.' *apertum latus*: i.e., the right side, unprotected by shields. *quae res*: 'a manœuvre which,' lit.? *usui*: see V. 81.

2. *remorum motu*: the Britons used sails only with their large vessels. *paulum modo*: 'but only a little.'

3. *atque*: 'and now.' *qui aquillam ferebat*: 'the eagle-bearer' (V. 173, a). *ut . . . eveniret*: see V. 27. *ea res*: 'his (lit. that) undertaking.' *legioni*: see V. 79. *inquit*: 'cried'; for position and use see V. 18, vi. *Desilite*: see III. 37. *vultis*: see III. 43. *praestitero*: trans. freely by future; for force of future perfect see V. 184, i.

4. *voce magna*: 'in a loud voice' (V. 103).

5. *inter se*: 'one another,' lit.? (III. 62, e). *ne . . . admitteretur*: 'not to incur,' lit.? (V. 27). *dedecus*: i.e., the loss of the eagle. *universi*: 'in a body'; section 6 shows that he is speaking only of those on the same ship as the standard-bearer.

6. *Hos item*, etc.: 'when those in the nearest ships saw them, they also,' etc.; lit. 'when also from the nearest ships they saw these.'

CHAP. 26.

1. *Pugnatum est*: see V. 56. *alii alia ex navi*: 'the men from the different ships,' lit. '[one man from one ship and] another from another ship.' For this idiom see V. 168, a. *quibuscumque . . . occurrerat*: 'whatever . . . they fell in with.' For dat. see V. 78, v. c. For tense see V. 183, b. So *conspexerant*, section 2, and *conspexerat*, section 4.

2. **vero**: 'while.' **ubi**: 'whenever.' **adoriebantur**: trans. by 'would' (V. 180, b). So *circumsistebant* and *conjicebant*. **plures**: not 'more.'

3. **universos**: 'the main body'; opposed to *singulares*.

4. **item**: '(and) also.' **quos . . . his**: freely, 'to whomsoever,' transposing the clauses; or 'whenever . . . any . . . to them,' without transposing. **jussit**, **submittebat**: notice the change of tense.

5. **simul**: = *simul atque*. **suis consecutis**: 'with their comrades following' (V. 50, ii.). **neque**: 'but . . . not.' **longius**: 'any distance' (V. 98, vi.). **ad pristinam**, etc.: 'to complete Cæsar's usual good fortune,' lit.? For dat. see V. 80, b.

CHAP. 27.

1. **proello**: see V. 99. **daturos**: sc. *se* (V. 18, i.). **quaeque**: two words. **imperasset**: cf. ch. 22, 1.

2. **quem supra**, etc.: 'who, as I stated before, was sent,' etc., lit.? Cf. ch. 16, 2. **demonstraveram a Caesare**: notice that Cæsar the *writer* (first person) is always distinguished from Cæsar the *commander* (third person). For tense see V. 183, iii.

3. **Hunc, illi**: object and subject respectively of *comprehendant*. **egressum**: modifying *hunc*. **cum deferret**: 'although (he was) bearing' (V. 65, a). **modo**: 'in the capacity of'; or freely, 'as.'

4. **rei**: 'act.' **imprudentiam**: i.e., their ignorance of the customs observed between nations. **ut ignosceretur**: 'that pardon be granted (them),' or 'to be pardoned' (V. 57; see also V. 203, d).

5. **quod . . . intulissent**: see V. 147. **cum . . . missis . . . petissent**: 'although they had sent . . . and sought,' lit.? (V. 65, a). **ignoscere**: sc. *se*: notice the tense (V. 15, a). **imprudentiae**: for dat. see V. 52.

6. **arcessitam . . . daturos**: sc. *esse*; 'that they would send for . . . and give up,' lit.? The tense of *arcessitam* is relative to *daturos* (V. 41).

7. **suos**: subject of *remigrare*. **agros**: 'the country,' i.e., their lands or homes.

CHAP. 28.

1. **His rebus**: 'by this means,' lit.? **post diem . . . ventum**: 'three days after he came' = *die quarto postquam*; *post* coming before *die quarto* is felt to have the force of a preposition, and governs the acc. **quartum**: see on ch. 9, 1. **est ventum**: see

V. 56. *naves*: subject of *solverunt*, a rare use. *demonstratum est*: 'mention has been made.' *superiore*: in ch. 23, 1, called *ulteriorem*. *vento*: see V. 103.

2. *viderentur*: 'were in sight.' *posset*: see V. 29. So *referrentur* and *dejicerentur*. *inferiorem*: i.e., towards the S.W. *propius occasum*: cf. on ch. 9, 1. *sui*: 'to themselves' (V. 85).

3. *quae tamen*, etc.: 'and as these had nevertheless (i.e., in spite of the danger) cast anchor, and were filling,' etc.; or *tamen* may apply to the whole sentence, and be opposed to the words just preceding, 'however as these.' *necessario . . . profectae . . . petierunt*: 'they were compelled to put out . . . and make for,' lit.? *adversa nocte*: 'in spite of the darkness,' lit. 'the night meeting them' (V. 46).

CHAP. 29.

1. *nocte*: that of August 30-31, 55 B.C., according to astronomical calculations. *esset*: 'there was' (V. 31). *quid dies*: 'a time which.' *maritimos*: 'on the sea.' *aestus maximos*: 'very high tides'; our spring-tides. *consuevit*: 'is wont,' or trans. by 'usually.' *incognitum*: the tides at the straits of Dover are 20 or 30 feet high, those in the Mediterranean insignificant.

2. *uno*: 'one and the same.' *naves . . . complebat*: to keep the Latin order trans. by the passive voice. So *onerarias . . . afflictabat*. *quibus*: 'in (lit. with) which.' *transportandum . . . curaverat*: 'he had had . . . brought over' (V. 121). *ad*: 'at.' *neque ulla*: 'and no,' lit.? *administrandi, auxiliandi*: the former referring to those on board, the latter to those on shore. *administrandi*: sc. *naves*.

3. *magna*, etc.; 'great alarm inevitably (or as was inevitable) arose throughout,' etc.; lit.? *id quod*: lit. 'a thing which'; *id* is in apposition with the clause *magna . . . facta est*, and *quod* is subject of *accidere* (V. 173, d). *exercitus*: for case see V. 25.

4. *neque aliae*: trans. by 'no other.' *possent*: see V. 32. *omnibus constabat*: 'it was generally agreed'; more lit. 'agreed among all'; for dat. see V. 80, b, ii. *hiemari oportere*: 'that they must winter' (V. 56). *in hiemem*: 'for the winter.'

CHAP. 30.

1. This long sentence may be conveniently broken into four in English, viz., at *collocuti*, *transportaverat* and *producere*; trans. as if the Latin read *collocuti sunt*; *intellegebant et cognoscebant*; *itaque duxerunt*; *nam confidebant*. *principes*: subject of *duxerunt*, section 2. *inter se*: 'with one another.' *Romanis deesse*: freely, 'that the Romans were without,' lit.? *quae*: referring to *castro-*

rum. hoc angustiora: 'all the smaller'; more lit. 'more contracted for this reason' (V. 101, ii. c).

2. *optimum factu*: 'the best thing to do'; for supine see V. 117. *duxerant*: 'concluded.' *prohibere, producere*: subjects of *esse*. *rem*: 'the campaign.' *superatis*: trans. by 'if' (V. 48). So *interclusis*. *confidebant*: see V. 146.

3. *rursus*: not 'a second time,' but referring to the change of attitude. *agris*: as in ch. 27, 7. *deducere*: 'to bring down,' i.e., to the coast.

CHAP. 31.

1. *ex eventu navium*: 'from what had happened to his ships,' lit.? *ex eo, quod*: 'from the fact that' (V. 198). *fore*, etc.: 'suspected that that would happen which (actually) did occur.' *accidit*: for mood see V. 175, i. *ad*: 'for or against.' *subsidia*: 'resources.' *comparabat*: 'he proceeded to secure' (V. 180, d).

2. *quae . . . naves, earum*: = *earum navium quae*, 'of the ships which'; see V. 173, c, i. *quae*: sc. *ea* as subject of *comportari*. *res*: 'purpose.' *erant*: for mood see V. 175, i.

3. *cum . . . administrarentur*: 'as the soldiers worked,' lit.? Cf. ch. 23, 2. *studio*: see V. 103. *amissis*: trans. by 'although.' *reliquis . . . effecit*: freely, 'he made it possible to sail satisfactorily with the rest,' lit. 'he brought it about (or managed) that the voyage could be made,' etc. *navigari*: see V. 56. *posset*: see V. 33, v. *effecit*: notice the change of tense (V. 180, c).

CHAP. 32.

1. *geruntur*: see V. 153. *ex consuetudine*: 'as usual.' *frumentatum*: the supine (V. 116). *ad*: 'up to.' *interposita*: i.e., between the time of the surrender and the present. *cum*: 'as' or 'for,' explaining the preceding words. *hominum*: 'of the natives.' *ventitaret*: 'kept coming' (III. 74, b). *quam consuetudo ferret*: 'than usual,' 'than was customary,' lit. 'than custom brought' (V. 175). *in ea . . . partem*: 'was visible in the direction in which'; for *partem* see V. 173, b.

2. *id, quod erat*: 'as was actually the case,' lit.? *Id* is explained by the appositive clause *aliquid . . . consilii*. *aliquid consilii*: see V. 86, i. *initum*: sc. *esse*. *in stationibus*: 'on guard'; the plural because of the four gates of a Roman camp. *in stationem succedere*: 'to take their place on guard'; the singular of the general idea of guarding. *reliquis*: there were ten cohorts in a legion. *armari*: 'to arm themselves' (V. 164, iv.).

3. *paulo longius*: 'some little distance' (V. 98, vi.). *conferta*: trans. by 'as,' giving the reason for *ex omnibus partibus*.

4. *erat reliqua* : 'remained,' lit. ?

5. *dispersos* : sc. *nostros* ; trans. by a 'when' clause ; so *depositis, occupatos. incertis ordinibus* ; giving the reason for *perturbaverant*. The pluperfects in sections 4 and 5 tell what had happened prior to Cæsar's arrival in section 3.

CHAP. 33.

1. *hoc* : 'as follows.' *ex essedis pugnae* : 'of chariot fighting' ; see V. 85, iv. fn. *per omnes partes* : 'in all directions.' *ipso terrore equitum* : 'by the very (or mere) terror caused by their horses' ; for gen. see V. 84. *ordines* : i.e., of their opponents. *equitum* : i.e., their own. Cæsar had no cavalry with him. *insinnaverunt* : see V. 182, c.

2. *ita* : 'in such a way.' *illi* : i.e., those who had dismounted to fight on foot. *habeant* : see V. 29.

3. *tantum efficiunt* : 'become so expert,' lit. ? *loco* : 'ground.' *per* : 'along.'

CHAP. 34.

1. *quibus rebus* : abl. of means. *perturbatis nostris* : may be dative with *auxilium tulit*, or abl. absolute. *novitate* : trans. by 'because of' (V. 96). *adventu* : see V. 130.

2. *quo facto* : 'in spite of this,' more lit., 'although this was done' (V. 48). *ad* : 'for,' depending on *alienum*. *suo loco* : 'on his own ground' (V. 127, ii.). *brevi . . . intermisso* : 'after a short interval,' lit. ?

3. *haec* : referring to the whole incident. *occupatis* : trans. by 'while.' *qui erant reliqui* : 'those who remained,' i.e., the Britons spoken of in ch. 32, 1, *pars . . . remaneret* (V. 173, a). *discesserunt* : i.e., from their homes to their strongholds.

4. *secutae sunt* : 'there followed' (V. 12, iv.). *continerent, prohiberent* : for mood see V. 32.

5. *quanta* : 'what' or 'how favorable.' *sui liberandi* : see on ch. 13, 5. *expulissent* : cf. on *adisset*, ch. 20, 2.

CHAP. 35.

1. *idem . . . fore* : 'that the same thing would happen.' *ut . . . effugerent* : 'namely, that . . . would escape,' in apposition with *idem* (V. 197). *si* : 'even if.' *essent pulsi* : for mood and tense cf. on *adisset*, ch. 20, 2. *dictum est* : see V. 56.

2. *diutius* : 'any longer,' i.e., than the beginning of the battle. (V. 98, vi.)

3. *secuti . . . occiderunt*: sc. *nostri*. *tanto spatium*: freely, as far,' lit. 'within (i.e., over) as great a space' (V. 127). *quantum . . . efficere*: 'as their speed and strength allowed,' or 'as their running powers held out' (a case of hendiadys), lit. ? *Cursus* = rate of running, *vires* = powers of endurance.

CHAP. 36.

2. *His numerum duplicavit*: 'from these he required double the number,' lit., 'for these he doubled,' etc. *die*: 'the time,' or 'the season'; for gender see III. 52, c. fn. 2. *propinqua . . . navibus*: trans. by 'as.'

3. *mediam noctem*: 'midnight' (V. 86, iv. b).

4. *quae*: 'the ships.' *ex . . . duae*: we should say 'two of the transports,' lit. ? *quos reliqui*: 'as the others,' lit. 'which the other (crews reached)'; *reliqui*, masc., by sense construction (V. 13, N.B.). *infra*: i.e., towards the S.W.

CHAP. 37.

1. *Quibus navibus*: the two just mentioned. *castra*: that of Sulpicius Rufus, ch. 22, 6. *proficiscens*: 'on setting out' (V. 41). *primo*: adverb. *non ita magno*: 'with not a very large,' lit. ? *si . . . nollent*: 'if they did not wish to be killed' (V. 175); for *sese*, see V. 22, v.

2. *ad clamorem*: 'in answer to the shouting.' *hominum*: as in ch. 32, 1. *suis auxilio*: 'to aid his men,' lit. ? (V. 81.)

3. *amplius horis*: 'more than,' etc. *Horis* may be the abl. of comparison, equivalent to *quam horas* (V. 98), or the abl. of time within which (V. 131), uninfluenced by *amplius*; cf. on ch. 11, 1. *paucis*: 'but a few.'

4. *Postea quam*: answering to *primo*, section 1; generally written as one word.

CHAP. 38.

2. *siccitates*: trans. by singular; the plural is, according to Latin idiom, due to the plural *paludum* (III. 53, c, 4). *quo . . . haberent*: 'had no place to which to retreat,' more lit., 'had not whither to retreat' (V. 26, i.). *quo . . . usi*: trans. immediately after *paludum*, to which *quo* refers. For the agreement of *quo* see V. 13, i. *perfugio*: 'as a place of refuge' (V. 55, v.). *fuertant usi*: see V. 182, i. *in potestatem venerunt*: 'fell into the hands,' lit. ?

3. *omnes*: nom. *in silvas*: cf. on ch. 18, 4.

4. *neglexerunt*: add in trans. 'to do so.'

5. **His rebus**: referring to the whole of the summer's campaign. **ex litteris Caesaris**: 'in consequence of despatches from Caesar.' **dierum**: see V. 87. **supplicatio**: 'a public thanksgiving,' celebrated by solemn sacrifice in the temples at Rome. At the end of the campaign two years before, Caesar had written, "for these acts a thanksgiving for fifteen days was decreed, an honor which up to that time no one had received."

NOTES ON CÆSAR, BOOK V.

CHAP. 1.

1. **consulibus**: see V. 49. **discedens ab**: 'on leaving.' **Italiam**: the province of Cisalpine Gaul (*Gallia Citerior*), in which Caesar spent each winter, attending to its administration. **quam plurimas possent**: sc. *aedificare*; 'as many as they could' (V. 174, i.). For mood of *possent* see V. 175. **utl aedificandas curarent**: 'to have built' (V. 121).

2. **Ad**: 'for.' **onerandi**: trans. by 'in.' **facit humilliores**: sc. *eas*. **quam quibus**: 'than those which'; sc. *eas* (V. 98, iii.). **nostro mari**: the name Mediterranean was not then in use. **id eo magis**: 'all the more so'; lit. '(he does) that the more because of this.' **minus magnos**: 'smaller.' **transportandam**: for agreement see V. 12, b, ii. **reliquis maribus**: the various parts of the Mediterranean were given separate names by the Romans.

3. **actuarias**: pred. adj.; *naves actuariae* were swift galleys, impelled by oars as well as by sails. **fieri**: for^o infin. pass. with *impero* see V. 22, vii. **quam ad rem**: 'for which purpose,' or 'to which end.'

4. **Ea quae sunt**: 'what is.' **Hispania**: Spain was rich in iron and material for ropes.

5. **Ipse**: in contrast with the doings of the *legati* of section 1. **conventibus**: the governor of a province was also its supreme judge. **Illyricum**: another of Caesar's three provinces. **finiti nam**: i.e., to the *Pirustæ*. **audiebat**: 'he heard'; the tense implies that the news came more than once.

6. **imperat**: cf. on Bk. IV. 22, 2.

7. **nihil**: 'none,' lit. ? **publico consilio**: as opposed to the work of irresponsible individuals. **demonstrant**: coordinate with *mittunt*, not with *doceant*. **omnibus rationibus**: 'in every way'

8. *ad*: 'by.' *dilem*: for gender see on Bk. IV. 36, 2. *fecerint*: 'they do,' lit.? For mood and tense see V. 192.

9. *ad dilem*: 'by the day (specified).' *dat*: 'he appoints.'

CHAP. 2.

2. *circumtis* . . . *invenit*: 'he visits . . . and finds.' *studio*: with *instructas*. *in summa inopia*: '(although) amidst,' or freely, 'although there was,' etc. *eujus*: sc. *generis naves*; trans. freely 'which,' as though the object of *demonstravimus*. *longas*: sc. *naves*. *neque multum*, etc.: 'and that they are almost ready to be launched'; lit. 'and that it is not far from this that,' etc. (V. 139, c). *diebus*: see V. 131.

3. *Collaudatis*: more emphatic than *laudatis*. *negotio*: see V. 78, v. c. *quid fieri velit*: cf. on Bk. IV. 23, 5. *omnes*: sc. *naves*. *portum Itium*: the exact locality is unknown. *millium*: see V. 87. *huc rei*: 'for this purpose,' i.e., for bringing the fleet safely to its appointed place. *satis militum*: 'a sufficient force,' lit.? (V. 86, i.)

4. *concilia*: Cæsar regularly established these councils or assemblies among the conquered tribes, whom he thus kept in official relations with himself. *veniebant*, *parebant*: see V. 180, b. *imperio*: see V. 52.

CHAP. 3.

1. *plurimum*: adverb. *supra*: Bk. III. speaks of 'the Treveri, who are next to the river Rhine.' The last words of chap. 2 show why he dwells on their position here.

2. *inter se*: 'with each other,' lit.? (III. 62, c.)

3. *alter*: here 'the latter,' lit.? *cognitum est*: see V. 56. *se* . . . *futuros*: with *confirmavit*. *in officio*: 'true to their allegiance,' lit.? *populi*: objective gen. (V. 85); trans. by 'with,' not 'cf.'

4. *cogere*: depending on *instituit*, and connected by (*iis*)*que* with *parare*. *per*: 'by reason of.' *ingenti magnitudine*: modifying *quæ* with the force of an appositive adj.; freely 'which is of vast extent and,' etc. *medios*: see V. 86, iv. b.

5. *Cingetorigis*: cf. on *populi*, section 3. *de suis privatim rebus petere*: 'to seek their own private advantage,' lit.? *privatim*: the position makes it almost equal to the adj. *privatis*. *civitati*: see V. 79; in contrast with *suis privatim rebus*. *posent*: for mood see V. 147.

6. *sese noluisse*: sc. 'saying' or 'who say,' implied in *legatos mittit* (V. 191). *idcirco*: explained by *quo* . . . *laberetur*. *quo*

. . . *contineret* : see V. 28, iii. *discessu* : abl. of time, suggesting also the cause.

7. *sese* : with *permissurum*. *suas, civitatis* : both modifying *fortunas*.

CHAP. 4.

1. *qua de causa* : 'why.' *instituto* : 'original,' lit.? *omnibus . . . comparatis* : modifying the preceding words; trans. by 'after.'

2. *evocaverat* : sc. *Cæsar*. *consolatus* : sc. *est*; because of the enforced exile (as hostages) of himself and his kinsmen.

3. *principibus, hos* : the same persons; see V. 50, iii. *fn. quod* : conjunction. *cum . . . tum* : 'not only . . . but also.' *merito . . . fieri* : 'that he was treating him according to his desert,' lit.? *magni interesse* : see V. 53, b, ii.; the subject is the clause *auctoritatem . . . valere*. *ejus . . . ejus . . . perspexisset* : 'of one whose,' etc.; for subj. = 'seeing that he had observed,' see V. 171. *suos* : referring to *ejus* (V. 165, ii.). *tam* : omit in trans.

4. *factum* : noun. *suam . . . minui* : in apposition with *id factum*; 'that . . . should be lessened.' *qui fuisset* : 'whereas (or while) he had been' (V. 171). *animo* : see V. 105. *hoc dolore* : 'at this grievance' (V. 96). Cf. on *qua spe*, Bk. IV. 6, 4.

CHAP. 5.

2. *factae erant, erant profectae* : for mood see V. 175, i. *eodem* : adverb. *omnibus rebus* : 'in all respects,' lit., 'with all things.'

3. *numero* : modifying *millium*; for abl. see V. 102. *millium* : modifying *equitatus* (V. 87); trans. 'the cavalry, four thousand in number.'

4. *obsidum loco* : 'as hostages.' *cum abesset* : 'while he was absent,' for fut. ind. of the actual thought (V. 187, b; 178, ii.).

CHAP. 6.

1. *ante . . . dictum est* : 'we have spoken before.' Bk. I. tells how four years before *Dumnorix* had stirred up hostility to *Cæsar* among the *Ædui*. *Cæsar* had pardoned him, but had ever since carefully watched his conduct. *cum* : sc. *esse*. *animi* : 'pride'; for case see V. 87.

2. *Accedebat huc quod* : 'besides this'; more lit. 'to this there was added the fact that' (V. 198). *deferri* : notice the tense (V. 15, a). *dictum* : 'statement.' *neque* : 'but yet . . . not.'

3. *factum* : sc. *esse*. *Ille* : 'Dumnorix.' *omnibus* : 'all manner of.' *petere contendit* : 'sought earnestly,' lit ? *quod . . . timeret* : 'on the ground that he was unaccustomed . . . and dreaded'; for mood see V. 177. *diceret* : for mood see V. 177, ii.

4. *id* : the request to be left behind. *sibi* : 'him'; indirect object.

5. *territare* : historical infin. (V. 112); for form see III. 74, b. *feri* : in trans. supply 'saying' from *territare* (V. 191). *ut . . . spoliaretur, ut . . . necaret* : see V. 197 and 196. *nobilitate* : see V. 93. *quos* : trans. after its antecedent *hos* (V. 5, i.). *ut . . . traductos necaret* : 'to carry over . . . and kill them' (V. 43).

6. *interponere, poscere* : cf. on *territare*, section 5. *quod* : 'whatever.' *intellexissent* : for mood and tense see V. 187, b, i. *administrarent* : see V. 196. *deferebantur* : not once only, hence imperf.

CHAP. 7.

1. *tantum dignitatis* : see V. 86, i. *coercendum* : sc. *esse*. *quibuscumque . . . posset* : 'by whatever means he could'; for mood see V. 175.

2. *longius* : 'still farther,' i.e., than at present. *prospiciendum* : sc. *esse statuebat* (V. 56). *quid nocere* : 'to do any harm'; for acc. see V. 72. *sibi* : i.e., Cæsar.

3. *commoratus* : 'while waiting,' or 'as he was waiting'; for the tense see V. 44, ii. *omnis* : omit in trans. *ut . . . contineret* : see V. 27; so *cognosceret*.

4. *milites* : i.e., belonging to the legions; cf. on Bk. IV. 11, 6.

5. *impeditis* : 'while . . . were occupied.' *insciente Cæsare* : 'without Cæsar's knowledge' (V. 49). *domum* : 'for home' (V. 125).

6. *omnibus rebus* : 'everything else.' *retrahi* : cf. on *feri*, ch. 1, 3.

7. *faciat* : 'offers'; for fut. indic. of direct discourse (V. 187, b). *se absente* : 'in his (i.e., Cæsar's) absence.' *qui . . . neglexisset* : 'seeing that he,' etc.; for subj. cf. on *perspexisset*, ch. 4, 3. *praesentis* : 'in his presence'; lit. '(of him) while present.'

8. *enim* : 'in fact.' *clamitans* : for form see III. 74, b. *liberum, liberae civitatis* : both predicates of *se esse*; trans. 'a free man and a citizen of a free state' (V. 86, v.).

9. *ut* : 'as.' *imperatum erat* : see V. 57.

CHAP. 8.

1. *continente*: for form see III. 50, *b*; elsewhere in Caesar, *continenti*. *pro tempore et pro re*: 'as time and circumstances suggested,' lit. 'in accordance with,' etc.

2. *pari quem*: 'the same as' (V. 174). *ad*: 'about.' *pro-vectus*, etc.: 'was carried forward . . . but as the wind fell . . . could not keep,' etc. *longius*: 'too far' (V. 98, vi.). *orta luce*: 'at sunrise,' lit. ? *sub sinistra*: the current had carried his vessels out of the channel into the North Sea. *relictam*: 'behind him.'

3. *qua*: 'where'; adv. See Bk. IV. 23, 6. *egressum*: a noun.

4. *admodum laudanda*: 'deserving of great praise' (V. 118). *vectoris* . . . *navigis*: 'with transport ships, and those, too, heavily laden.' *non intermisso*: 'without relaxing,' or trans. by principal clause coordinate with *aduequarunt*.

5. *Accessum est navibus*: 'the ships reached,' lit. ? (V. 56). *Navibus* is abl. of means. *neque hostis*: 'but no enemy.'

6. *cum*: 'although.' *quae cum annotinis*, etc.: 'of which, including those of the previous year . . . eight hundred were in sight'; for the nom. *quae* see V. 86, iv. a. *quisque*: probably confined to rich officers and Gallic nobles. *sui commodi*: 'for his own convenience'; a predicate possessive gen. (V. 83, i.), here expressing purpose. *amplius octingentae*: for case cf. on Bk. IV. 12, 1.

CHAP. 9.

1. *castris*: for dat. see V. 78, ii., or 81. *qui . . . essent*: 'to protect the ships,' lit. ? (V. 81). *de tertia vigilia*: 'in the third watch'; *de* suggests a portion of the watch being taken. The third of the four night watches would begin at midnight. *ominus*: cf. on *eo magis*, ch. 1, 2. *navibus*: see V. 79. *relinquebat*: notice the tense. *et*: omit in trans. *praesidio*: for dat. see V. 78, v. c.

3. *equitatu*: see V. 103, ii. *ex loco superiore*: belonging to the whole clause, not to *prohibere*; the north bank was higher than the south. *nostros prohibere*: 'to check the advance of our men.'

4. *egregie munitum*: 'well protected.' *opere*: 'by art,' lit. 'by fortification'; explained by section 5. *ut videbantur*: 'as it seemed,' lit. ? (V. 18, vii.)

6. *ingredi prohibebant*: cf. on Bk. IV. 4, 3.

7. *testudine*: a *testudo* was formed by the soldiers holding their shields over their heads so that they overlapped and formed a

continuous cover, which received its name from its resemblance to a 'tortoise shell.' *aggere*: this was to put them on a level with those defending the walls. *ad*: 'close to.' *paucis*: 'but a few.'

8. *eos*: i.e., *mīlites*, subject of *prosequi*. *fugientes*: object of *prosequi*; see V. 44, i. a. *longius*: cf. on ch. 8, 2. *munitioni*: see V. 81.

CHAP. 10.

1. *postridie*, etc.: cf. on Bk. IV. 13, 4. *in*: 'on,' lit. 'with a view to.' *expeditionem*: strictly, a rapid march of a flying column of *expediti* (ch. 2, 4).

2. *aliquantum itineris*: 'some distance,' lit.? *extremi*: 'only the last (or rearguard),' i.e., of the troops sent out. *neque subsisterent*: 'would (lit. did) not hold'; for mood see V. 175; for tense see V. 180, b.

3. *eo concursu*: 'the collision thus resulting'; *eo* refers to what is implied in the preceding lines.

CHAP. 11.

1. *revocari*: i.e., from pursuing the enemy.

2. *quæ*: 'as' (V. 174). *sic*: 'to the extent,' limiting the previous words *eadem* . . . *perspicit*. *amissis*, etc.: 'with the loss of,' etc. *reliquæ posse viderentur*: 'the rest, it seemed, could,' lit.? (V. 29; 18, vii.)

4. *scribit ut instituat*: see V. 28, v. *is legionibus*: 'with the aid of,' etc. (V. 99, i.). *posset, sunt*: for the mood see V. 175, i. For the change of tense see V. 190, vi.

5. *multæ*: for the agreement see V. 11. *operæ ac laboris*: see V. 87, iii. *commodissimum*: 'the best plan.' *naves*: see V. 110, fn.

6. *ne nocturnis*, etc.: freely 'not allowing the soldiers' work to cease even at night,' lit.? *ad*: 'with respect to.'

7. *quas ante*: sc. *reliquerat*.

8. *summa imperii*, etc.: 'the chief command and oversight of the war,' lit. 'the chief part of the command and of the direction of the war.' *summa*: a noun. *dividit*: trans. by changing the voice. *a mari*: i.e., from the south shore where Cæsar had landed.

9. *Hic cum reliquis civitatibus*: 'between this man and the other states'; for dat. see V. 78, v. c; similarly *bello imperioque*.

CHAP. 12.

1. *quos . . . dicunt*: *quos* is subject of *natos (esse)*; *proditum (esse)* depends on *dicunt*, and has for its subject *quos natos (esse)*. Trans. freely, 'of whom they themselves state there is a tradition that they were born,' etc. *memoria*: abl. of means.

2. *pars*: sc. *incolitur*. *qui omnes*: 'all of whom' (V. 86, iv. a). *his*: 'the.' *quibus . . . pervenerunt*: freely 'from which they have sprung and have come there.' *civitatibus*: see V. 173, b.

3. *aedificia*: sc. *sunt*. *consimilia*: appositive, not predicative. *Gallieis*: sc. *aedificiis*; 'those of the Gauls.'

4. *aut . . . aut*: 'partly . . . partly.'

5. *mediterraneis*: the tin mines of Cornwall are referred to, Caesar mistaking the distant west, of which he had heard, for an inland district. *maritimis*: iron was once mined in the south of England, now chiefly in the north. *ejus*: i.e., iron, which, being a hard metal to work, has generally been neglected by native tribes, even where it is abundant. *importato*: in emphatic position, 'the bronze they use is imported' (V. 3, a). *cujusque*: 'every.' *praeter*, etc.: an error on Caesar's part.

6. *fas*: sc. *esse*. *haec*: neut. plur. referring to the animals just mentioned. *animi*: 'amusement.' *Loca*: 'the climate.' *remissioribus*: 'less severe' (V. 44, i. b); for case see V. 49.

CHAP. 13.

1. *natura*: 'in shape' (V. 102). *triquetra*: sc. *est*. *cujus*: 'of it.' *alter*: 'one,' corresponding to *inferior*. *ad*: 'at.' *quo*: advverb.

2. *alterum*: sc. *latus*; 'the second side.' *ad Hispaniam*: as the ancients had no compasses, and seldom sailed out of sight of land, they easily fell into error as to the relative position of distant places. *qua ex parte*: see V. 127, v. *dimidio*: see V. 101. *pari spatio*, etc.: freely 'at the same distance as the passage from Gaul to Britain'; lit. 'of the same extent of distance across as is (the distance across) from Gaul to Britain.' For the abl. *spatio* see V. 105; with *est* sc. *transmissus*; for *atque* see V. 174.

3. *hoc medio cursu*: 'the middle of this passage,' i.e., to Ireland. *Mona*: this name was afterwards given to Anglesea, but probably the Isle of Man is here meant. *subjectae*: sc. *esse*. *insulae*: the Hebrides or Orkney islands probably. *nonnulli*: though Caesar was the first Roman to land in Britain, it had been visited by Greeks. *sub*: 'at the time of.' *esse*: the subject is *noctem*.

4. *Nos*: contrasted with *nonnulli*. *reperiebamus*: trans. by

'could'; the tense implies frequent attempts during Cæsar's stay. *nisi*: 'except that.' *ex aqua*: 'by water,' i.e., with a water-clock or *clepsydra*, which worked on the principle of the hour-glass.

5. *ut . . . opinio*: 'as their belief goes'; freely 'as they believe.' *illorum*: referring to *nonnulli* of section 3. *millium*: sc. *passuum*; for case see V. 87, iii.

6. *Tertium*: sc. *latus*. *angulus*: the same as *alter angulus*, section 1. *in*: 'in'; the acc. because of the notion of extending over space.

7. *vicies centum*: 'two thousand.' *millium*: for case cf. on section 5.

CHAP. 14.

1. *qui*: see V. 173, a. *quæ regio*: see V. 173, c. ii. *omnis*: 'entirely.'

2. *Interiores plerique*: 'most of those in the interior'; *plerique* an adj. modifying *interiores* used as a substantive. *lacte*: cf. on Bk. IV. 1, 8. *hoc*: 'thus,' lit. ? (V. 101, ii. c). *aspectu*: see V. 102.

3. *sunt*: freely 'they have.' *capillo, parte*: see V. 105, i.

4. *Uxores communes*: acc. Cæsar is probably in error on this point. *deni duodenique*: 'in groups of ten or twelve'; see III. 61, c, 4. *-que*: lit. 'and (in other cases).' Cf. in English 'three and four times a day.'

5. *si qui*: sc. *liberi*; 'if any' (V. 166, a). *habentur*: 'they are regarded,' with pred. nom. *liberi* (V. 12, c). *quo*: adv. = *ad quos*; 'to whom.'

CHAP. 15.

1. *tamen ut*: 'yet so that.' *omnibus partibus*: 'everywhere.' *fuerint, compulerint*: for tense see V. 33, iii.

2. *compluribus*: i.e., of the Britons. *cupidius*: see V. 98, vi.

3. *spatio*: i.e., of time; cf. section 4. *castrorum*: a camp was made at the end of each day's march.

4. *duabusque*: trans. by 'when.' *subsidio*: 'to their aid' (V. 81). *atque his*: 'and these too.' *primis*: apparently the first cohort of a legion was its best. *cum*: 'although.' *intermisso loci spatio*: 'leaving an interval.' *inter se*: with *intermisso*. *perterritis*: trans. by 'as.' *per medios*: 'between them,' i.e., through the *peregrinum spatium*. *seque . . . receperunt*: not meaning 'they got away,' as the last words of section 5 show, but that they charged back again through the open space to their original position.

CHAP. 16.

1. *dimicare*retur: see V. 56. *nostros*: the legionary soldiers, as contrasted with *equites*, section 2; subject of *esse*. *cedentes*: acc.; see V. 44, i. a. *possent*: see V. 175. *ab signis discedere*: they had been trained to fight in solid ranks only. *minus*: 'not well.'

2. *autem*: 'while.' *proelio*: see V. 99. *illi*: 'the enemy.' *cederent*: see V. 175. *cum*: 'whenever.' *removissent*: for the mood and tense see V. 149 and 186, 2. *nostros*: here = *equites*.

3. *Equestris*: with *proelii*. *ratio*: 'regular method,' or 'ordinary style'; in opposition to the unfamiliar tactics described in section 2. *cedentibus*: either dat. of the participle used substantively, as in section 1, and referring to the Romans, or perhaps abl. absolute with *Britannis* understood; cf. on *resistentibus*, Bk. IV. 12, 2. In either case Cæsar is thinking of the danger to his own men. *inferebat*: 'brought' (V. 180, b).

4. *Accedebat huc ut . . . proeliarentur*: cf. on ch. 6, 2; for mood see V. 197. *intervallis*: see V. 103. *alios alii*: 'one another' (V. 168, a). *-que*: 'and thus.'

CHAP. 17.

1. *rari*: 'here and there.' *lenius*: 'with less vigor.'

2. *tres*: an unusually large force; cf. Bk. IV. 32, 1. *cum*: 'under.' *ad . . . advolaverunt*: see V. 78, v. b. *sic uti . . . absterent*: 'so as to attack even the standards,' etc.; lit.? They were not afraid to attack even the main body escorting the actual foragers.

3. *subsidio*: for abl. (= 'in') with *confisi* see V. 107, ii. *praecipites*: acc. *egerunt*: see V. 155, a.

4. *sui colligendi*: see V. 119, iv.

5. *Ex*: 'after.' *quae . . . auxilia*: the *maiores copiae* of ch. 11, 8. *discesserunt*: 'disbanded.' *summis copis*: 'with their full force' (V. 103).

CHAP. 18.

1. *consilio*: that, apparently, which is described in ch. 19. *Tamesim*: for form see III. 50, b. *in fines*: see V. 127, iv. *hoc*: 'here,' 'at this'; sc. *loco*.

2. *animum advertit*: also written *animadvertit*, as in Bk. IV. 32, 3. *ad*: 'on.'

3. *praeſixis*: driven into the face of the bank. *deſixae*: driven into the bed of the river,

5. *ea, eo*: 'such' (V. 161). *cum . . . exstarent*: 'although only their heads were above water,' lit. ? (V. 101). *-que*: 'but.'

CHAP. 19.

1. *ut . . . demonstravimus*: with *deposita spe*. *supra*: ch. 17, 5. *amplioribus copiis*: 'the greater part of his forces,' lit. ? *relictis*: trans. freely by 'keep.' *servabat*: for the force of this and the succeeding imperfects see V. 180, b. *quibus*: 'where,' more lit. 'through which' (V. 99, ii. a).

2. *cum*: 'whenever.' *ejecerat*: for mood and tense see V. 149. *liberius*: with *ejecerat*; for meaning see V. 98, vi.; so *latius* and *longius*, section 3. *vils*: see V. 99, ii. a. *periculo equitum*: 'danger to cavalry'; for gen. see V. 85. *hoc metu*: 'through fear of this,' lit. ? (V. 205, c.)

3. *Relinquebatur ut . . . pateretur*: 'the only course left was for Caesar not to allow his men to leave,' etc. For *ut . . . pateretur* as subject clause see V. 197, fn.; for *discedi* see V. 56. *tantum noceretur*: freely 'to do as much harm' (V. 72; 57). *in*: 'in the way of.' *labore atque itinere*: 'laborious marching' (hendiadys), contrasted with the dashing cavalry raids.

CHAP. 20.

1. *Trinobantes*: with *mittunt*, section 2. *ex qua . . . vivaverat*: this parenthesis may be translated after *legatos . . . mittunt*, section 2, and broken at *cujus pater*, thus: 'The Trinobantes send, etc.; from this state, etc.; his father, etc.; they promise, etc.' *fidem secutus*: 'attaching himself to,' lit. ? *continentem Galliam*: 'the mainland of Gaul' (V. 89, i.). *obtinerat*: *obtineo* does not mean 'obtain' (V. 203, f, iii.). *ipse*: 'while he himself,' or 'but who himself' (V. 170, iv.).

2. *sese dedituros*: sc. *se* as subject, *sese* here being object.

3. *Cassivellauni*: 'on the part of C.' or 'at the hands of C.' (V. 84). *mittat qui praesit*: 'to send (some one) to govern'; cf. on Bk. IV. 11, 6.

4. *exercitui*: see V. 79. *ad numerum*: 'to the required number.' Note the asyndeton in the last sentence, and also *hi*, *eos* and *illi* of the same persons.

CHAP. 21.

1. *defensis*: i.e., against Cassivellaunus. *millitum*: cf. on *Cassivellauni*, ch. 20, 3.

2. *his*: sc. *legatis*, from *legationibus*. *quo*: adverb. *satis magnus*: 'a considerable.' *convenerit*: for mood and tense see V. 186, 2; 187, b.

3. *oppidum vocant*: 'call it a town'; the object of *vocant* is found in the clause *cum . . . munierunt*. The Gauls, on the other

hand, had regular towns in which they dwelt. *silvas impeditas*: 'a piece of woods difficult of access.' *munierunt*: see V. 149.

4. *opere*: cf. on ch. 9, 4. *ex*: 'on' (V. 205, b). *hunc*: 'it'; lit. 'this (place).'

5. *morati*: 'after holding out.' *non tulerunt*: 'could not withstand.'

6. *reptus*: sc. *est*. *multi*: 'many (of the enemy).'

CHAP. 22.

1. *quibus regionibus* . . . *praeerant*: 'over which . . . ruled' (V. 78, v. c). *his*: i.e., the kings. *navalia castra*: see ch. 11, 5.

2. *incolumes*: acc. with *suos*, which is identical with *nostri*.

3. *per*: 'through the mediation of' (V. 99, i.).

4. *repentinos motus*: see Bk. IV. 5. *neque multum*: 'and little.' *in annos singulos*: 'yearly,' lit. 'for the years one by one.' *vectigalis*: see V. 86, i. *penderet*: 'should pay'; for mood see V. 186, 1, b, i.

5. *interdicit atque imperat*: emphatic repetition; 'he absolutely forbids . . . to harm,' or 'he expressly orders . . . not to harm.' *neu*: 'or,' lit. ? (V. 28, ii.)

CHAP. 23.

2. *commeatibus*: for abl. see V. 103.

3. *tanto numero*: see Bk. IV. 22, 3 and 4, and Bk. V. 2, 2, and 8, 6. *tot navigationibus*: 'although there were so many passages' (V. 49). *portaret*: 'had on board'; the subj. may be by attraction (V. 177, i.) (so *remitterentur*, section 4, but not *curaverat*, which is not so essential a part of the sentence) or may perhaps be characteristic (V. 32).

4. *et . . . et*: dividing these empty vessels into two classes, to the latter of which *mitterentur*, not *remitterentur*, would more strictly apply; trans. 'both those which had made the first trip . . . and those which,' etc. *prioris commeatus*: sc. *navibus* (V. 87). *postea*: i.e., after Cæsar had set out for Britain with the fleet built during the winter. *faciendas curaverat*: cf. on ch. 1, 1. *numero*: for abl. see V. 102. *sexaginta*: acc. agreeing with *quas*. *locum caperent*: 'reached their destination.' *caperent*, *rejicerentur*: sc. *sic accidit uti*.

5. *quod*: 'for.' *necessario collocavit*: cf. on Bk. IV. 28, 3.

6. *consecuta*: see V. 50, ii. *cum solvisset*: freely, 'he set sail . . . and.' *inita vigilia*: 'at the beginning of the watch.'

PART V.

LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION AND TRANSLATION AT SIGHT.

I. RULES OF SYNTAX AND EXERCISES IN PROSE COMPOSITION.

INTRODUCTORY CHAPTER.¹

I. ORDER OF WORDS.

1. Because of its wealth of inflections, Latin admits much greater freedom of order than English does, without a corresponding loss of clearness.

The order of words in Latin is not, however, purely haphazard although no invariable rules exist for their position in a sentence; there are certain arrangements which are normal or usual, and which should be varied only for some definite purpose, such as to secure emphasis or to promote euphony.

2. In the normal arrangement of a simple sentence, the subject, followed by its attributes, comes first; the verb comes last, preceded by its modifiers or objects; as,

All these differ from one another in language: HI omnēs linguā inter sē differunt.

3. This order is often changed, especially in the case of :

1. As the contents of this chapter are intended chiefly for reference, and find their application in all the exercises that follow, no special exercise has been based upon it.

(a) **EMPHASIS.**—This is often secured by putting words other than the subject at the beginning of a sentence, or words other than the verb at the end ; as,

Greece was freed by the sagacity of one man : Unius viri prudentiâ Graecia liberata est.

Other route had they none : Aliud iter habebant nullum.

Often, too, emphasis is secured by separating two words in agreement. Antithesis (or emphatic opposition) is generally expressed by reversing in the second clause the order of the first (*Chiasmus*).

(b) **CONNECTION OF SENTENCES.**—At the beginning of a sentence are regularly placed words or phrases which refer to the previous sentence or some part of it, and which thus serve as a connecting link, leading from the known to the unknown ;¹ as,

Within those woods (just mentioned) the enemy kept themselves in hiding : Intrâ eas silvas hostes in occulto sese continébant.

The same day envoys came to Caesar : Eodem diê legati ad Caesarem venerunt.

4. (a) **The modifiers of a noun.**—i. Cardinal numerals, adjectives denoting size and weight, and pronominal adjectives commonly precede ; as, *Four days : Quattuor diês. Large forces : Magnae copiae. This part : Haec pars. After their custom : Suo more.*

ii. Ordinal numerals, other adjectives (unless emphatic), genitives and words in apposition commonly follow ; as, *The third year : Annus tertius. The Roman people : Populus Rômanus. Part of the summer : Pars aestâtis.*

iii. Where a noun is modified both by an adjective and by a genitive, the preferred order is adjective, genitive, noun ; as, *Immense size of frame : Ingens corporum magnitudo.* This does not apply to the partitive genitive, however ; as, *A large part of Gaul : Magna pars Galliae.*

iv. When two adjectives or two genitives connected by a conjunction modify a noun, it is commonly placed either before both or after both.

When an adjective or genitive modifies two nouns connected by a conjunction, it commonly precedes both.

(b) **The modifiers of a verb.**—Either the direct object or an adverb directly qualifying the action of the verb is, as a rule,

1. To mark this connection Latin constantly uses *qui* (the so-called coordinate relative) for *hic* or *is* ; see section 172.

placed immediately before a verb; the indirect object commonly precedes the direct object; and farthest removed of all are adverbial expressions of place, time, cause or means.

(c) **Pronouns.**—i. Relative and interrogative pronouns are regularly the first words in their clause, preceding even a conjunction and (if used adjectively) a preposition; as, *When Cæsar was informed of these things: Quibus dē rēbus cum Cæsar certior factus esset.*

ii. Personal pronouns are apt to be placed in emphatic positions, and where two personal or possessive pronouns occur in the same clause they are generally placed close together.¹

(d) **Adverbs** commonly precede the words they modify. But *quoque* and *quidem* always, and *ferē* generally, follow.

(e) **Prepositions.**—i. These precede the words they govern, with the exception of *cum*, which is regularly suffixed to the ablative of the personal, reflexive and relative pronouns.

ii. A preposition is often separated from its noun by a modifier of that noun; as, *Into the land of the Ædui: In Aeduōrum finēs.*

iii. A monosyllabic preposition is often placed between an adjective and its noun; as, *On the other side: Alterā ex parte.*

(f) **Negatives** are regularly placed before the word modified. When the whole sentence is negated, the negative is either connected with the verb, or more often comes at the beginning of the sentence (so regularly when *neque* can be substituted for *and* followed by a negative).

Nē . . . quidem enclose the word or words modified; as, *Not even the first attack: Nē primus quidem impetus*

(g) **Verbs.**—i. The Copula or link verb *esse* is seldom placed at the end of its clause; it is generally followed by some important word or words belonging to the predicate; as, *One side is opposite Gaul: Ūnum latus est contrā Galliam.*

ii. A dependent infinitive, as a rule, precedes the verb on which it depends; as, *The river can be crossed: Flūmen trānsiri potest.*

iii. *Inquam*, *inquit* follow one or more words of the quotation.

(h) **Conjunctions.**—i. These are the first words in their own clauses. But they are regularly preceded by a relative pronoun, sometimes by other emphatic or connecting words; as, *If this were done: Id si fieret.*

ii. *Autem*, *enim* and *vērō* never, and *igitur* very seldom, come first in a sentence.

iii. The particles *que*, *ne* (interrogative), *ve* are enclitics,² as, *The senate and people of Rome: Senātus populusque Rōmānus.*

1. The same is true of *quisque* with the reflexive, and of *alius* when doubled.

2. Enclitics are unaccented words which are always appended to some other word.

II. ORDER OF CLAUSES.

5. **Noun and Adjective clauses** are, as a rule, in the position a noun or adjective of similar value would have.

i. A relative clause however very frequently, especially when emphatic, precedes a general antecedent, such as *is* or *hic*; as, *He spoils what he alters: Quae mutat, ea corrumpit.*

ii. Indirect questions generally follow the verb on which they depend. So also does the accusative and infinitive construction when extended to any length.

6. **Adverbial clauses** are placed, as a rule, as corresponding adverbial phrases would be.

i. Adverbial clauses that are preparatory to the thought of the principal clause, or express some attending circumstance, regularly either precede the principal clause, or very frequently are inserted in it. Such are the temporal, conditional, causal and concessive clauses.

ii. Adverbial clauses that are explanatory of, or complementary to, the thought of the principal clause regularly follow. Such are the consecutive clauses, and causal sentences where the emphasis lies on the reason advanced.

Final or purpose clauses, on the whole, more frequently follow than precede, the general principle being to place last the clause on which the emphasis falls.

7. **Participial clauses** generally precede, or are inserted in, the principal sentence, and very seldom follow it as in English; as, *After settling this affair, he set sail, having met with suitable weather: His cōstitūtis rēbus, nactus idōneam tempestātem, solvit.*

8. In narrative prose the *order of time* is almost invariably observed in the arrangement of the various clauses of a sentence; as,

The Germans threw away their arms when they saw that their comrades were being slain, and rushed out of the camp: Germāni, cum suōs interfici vidērent, armis abjectis sē ex castris ejēcērunt.

9. **The periodic structure** is much commoner in Latin than in English. A period is a complex sentence, whose subordinate clauses are inserted in the principal clause in such a way that the sense and grammatical construction of the whole are incomplete without the final words, upon which also the chief emphasis rests. The example given in section 8 above is a period in the Latin, but not in the English.

In the Latin period, the subject of the principal and subordinate clauses should as far as possible be the same. In such cases it should be placed at the beginning of the period, and thus do duty for both clauses; as, *When Caesar learned that the Suebi had retired to the forest, he determined not to advance further: Caesar postquam comperit Suëbôs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, cōstituit nōn prōgredi longius.*

But where the subordinate clause is introduced by a coordinate relative (see section 3, b, footnote), this holds the first place; as, *When Caesar learned this, he withdrew to Gaul: Quod ubi Caesar comperit, sē in Galliam recēpit.*

III. CONCORDS.

The following are the general rules of agreement:

10. APPPOSITION.—A word placed in apposition with another agrees with it in case; as,

He persuades Dumnorix, the brother of Divitiacus: Dumnorigl, frātrī Divitiacī, persuādet.

The city of Rome: Urbs Rōma.

i. The possessive may have an appositive in the genitive, especially with *ipse*; as, *My own fault: Mea ipsius culpa.*

ii. The appositive word may agree with an unexpressed subject; as, *I, Themistocles, have come to you: Themistoclēś vēnī ad tē.*

11. ATTRIBUTIVE WORDS.—An adjective (including the numerals), a pronoun or a participle agrees in gender, number and case with the word to which it belongs.

If it belongs to more than one word, it regularly agrees with the nearest; as, *It was a matter requiring great effort and labor: Rēs erat multae operae ac labōris.*

12. THE PREDICATE.—(a) The verb agrees with its subject in number and person.

i. Where compound or periphrastic forms of the verb are used, the participle follows the rules for predicate adjectives (see b).

ii. Where there is more than one subject, the verb may be plural, or may agree with the nearest, being understood with the others; as, *The Matrona and Sequana separate the Gauls from the Belgians: Gallōs ā Belgīs Mātrona et Sēquana dividit.*

The verb may also be singular when two singular subjects form but one notion; as, *A loud din and shouting arose: Clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur.* (Cf. 'The tumult and the shouting dies.') So regularly with *Senātus populusque Rōmānus.*

iii. Where the subjects are of different persons and the plural is used, the first person takes precedence, then the second ; as, *Cicero and I are well* : *Ego et Cicerō valēmus.*

iv. For the unemphatic introductory word *there*, and also for it when used as an impersonal or representative subject, Latin has no equivalent ; as, *And there were no other ships* : *Neque nāvēs erant aliæ.* *It is dangerous to enter* : *Intrāre est periculōsum.*

(b) A *predicate adjective* (or a participle in the compound tenses of the verb) agrees with the subject of the verb in gender, number and case ; as,

The supply is small : *Exigua est cōpia.*

Everything was unknown : *Omnia erant incōgnita.*

He was informed that the ascent was easy : *Certior factus est facilem esse ascēsum.*

i. Predicate adjectives are used with the verb *sum*, verbs of *seeming*, *becoming*, and passive verbs of *making*, *thinking*, *calling*.

ii. Where there is more than one subject, the predicate adjective may be either singular or plural, following the number of the verb (see a, ii.).

If it be singular, it will agree in gender with the nearest subject ; as, *The cavalry and charioteers were sent forward* : *Praemissus est equitātus et essedārii.*

If it be plural, with subjects of different genders, it will be masculine when the subjects refer to living beings, otherwise neuter ; as, *Father and mother are dead* : *Pater et mātēr mortui sunt.* *The city and temple were taken* : *Urbs templumque capta sunt.*

(c) A *predicate noun* agrees with its subject in case ; as,

He found that now Galba was king : *Reperiēbat nunc esse rēgem Galbam.*

Ariovistus had been called king and friend by the senate : *Ariovistus rēx atque amicus ā senātū appellātus erat.*

i. Predicate nouns are used with the verb *sum*, verbs of *seeming*, *becoming*, and passive verbs of *making*, *thinking*, *calling*.

ii. The dative of purpose is used with much the force of a predicate noun (see section 81).

13. PRONOUN AND ANTECEDENT.—A relative or demonstrative pronoun agrees in gender, number and person with the word (termed the antecedent) to which in sense it refers ; as,

For many reasons, of which this was the strongest : *multis dē causis, quārum illa fuit iustissima.*

i. But these pronouns by preference agree with a predicate

noun rather than their antecedent ; as, *To Vesontio, which is the largest town* : *Ad Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum.*

N.B.—By a *sense construction*, the number or the gender of predicates and relative pronouns is often determined by the meaning, not the form, of the words to which they refer ; as, *A great throng was hurling weapons* : *Magna multitudo tela conieciēbant. He sends forward the cavalry to see* : *Equitatum praemittit, qui videant. Six thousand men left the camp at nightfall* : *Hominum milia sex primā nocte ē castris egressi sunt.*

CHAPTER I.

THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

14. After verbs meaning *to say, think, believe, know, perceive, feel*, and such like (*verba sentiendī et declārandī*), Latin uses the infinitive with a subject accusative, where in English we have a noun clause introduced by *that* ; as,

They bring back word that the ascent is easy : *Renūntiant facilem esse ascēsum.*

They perceive that the strongest nations have been conquered : *Intellegunt maximās nātiōnēs superātās esse.*

15. Rules for the USE OF TENSES are as follows :

(a) When the time of the infinitive is the same as that of its principal verb, use the *present* infinitive ;

(b) When the time of the infinitive is *prior* to that of its principal verb, use the *perfect* infinitive ;

(c) When the time of the infinitive is *subsequent* to that of its principal verb, use the *future* infinitive ; as,

(a) *He was informed that the legion was being hard pressed* : *Certior factus est legiōnem premi.*

He will see that the legion is being hard pressed : *Vidēbit legiōnem premi.*

(b) *They will think that the Helvetians have moved their camp* : *Existimābunt Helvētiōs castra mōvisse.*

He learned that the Helvetians had moved their camp : *Cōgnōvit Helvētiōs cāstra mōvisse.*

(c) *They think that Caesar will make peace* : *Existimant Caesarem pacem esse factūrum.*

He answered that Caesar would make peace : Respondit Caesarem pacem esse facturum.

Or, to put the rule in another way : let the student imagine himself using the very words uttered or thought, and then use the corresponding tense of the infinitive (the perfect infinitive doing duty for the imperfect,¹ perfect or pluperfect of the original words).

In the above examples, for instance, the words actually uttered or thought would be : (a) *The legion is being hard pressed : Legiō premitur* ; (b) *The Helvetians have moved their camp : Helveticā castra mōvērunt* ; (c) *Caesar will make peace : Caesar pacem faciet.*

16. (a) As the infinitive is without personal endings, the subject accusatives *mē, nōs, tē, vōs*, will be used for *I, we, you*.

For *he, she, they*, when denoting the same person as the subject of the verb of *saying, thinking*, etc., *sē* will be used ; but when denoting a different person the accusative of *is*, or for greater emphasis *ille* ;³ as,

They answered that they would make peace with him : Responderunt sēsē eum cō pacem esse facturōs.

Caesar had decided to keep Dumnorix with him, because he had discovered that he was eager for power : Caesar Dumnorigem sēcum habere cōstituerat, quod eum cupidum esse imperii cōgnōverat.

(b) In the compound forms of the infinitive containing *esse*, care must be taken to have agreement with the subject accusative in gender, number and case. (See *superātās* in section 14 above.)

17. After verbs signifying *to hope, promise, threaten*, and such like, English generally uses the simple infinitive, instead of a noun clause introduced by *that*. In Latin the subject accusative with the *future* infinitive is used in accordance with the above rules (15, c) ; as,

These tribes promise to give hostages : Hae nātiōnēs sē obsidēs datūrās (esse) pollicentur.

1. For instance, *Dico urbem obsessam esse, I tell you that the city was being besieged*, for an original *obsidebatur*.

2. This distinction applies to all uses of the words *him, them*, etc. ; for *his* and *their*, *suus* or *ejus* and *eorum* respectively are used.

18. i. In English *that* is often omitted ; as, *He says he will go.*

ii. Not only single verbs, but also phrases, *sentienti et dēclāranti* occur ; as, *certiōrem faciō, memoriā teneō, fūma est, spem habeo.*

iii. *Esse* is very often omitted in the compound or periphrastic forms of the infinitive.

iv. Verbs of *pretending* are regularly followed by the accusative and infinitive, not, as often in English, by the simple infinitive ; as, *They pretend to return home : Domum reverti se simulant.*

v. Instead of *dicō* followed by a negative, Latin prefers *negō* ; as, *He says he can grant no one the right of passing through the province : Negat se posse iter ulli per provinciam dare.*

vi. Verbs of saying and thinking (except *inquam* and *crēdō*) are not used parenthetically in Latin as in English ; as, *You are, I maintain, mistaken : Errare vos dicō. He sends messengers to Kent, which, we have already said, is on the sea : Ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōstrāvimus, nūntiōs mittit.*

vii. With passive verbs of *saying, thinking, etc.*, the personal construction is used in Latin (but chiefly with *videor*, and the third person of the present, imperfect and future of other verbs) ; as, *It was said that the Germans had been invited : Germāni arcessitī esse dicēbantur, not Germānō arcessitōs esse dicēbātur.*

viii. *Would have* is expressed by the future participle with *fuisse* ; as, *He answered that if there had been any need, he would have come to Cæsar : Respondit. si quid opus esset. sese ad Cæsarem ventūrum fuisse.*

ix. For the future infinitive after verbs of *hoping, posse* with the present infinitive is common.

x. The subject accusative is not infrequently omitted when easily understood from the context ; but this should not be imitated by the beginner in Latin.

EXERCISE 1.

A.

1. He replied that Cæsar had conquered Gaul. 2. He thinks that the Roman leader will easily vanquish the Belgians. 3. We saw that the nights were shorter in Britain than on the continent. 4. The enemy sent ambassadors to Cæsar, and promised to give hostages. 5. Word was brought to Cæsar that the hill was held by the Roman soldiers. 6. To these envoys Cæsar replied that the Gauls had been conquered by the Roman army. 7. The general hears that the enemy are hurling javelins at the soldiers. 8. The enemy, he answered, had been hurling javelins at Cæsar's cavalry. 9. He learned from the scouts that all the Belgians had

encamped on the other side of that river. 10. It is said that Cæsar set out for Gaul, and defeated the Helvetians on the other side of the river Rhone. 11 To that embassy he replied that he would come to the enemy's camp. 12. Some even reported to Cæsar that the soldiers would not advance.

B. (Themistocles, 1, 2.)

1. He said that he was aiming at the magistrates especially. 2. The answer was given that he would speedily crush the pirates and render the rest of Europe safe. 3. A report is brought that the Athenians are going to abandon their fleet and betake themselves to their walls. 4. They promised to make war by land and sea. 5. It is said that they devoted themselves wholly to naval warfare. 6. They thought that no one was (their) equal. 7. He had learned that a thousand war vessels were following these transports. 8. He was informed that the Athenians had not been crushed, but would build a fleet of four hundred vessels. 9. They perceived that the citadel had been handed over to a few magistrates, and that the rest of the town was being abandoned.

C. (Cæsar, Bk. IV. 1.)

1. Cæsar said that a large number of men had crossed that river. 2. It is said that this tribe leads forth a thousand armed men every year. 3. These promise to remain at home in their turn. 4. We were informed that there was no interruption in the practice of war that year. 5. The Suebi said they had been harassed for a large part of the winter. 6. The Germans hoped to cross the Rhine the year after. 7. We understand that the character of the food and the daily exercise make the Germans very warlike. 8. He hears that the children had milk and corn. 9. He answered that this tribe was the largest, but that the Suebi had been the most warlike.

CHAPTER II.

COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.

19. The present infinitive (active or passive) is often used like the infinitive with *to* in English, to complete the meaning of certain verbs, whose reference would otherwise be incomplete. These verbs are often called *modal verbs*, and the infinitive when so used the *complementary infinitive*.

20. (a) With modal verbs the *simple infinitive* (i.e., without any subject expressed) is used to denote another action or condition of the *same* subject ; as,

They attempt to cross the river : Flūmen trānsire cōnantur.

The wind began to be violent : Saevire ventus coepit.

They are able to defend themselves : Sē dēfendere possunt.

The river can be crossed : Flūmen trānsiri potest.

He was unwilling to leave : Discēdere nōlēbat.

They were compelled to give hostages : Obsidēs dare coacti sunt.

i. A predicate noun or adjective with the complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the modal verb ; as, *We can be useful friends* : Possumus ūtilēs esse amici.

21. (b) With modal verbs the *infinitive with a subject accusative* is used to denote the action or condition of a *different* subject ; as,

They allow the Helvetians to go : Helvētiōs ire patiuntur.

He ordered the gates to be closed : Portās claudi iussit.

He wished the Germans to be alarmed : Germānōs timēre voluit.

He did not wish that place to be unoccupied : Nōluit eum locum vacāre.

22. i. *Prohibeō* takes the accusative and complementary infinitive ; as, *They prevent the Germans from crossing* : Germānōs trānsire prohibent.

ii. Some verbs expressing emotion, such as *doleō* (grieve) and *gaudeō* (rejoice) often take the accusative and complementary infinitive. (See also section 147, ii.)

iii. Where the complementary infinitive is passive, *coeptus sum* is used in place of *coepi*, with the same force ; as, *Javelins began to be hurled* : Tēla conjici coepta sunt.

iv. With *jubeō* the subject accusative is sometimes omitted, when obvious from the context ; as, *He gives orders to fortify a camp: Castra mūnīre jubet.*

v. *Volō, nōlō* and *mālō* often take the accusative and infinitive even when the subject is the same chiefly with *esse* or a passive infinitive ; as, *They did not wish to be put to death: Sēsē interfici nōlēbant.*

vi. *Polliceor* and *spērō* are sometimes treated as modal verbs.

vii. Many of the verbs of *will* and *desire* are followed by *ut* and the subjunctive ; so regularly the verbs of *ordering*, except *jubeō*. *Imperō* also may be used with the passive infinitive ; as, *He orders him to be brought back: Eum retrahi imperat.* (See section 27.)

viii. This construction is more restricted in Latin than in English. (See especially sections 23 and 27.) But in poetry Latin more nearly approaches English usage.

VERBS WHICH TAKE THE COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.

Allow, patior, sinō.

Am able (can), possum.

Am accustomed, am wont, cōn-

suēvi, soleō.

Am unwilling, nōlō.

Am willing, volō.

Attempt, cōnor.

Begin, incipīō, instituō.

Began, coepl.

Cease, dēsīnō, dēsistō.

Compel, cōgō.

Dare, audeī.

Decide, determine, cōstituō,

dēcernō, statuō.

Desire, cupiō.

Forbid, vetō.

Hasten, contendō, mātūrō,

properō.

Hesitate, dubitō.

Order, jubeō.

Ought, dēbeō.

Permit, patior, sinō.

Prefer, mālō.

Prepare, parō.

Prevent, prohibeō.

Resolve, see decide.

Strive, contendō, nitor.

Try, cōnor.

Venture, audeō.

Wish, volō.

EXERCISE 2.

A.

1. The troops began to storm the town. 2. The Helvetians are accustomed to receive, not give, hostages. 3. Stones had begun to be hurled from all sides against the rampart. 4. Cæsar will not permit the Gauls to be crushed. 5. The enemy were unwilling to depart from the Rhine. 6. The cavalry had prevented fires

from being made. 7. They will not attempt to cross the rivers. 8. The Germans did not hesitate to engage in battle. 9. The soldiers were ordered to return to the camp. 10. The Romans compelled the enemy to give hostages. 11. He determined to pass the winter there. 12. The Britons will not dare to make war. 13. Cæsar was not able to set out. 14. The soldiers were compelled to make a promise to remain at home. 15. We wish him to be a soldier, but he prefers to be a merchant.

B. (Themistocles, 3, 4.)

1. The king will permit them to attack immediately. 2. The Spartans were unable to withstand the double peril. 3. The seamen wished to engage off Eubœa, but Themistocles prevented them from being surrounded in the narrow strait. 4. Xerxes will not dare to put the priests to death and burn the citadel. 5. We shall attempt to seize Thermopylæ and quickly crush the barbarians. 6. They were compelled to prepare to defend the walls. 7. He resolved to leave for home by night. 8. Most of the states were unwilling to be conquered one at a time. 9. He hesitates to compel the seamen to look for a more suitable place.

C. (Cæsar, Bk. IV. 2.)

1. They prefer to use small and scrubby beasts. 2. He will not permit the merchant to sell wine at all. 3. By daily practice the cavalry are able to leap down and fight on foot. 4. They begin to train these horses to endure toil. 5. He will order the Germans to betake themselves to their horses with all speed. 6. They are unwilling to be captured. 7. Wine cannot be sold nor beasts of burden imported. 8. They are wont to consider this base and unmanly. 9. He does not wish this merchant to be admitted.

CHAPTER III.

FINAL CLAUSES (CLAUSES OF PURPOSE).

23. In English the purpose or end of an action is commonly expressed either by the infinitive with *to*, or by a clause introduced by *that* or *lest*; as, *They remained to avoid suspicion*, or *They remained that they might avoid suspicion*.

But in Latin prose the infinitive should never be used to express purpose.

24. PURE FINAL CLAUSES.—One of the commonest modes of expressing purpose in Latin is by *ut* (or *utī*) with the subjunctive—in negative clauses *nē*; as,

They remained in order to avoid suspicion: Ut suspiciōnem vitārent, remanēbant.

He is setting out to attack the enemy's camp: Proficiscitur ut castra hostium oppūgnet.

In order that they may not be (or in order not to be) surrounded by the enemy, they will make a sally: Nē ab hostibus circumveniantur, eruptiōnem facient.

Outposts are stationed lest a sally be made: Statiōnēs pōnuntur nē eruptiō fiat.

25. Rules for the SEQUENCE OF TENSES are as follows:

(a) *Primary* tenses—viz., present, future, future perfect, and perfect (when translated by English present perfect, with *have*)—are followed by the *present* subjunctive.

(b) *Secondary* (or historical) tenses—viz., imperfect, pluperfect, and perfect (when translated by English past indefinite)—are followed by the *imperfect* subjunctive.

Thus the present subjunctive is used where English could use *that . . . may*; the imperfect subjunctive where English could use *that . . . might*.

(For examples see the sentences given in section 24 above.)

26. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.—After certain verbs, especially those of *sending* and *appointing*, relative clauses of purpose are found, *ut* being replaced by *quī*; as,

He sends scouts in advance to choose a suitable place for the camp: Exploratorēs praemittit, qui locum idoneum castris deligant (literally *who are to choose*).

i. Purpose clauses may be introduced also by relative adverbs, such as *ubi, unde, quō*; as, *Nor had they any place to which to retreat: Neque quō se reciperent habebant.*

27. SUBSTANTIVE FINAL CLAUSES.—After verbs of *urging, asking, commanding, advising, persuading, striving* (verbs of *will* and *aim*), Latin does not use the infinitive; it regards the following clause as expressive of the end desired, and therefore uses the subjunctive of purpose with *ut (utī)* and *nē*; as,

He urges them to take up arms: Hortatur ut arma capiant.

He induced Casticus to seize the chief power: Persuasit Casticō ut rēgnum occupāret.

They begged of him not to do that: Ab eō petēbant nē id faceret.

Jubeō and *cōnor* are important regular exceptions to this rule; so also verbs of *striving* and *resolving*, when the subject of both verbs is the same (where English also has the infinitive).

28. i. In clauses of purpose *ut* is not followed by a negative, *nē* being used instead. Hence where *not, no one, nothing, no* (adjectival) and *never* occur, use *nē, nē quis, nē quid, nē qui* (or *quis*) and *nē umquam*; as, *He ordered the gates closed that the townspeople might receive no hurt: Portās claudī jussit nē quam oppidāni injuriā acciperent. He asked him to allow none to cross: Postulāvit nē quōs transire paterētur.*

ii. A second final clause, if negative, is connected by *nēve* (or *neu*), not by *neque*; as, *He issues orders that they are to hurt their weapons from a distance, and not approach nearer: Prōnūntiat ut procul tela conjiciant neu propius accēdant.*

iii. When the clause of purpose contains a comparative, *quō* is commonly used in place of *ut*; as, *They ask for reinforcements, that they may more easily withstand the enemy: Subsidium rogant, quō facilius hostēs sustinere possint.*

iv. After the historical present either primary or secondary sequence may be used.

v. Certain verbs are used both in the construction given in section 27, and as *verba dēclārāndī* with the accusative and infinitive; as, *He writes to Labienus to build the vessels: Labiēnō scribit ut nāvēs instituāt. He writes that he has set out: Scribit se profectum esse.* So also *moneō* and *persuadeō*.

vi. With verbs of *asking* and *commanding* the subjunctive sometimes occurs without *ut*. This should not be imitated by the beginner in prose.

vii. Sometimes *ut nē* is found for *nē*, but not in Cæsar.

viii. Other modes of expressing purpose exist in Latin, the most important being by means of the gerund and gerundive. (See sections 114 and 119.)

ix. For verbs of *causing*, see section 33, v.

VERBS WHICH TAKE SUBSTANTIVE FINAL CLAUSES.

Advise, moneō, admoneō.

Ask, petō, rogō.

Beg, beseech, orō, obsecrō.

*Command, imperō, praeclpō,
mandō.*

Commission, mandō.

*Determine, cōstituō, dēcernō,
statuō.*

*Exhort, hortor, adhortor, co-
hortor.*

Incite, instigate, impellō.

Instruct, praeclpō.

Permit, concēdō, permittō.

Persuade, suādēō, persuādēō.

Prevail on, impetrō.

*Request, require, petō, rogō,
postulō.*

Resolve, see determine.

*Strive, contendō, nitor; so id
agō, operam dō.*

Urge, hortor, adhortor.

Warn, moneō, admoneō.

EXERCISE 3.

A.

1. They sent Cæsar into Gaul to carry on war with the Helvetians. 2. The Gauls had sent envoys to Cæsar to ask for peace and to beg him not to storm their town. 3. He instructed the cavalry to take possession of the camp, and not to pursue the enemy. 4. In order to defeat the enemy, he sent forward the cavalry and the slingers to attack them in the rear. 5. Cæsar exhorted the soldiers to fight valiantly, lest they should suffer the enemy to cross the river. 6. The Gauls sent a messenger to warn their allies that the Roman troops had built a bridge over the river in order to pursue the enemy more easily. 7. He persuaded the Helvetians to go forth from their territories with all their forces. 8. They ordered the bridge to be destroyed in order that no one might be able to cross the river. 9. He warned the soldiers that the Gauls were at hand, and advised them not to leave the camp. 10. He replied that Cæsar had praised the soldiers that they might

fight the more valiantly. 11. He sent messengers to announce that Cæsar had determined that Labienus should not return. 12. Cæsar ordered (*imperō*) his soldiers to press forward and not to hurl any weapon whatever at the enemy.

B. (Themistocles, 5, 6.)

1. He did this, not to save the king, but to free Greece. 2. Envoys were sent to advise the Athenians not to restore their walls or defend their city. 3. In order to crush the Athenians he instructs his forces to build a bridge. 4. And there will be no fortified cities for them to defend. 5. He urges them to destroy the bridge in order that Xerxes may be unable to return to Asia. 6. That they might gain greater glory, they resolved that an embassy should set out for Asia. 7. In order that the Athenians may be as weak as possible, the Spartans will send envoys to forbid their constructing a harbor. 8. He will persuade the king to return, that Greece may not submit to Asia. 9. Lest the enemy should be informed that they were cut off from returning, he declared that the bridges had not been destroyed.

C. (Cæsar, Bk. IV. 3.)

1. They drive out the Ubii that the country may be unoccupied. 2. They strove to be more civilized than the Germans. 3. The Ubii were made tributaries that they might be rendered weaker. 4. They begged not to be driven from their lands. 5. He urged them to withstand the power of the Suebi. 6. These lands lie waste that the Germans may not become accustomed to the manners of this state. 7. He exhorted them not to think the state insignificant or weak. 8. The others were sent to advise the same merchants to come often. 9. We shall drive out the traders, lest we become (= be made) refined.

CHAPTER IV.

CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES (CLAUSES OF RESULT).

29. PURE CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.—Dependent clauses expressing result are in English introduced by *that* or *as to*, following *so* or *such*. In Latin result or consequence is expressed by *ut*, (or *utī*) with the subjunctive—in negative clauses, *ut nōn* ; as,

They advanced with such swiftness that the enemy took to flight :
Eā celeritāte iērunť ut hostēs sē fugae mandārent.

I am not so uncivilized as not to know this : **Nōn tam barbarus sum ut nōn haec sciam.**

30. Rules for the USE OF TENSES are as follows :

The rules for the sequence of tenses in final clauses (section 25) do not apply to sentences of result. As a rule the English tense will be a sufficient guide ; the Latin imperfect, however, is generally used for the English past (indefinite) tense, as in the first example in section 29.

31. SUBSTANTIVE CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.—After certain verbs, chiefly those of *happening* and *resulting*, clauses introduced by *that* are rendered by Latin consecutive clauses with *ut* or *ut nōn* and the subjunctive ; as,

It happened that there was a full moon : **Accidit ut esset lūna plēna.**

The result was that the Germans were summoned : **Factum est utī Germānī arcesserentur.**

32. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC.—The subjunctive of result is often found in clauses introduced by the relative pronoun. In these clauses the antecedent is referred to as belonging (or not belonging) to a class characterized by a certain quality, and the relative may generally be replaced by the phrase *such as* or *such that* ; as,

Nor was there anyone who was intent on looting : **Neque fuit quisquā qui praedae studēret.**

But I am not the man to be frightened by danger: Neque is sum qui periculō teneam.

There were two roads by which they could leave home: Erant itinera duo quibus domō exire possent.

i. This subjunctive of characteristic is especially common after such general phrases of existence as *sunt quī, nēmō est quī, unus est quī, sōlus est quī, quis est quī? nōn is est quī, nōn habeo quod*; also after *dignus, indignus* and *idōneus*; and after comparatives with *quam*; as, *He will not be a fit person to be sent: Nōn erit idōneus qui mittatur. The stones are too large to be moved: Mājōra sunt saxa quam quae moveri possint.*

ii. The relative clause of characteristic has sometimes a restrictive force; as, *So far as I know: Quod sciam.*

33. i. As *that not* in clauses of result is *ut nōn*, so where *no one, nothing, no* (adjectival) and *never* occur, use *ut nēmō, ut nihil, ut nullus, ut numquam*; as, *He put the enemy so speedily to flight that no one held his ground at all: Tam celeriter hostēs in fugam dat uti omninō resisteret nēmō.*

ii. *Quin* is often found instead of *quī nōn* in relative clauses of characteristic after negative phrases; as, *No one is so brave as not to be disturbed: Nēmō est tam fortis quin perturbetur.*

iii. Sometimes the *perfect* subjunctive instead of the imperfect is found corresponding to our past (indefinite) tense. In such cases either (1) the writer is calling attention to the independent fact rather than dwelling on the relation of cause and effect; or (2) the action is summed up as a single whole, and not regarded as continuing; as, *Our men boarded the vessels, so that very few reached land: Nostri nāvēs expugnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ad terram pervēnerint.*

iv. A common use of the consecutive clause is to form with a preceding *fore* (or *futūrum esse*) a substitute for the future infinitive passive, and sometimes also for the future infinitive active, especially with verbs that lack the supine stem; as, *He hoped that Aricristus would abandon his obstinacy: Spērābat fore uti Aricristus pertināciā dēsisteret.*

v. Verbs of *causing* are followed sometimes by a clause of purpose, sometimes by one of result. Hence the negative is sometimes *nē*, sometimes *ut nōn*.

EXERCISE 4.

A.

1. So great a panic seized our soldiers that we did not dare to join battle with the enemy. 2. It happened that no ship reached its destination. 3. We are not so inexperienced as to believe that the Roman people can be conquered by our forces. 4. There is

no one but knows that the commander was worthy of being loved by the soldiers. 5. Such was the valor of the soldiers that not a man withdrew from the ramparts. 6. We have been so taught by our ancestors that we are accustomed to receive, not to give, hostages. 7. Cæsar said that from these circumstances it had resulted that they roamed about less widely. 8. He was the only man who had not been induced to take the oath. 9. He had judged this cavalryman a suitable person to send to Cæsar to ask assistance. 10. There are some who say that the Helvetians are too brave to be conquered by the Romans. 11. The messengers made answer to Cæsar that the bridge had been so bravely defended by the enemy that no portion of the army had been able to cross. 12. There followed such storms as prevented the enemy from attempting to attack the camp.

B. (Themistocles, 7, 8.)

1. So great was the storm that he was compelled to land all the sailors. 2. It happened that they were awaiting the king, and were unwilling to keep their promise. 3. There is no one in whom we feel confidence. 4. He is acting so unjustly that the rest of his colleagues complain that they are being deceived, and are taking thought for their own safety. 5. The result was that he was driven from the state and condemned in his absence. 6. There are three ships on which they can send back the hostages to Athens. 7. Athens was so near that he saw he could easily reach it. 8. It is so difficult to defend the city that it is useless to declare war on the king.

C. (Cæsar, Bk. IV. 4.)

1. They advanced so rapidly that they completed the whole march in three days. 2. It happened that they were returning to the same parts of Germany. 3. He is not the man to cross the river secretly and return to his own village. 4. So vast was the host of the Usipetes that the Menapii were driven out from the rest of the district. 5. So great is the scarcity of boats that we cannot cross. 6. Who is there who has not been informed of both matters (*rēs*)? 7. He brought it about that no one was prevented from wandering on this side of the river. 8. He crossed the river with such a large body of cavalry that the Germans were terrified.

CHAPTER V.

QUESTIONS, DIRECT AND INDIRECT.

34. A **DIRECT QUESTION** is a principal clause introduced by

(a) An interrogative pronoun, pronominal adjective or adverb, or

(b) One of the interrogative particles : *ne*, *nōnne*, or *num* ; *as*,

What do they seek ? Quid petunt ?

Whither are we setting out ? Quō proficiscimur ?

Do you not see ? Nōnne vidēs ?

i. **-Ne, Nōnne, Num.**—*Ne* is an enclitic, appended to an emphatic word, which is regularly at the beginning of the question.

-Ne asks for information,¹ and is impartial or non-committal ; *as*,
Is he writing ? Scribitne ?

Nōnne asks for confirmation of belief, and expects the answer *yes* ; *as*,

Is he not writing ? (or He is writing, is he not ?) Nōnne scribit ?

Num asks for confirmation of disbelief, and expects the answer *no* ; *as*,

Surely he is not writing ? (or He is not writing, is he ?) Num scribit ?

35. **INDIRECT QUESTIONS.**—A subordinate clause introduced by any of the interrogative words mentioned above is called a *dependent or indirect question*, and always has its verb in the subjunctive ; *as*,

He asked what they sought : Quaesivit quid peterent.

He wonders what the reason is : Quae causa sit, miratur.

In English we do not usually consider the clause as a dependent question unless the principal verb is of an interrogative nature, but in Latin it may be a verb meaning *to learn, find out, know, tell, point out, see or decide* ; *as*,

He learns what is being done : Cōgnōscit quae gerantur.

He reported what he had seen : Quae perspexisset renūtiāvit.

They cannot decide in which direction it flows : In utram partem fluat, iudicāre nōn possunt.

i. *-Ne* and *num* in dependent questions express *whether* without any difference of meaning ; *as*, *He asked whether they were happy : Quaesivit num beātī essent (or beātīne essent).*

1. *Ne* must not be used when the sentence contains some other interrogative word.

36. Rules for the USE OF TENSES are as follows :

In indirect questions as a rule the English tenses will be a sufficient guide.¹ The future is represented by the subjunctive of the active periphrastic conjugation (see Part III. 69, a).

SEQUENCE OF TENSES IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

Primary Sequence.

<i>He asks, learns,</i>	}	<i>Quærit, cōgnōscit.</i>	}
<i>He will ask, learn,</i>		<i>Quæret, cōgnōscet.</i>	
<i>what they are doing :</i>	}	<i>quid faciunt.</i>	}
<i>what they have done :</i>		<i>quid fecerint.</i>	
<i>what they will do :</i>		<i>quid faciūri sint.</i>	

Secondary Sequence.

<i>He was asking, learning,</i>	}	<i>Quærebat, cōgnōscēbat.</i>	}
<i>He asked, learned,</i>		<i>Quæsiuit, cōgnōvit.</i>	
<i>He had asked, learned,</i>		<i>Quæsiuerat, cōgnōuerat.</i>	
<i>what they were doing :</i>	}	<i>quid facerent.</i>	}
<i>what they did :</i>		<i>quid fecissent.</i>	
<i>what they had done :</i>		<i>quid fecissent.</i>	
<i>what they would do :</i>		<i>quid faciūri essent.</i>	

37. After the verbs mentioned in section 35, English abstract nouns such as *size, number, character, reason, time, place*, and many verbal nouns such as *opinion, intention*, are best rendered into Latin by dependent interrogative clauses ; as,

You see the extent of the danger : Vidētis quantum sit periculum.

He could not discover their intentions : Quæ faciūri essent, cōgnōscere nōn poterat.

38. DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.—Where two questions are connected by *or*, involving an alternative choice, we have a *disjunctive, alternative* or *double* question as opposed to a *simple* question. The first alternative is in Latin regularly introduced by *utrum* (*whether*) or *-ne*, the second by *an* (*or*). Such questions when dependent are of course in the subjunctive ; as,

1. The chief exceptions are : (a) After a primary tense the perfect subjunctive takes the place of the imperfect ; as, *I know what he was doing : Scio quid fecerit.*

(b) After the perfect tense secondary tenses are used, even where we should expect primary tenses ; as, *I have shown what resources you have : Quæ subsidia haberes, exposui.* (This last peculiarity is found sometimes also in clauses of result.)

Does duty or fear weigh more with them? Utrum apud eos officium an timor plus valet?

They were debating whether it was best to lead their forces against the enemy or to defend the camp. Deliberabant copiose adversum hostem ducere, an castra defendere praestaret.

39. i. *Or not*, in the direct disjunctive question, is *annōn*; in the indirect, *necne*.

ii. *Utrum* is often omitted in disjunctive questions, in which case *-ne* is sometimes used for *an* in indirect questions. In simple direct questions also *-ne* is sometimes omitted, especially in passionate questions.

iii. *Yes* and *no* in answers are usually expressed by repeating the verb of the question (with or without *nōn*), or by some other emphatic word.

iv. In indirect questions, *nōnne*, *whether not*, is used only after *quaerō*.

v. It is of great importance, but not always easy, to distinguish the dependent interrogative from the dependent relative clause, the latter being regularly in the indicative. For instance, in *They could not prevent what had been done*, and *I can go where they can go*, *what* and *where* are to be taken as relatives; in *They could not tell what had been done*, and *I can find out where they can go*, as interrogatives. After the verbs mentioned in section 35, however, doubtful clauses will generally be interrogative; after other verbs, generally relative.

EXERCISE 5.

A.

1. He asks who is leading the army into our territories and what he wishes to accomplish. 2. He told the general who had persuaded the soldiers to leave the camp. 3. Caesar had sent horsemen in advance to observe in what direction the enemy were marching. 4. Did you not know that he had asked whether the Roman people would make peace with the enemy? 5. Of whom shall I ask the date of his return to the city? 6. He sent scouts across the river to ascertain what was going on in the enemy's camp. 7. Are you a Roman soldier or not? What is your reason for coming into our territories? 8. Surely he did not ask whether the Roman people had made peace with the Helvetians or not? 9. He could not find out what villages the Gauls had beyond the Rhone, or their size. 10. They wished to learn the strength and the position of the enemy's forces. 11. Did Caesar inquire why

the officers had not led the troops against the enemy to prevent their crossing the river? 12. He sent spies in order that he might be able to know with whom the leader of the Gauls held communication.

B. (Themistocles, 9, 10.)

1. They asked why he did not believe you. 2. Surely they did not bury him secretly near the market-place? 3. We know what city will provide him with bread and whence he will obtain wine. 4. He explained the character and extent of the bridge he had constructed. 5. Did he wish to do evil or good to the Persians? 6. He asked whether they were promising to crush Greece. 7. Did they not fight a battle with me off Salamis? 8. I believe what Thucydides has written concerning those times. 9. To whom has the king presented these gifts? 10. We wished to know whether or not the bridges had been broken down.

C. (Cæsar, Bk. IV. 5.)

1. From what districts do you come and what have you heard or learned there about these matters? 2. He asked what plans they were adopting. 3. The merchants were compelled against their will to declare whether they favored a change of government. 4. Is he the slave of a doubtful rumor or has he been compelled to come? 5. Surely they do not fear this custom, do they? 6. We shall ascertain the reason for the Gauls' eagerness for political changes. 7. We asked whether or not they had informed Cæsar of this rumor. 8. Cæsar compelled the Gauls to declare what plans they would adopt. 9. Do not most people fear the mob?

CHAPTER VI.

THE PRESENT AND PERFECT PARTICIPLES.

40. The participle is a verbal adjective. In Latin, like the adjective, it is inflected to agree with its substantive, while, like the verb, it has distinctions of voice and tense, and has the same case relations as the verb from which it is formed.

The Present Participle has active force, whether formed from active or deponent verbs; the Perfect Participle when formed from active verbs has passive force, but when from deponents, active force.

41. The *time of the participle* is in Latin relative to that of its principal verb.

(a) The *Present* Participle denotes the *same* time as that of its verb.

(b) The *Perfect* Participle denotes time *prior* to that of its verb.

Hence whenever the English, as is so often the case, uses the present participle to denote something that takes place *before* the action expressed by its main verb, the present participle must not be used in Latin, but either the perfect participle or some equivalent; as,

Returning to the harbor, he found the ships ready: **Ad portum reversus** (or **cum ad portum rediisset**), **nāvēs parātās invēnit.**

Being defeated in battle, they sent envoys: **Proeliō superātī, lēgātōs mīsērunt.**

42. THE APPOSITIVE OR CIRCUMSTANTIAL PARTICIPLE.—The most important use of the participle in Latin is its use in the appositive relation to its substantive to define the circumstances of an action, expressing the relation of *time* or *cause* or (less frequently) of *condition* or *concession*; as,

(a) Present Participle:—*He is slain while fighting bravely:* **Fortissimē pugnāns interficitur.**

They slew Roscius while returning home: **Domum redeuntem Roscium occidērunt.**

(b) Perfect Participle Passive:—*Being repulsed by the cavalry, they hid in the woods*: **Repulsī ab equitātū, sē in silvās abdidērunt.**

He brought aid to his brother, when hemmed in by the enemy: **Frātri interclusō ab hostibus auxillium tulit.**

Though thrown into confusion, they did not retreat: **Perturbāti, tamen pedem nōn retulērunt.**

He will come if asked: **Rogātus veniet.**

(c) Perfect Participle Deponent:—*Having encouraged the soldiers, he leaped down*: **Cohortātus militēs, dēsiluit.**

Fearing a scarcity of provisions, he returned: **Inopiam frūmenti veritus, rediit.**

Notice that although the English participle is frequently preceded by such words as *while, when, if, though*, the corresponding Latin words are not used.

43. It is generally advisable to render this Latin participle more freely into English, using either (a) a dependent clause introduced by *while, when, after, as, because, if, although*; or (b) the prepositions *on, after*, with a verbal noun, especially the gerund in *-ing*; or (c) a coordinate sentence followed by *and* or *but*; or (d) a relative clause.

And conversely all such expressions are commonly best rendered into Latin (where possible) by the circumstantial participle.

For instance, in place of the English sentences given in section 42, we may have, corresponding to the same Latin sentences:

They slew Roscius while he was returning home, or, They slew Roscius, who was returning home.

On being repulsed by the cavalry (or, After their repulse by the cavalry), they hid in the woods.

He brought aid to his brother when he had been hemmed in by the enemy, or, who had been hemmed in by the enemy.

Though they were thrown into confusion, they did not retreat, or, They were thrown into confusion but did not retreat.

He will come if he is asked.

After he had encouraged the soldiers (or, After encouraging the soldiers) he leaped down, or, He encouraged the soldiers and leaped down.

He returned, because he feared a scarcity of provisions, or, As he feared a scarcity of provisions, he returned.

44. i. Other uses of the Participle are:

(a) As a substantive, chiefly in the oblique cases and especially in the plural as, *He followed up the fugitives*: **Fugientēs prō-**

secūtus est. Opportunity for resting is given to the wounded:
Vulnerātis facultās quietis datur.

Note that *those fleeing, those wounded* is not in Latin **II fugientēs** or **II vulnerātī**.

(b) As an adjective; as, *This state was large and flourishing*:
Haec civitās fuit ampla atque florēns. They thought they were ready: **Sē parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt.**

Parātus and many other participles are in fact compared like adjectives.

(c) As a *predicative complement* of certain verbs, especially (a) the present participle with *videō, audiō, faciō*, and other verbs of perceiving or representing; as, *He noticed a certain man writing*: **Animadvertit quendam scribentem**; and (b) the perfect participle passive with *habeō*, very like the English perfect with *have*; as, *He sends forward the cavalry which he had collected from the whole province*: **Equitātum, quem ex omni prōvinciā coāctum habēbat, praemittit.** (See section 182, e. ii.)

ii. The perfect participle of many deponent verbs appears often to have the force of the present; for instance, there is no appreciable difference between *arbitrātus* and *existimāns*. Other words so used are *veritus, diffusus, suspicātus, ūsus*; as, *Suspecting that this would happen, Labienus was advancing, employing the same pretence*: **Quae fore suspicātus, Labiēnus eādem ūsus simulātiōne prōgredilēbatur.** In most cases the perfect is defensible as specifying the cause which leads to subsequent action.

iii. The participle occasionally has its force defined more exactly by the use of *nisi* (*except*), *ut* or *tamquam* (*as if*), *etsi* or *quamquam* (*although*), *utpote* (*inasmuch as*).

iv. The lack of a present participle passive is supplied by a subordinate clause with *dum, cum*, or *quā*; that of the perfect participle active (where a deponent verb is not available) by a subordinate verb with *cum, si, etsi*, etc., or by the ablative absolute construction (see Chapter VII.).

EXERCISE 6.

A.

1. They threw the ambassador into chains while he was attempting to speak. 2. The envoys, after being dismissed, returned home. 3. The cavalry made an attack upon the Gauls, who were scattered and in despair. 4. Thinking the ambassadors would not return, Cæsar crossed the river. 5. After encouraging the cavalry the tribunes returned to Cæsar. 6. He replied that the Germans would come if asked. 7. Our men attacked the enemy and slew a great number of them. 8. Promising to return in a short time,

he followed up the fugitives. 9. He comes upon the soldiers, who are fighting bravely. 10. On his return he found the soldiers engaged in the work. 11. The cavalry, being ordered to cross the river, brought aid to our men, who were resisting with the utmost bravery. 12. He said that the cavalry, though thrown into confusion, would not retreat.

B. (Aristides, 1-3.)

1. As they were withdrawing, they inquired of him what he was writing. 2. After being called the Just for many years, Aristides was banished by an excited mob. 3. Although freed from this penalty, they will be driven from their country. 4. Fearing (*vereor*) the barbarians, the states transferred the maritime supremacy to the Athenians. 5. He will be restored to his country and chosen general of the Athenians. 6. Being repelled, the barbarians attempted to build a fleet. 7. They slew a certain man who was attempting to get together an army. 8. Returning (*revertor*) in the fourth year to Greece, he routed the army of the Spartans. 9. On attempting to make a descent on this state, they were driven back.

C. (Cæsar, Bk. IV. 6.)

1. As Cæsar was setting out for the army he learned of this custom. 2. Suspecting that they would send embassies to the Eburones, he summoned their leading men to him. 3. On the invitation of Cæsar, he will carry on war against the Treveri. 4. Having set out earlier than usual, they learned that some states were not ready. 5. After wandering far (*longē*) and wide, the Germans reached the Rhine. 6. Thinking that the cavalry which had been requisitioned by Cæsar was withdrawing, we determined to set out. 7. Embassies have been sent by this state, and are coming to Cæsar with all the leading men. 8. While they are waging war with the Eburones, they will reach the territories of the Germans. 9. This vassal, suspecting that Cæsar would take his departure, had determined to arouse their spirits.

CHAPTER VII.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

45. In translating into Latin participial phrases (or their equivalents), such as have been described in Chapter VI., two difficulties often arise :

(a) The participle required is a perfect participle *active*, which does not exist in Latin (except in the case of deponents); as, *Having heard this, he departed. After receiving hostages, he made peace. They made an attack and drove the enemy back.*

(b) The subject of the verb in the English subordinate clause cannot be brought into direct relation with any single word in the main sentence; as, *When the arms had been surrendered, he made peace. Although the defenders were but few, he could not take the town.*

46. In such cases recourse may generally be had to the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE construction, in which a substantive (or pronoun) and a participle in agreement are used, in the ablative case; as,

Having heard this, he departed: **His rēbus auditis, discessit.**

After receiving hostages, he made peace: **Obsidibus acceptis, pācem fēcit.**

They made an attack and drove the enemy back: **Impetū factō, hostēs reppulērunt.**

When the arms had been surrendered, he made peace: **Trāditis armis, pācem fēcit.**

Although the defenders were but few, he could not take the town: **Paucis dēfendentibus, oppidum expugnāre nōn potuit.**

47. There is a similar nominative absolute construction in English; as, *Their arms having been surrendered, he made peace.* But the English construction is of comparatively rare occurrence, and seldom furnishes a suitable translation for the Latin ablative absolute, which should rather be rendered according to the methods suggested in section 43.

48. In the cases described in section 45, we may also have in place of the ablative absolute, *dependent clauses* expressing *time*, *cause*, etc.; for instance, in place of the present participle, *cum*

with the imperfect subjunctive or *dum* with the present indicative (sections 151; 153), and in place of the perfect participle, *cum* with the pluperfect subjunctive or *ubi* or *postquam* with the perfect indicative (sections 151; 152, b); as, *On learning this, he departed: Cum hæc audivisset, discessit. Being unable to cross, they returned: Cum transire nōn possent, revertērunt.*

49. Instead of the participle in the absolute construction, we often find a predicate noun or adjective, without any copula, as the verb *esse* has no present or perfect participle; as,

They attempt to cross against his will: Eō invitō transire cōnantur.

He formed a conspiracy in the consulship of Messala and Piso: Messalā atque Pisōne cōsulis conjuratiōnem fecit.¹

50. i. The ablative absolute construction is not used with the perfect participle passive of intransitive verbs, that is, of verbs which in the active do not govern an accusative; as, *Having reached the Rhine, they plunged into the river: Cum ad Rhēnum pervēnissent, sē in flūmen præcipitāvērunt. Having pardoned the prisoners, he returned: Cum captivis ignōvisset, rediit.*

ii. In the case of the perfect participle of deponent verbs with active force, the ablative absolute is somewhat sparingly used, and chiefly with intransitive verbs; as, *A great storm arose, and almost all the ships were wrecked: Māximā coortā tempestāte, prope omnēs nāvēs afflictæ sunt. So also mortuus, profectus, secūtus.*

iii. It is contrary to Latin usage to have the substantive in the ablative absolute denote the same person or thing as is mentioned in the principal clause; as, *When Commius landed they seized him* is not *Commiō ē nāvi ēgressō, eum comprehendērunt*, but *Commiū ē nāvi ēgressum comprehendērunt.²*

iv. For *nisi*, *ut*, etc., with the abl. absolute see section 44, iii.

v. An ablative absolute with the negative is often equivalent to a phrase introduced by *without*; as, *Without losing any time he sets out: Nullō tempore intermissō proficiscitur.*

vi. One ablative absolute may define the circumstances of another; e.g., *As the ranks were in confusion from hearing the shouting, the rest took to flight: Reliqui, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātis ordinibus, terga vertērunt.* An ablative absolute may be connected by a conjunction (e.g., *et*, *-que*) with another ablative absolute, but not with any other (even an equivalent) construction.

1. Literally *He (being) unwilling; Messala and Piso (being) consuls.*

2. Yet Cæsar has several instances of the ablative absolute in such a case, often apparently to secure emphasis; e.g., B. G., III. 14, 4; IV. 12, 1; 21, 6; V. 4, 3; 44, 6; VI. 4, 4; 43, 1; VII. 4, 1; 27, 2; 29, 1; 76, 3. This should not be imitated.

EXERCISE 7.

A.

1. Having settled these matters, he returned. 2. After encouraging the soldiers and giving the signal, he ordered an attack to be made. 3. He set out against Cæsar's will, after promising to return shortly. 4. As no enemy prevented (him), he led the legion back in safety. 5. On this being done, the Roman soldiers, drawing their swords, made an attack upon the enemy. 6. In the consulship of Marius many were put to death without a hearing. 7. After that assembly had been dismissed, the chief men returned to Cæsar. 8. After he heard the prisoner, he dismissed him. 9. When this battle was fought, the enemy, being impressed by the bravery of our soldiers, sent envoys to Cæsar. 10. Having reached their territories, he set fire to all their villages and then returned to the camp.

B. (*Hannibal, 1, 2.*)

1. After Hannibal was banished the Romans ceased to carry on war with the Carthaginians. 2. Leading the son to the altar, the father bade him swear to conquer the Romans. 3. While the citizens were sacrificing, he was attempting to bribe the general. 4. When Hannibal was a little boy, Hamilcar was making war on Spain. 5. When Hannibal was a little boy, Hamilcar took him with him to the camp. 6. After the victims are sacrificed he will set out. 7. While Philip was absent, the others began to act unwisely. 8. They bribed the king and inflamed him with hatred towards the Romans.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 7.*)

1. While the Romans were offering resistance, the cavalry secured a supply of corn. 2. After conquering the Germans he heard that ambassadors were coming from the Suebi. 3. He drove out the Suebi, and assigned lands to the Germans. 4. Without anyone offering resistance, they will set out against Cæsar's wish. 5. Being unable to conquer the Suebi, they made war on the Germans. 6. Although they begged for mercy, he nevertheless drove the Suebi from their lands. 7. As we have secured cavalry, we shall be a match for the Romans. 8. After making war they will seize these lands by force.

CHAPTER VIII.

VERBS COMPLETED BY THE DATIVE, GENITIVE OR ABLATIVE
—THE IMPERSONAL PASSIVE.

51. Many verbs followed by a direct object in English are represented in Latin by verbs that take, not the accusative, but some other of the oblique cases ; as,

They forget the disagreement : *Dissēsiōnis obliuiscuntur.*

He persuades the state : *Civitātī persuādet.*

He used the timber and bronze : *Māteriā atque aere utēbātur.*

Thus while the English verb is transitive, the Latin equivalent is intransitive.

52. VERBS WHICH TAKE THE DATIVE.

Many verbs, chiefly denoting *advantage* or *disadvantage* or *disposition towards*, are followed by the dative. Of these the most important are :

Aid, assist, subveniō, succurrō.

Believe, crēdō.

Benefit, prōsum.

Command (=order), imperō, mandō.

Command (=am in charge of), praesum.

Displease, displiceō.

Distrust, diffidō.

Envy, inuideō.

Favor, faveō, studeō.

Heal, medeor.

Indulge, indulgeō.

Injure, noceō, obsum.

Interrupt, interveniō.

Marry (a man), nūbō.

Meet, occurrō ; so obviam eō.

Obeys, pareō, obtemperō.

Oppose, resistō, repugnō, ob-
sistō, occurrō.

Pardon, ignōscō.

Persuade, persuādeō, suādeō.

Please, placeō.

Relieve, succeed, succēdō.

Satisfy, satisfaciō.

Serve, serviō.

Spare, pareō.

Surpass, praestō.

Threaten, minor.

Trust, fidō, cōfidō.

53. VERBS WHICH TAKE THE GENITIVE.

(a) Some verbs meaning to *pity*, *remember* or *forget* are followed by the genitive ; namely :

Pity, misereor, and miseret (for which see section 91, d).

Bear in mind, remember, meminī.

Call to mind, recollect, reminiscor.

Forget, obliuiscor.

(b) Two impersonal verbs, *interest* and (rarely) *rēfert*, meaning *it concerns*, *it interests* (*it is of importance to*), take the genitive of the person interested; as,

It concerns the state: Rei pūblicae interest.

i. But instead of the genitive of the personal and reflexive pronouns, the ablative feminine of the possessives is used, namely, *meā, tuā, nostrā, vestrā, suā*; as, *This concerns me: Hōc meā interest* (or *rēfert*). In this usage *rēfert* is common.

ii. The *thing which is of importance* is expressed by a neuter pronoun, an infinitive (with or without a subject accusative) or a clause. The *degree of importance* is expressed by an adverb or by the genitive of price (see section 88); as, *Your safety is of great importance to me: Magni meā interest ut salvus sis.*

54. VERBS WHICH TAKE THE ABLATIVE.

The following verbs (with their compounds) are followed by the ablative:

Use, ūtor.

Enjoy, fruor.

Perform, fungor.

Gain, obtain, potior.

Eat, vescor.

Also verbs of *lacking*, *egoō, careō*.

55. i. That in the case of such verbs the irregularity is only apparent may be seen by observing the exact meaning of the verb; for instance, *serviō, am a slave (to)*; *persuādeō, make it acceptable (to)*; *satisfaciō, do enough (for)*; *pāreō, am at hand (for)*; *resistō, stand in opposition (to)*; *praesum, am at the head (with reference to)*; *ūtor, benefit myself (by means of)*; *potior, become powerful (by means of)*; *careō, be cut off (from)*; *obliviscor, become dark (as regards) i.e., become forgetful (of)*.

ii. Accordingly it is not necessary that all verbs having the same English equivalent should take the same case. Thus *jubeō (command, order)*, *sublevō, juvō (aid)*, *laedō (injure)*, *dēlectō (please)*, *offendō (displease)*, *miseror (pity)*, and *recordor (recollect)*, regularly take the accusative.

iii. Some of the verbs given in sections 52-54 are sometimes followed by a different case, especially when used in a different sense. Thus *imperō (command)* takes the dative, but *imperō (demand, require)* takes the accusative, both being united in, *He demands hostages of the enemy, Hostibus imperat obsidēs. Meminī, of recalling a person one has known, takes the accusative. Potior, gain sovereignty over, takes the genitive, chiefly in the phrase rērum potiri, to obtain control of affairs. And the verbs of remembering and forgetting regularly have the accusative in the case of neuter pronouns or neuter adjectives used substantively.*

iv. Certain phrases, having the value of verbs which take the dative, have the same construction, e.g., *fidem habeo = cōfīdō*.

v. *Ūtor* may take a second ablative used predicatively; as, *He used these men as guides: His duclibus ūtēbātur.*

vi. *Interdicō* takes a dative (or sometimes an accusative) of the person debarred, the ablative of the thing forbidden.

56. THE IMPERSONAL PASSIVE.—In English only the active voice of an intransitive verb may be used. But in Latin even with intransitive verbs (i.e., such as do not govern a direct object in the accusative), the passive may be used impersonally, that is, in the third person singular, and (in the compound tenses) in the neuter. The impersonal passive denotes merely the occurrence of an action without reference to the doer; as, *Pūgnātur: Fighting takes place,* or *there is a fight.* *Ventum est: Coming took place.* The usual English equivalent is the active voice, the subject being obtained from the context; as, *Ventum est: He (or we or they, etc.) came.*

57. In Latin all intransitive verbs, if used in the passive, must be used impersonally, and this impersonal passive construction is used to render into Latin the passive of the verbs which take the dative² (section 52); as,

*Cæsar is obeyed: Cæsari pārētur (i.e., obedience is rendered to Cæsar).*¹

They asked to be spared: Ōrābant ut sibi parcerētur (i.e., that mercy might be shown to them).

I had not been pardoned: Mihi nōn erat Ignōtum (i.e., forgiveness had not been granted to me).

Thus where a verb takes the dative in the active voice, that dative is retained in the passive, and cannot become the subject.

EXERCISE 8.

A.

1. Cæsar commanded the soldiers of the tenth legion, which he most trusted, to remember their former valor. 2. He answered that Dumnorix was always opposing Cæsar's plans and assisting the enemy. 3. These resources he is using in order to gain the sovereign power. 4. He says that the senate distrusted the Gauls

1. On the translation of a verb by means of a verbal noun, see section 203, d.

2. The use of the impersonal passive construction with verbs which take the genitive or ablative occurs chiefly in the passive periphrastic conjugation. (See section 120, ii.)

and ordered them to obey Cæsar's commands. 5. Exercising his usual (*suus*) clemency, he promised to spare the Nervii, and demanded a large number of hostages from the other states. 6. To this embassy the answer was given that the Roman people could forget the old insult, but not the recent wrongs. 7. It is your interest, and the interest of all the citizens to obey the laws. 8. Word was brought that these tribes eat corn and flesh. 9. The soldiers whom Labienus commanded were persuaded not to injure the prisoners. 10. We are accustomed to pity those who obey our rule, but the states which oppose the Roman people cannot be pardoned. 11. All whom we met said that they lacked food. 12. Using this bridge, Cæsar made a sudden attack and became master of the enemy's camp.

B. (Hannibal, 3, 4.)

1. While making for Etruria we shall meet the two consuls with their whole army. 2. He uses both eyes equally well. 3. After Saguntum was taken Hannibal commanded three very large armies. 4. In the next year he gained Saguntum, an allied state. 5. No one was spared. 6. After routing the consuls, Hamilcar was commanded to seize the pass. 7. It is of great importance to the State that the chief command should be bestowed on Hannibal. 8. He obeys the consul's authority. 9. We shall never forget that ambuscade. 10. He could not be persuaded to assist his wounded colleague.

C. (Cæsar, Bk. IV. 8, 9.)

1. They do not trust even Cæsar. 2. He has commanded the cavalry not to injure the ambassadors. 3. I cannot forget the outrages of the Suebi. 4. Answer was made that this concerned a large part of Gaul. 5. He says that a large part of the cavalry is being resisted. 6. They wish to obtain the lands of others. 7. This speech displeased the ambassadors. 8. They thought that they needed aid, and persuaded Cæsar to assist them. 9. This friendship will benefit Cæsar. 10. A large part of the Ubii envy the Suebi.

CHAPTER IX.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

58. Conditional sentences consist regularly of two clauses : (a) a subordinate clause containing some assumption and introduced by *si* (or a compound of *si*), and (b) a principal clause containing the conclusion which follows the assumption. The former is called the *Protasis*, the latter the *Apodosis*. The *Protasis* is often called the *conditional clause*.

59. One obvious distinction of conditions is that of (1) *present* or *past*, in which the question of fulfilment has already been decided, and (2) *future*, in which a possibility of fulfilment is always conceivable. In each of these, two forms of statement are in common use, making four main classes of conditional sentences.

60. I. In PRESENT OR PAST conditions, where *no hint* is given of the accordance of the supposed case with fact, but where it is merely stated that, granting the assumption, the conclusion logically follows, the *indicative* is used in both clauses, the tenses being those which would be used for the same words if occurring in simple sentences ; as,

If he thinks this, he is mistaken : SI hōc existimat, errat.

If I did wrong, I did it unwittingly : SI peccāvi, insciēns feci.

If they did this, they are not enemies : SI hōc fecerunt, nōn inimici sunt.

61. II. In PRESENT OR PAST conditions, where we wish to represent the assumption (and consequently the conclusion also) as *contrary to fact*, the *subjunctive* is used in both clauses, the *imperfect* subjunctive for *present* time, and the *pluperfect* subjunctive for *past* time ; as,

If he thought this (but he does not), he would be mistaken : SI hōc existimāret, errāret.

If he had said this (but he did not), he would have been mistaken : SI hōc dixisset, errāvisset.

If he were alive, we should have found him long ago : Invēnissēmus jam diū, si viveret.

Had my advice prevailed, we should to-day be free : SI meum cōsiliū valuisset, hodiē liberī essēmus.

62. III. In **FUTURE** conditions, one class corresponds exactly to that given in section 60, where the *logical* result is emphasized. The English has in the protasis generally the *present* indicative, in the apodosis the future indicative (sometimes the imperative); the Latin has in the protasis the *future* or *future perfect* indicative, in the apodosis the future indicative (or imperative).

The difference in tenses is due to the fact that Latin in dependent clauses is more exact than English in indicating both the point of time (present, past or future), and also priority of action in relation to the main verb.

If he thinks that, he will be mistaken: SI hōc existimābit, errābit.

If he does that, he will receive a reward: SI hōc fēcerit, prae-mium cōsequētur. (The doing must precede the receiving.)

We shall attain this end, if we take care: Hōc assequēmur, si cavēbimus.

If they cross the river, hold your ground: SI flūmen trāsierint, sustinēte.

63. IV. In the other class of **FUTURE** conditions, where a *conceivable* case is put less vividly, the English has in the protasis *should* or *were to*, or the past subjunctive; in the apodosis *would* (or, in the first person, *should*); the Latin has the *present subjunctive* in both clauses; as,

If he were to say this (or If he said this), he would be mistaken: SI hōc dicat, erret.

Time would fail me, if I should try to describe everything: SI velim omnia dēscribere, diēs mē dēficiat.

64. i. Many departures from these four forms are found, especially other combinations of tenses. Of the cases where the mood is varied, the most important is in conditions contrary to fact (section 61), where *possum*, *dēbeō*, *oportet*, and the periphrastic conjugations (sections 120 and 124) are regularly used in the *indicative* instead of in the subjunctive; as, *If Cæsar had set out, he could have crossed the river: Cæsar, si profectus esset, flūmen trāsi-re potuit.*

ii. Alternative conditions are introduced by *sive . . . sive* (or *seu . . . seu*) *whether . . . or*, which follow the rules for *sī* as regards mood and tense; as, *It will be an easy task, whether they remain or set out: Facilis erit rēs, seu manēbunt seu profici-scentur.*

Whether . . . or in this sense should be carefully distinguished from *whether . . . or* represented by *utrum . . . an* (section 38). In the former case we can always add in either case, or change to *no matter whether . . . or*.

iii. For *if not*, *si nōn*, *si minus* and *nisi* are found. *Nisi* (unless) is used to mark an exception, or after negatives. *Si minus* is used where the verb is to be supplied from the context.

iv. Two mutually exclusive conditions are introduced by *si . . . sin*, *if . . . but if*. For *but if not*, where the verb is omitted, *sin minus* or *sin aliter* is used.

v. An important particular case of the present or past logical condition (section 60) is the so-called *general condition*, which, in connection with any one of a series of recurrent actions, states what is habitual. For present time the *perfect*¹ indicative is usual in the protasis, the present indicative in the apodosis; for past time the *pluperfect*¹ indicative in the protasis and the imperfect indicative in the apodosis; as, *If (ever) any crime is committed, the Druids fix the penalty: Si quod est admissum facinus, Druidēs poenam cōstituunt.*

vi. For *si* meaning *in the hope that, to see whether*, see sec. 177.

vii. Participles and adjectives may be used in place of the regular protasis to express condition; as, *He will come, if asked: Rogātus veniet. If we keep together we shall be a match for them: Unā parēs illi erimus.*

viii. Another favorite classification of the conditional clauses is threefold:

I. Logical conditions (past, present or future) combining classes I. and III. above. Indicative in both clauses.

II. Ideal or contingent conditions (future)—the same as class IV. above. Present subjunctive in both clauses.

III. Unreal conditions (present or past)—the same as class II. above. Imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses.

EXERCISE 9.

A.

1. If Casticus should seize the supreme power in his state, Cæsar would wage war against him. 2. If our troops defeat the enemy, the Belgians will at once send ambassadors to Cæsar. 3. If the Gauls had been conquered by Cæsar they would have immediately sent ambassadors to him concerning peace. 4. If a murder has been committed, or there is a dispute about an inheritance, the Druids decide (the matter). 5. The Germans would not now be

1. The perfect and pluperfect are used on the same principle as the future perfect in section 62.

carrying on war with the Gauls if Ariovistus had been defeated by the Roman troops. 6. If this is reported to Ariovistus, he will inflict the severest punishment on the hostages. 7. If the general had not sent forward three cohorts, the enemy would have gained the victory and our soldiers would now be in the greatest peril. 8. The Helvetians would return to their territories if the Roman people were to conclude peace with them. 9. Unless Cæsar enrolls two legions in that place, he will not be able to carry on the war successfully with the Gauls. 10. If the enemy had set fire to all their towns and villages and burnt up all their corn, they would not have been able to return. 11. If Cæsar meets with favorable weather, he will weigh anchor; but if not, he will return to the province. 12. If the Germans had made an attempt to cross the Rhine, Cæsar would have marched against them with two legions.

B. (Hannibal, 5, 6.)

1. He would have escaped the Numidians, had he not been drawn into an ambuscade. 2. If he were to collect a new army, he would defeat the dictator. 3. If he returns without a large army, he will be put to death. 4. If ever the consuls opposed Hannibal in the field, they were routed. 5. If they were to delay among the mountains, he would not be able to crush them. 6. If Hannibal was defeated in Italy, he did not return unconquered to his native land. 7. If they go outside the camp, no one will escape. 8. If the resources of the country were not exhausted, no one would venture to resist the Romans. 9. If he is returning, he has been recalled by the master of the house.

C. (Cæsar, Bk. IV. 10, 11.)

1. If the enemy were to provoke them to fight, they would hold their ground. 2. Had they gained this request, they would have begged him not to return. 3. If the army is approaching nearer, they have not gained their request. 4. If the Treveri return to Cæsar, he will ask them to advance no further. 5. If rivers divide into several branches, they form islands. 6. If Cæsar thought they were fierce and savage tribes, he would not be sending ambassadors to them. 7. If they inhabited these territories, they were not far distant from the Alps. 8. If the cavalry had not been sent in advance, we should have accepted these terms. 9. If ever he gave them permission they advanced.

CHAPTER X.

CLAUSES OF CONCESSION—CLAUSES OF PROVISIO—
CONDITIONAL CLAUSES OF COMPARISON.

65. CLAUSES OF CONCESSION are subordinate clauses which concede or admit something in spite of which the statement in the principal clause still holds good.

(a) Clauses introduced by *although*, meaning *in spite of the fact that*, or *whereas*, are rendered into Latin by *quamquam*, *etsi* or *tametsi* with the indicative, or by *cum* with the subjunctive; as,

Although the difficulty was very great, he determined to lead his army across: Etsi summa erat difficultās, tamen trādūcere exercitum cōstituit.

The Romans, in spite of being weary with fighting, yet advanced: Rōmānī, quamquam proeliō fessī erant, tamen prōcēdunt.

He kept himself in camp, although the enemy every day gave him an opportunity to fight: Castris sēsē tenēbat, cum hostēs cotidie pugnandi potestātem facerent.

He was poor, whereas he might have been very rich: Fuit pauper, cum divitiāsimus esse posset.

(b) Clauses introduced by *even though*, *even if*, *even granting*, are rendered into Latin by *etsi* or *etiāmsi* with the indicative or subjunctive, according to the rules for the protasis of conditional sentences (Chapter IX.), or by *ut* or *nē* with the subjunctive; as,

Even if he cannot show gratitude, he at least can feel it: Etiāmsi referre gratiam nōn potest, habēre certē potest.

Even if my disposition did not bid me, necessity compels me to speak the truth: Vēra loqui, etsi meum ingenium nōn movēret, necessitās cōgit.

Even supposing everything should turn out contrary to expectation, we are very powerful in ships: Ut omnia contrā opīniōnem accīdant, plūrimū nāvibus possumus.

(c) Clauses introduced by *although*, meaning *however much*, *no matter how*, are rendered into Latin by *quāvis* with the subjunctive (usually in the present tense); as,

However great expectation may be (or Although expectation be great), yet you will surpass it: Quāvis sit mājna expectātiō, tamen eam vincēs.

66. i. The impersonal verb *licet* and the subjunctive (see section 143, fn.) is often used with the force of *even though*.

ii. *Quamvis* is sometimes joined with a single word, the predicate of the subordinate clause being understood; as, *However few they are, they venture to advance*: *Quamvis pauci* (supply *sint*) *adire audent*.

iii. *Quamquam* sometimes introduces an independent clause, and may then be rendered *and yet*.

iv. Only in class (a) is it always certain that what is conceded is a fact.

67. CLAUSES OF PROVISO are subordinate clauses embodying some stipulation. They are introduced in English by *provided*, or *if only*, or *so long as*; in Latin commonly by *dum*, *dummodo* or *modo* with the *subjunctive* (usually in the present tense); as,

Let them hate, provided (or so long as) they fear: *Ōderint dum metuant*.

i. The negative in clauses of proviso is *nē*.

68. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES OF COMPARISON are subordinate clauses containing a comparison to some imaginary state of affairs. Such clauses are introduced in English by *as if*; in Latin by *quasi*, *tamquam* *sī*, *velut* *sī*, *ut* *sī*, *ac* *sī*, or by *tamquam* or *velut* alone. These are followed by the *subjunctive*, the sequence of tenses being observed (i.e., present or perfect subjunctive after the primary tenses, imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive after the secondary tenses); as,

We shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus just as if he were present: *Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram adsit, horrēmus*.¹

i. *Quasi*, *tamquam*, *ut* and *velut* are used with a similar force with participles; as, *They halted as if bidden by a voice from heaven*: *Restitērunt tamquam caelesti vōce jussī*.

EXERCISE 10.

A.

1. Although he saw that the legions were being hard pressed, he was unwilling to order the soldiers to retreat. 2. Even if Cæsar were in command of the army, he would not be able to defeat the enemy. 3. Provided that the enemy do not learn our numbers,

1. In all such clauses, both English and Latin, the verb of the real apodosis has been suppressed; as, *We shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus as (we should shudder) if he were present*: *Ariovisti crudelitatem velut (horreamus) si coram adsit horrēmus*.

we shall attack them to-morrow. 4. Many remain in Cæsar's camp, as if they were unwilling to return to Gaul. 5. If Cæsar comes up with the enemy, he will easily defeat them, no matter how brave and numerous they may be. 6. In spite of their having taken up their position on the higher ground, the enemy could not withstand the attacks of our men. 7. If only Labienus can cross the river, he will surround the enemy. 8. The cavalry quickly crossed the river, just as if they had been instructed to do so. 9. Though you can persuade these men to send ambassadors, you cannot make them friends. 10. Even though he should have met with suitable weather, he would not have sailed for Britain. 11. Whereas they might return without danger, they are unwilling to set out. 12. The enemy sent hostages at once, as if afraid of Cæsar's vengeance.

B. (Hannibal, 7, 8.)

1. No matter how welcome these gifts may be, the Romans will not send back the prisoners. 2. Hannibal will be declared an exile, in his absence, just as if he were the greatest enemy of the Carthaginians. 3. Provided they make peace with the Romans, Hannibal will be put to death. 4. Although they paid the money in accordance with the treaty, the ¹ were not restored. 5. Even if they send vessels to seize him, they ² not be able to overtake him. 6. Whereas he might have been made consul, he was persuaded to flee from Rome. 7. He was recalled, just as if he had not carried on the war with great vigor. 8. Even if envoys had not been sent to demand Hannibal's surrender, he would have fled. 9. Even though this answer were to be given, an audience of the Senate would not be granted.

C. (Cæsar, Bk. IV. 12.)

1. Provided he resist bravely, he will not be surrounded. 2. In spite of the fact that they were cut off by the enemy, our men had no fear. 3. Even if several of our men are unhorsed, the rest will not be put to flight. 4. Although he had come in sight of the enemy, he did not cease from his flight. 5. The enemy were put to flight, as if panic-stricken. 6. Even if we had lent aid, we should not have rescued him from peril. 7. However brave an opposition they may offer, they will be slain. 8. Although he himself has not more than a thousand cavalry, he will return. 9. Even though we were to leave the field, Piso would not be at all alarmed.

CHAPTER XI.

USES OF THE ACCUSATIVE.

69. The DIRECT OBJECT of a transitive verb (whether active or deponent) is put in the accusative ; as,

They slay the man : **Hominem interficiunt.**

He saw the forces of the enemy : **Hostium cōpiās cōspiciātus est.**

He builds a bridge : **Pontem facit.**

1. The direct object is that which is (a) affected or apprehended, or (b) produced, by the action of the verb.

ii. Some verbs (chiefly verbs of emotion) which are intransitive in English are represented by transitive verbs in Latin, such as *horrēre* (to shudder at), *dolēre* (to grieve over), *ridēre* (to laugh at), *spērāre* (to hope for), *dēspērāre* (to despair of), *tacēre* (to be silent about) ; as, *They shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus :* **Crudelitātē Ariovisti horrent.**

iii. Many intransitive verbs (chiefly verbs of motion) become transitive when compounded with prepositions (especially *circum*, *præter* and *trans*) ; as, *They cross the river :* **Flūmen transeunt.** *The Helvetians meet Cæsar :* **Helvēti Cæsarem conveniunt.** Similarly in English *overrun*, *undergo*. (See section 78, v. a.)

iv. A few transitive verbs compounded with *trans* take two accusatives in the active, one governed by the verb and the other by the preposition ; as, *He leads his army across the river :* **Flūmen exercitum trādūcīt.** (The preposition may, however, be repeated ; as, **Trans flūmen exercitum trādūcīt.**) In the passive the accusative governed by the preposition may be retained.

v. Verbs of *making*, *choosing*, *calling*, *electing*, *considering* and *showing* take two accusatives of the same person or thing, one being the direct object, and the other a predicate noun or adjective ; as, *He calls the Ædui brothers :* **Aeduōs frātrēs appellat.** *They let him know :* **Eum certiorē faciunt.** *They choose these as their leaders :* **Hōs ducēs dēligunt sibi.** *They consider this a mark of valor :* **Hōc propriū virtutis existimant.** In the passive both direct object and predicate become nominative ; as, *Ariovistus was called friend :* **Ariovistus amicus appellātus est.**

vi. Verbs of *asking*, *demanding*, *teaching* and *concealing* may take two accusatives, the one of the person and the other of the thing ; as, *Cæsar demands corn of the Ædui :* **Cæsar Aeduōs frumentum flāgitat.** *I concealed my opinion from him :* **Eum sententiā celāvi.** In the passive one accusative, usually of the thing, may be retained. All these verbs, however, may take a pre-

positional phrase in place of one of the accusatives, as *petō*, *postulō* and *quaerō* regularly do.

vii. In poetry, the passive of verbs of *clothing*, as also the perfect participle passive of some other verbs, is used with a reflexive or 'middle' force, and takes a direct object; as, *Galeam induitur*: *He puts on (himself) the helmet*. *Nōdō sinūs collēcta*: *Having the folds gathered in a knot*.

70. The accusative is used with the following PREPOSITIONS:

ad, to; **adversus**, **adversum**, against; **ante**, before; **apud**, near, at; **circā**, **circum**, around; **circiter**, about; **eis**, **eitrā**, on this side of; **contrā**, opposite to, against; **ergā**, towards; **extrā**, outside; **Infra**, below; **inter**, between, among; **intrā**, within; **jūxtā**, near; **ob**, on account of; **penes**, in the power of; **per**, through; **pōne**, post, behind, after; **praeter**, past; **prope**, near; **propter**, on account of; **secundum**, after, following; **suprā**, above; **trāns**, across; **ūltrā**, beyond; **versus**, towards.

The accusative is also used with **in**, into or in, and **sub**, under, when they express motion towards, and usually with **subter**, beneath and **super**, above. These four also take the ablative (section 108).

i. The adverbs *propius* and *proximē*, *prīdiē* and *postrīdiē*, and the adjectives *propior* and *proximus* sometimes take the accusative.

71. The SUBJECT OF THE INFINITIVE (except the historical infinitive, section 112) is put in the accusative; as,

He answered that Caesar was doing wrong: **Respondit Caesarem injūriam facere**.

It is dangerous for the Germans to cross the Rhine: **Germānōs Rhēnum trānsire est periculōsum**.

72. COGNATE ACCUSATIVE.—Intransitive verbs often take an accusative to define more clearly their meaning. This is either a substantive (generally modified by an adjective) of kindred meaning and often of kindred derivation, or more frequently a neuter pronoun or adjective used substantively; as,

We shall live a safer life: **Tūtiorē vītam vivēmus**.

He makes almost the same mistakes: **Eadem ferē peccat**.

This is the origin of the adverbial use of *multum*, *nihil*, *quid*, etc.; as, *He has very great power*: **Plūrimum potest**.

i. There are also a few isolated phrases used adverbially, which are closely connected with the cognate accusative, such as *māximam partem*, for the most part.

73. ACCUSATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.—In poetry, largely through Greek influence,¹ the accusative is used to denote the part of the body affected; as, *Tremit artūs: He trembles in his limbs. Ō deō similis: In face like to a god.*

74. The accusative is used in EXCLAMATIONS, with or without an interjection; as, *Ah, wretched me: Mē miserum or Ō mē miserum.*

75. For the use of the accusative to denote DURATION OF TIME, EXTENT OF SPACE, and LIMIT OF MOTION, see Chapter XVII.

EXERCISE 11.

A.

1. The Gauls had already led three-fourths of their troops across that river. 2. He learned that they had all encamped within those forests and were there waiting for the approach of the Romans. 3. It is very easy for our forces to pursue their march through these districts. 4. The ships were carried down towards the lower part of the island, which is nearer the west. 5. The tribes which dwell on this side the Rhine have been made tributary. 6. He crossed the river, and having attacked the enemy, he began to storm the city. 7. They are mistaken, if they hope for aid from the Romans. 8. Before Cæsar's arrival they had seized the country around the forest which the Greeks call Orcynia. 9. Because of their fear, they concealed everything from Cæsar. 10. Perceiving that their comrades had been put to flight, they despaired of victory and withdrew into the town. 11. On being asked their opinion, they made no answer. 12. For (*ob*) the same reason, he did not trust the Gauls much.

B. (*Hannibal, 9, 10.*)

1. They said he had entrusted all the gold to the Cretans. 2. These nations are considered very warlike among the Romans. 3. He pretends to fill the earthen vessel with live serpents. 4. Thinking that he would easily attain this object, he took no precautions. 5. He says he desires to crush Hannibal that all else may be made easy. 6. Calling the leading men together, he promised to wage war against the Cretans. 7. Perceiving that the king was very strong on account of the number of his ships, he

1. Hence this is often called the Greek accusative.

formed another plan. 8. He regards it sufficient for all the others to attack the king alone. 9. After the other nations have been won over, we shall easily deceive the Carthaginians, with Hannibal's knowledge.

C. (Cæsar, Bk. IV. 13.)

1. He was of the opinion that the Gauls, after accepting these terms, would not make war. 2. Before the recent battle he had ordered the forces to be increased. 3. He was glad that they had attained very great prestige among the Gauls. 4. On account of the treachery of the enemy, he did not wait at all for the leading men. 5. After the battle was begun, he thought it was the height of folly for the cavalry to return into the camp. 6. Cæsar believed that the Gauls had treacherously taken the offensive in the battle the day before. 7. He perceived how much power they had. 8. All the troops, after following up the enemy, were led across the river. 9. Although he had not been made quæstor, he considered this circumstance most opportune.

CHAPTER XII.

USES OF THE DATIVE.

76. The Dative case is used to express the indirect or remote connection of a person or thing with the action, feeling, or quality expressed by a verb or adjective. There are three main uses:¹ to express (1) the indirect object, (2) the person interested, (3) the purpose served. The dative may generally be rendered by *to* or *for*.

77. THE INDIRECT OBJECT, completing the meaning of a verb by denoting a person or thing indirectly affected, is put in the dative; as,

They yield to Cæsar: Caesarī cēdunt.

They granted lands to the Germans: Germānis agrōs dedērunt.

78. i. The dative of the indirect object is found (a) with intransitive verbs, (b) with transitive verbs in connection with a direct object.²

ii. Closely allied to the use with verbs is the use of the DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES, whose meaning it completes by denoting that to which the feeling or quality is directed; as,

He was friendly to the Helvetians: Helvétīs erat amīcus.

Such adjectives are those meaning *near, friendly, like, useful, easy, agreeable, known*, and their opposites. Many of these, however, admit other constructions, especially a preposition (*ad* or *in*) with the accusative. The dative is also found with adverbs of like meaning.

iii. Often in English, especially with verbs of *giving, promising* and *telling*, the preposition *to* is not used, and the indirect object is in form indistinguishable from the direct; as, *He gave the soldiers the signal: Militibus signum dedit. He told Cicero he would return: Cicerōnī dixit se reversūrum.*

iv. Of especial importance are those cases where, because the usual translation is somewhat inexact, a Latin intransitive verb with the indirect object corresponds to an English transitive verb with the direct object. (See Chapter VIII.)

v. Another important usage is the DATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS. Where an English verb with a preposition and its object is represented in Latin by a verb compounded with the corresponding preposition (e.g., *adeō*=*I go to*), difficulty often arises

1. This division is not fundamental, but is convenient for practical purposes.

2. The direct object of course becomes the subject in the passive voice, the indirect object remaining.

in determining the case of the Latin noun. Three different constructions are found, for the use of which no invariable rules can be given; the student must depend upon observation and authority.

(a) The compound is sometimes followed by the same case as the preposition would take. (For the accusative see section 69, iii. and iv.; for the ablative, section 93.)

(b) More often (and especially in the literal local sense) the prefixed preposition is repeated with the noun; as, *They sally out from the camp: Ex castris erumpunt. He came up to the camp: Ad castra accessit. He converses with him: Cum eō colloquitur. They put everything into the fire: Omnia in ignem inferunt.*

(c) But very often also, in place of the preposition and noun, Latin has the dative (to which in the case of transitive compounds may be added an accusative of the direct object). This dative means literally *with reference to*;¹ as,

He comes beneath the roof: Tectō succēdit (literally, *He comes beneath, with reference to the roof*).

He puts friendship before everything: Amicitiam omnibus rebus antepōnit (literally, *He puts friendship in front, with reference to everything*).

This usage is especially common with compounds of *ad*, *ante*, *con-*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *sub*, *super*; generally where the compound is not used in a literal sense; as, *Equitātul praeerat*;² *He commanded the cavalry* (more literally, *He was at the head of the cavalry*). *He inspired the soldiers with hope: Spem intulit militibus* (more literally, *He put hope into the soldiers*).

vi. A few verbs, such as *dōnō* and *circumdō*, admit a double construction: (1) dative and accusative, (2) accusative and ablative; as, *He presented the plunder to the soldiers: Praedam militibus dōnāvīt. They presented him with the citizenship: Eum civitātē dōnāvērunt.*

vii. In the poets the dative of indirect object is extended to include the idea of motion towards³ (see section 125), and is also used with verbs of nearness, union, difference and contention.

79. THE DATIVE OF INTEREST denotes the person or thing concerned (especially benefited or harmed). It is really identical with the dative of the indirect object, but the connection is looser and the dative complement not so essential to the verb; as,

1. In no case should this dative be regarded as depending on the preposition, but rather on the whole verb.

2. Most of the compounds of *sum* are used in a similar way.

3. This, some grammarians contend, was the original force of the dative.

He ordered each to take thought for himself: Sibi quemque cōsultare jussit.

I do not ask this for myself: Neque mihi hæc quaerō.¹

80. Besides this simple use (often called the *dative of advantage or disadvantage*), the dative of interest includes :

(a) The dative with verbs of *taking away* or *warding off*, with which it is translated by *from*; as, *They are taking from me my liberty: Mihi libertātem eripiunt.*

(b) The DATIVE OF REFERENCE, modifying the sentence as a whole and denoting a person indirectly interested rather than actually affected. This includes :

i. Many cases where English would use a *possessive*: as, *Pulio's shield is pierced: Trānsfigitur scūtum Pullōni* (more nearly, *Pulio gets his shield pierced*).

ii. The person in *whose eyes*; as, *She is beautiful to many: Fōrmōsa est multis. They wished to be blameless in Cæsar's eyes: Cæsari pūrgātis esse volēbant.*

iii. Participles expressing the *point of view*; as, *The first town as you come from Epirus: Oppidum primum venientibus ab Epirō.*

(c) The ETHICAL DATIVE, confined to personal pronouns, and indicating a person conceived to be interested in the statement. It is chiefly used in colloquial expressions of emotion, and often answers to the English *pray* or *bless me*. Here belongs the expression *sibi velle*; as, *What does he mean? Quid sibi vult?*

(d) The DATIVE OF THE APPARENT AGENT, with the gerundive, to indicate the person interested, and hence presumably the agent; as, *Everything had to be done by Cæsar: Cæsari omnia erant agenda.*

i. This dative is sometimes found (especially in poetry) with other forms of the passive, chiefly the compound ones.

ii. To avoid ambiguity the gerundive may have *ab* and the ablative in place of the dative of agent; as, *I must show him gratitude: Ei à mē referenda est grātia.*

(e) The DATIVE OF POSSESSOR, chiefly with the verb *sum*, to denote the person interested as owner; as, *They state that they have nothing: Dēmōstrant sibi nihil esse.*

81. The DATIVE OF PURPOSE is a predicative dative, denoting the purpose served (that which something tends or is

1. *For*, meaning in defence of, is expressed by *pro* with the ablative.

intended to be), and is usually accompanied by another dative of the person interested ; as,

It was a great hindrance to the Gauls: Gallis magnō erat impedimentō.

They were coming to the aid of the Nervii: Auxiliō Nervii veniebant.

He leaves five cohorts for the defence of the camp: Quinque cohortēs castris praesidiō relinquit.

i. This dative is especially common with the verb *sum* (after which it has almost the force of the ordinary predicate noun), and is found also with *fiō*, *veniō*, *mittō*, *relinquō*, *dō*. The nouns so used are generally of a semi-abstract nature, and are always in the singular, some of the commonest being *auxiliō*, *praesidiō*, *subsidiō*, *ūsui*, *impedimentō*, *cūrae*, *salūti*, *odiō*.

EXERCISE 12.

A.

1. He consulted the welfare of the troops whom Labienus commanded. 2. He said all these matters would be an object of concern to him. 3. It is well known to all that the departure of the Belgians was like a rout. 4. The soldiers told Labienus that Cæsar had always shown special indulgence to this legion. 5. Word was brought to the lieutenant that the general had left two cohorts as a protection to the ships. 6. They said they preferred death to slavery and that they would oppose themselves to the enemy. 7. He found that traders have no access to these tribes. 8. He asked what Cæsar meant, and why he had demanded of them such a great number of hostages. 9. To these envoys Cæsar made answer that he could have no friendship with the Germans. 10. A centurion, who had participated in many engagements, was in command of the troops. 11. He ordered (*imperō*) the soldiers not to surround the camp with a trench nor to go to the assistance of Labienus. 12. Perceiving that they had become suspected in our eyes, they threw themselves at Cæsar's feet.

B. (*Hannibal*, 11-13.)

1. The fortress which had been bestowed on Hannibal as a gift, they surrounded with armed men. 2. It has been handed down to tradition that Hannibal was bitterly hostile to the Romans. 3.

Word was brought to the king that these gifts had excited Hannibal's laughter. 4. They informed the envoys that they devoted all their time to literary pursuits. 5. If Prusias had had the courage to say no to the envoys, Hannibal would not have been surrendered to the Romans. 6. He gives the messenger orders to make plain to the soldiers where the king is. 7. He declared that there was friendship between him and Hannibal. 8. On the battle being begun they all at once sought safety for themselves in flight. 9. The senators considered that Hannibal's strategy would always be a source of safety to the enemy.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 14.*)

1. Hastily seizing their arms, the Germans for a short time resisted our cavalry. 2. In order that time might be given the women and children, they defended the camp for a while. 3. It is better for the Germans to cross the Rhine. 4. Cæsar instructed (*praecipio*) our men not to burst into the enemy's camp. 5. In dismay, the women began to give indication to our troops of the flight of the Germans. 6. He found out that the Germans had neither arms nor baggage. 7. The speed of Cæsar's approval proved the safety of the cavalry. 8. In order to pursue the enemy more quickly, the cavalry was given to Labienus. 9. If Cæsar finds out what the enemy are doing, he will send all the cavalry as reinforcements (*subsidium*) to our men.

CHAPTER XIII.

USES OF THE GENITIVE.

82. The GENITIVE case is used for the more exact limiting of nouns, and has thus an adjectival force. It is also used to limit certain adjectives, and (by analogy) to complete certain verbs. The genitive is regularly translated (a) by the English possessive case, (b) by means of the preposition *of*, or (c) by means of the phrase *as regards*, or some equivalent preposition.

83. The POSSESSIVE GENITIVE is used with a noun to denote the owner ; as,

The lands of the Helvetians: Helvétiorum agrī.

i. The possessive genitive may be used in the predicate with *sum*, *fiō*, etc.; as, *Gaul does not belong to the Roman people: Neque Gallia est populi Rōmānī.*

ii. This predicative use is often found denoting the person whose property, duty, or custom the subject is, especially when the subject is an infinitive or a clause ; as, *It is the part (or duty) of a wise man to obey the laws: Sapientis est lēgibus parēre.* So *Sapientiae est: It is a mark of wisdom.* But instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns the neuter possessives are used ; as, *It is my duty (or my way): Meum est.*

iii. The word on which the genitive depends is frequently omitted, regularly so if it has been used previously in the sentence ; as, *He had been in the army of Sulla, and afterwards in that of Crassus: In exercitū Sullae et postea in Crassī fuerat.*

84. The SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE is used with nouns expressing action or feeling, to denote the person who acts or feels ; as,

The flight of the Gauls: Fuga Gallōrum.

Cæsar's anxiety: Sollicitūdō Caesaris.

i. In all such cases, if the action or feeling were expressed by a verb, the noun in the genitive would be its subject ; as, *The Gauls fled: Galli fugerunt.*

85. The OBJECTIVE GENITIVE is used with nouns denoting action or feeling, to denote that to which the action or feeling is directed ; as,

The storming of the camp: Expugnātiō castrōrum.

The fear of death: Metus mortis.

i. In such cases, if the action or feeling were expressed by a verb, the noun in the genitive would be its object ; as, *They storm the camp*: **Expūgnant castra.**

ii. This construction is often used when there would be no corresponding Latin verb with the accusative, but where we should expect a dative or ablative or prepositional phrase ; and in such cases it will constantly be found that the English equivalent is a phrase containing some other preposition than *of*, but one that, as a rule, is equivalent to *as regards* ; as, *Confidence in (as regards) one's self*: **Sui fiduciā.** *Exemption from (as regards) military service*: **Militiæ vacātiō.** *War with the Veneti*: **Bellum Venetōrum.** *Reputation for valor*: **Opiniō virtūtis.** *Danger to the cavalry*: **Periculum equitum.**¹

iii. Both the objective and the subjective genitive may modify the same noun ; as, *The wrongs done by the Helvetians to the Roman people*: **Helveticōrum injuriæ populi Rōmāni.**

iv. Prepositional phrases² and possessive pronominal adjectives sometimes take the place of the objective genitive ; as, *Danger to himself*: **Periculum suum** (for **sui**).

86. The PARTITIVE GENITIVE is used to denote the whole of which a part is taken.

The genitive is used with nouns, pronouns, numerals (especially ordinals and *millia*), adjectives (especially comparatives and superlatives), and occasionally with a few adverbs ; as,

Part of the soldiers: **Pars militum.**

Which of you? **Quis vestrum?**

Two of the states: **Duæ civitātum.**

The bravest of all these: **Hōrum omnium fortissimī.**

Least of all: **Minimē omnium.**

i The partitive genitive often depends on neuter pronouns or adjectives used substantively (but only in the nominative or the accusative without a preposition) ; e.g., *nihil, tantum, quantum, plūs, minus, quid, quod, aliquid, id, hōc*, and also the adverbs *satis* and *parum* used substantively. In most of these cases the English equivalent omits *of* ; as, *No time*: **Nihil spatii.** *Less hesitation*: **Minus dubitātiōis.** *They carried off what corn they could*: **Frūmenti quod potuerunt avexerunt.** *This measure of consolation*: **Hōc sōlaciū.** *Sufficient protection*: **Satis praesidiū.**³

1. Compare *Sibi confidere, militiā vacare, cum Venetis bellare, de virtute opinari, periculosum equitibus.*

2. Nouns in Latin are joined to each other by prepositions, as a rule, only when the word on which the prepositional phrase depends is of verbal origin and even then but very seldom.

3. This genitive may be an adjective of the first and second declensions used substantively, but not of the third ; as, *No evil*: **Nihil mali** ; but *Nothing greater*: **Nihil majus.**

ii. In other cases an adjective used substantively regularly agrees in gender with the partitive genitive depending on it ; as, *Many of the ships* : **Multae nāvium.**

iii. With adjectives and pronouns the partitive idea is often expressed by prepositions, chiefly *ex* or *dē*, but also *inter*, *ante*, *apud* and *in*. Especially is this the case with *ūnus*, *pauci* and *quidam* ; as, *One of his sons* : **Ūnus ē filiū.** *A few of our men* : **Pauci dē nostris.**

iv. The partitive genitive should not be used in the following cases :

(a) When, though English uses *of*, not a part but the whole is taken ; as, *To all of us* : **Omnibus nobis.** *Three hundred of us have conspired* : **Trecenti conjurāvimus.**

(b) To denote the whole, the remainder, or any local part of anything, as the top, middle, bottom, beginning. Here Latin idiom prefers an adjective in agreement, which regularly precedes the substantive ; as, *The whole of Gaul* : **Tōta Gallia.** *The rest of the struggle* : **Reliquum certāmen.** *The top of the hill* : **Summus collis.** *The middle of the river* : **Medium flūmen.** *At the beginning of spring* : **Primō vēre.**

87. The GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC¹ is used to denote some character or quality of the substantive modified, including value, measure, time, etc. ; as,

A man of great prudence : **Vir cōsiliū magnū.**

Stones of great weight : **Magnī ponderis saxa.**

A few days' march : **Paucōrum diērum iter.**

A six-foot wall : **Mūrus sex pedum.**

i. There must be some adjectival modifier of this genitive ; e.g., *A man of bravery* is not **vir fortitudinis**, but **vir fortis**.

ii. The modifiers most commonly used are numerals and such adjectives as *magnus*, *māximus*, *parvus*, *tantus*, *summus*, *pauci*. The genitive of characteristic should not be used with *pār*, *similis*, *dissimilis*, *aequus*, or with pronouns except in such phrases as *hūjusmodi*, *ējusmodi*.

iii. The genitive of characteristic may be used as a predicate ; as, *The depth of the river was three feet* : **Flūminis erat altitūdō trium pedum.**

iv. For the relation to the ablative of characteristic see section 105, iii.

88. The GENITIVE OF PRICE denotes the value, but only in general, not definite, terms ; as, *His influence was valued highly* : **Auctōritās ejus magnī habēbātur.**

1. Also called the Genitive of *Description* or Genitive of *Quality*.

- i. With verbs of *estimating* are found *tantī, quantī, magnī, parvī, pluris, minōris, nihīlī*, and a few other words.
- ii. With verbs of *buying, selling and costing* are found only *tantī, quantī, pluris, minōris*.
- iii. For the ablative of price see section 100.

89. The GENITIVE OF DEFINITION is used occasionally to explain the meaning of a noun, as a word in apposition might do ; as, *The virtue of justice: Virtūs jūstitiæ*.

i. With words like *urbs, oppidum, flūmen*, etc., this genitive is not used by the best prose writers ; e.g., *The city of Rome* is *Urbs Rōma*, not *Urbs Rōmæ*.

90. The GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.—Many adjectives require a genitive (usually objective) to complete their meaning ; as,

Full of confidence: Fidūciæ plēnus.

Eager for power: Cupidus imperii.

Skilled in war: Peritus belli.

Unaccustomed to toil: Insuētus labōris.

i. The adjectives so used are chiefly those of *desire, knowledge and ignorance, participation and fulness*, so also some verbal adjectives in *-āx* and some present participles used as adjectives ; as, *Averse to exertion: Fuglēns labōris*.

ii. As with the objective genitive after nouns (see section 85, ii.), so after adjectives the preposition used is frequently not *of*, but some equivalent of *as regards*.

iii. Many of these adjectives take other constructions ; while in poetry the number of adjectives taking the genitive is largely extended.

91. The GENITIVE WITH VERBS. Many verbs take a genitive to complete their meaning.

(a) For verbs of *pitying, remembering and forgetting* see section 53, a.

(b) Verbs of *reminding* sometimes take the genitive of the thing called to mind.

(c) Verbs of *accusing, convicting, condemning and acquitting* take the genitive of the fault or crime charged ; as, *You are accusing him of treason: Eum prōditiōnis insimulātis. He was found guilty of wrong-doing: Injūriæ condemnātus est.*

(d) The impersonal verbs of emotion, *miseret, pudet, piget, paenitet* and *taedet* take the accusative of the person who feels,

and the genitive of that which causes the feeling ;¹ as, *I am ashamed of my folly*: *Mē stultitiæ pudet*.

(e) For the genitive with *interest* and *rēfert* see section 53, b.

(f) The genitive is sometimes found with verbs of *plenty* and *want*, with *potior* (see section 55, iii.), and in poetry (after the analogy of the Greek) with verbs denoting *separation*.

EXERCISE 13.

A.

1. He said that this circumstance had dispelled all doubt as to the arrival of the legions. 2. He was a man of consummate ability, and had very great experience in military affairs. 3. He believed that the soldiers of Ariovistus were wholly inexperienced in this mode of fighting. 4. In the middle of this course is the island of Mona. 5. He reminds the soldiers of their old disaster, and urges them not to forget the valor of the enemy. 6. He distributed three months' provisions of ground corn among the soldiers. 7. It is a consul's duty to be of service to the rest of the citizens. 8. The top of the hill was held by a few of our men. 9. Your influence is of great value, your friendship is of greater. 10. He was acquitted of treachery, but found guilty of carelessness. 11. They compelled the Ædui to give them part of their land and to undertake to form no project against the Sequani. 12. He says he is ashamed of his treachery, and sorry for having attempted to revolt.

B. (*Themistocles, Aristides, Hannibal.*)

1. They built a fleet of two hundred ships, of which one hundred were the Spartans'. 2. He asked how much money had been given by the states. 3. He was a man of such integrity that he alone, within the memory of man, was called the Just. 4. They are incited by the hope of victory and by confidence in Hannibal. 5. Being accused of treason, he was punished with three years' exile. 6. The result was that they became skilled in naval warfare. 7. He gave instructions to the rest of the ambassadors to set out with these. 8. Thucydides, who was the nearest of those who have

¹ These verbs (except *miseret*) sometimes have instead of the genitive an infinitive or substantive clause as subject, or a neuter pronoun in the cognate accusative; as, *I am sorry for having done this*: *Me hæc fecisse paenitet*.

written of these events, says that he belonged to this State. 9. Mindful of his former bravery, he was unwilling to seek safety in flight.

C. (Cæsar, Bk. IV. 15.)

1. The rest of the enemy heard the shouting of the Germans.
2. Thirty thousand Germans are harrying the lands of the Gauls.
3. Overcome by their fear of punishment, they wished to depart.
4. Fearing torture at Cæsar's hands, they killed themselves. 5. On learning of their comrades' flight, they threw away their arms.
6. They said that the number of the military standards was one thousand four hundred. 7. Although a large number of the enemy were slain, very few of our men were wounded. 8. Overwhelmed with dread of this war, they withdrew to the confluence of the rivers. 9. So great was the force of the stream that all of the enemy perished to a man.

CHAPTER XIV.

USES OF THE ABLATIVE.

92. The Ablative is an adverbial case, used to determine the circumstances attending upon some action. It is composite in its origin, representing three main ideas: the *true ablative*, meaning *from*; the *instrumental and comitative*, meaning *with*; and the *locative*, meaning *in* or *at*.

A. THE ABLATIVE PROPER.

93. The ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION denotes that from which something is removed or excluded; as,

They cut off Caesar from supplies: Commeātū Caesarem interclūdunt.

They are in need of assistance: Auxiliō egent.

i. The idea of separation is commonly expressed by the ablative with *ā* (*ab*), *ex* or *dē*, especially in the literal local sense. The simple ablative is used chiefly with verbs of *relieving*, *depriving* and *lacking*; with adjectives of *freedom* and *want*; and (less regularly) with verbs of *removing* and *excluding*, especially in the metaphorical sense.

ii. When the ablative denotes a person the preposition should always be used.

iii. The fact that the verb expressing separation may be a compound of *ab*, *ex* or *dē* does not prevent the use of a preposition with the ablative. (See section 78, v. b.)

94. For the ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE FROM WHICH, with or without prepositions, see section 126.

95. The ABLATIVE OF SOURCE tells that from which something is derived. It is found chiefly with participles denoting ancestry or rank; as,

Descended from a very old family: Antiquissimā familiā nātus.

i. A preposition is regularly used (*a*) in the case of finite verbs, (*b*) with pronouns, and (*c*) to denote remote origin.

ii. Here belongs the ablative denoting the *material* of which something is made; with this ablative *ex* is commonly used in prose.

96. The ABLATIVE OF CAUSE¹ is used to denote the motive from which some act proceeds, more rarely the cause of something; as,

In that hope he sought our friendship: Amicis iam eā spē petivit.

i. In place of this ablative we find more frequently prepositional phrases with *ex*, *dē*, *ob*, *per*, *propter*, *prae*, the genitive with *causā* or *gratiā*, or especially to indicate the moving cause, an ablative of means with a participle such as *adductus*, *permotus*.

97. The PERSONAL AGENT with passive verbs is denoted by the ablative with *ā* or *ab*; as,

Their lands are laid waste by the enemy: Agri eōrum ab hostibus vastantur.

i. For the dative of apparent agent see section 80, d.

ii. For the so-called secondary agent with *per* see section 99, i.

98. The ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON (translated by means of *than*) is used after comparatives to denote that with which something is compared; as,

The Ubii are more civilized than the rest: Ubii ceteris hūmāniorēs sunt.

i. This ablative is most often used in negative sentences or their equivalent, and is rarer after adverbs than after adjectives.

ii. As a rule the ablative of comparison is used only when the first of the words compared is in the nominative or is a subject accusative. But the ablative of the relative pronoun is often used when the first of the words compared is an object accusative.

iii. In other cases, as well as often where the ablative might be used, *than* is expressed by *quam*, and a noun or pronoun following takes the case of the word with which it is compared;² as, *Ireland is smaller than Britain: Hibernia minor est quam Britannia.*

iv. The comparatives *plūs*, *minus*, *longius* and *amplius* are regularly used without *quam*, yet without affecting the case of the following word; as, *More than eight hundred ships had been seen: Amplius octingentae nāvēs erant visae.*

v. The ablative of comparison of some abstract words such as *opiniō* and *spēs* is used in place of a comparative clause; as, *Sooner than anyone expected: Celerius omni opiniōne.*

1. This use may also be classed under the Instrumental Ablative.

2. As a general rule, unlike English idiom, the same construction whether of substantives or of verbs follows *quam* as precedes it; as, *He said they did nothing else than make preparations for war: Dixit eos nihil aliud agere quam bellum parare.* See also section 98, vii.

vi. Latin often omits the standard of comparison (e.g., *than is natural, than is usual, than is desirable, than that just mentioned*) when it is easily gathered from the context. In such cases the comparative may generally be translated by *unusually* or *too* with the positive.

vii. When two qualities in the same object are compared with each other, Latin has *quam* with *magis* and the positive, or with the comparative in both clauses; as, *He is more brave than wise: Magis fortis est quam sapientiſ, or Fortior est quam sapientior.* So, too, with the adverbs.

B. THE INSTRUMENTAL AND COMITATIVE ABLATIVE.

99. The ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT is used to denote that by means of which something is effected; as,

It cannot be determined by the eyes: Oculis iudicari nōn potest.

They live on flesh and are clad in skins: Carne vivunt, pellibusque sunt vestiti.

i. A personal instrument is occasionally in the ablative, but is more often expressed by *per* and the accusative; as, *He learns by means of scouts: Cōgnoscit per exploratōrēs.*

ii. The ablative of means is used (a) to denote the route or means of conveyance; (b) with *ūtor, fruor*, etc.; (c) with *opus est* and *ūsus est*; (d) with verbs of *filling* and *abounding* and adjectives of *plenty*.

100. The ABLATIVE OF PRICE is used with verbs of *buying, selling, exchanging* and *costing*; as,

It was purchased for a small price: Parvō pretiō redēptum est.

They exchange war for agriculture: Bellum agriculturā commutant.

i. For the genitive of indefinite price see section 88.

101. The ABLATIVE OF MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE is used with comparatives and words implying comparison to denote the amount by which two persons or things differ; as,

The other road is much easier: Alterum iter est multō facilius.

Ireland is considered a half smaller than Britain: Hibernia dimidiō minor quam Britannia existimatur.

A few days after: Paucis post diēbus.

Three years before: Tribus ante annis.

i. This ablative is used also in designations of distance, e.g., with *distō* and *absum* (where the accusative may be used as well), and

regularly in the case of the words *spatium* and *intervallum*; as, *He halts at a great distance*: **Magnō intervallō cōsistit.**

ii. To this usage belong (a) *quō . . . eō* (or *quantō . . . tantō*) with comparatives, as, *The sooner the better*: **Quē citius eō melius**; (b) *quō* and *quōminus* with the subjunctive (sections 28, iii. and 139); and (c) *eō* or *hōc* with a comparative.¹

102. The ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION is used to denote in what respect a statement or term is to be taken as true; as,

They excel the rest of the Gauls in valor: **Reliquōs Gallōs virtūte præcēdunt.**

103. The ABLATIVE OF MANNER AND ACCOMPANIMENT expresses manner or the attendant circumstances of an action; as,

The news is carried with incredible speed: **Incrēdibilī celeritāte fama perfertur.**

They began to mount the rampart with loud shouts: **Māximō clamōre vallum ascendere coepērunt.**

i. As a rule the ablative of manner and accompaniment requires the preposition *cum* when not modified by an adjective or a genitive, and even when so modified it often has *cum*; as, *He is put to death with torture*: **Cum cruciatū necātur.** *He did this with the greatest care*: **Summā (cum) diligentiā hōc fēcit** Some ablatives, however (e.g., *vī, jūre, cāsū*), never take *cum*, being used virtually as adverbs.

ii. Literal accompaniment is always expressed by *cum* and the ablative; except that in certain military phrases (chiefly of the troops with which a march is made) *cum* may be omitted if the ablative has a modifier; as, *They hastened with all their forces*: **(Cum) omnibus cōpīs contendērunt.**

iii. The ablative of manner denotes that *in accordance with which* something is done; as, *He did this in accordance with Cæsar's instructions*: **Præceptis Cæsaris hōc fēcit.**

104. For the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE, which is perhaps locative in origin, but which in use resembles the ablative of accompaniment in expressing the attendant circumstances of an action, see Chapter VII.

105. The ABLATIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC² is used to denote some character or quality of the noun or pronoun modified; as,

1. This last usage is, however, complicated with the ablative of cause, especially before *quod* clauses.

2. Also called the Ablative of Description or Ablative of Quality.

A young man of great valor : Magnā virtūte adulescēns.

i. This ablative may be used not only attributively but also in the predicate ; as, *They have long hair : Capillō sunt prōmissō* (literally, *They are [a people] with long hair*).

ii. As in the case of the genitive of characteristic (see section 87, i.), there must be some adjectival modifier of this ablative.

iii. When the description refers to *number* the genitive of characteristic should be used. To denote *physical characteristics* or *external appearance* the ablative is used, while for other descriptions either case may be used, with a preference for the genitive to express *permanent* or *inherent qualities*.

C. THE LOCATIVE ABLATIVE.

106. For the ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE WHERE see section 127, and for the ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN OR WITHIN WHICH see sections 130 and 131. ●

107. The ablative is used with 'many special verbs and adjectives, really belonging to the classes already mentioned but not always easy to classify.

i. For the ablative with *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and with verbs of *lacking*, see section 54.

ii. The ablative is used with *glōrior*, *laetor*, *gaudeō* ; *fīdō*, *cōfīdō* ; *nītor* ; *assuēscō*, *assuēfaciō*.

iii. The ablative is used with *dīgnus*, *indīgnus* ; *contentus*, *laetus* ; *frētus*.

108. The ablative is used with the following PREPOSITIONS :

Ā, **ab** (abs), *from, by* ; **absque**, *without* ; **cōram**, *in the presence of* ; **cum**, *with* ; **dē**, *from, concerning* ; **ē**, **ex**, *out of, from* ; **prae**, *before, in comparison with, because of* ; **prō**, *before, in place of, in accordance with* ; **sine**, *without* ; **tenus**, *as far as*.

The ablative is also used with **in**, *in*, and **sub**, *under*, expressing the place where, and sometimes with **subter**, *beneath*, and **super**, *above, concerning*. These four also take the accusative (section 70).

EXERCISE 14.

A.

1. They strengthened the place with a wall, and filled the trench with water. 2. He was a man of the highest merit and worthy of all praise ; relying on the friendship of the Romans he had collected all his retainers, two hundred in number. 3. If they had been able to keep our men from supplies, they would have cut them off from returning. 4. They all stain themselves with woad,

and thus are of more frightful appearance in battle. 5. In order that the soldiers, influenced by the hope of plunder, might not wander too extensively, he did not suffer them to go farther than usual from the camp. 6. He was informed by scouts that the enemy had encamped at the foot of a mountain two days before. 7. If they are of an unfriendly disposition, they will be incensed at this grievance. 8. With such swiftness and vehemence did our soldiers advance that more than six hundred of the enemy were slain. 9. Advancing with the charioteers, whom they are accustomed to use in all their battles, they prevent our men from landing from the ship. 10. In accordance with their custom, they were boasting insultingly of their victory. 11. Whether by chance or design they had been led out of the camp without baggage. 12. The Helvetians were much braver than the rest of the Gauls.

B. (Themistocles, Aristides, Hannibal.)

1. In the same manner he defeated Antiochus two years later by strategy. 2. He was informed by letter that the Greeks would cut him off from returning. 3. If the harbor is surrounded with walls, it will surpass the city in usefulness. 4. It happened by chance that the master of the horse was of equal authority. 5. Terrified by this strange circumstance they took poison of their own accord. 6. More than two hundred cities were taken by force. 7. In accordance with the common law of nations, he was banished from his country. 8. Through the instrumentality of Sosilus, whom he employed as teacher, he became versed in Greek literature.

C. (Cæsar, Bk. IV. 16.)

1. For these reasons after the hostages were given up, he took his army across the Rhine by means of boats. 2. The Suebi pressed them harder than did the Usipetes. 3. Impelled by this hope they gave up less than thirty hostages to Cæsar. 4. Against Cæsar's will they had returned to join the Germans. 5. Cæsar many years before had been prevented from crossing by the pressure of public business. 6. Messengers have come concerning public business from the nations which are under the sway of the Roman people. 7. They are considered by the other nations to have great strength in cavalry. 8. He answered through messengers that they had been kept by the envoys from fleeing.

CHAPTER XV.

VERBAL NOUNS—INFINITIVE, GERUND, SUPINE.

A. THE INFINITIVE.

109. The Infinitive is a verbal noun. As a verb it is modified by an adverb, not by an adjective; it governs the same case as other parts of the verb; it has the distinction of tense, and it has a subject. As a noun it is used as a subject or object of verbs, or as an appositive, and is always neuter.¹

110. THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT.—The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may be used as the *subject* of a verb; as,

It is best to defend the camp: Castra defendere praestat.

*It is not right for the Germans to cross over: Germānōs trānsire nōn aequum est.*²

It was reported that the cavalry was approaching: Nūtiātum est equitēs accēdere.

He shows that carrying out their plans is an easy matter: Perfacile esse probat cōnāta perficere.

i. This usage is found chiefly with (a) certain impersonal verbs, e.g., *oportet*, *licet*, *juvat*, *placet*; (b) *est* and neuter adjectives, such as *aequum*, *turpe*, *utile*, *necesse*; (c) passive verbs *sentiendī et declārandī*.

ii. Except with passive verbs *sentiendī et declārandī*, the tense of the infinitive used is almost invariably the present, the perfect occurring but seldom, and the future never.

111. THE INFINITIVE AS OBJECT.—The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, is used as the object of a verb; as,

He says Caesar has come: Dicit Caesarem vēnisse.

He wished to depart: Discēdere volēbat.

i. For the accusative and infinitive construction see Chapter I., for the complementary infinitive, Chapter II. For the infinitive as an appositive see section 195.

112. THE HISTORICAL INFINITIVE.—In lively description the present infinitive, with its subject in the *nominative* case, is often

1. In the case of the historical infinitive, however, the infinitive has the value of a verb, not of a noun.

2. Notice that neither the introductory *for* nor the representative subject *it* is expressed in Latin by any separate word.

found instead of the imperfect indicative ; generally several such infinitives are found together ; as,

Cæsar every day kept dunning the Ædui ; day after day the Ædui kept putting him off : Cotidiē Cæsar Aeduōs flāgitāre ; diem ex diē dūcere Aedui.

B. THE GERUND.

113. The Gerund is a verbal noun found only in the genitive, dative, accusative and ablative singular. Like the infinitive, it is modified by an adverb, and governs the same case as the other parts of the verb.

In use the gerund corresponds pretty closely to the English imperfect gerund in *-ing*, but often also, especially with *ad*, it may be translated by the English (gerundial) infinitive with *to*.

114. (a) The Genitive of the gerund is used chiefly as an objective genitive with nouns and adjectives, and with *causā* ; as, *Desirous of making war : Bellandi cupidus. For the purpose of foraging : Frumentandi causā.*

(b) The Dative of the gerund is rarely found, and is used chiefly with adjectives denoting *fitness* (for which *ad* and the accusative is more common), and in some official phrases ; as, *A wall sufficiently high for defence : Satis altus tuendō murus.*

(c) The Accusative of the gerund is used only with prepositions, chiefly *ad* and *in* ; as, *Ready to fight (or Ready for fighting) : Parātus ad dimicandum.*

(d) The Ablative of the gerund is used to denote means and with prepositions, chiefly *in*, *ab*, *dē* and *ex* ; as, *Occupied in reaping : In metendō occupātī.*

i. The use of the gerund with an accusative object is, on the whole, rare. See section 119.

C. THE SUPINE.

115. The Supine is a verbal noun found only in the accusative and ablative singular, in both cases with adverbial force. It is translated by the English infinitive with *to*.¹

1. The supine in *-um* corresponds to the English (gerundial) infinitive with *to* after verbs ; the supine in *-u* to the English infinitive with adjectives and nouns.

116. The ACCUSATIVE SUPINE, or supine in *-um*, is used to denote purpose, especially after verbs of motion, and if transitive may take an accusative object ; as,

They send envoys to Cæsar to ask aid: Lēgātōs ad Cæsarem mittunt rogātum auxilium.

i. The construction is not common in classical Latin, which prefers to express purpose by the final subjunctive, or by the gerund and gerundive with *ad* or *causā*. It is used most frequently with *eō* and *veniō*, and also in the phrase *nūptum dare* (or *collocāre*).

ii. The rare future infinitive passive is formed by means of *īrī* (present infinitive passive of *eō* used impersonally) and this supine ; as, *He says the city will be taken: Dicit urbem captum īrī* (literally, *there is a going to take the city*). Here *urbem* is really the object of *captum*, not the subject of *captum īrī*.

117. The ABLATIVE SUPINE, or supine in *-ū*, is used to define the application of certain adjectives and of the nouns *fās* and *nefās* ; as,

This is difficult to do: Hōc est difficile factū.

Incredible to narrate: Incredibile dictū.

It is a sin to say so: Hōc nefās est dictū.

i. The adjectives so used are chiefly those meaning *easy, difficult, pleasant, strange, best*. The supines so used are chiefly *audītū, dictū, factū, visū, nātū*.

ii. The ablative supine does not take an accusative object.

EXERCISE 15.

A.

1. The lieutenant brought word to Cæsar that he had found the ships ready for sailing. 2. They saw that our men were not advancing for the purpose of fighting. 3. After making a bridge Cæsar attempted to cross the river and pursue the enemy. 4. He proves to them that it is a very easy thing to do, to seize the supreme power. 5. For quickness in loading, the ships were made lower. 6. If messengers had come to Cæsar to ask help, he would have sent three legions to their assistance. 7. Answer was made that it was better to be slain in battle than not to recover their freedom. 8. By making enquiry, Cæsar found that the rest of the cavalry had been thrown into a panic. 9. They hurl their weapons at the enemy and give them no opportunity of retiring. 10. They

thought the best thing to do was to cut off our men from supplies, and protract the affair into the winter. 11. He learned from the soldiers that the ships were useless for sailing, and although he was ready to set out, he thought it would be extremely dangerous for the soldiers to embark. 12. So fierce an onset did the enemy make that there was no possibility of keeping one's position on the wall.

B. (Cæsar, Bk. IV. 27, 28.)

1. The leading men came to Cæsar to seek peace and to complain of the indiscretion of the common people. 2. It has been pointed out above that the enemy had surrendered part of the hostages. 3. He pointed out what was the reason for disembarking. 4. He had brought to them Cæsar's instructions regarding returning to their lands. 5. They kept laying the blame on the common people, and saying they would surrender the hostages at once, and commending themselves to Cæsar. 6. He said that the ships would be carried back by the storm to the mainland. 7. He ordered the soldiers to send back the hostages when they were given up. 8. A day was appointed (*dicō*) for assembling. 9. By setting out for the open sea they escaped (*effugiō*) a greater danger.

C. (Cæsar, Bk. IV. 18.)

1. Cæsar began to get timber together and build a bridge. 2. Time will be left the Sugambri for withdrawing from their territories. 3. He will order a strong guard to be left at the bridge. 4. The envoys answered Cæsar that the hostages would be brought. 5. Several envoys came to Cæsar to seek peace and friendship. 6. He answered that it was best (*optimus*) for all to prepare for flight. 7. The answer was given that the Sugambri had concealed themselves in the forest. 8. The Usipetes answered that a day had been fixed (*dicō*) for leaving their territories. 9. It is difficult (*difficilis*) to say why the army has been led across the bridge.

CHAPTER XVI.

VERBAL ADJECTIVES—GERUNDIVE, PARTICIPLES.

A. THE GERUNDIVE.

118. The Gerundive (sometimes called the future participle passive) is a verbal adjective of the first and second declensions, and agrees with its substantive.

119. THE GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION.—Instead of the *gerund governing* a direct object in the accusative, we often find the substantive put in the case required by the context and the *gerundive in agreement* with it. This is the regular usage after prepositions and in the dative case, and is preferable in the genitive and the ablative of means; as,

He sets out to harass the enemy: Ad hostēs vexandōs proficiscitur (in place of *ad vexandum hostēs*).

They lose time in seeking their comrades: In quaerendīs suis tempus dimittunt (in place of *in quaerendō suis*).

An opportunity is afforded of marching through the province: Facultās datur per prōvinciam itineris faciendī (in place of *iter faciendī*).

i. The various cases are used in the same way in the gerundive construction as in the gerund. (See section 114.)

ii. The gerundive construction cannot be used with intransitive verbs; as, *For the purpose of resisting the enemy: Hostibus resistendī causā* (never *Hostium resistendōrum causā*). But *utor*, *fruor*, *fungor* and *potior*, which governed the accusative in old Latin, regularly take the gerundive construction; as, *The hope of taking the camp: Spēs potiundōrum castrōrum*.

iii. In the case of neuter pronouns and neuter adjectives used substantively, the gerund with an object accusative is regular, even after prepositions; as, *For the purpose of doing something: Aliquid agendī causā*.

iv. With *meī*, *tuī*, *sui*, *nostrī*, *vestrī*, the gerund or gerundive in *-ndī* is used, without regard to either gender or number; as, *For the purpose of clearing themselves (or herself): Sui pūrgandī causā*.¹

1. If *pūrgandī* is the gerund, *sui* may either be the pronominal adjective modifying the gerund regarded as a substantive, or be the pronoun depending as an objective genitive upon the gerund; the usual explanation given is that *pūrgandī* is the gerundive agreeing with *sui*, which, like *meī*, *nostrī*, etc., was in its origin the genitive of the neuter singular possessive, *suum*=*their* (or *her*) *personality*.

120. THE PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION. — The gerundive is used in the nominative and accusative as a predicate adjective with *sum*, to denote *duty* or *necessity*; as,

Everything had to be done by Cæsar: Caesarī omnia erant agenda.

He decided that the Rhine must be crossed: Statuit Rhenum esse transeundum.

i. The expression is always passive, the agent being in the dative (see section 80, d). The English equivalent is, however, constantly in the active; as, *Cæsar had to do everything. He decided that he must cross the Rhine.*

ii. In this construction intransitive verbs are used impersonally (see section 56), the gerundive taking the same case as the verb from which it is formed; as, *There must be no delay: Nōn est cunctandum. They had to fight: Erat pugnandum. These things ought to be used: His rebus utendum est.*

121. The accusative of the gerundive is used in predicative agreement with the object of certain verbs (chiefly verbs of *giving*, *assigning*, *undertaking* and *caring for*) to express *purpose*; as, *He hands them over to the Ædui to guard: Hōs Aeduis custodiendōs trādit. He provided for the transportation of the army: Exercitum transportandum cūrāvit.*

B. THE PARTICIPLES.

122. For the grammatical value of the participle and the use of the *present* and *perfect* participles see Chapter VI.

123. The *future* participle denotes an action as about to happen at a time *subsequent* to that of its principal verb. Its chief uses are (a) to form (with *esse*) the future infinitive active in the accusative and infinitive construction, and (b) to form the active periphrastic conjugation. It is but rarely used as an adjective or substantive (*futūrus* being the chief instance); in poetry and late prose writers it is used appositively to express intention or probability.

124. THE ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION. — The future participle is used as a predicate adjective with *sum* to express *intention*, *likelihood*, or *imminence*; as,

You are about to fight: Pugnātūrī estis.

He said that he had been on the point of setting out: Dixit se profectūrum fuisse.

EXERCISE 16.

A.

1. Cæsar is about to lead out his forces with the object of crushing the enemy. 2. He answered that the soldiers must not waste the time for fighting in searching for their comrades. 3. He caused two bridges to be built for the purpose of following up the enemy. 4. All hope of gaining possession of the town has vanished. 5. The enemy was on the point of making an attack on the cavalry. 6. He perceived that he would have to set out at once. 7. We should not let slip the opportunity of freeing ourselves for ever. 8. He will give this legion to Labienus to lead back. 9. They did not think that so large a number of hostages should have been required. 10. They were assembling from all sides to defend the camp.

B. (*Cæsar, Book IV. 29-31.*)

1. An opportunity had been given our men to bring in corn. 2. They were about to form a conspiracy for the purpose of renewing the war. 3. He had caused corn to be provided and timber brought from Gaul. 4. Cæsar had to cross over into Britain. 5. The ships are useless for carrying back the legion. 6. We shall have to make use of bronze for repairing this ship. 7. Corn must be brought in daily. 8. The Britons should have shut the Romans out from supplies. 9. The legions are going to winter in Britain.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 19.*)

1. All ought to assemble with a view to holding a council. 2. He discovered that they were going to burn their towns. 3. A few days were spent in achieving these objects. 4. He provided for the construction of a bridge. 5. The Germans should have broken down the bridge for the purpose of freeing themselves. 6. Thinking that the Sugambri would break down the bridge, they intended to withdraw into Gaul. 7. The crops must be cut down in order to strike terror into the Germans. 8. Cæsar had to lead his army across for the purpose of taking vengeance on the Germans. 9. They had learned for what purpose he was about to build this bridge.

CHAPTER XVII.

EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE AND TIME.

125. PLACE TO WHICH (limit of motion) is denoted by the accusative with *ad* or *in*, except that with names of towns and small islands, and with *domum*, *domōs* (*home*), and *rūs* (*to the country*), the preposition is omitted ; as,

They hasten to the camp : *Ad castra contendunt.*

He sets out for Britain : *In Britanniam proficiscitur.*

He sets out for Rome : *Rōmā proficiscitur.*

They returned home : *Domum rediērunt.*

i. With names of towns *ad* is used (a) to denote *into* (or *in*) the neighborhood of, and (b) sometimes in contrast with *ab* in expressions of direction ; as, *He came into the neighborhood of Geneva* : *Ad Genāvam pervēnit.* *He pitched his camp near Alesia* : *Ad Alesiam castra fēcit.*

126. PLACE FROM WHICH is denoted by the ablative with *ab*, *ex* or *dē*, except that with names of towns and small islands, and with *domō* (*from home*) and *rūre* (*from the country*), the preposition is omitted ; as,

They withdrew from the shore : *Ā litore discessērunt.*

They crossed over from Belgium : *Ex Belgio trāsiērunt.*

He fled from Corinth : *Corinthō fugit.*

They had gone away from home : *Domō discesserant.*

i. With names of towns *ab* is used (a) to denote *from the neighborhood of*, (b) sometimes in contrast with *ad* in expressions of direction, and (c) with *longē* and verbs of distance ; as, *It is three hundred miles from Zama* : *Ā Zamā abest millia passuum trecenta.*

127. PLACE WHERE is denoted by the ablative with *in*, except that with names of towns and small islands, and with a few common nouns the preposition is omitted ; as,

He stood on the wall : *In mūrō cōstitit.*

They spend the winter in Gaul : *In Galliā hiemant.*

He died at Athens : *Athēnis mortuus est.*

i. In names of towns and islands of the first and second declensions in the singular, the locative (identical in form with the

genitive) is used, not the ablative; as, *At Rome: Rōmae. At Corinth: Corinthī.* So occasionally in the third declension singular (where the locative is identical in form with the dative, as *Carthāginī*), and regularly in the words *domī, rūri, humī, bellī, militiæ.*

ii. The words *locus* and *pars*, and other nouns when modified by *tōtus* (and sometimes by *medius, omnis* or *cūctus*), may be used in the ablative without a preposition; as, *On suitable ground: Idōneō locō. Throughout the whole camp: Tōtis castris.*

iii. Often where English uses *in, motion towards* is implied, and Latin consequently uses the accusative; as, *They concealed themselves in the woods* (that is, *went into the woods and hid*): *In silvās sē abdidērunt.*

Collocō and *pōnō*, however, take the ablative with *in*.

iv. For such expressions as *He came to the senate at Rome* (where *at Rome* is an adjectival phrase modifying *senate*), Latin has *Rōmam ad senātum vēnit* (where both expressions modify the verb). Similarly, *He came from the senate at Rome* is *Rōmā ā senātū vēnit.*¹

v. With *pars, latus, agmen, cornū, tergum, frōns*, the direction in which or the side on which is expressed by the ablative with *ab* (and in the case of *pars*, also with *ex*); as, *In front: Ā fronte. On one side: Ūnā ex parte.*

128. EXTENT OF SPACE is expressed by the accusative, with verbs and with the adjectives *longus, altus* and *lātus*; as,

He advances three miles: Tria millia passuum prōcēdit.

A trench five feet deep: Fossa quinque pedēs alta.

i. With *absum* and *distō* either this accusative or the ablative of measure of difference may be used. (Section 101, i.)

129. DURATION OF TIME is expressed by the accusative; as,

He waits there a few days: Paucōs diēs ibi morātur.

*He was twenty years old: Viginti annōs nātus erat.*²

i. *How long ago* is expressed by *abhinc* and the accusative; *how long before* and *how long after* by *ante* and *post* with (a) the accusative

1. On a somewhat similar principle, where English has a common noun, like *town* or *city* (modified by an adjective or its equivalent), in apposition with the name of a place, with the corresponding nouns Latin generally uses a preposition to express *motion towards, motion from* or *place where*, instead of having *urbs* or *oppidum* in apposition with the proper name; as, *They halted at Alba, a convenient city: Albae constitērunt in urbe opportuna. I came to Athens, a most famous city: Athenas in urbem praeclarissimam veni. He set out from Cures, a town of the Sabines: Curibus ex oppido Sabinorum p. ofectus est.*

2. Literally, *He had been born twenty years.*

tive or (b) the ablative of measure of difference ; as, *A few days after* : *Post paucōs diēs* or *Paucis post diēbus*.

130. TIME WHEN is expressed by the ablative ; as,

He returns on the fifth day : *Quintō diē revertitur*.

At sunset he led back his forces : *Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās redūxit*.

131. TIME WITHIN WHICH is expressed by the ablative ; as,

He has been put to death within the last few days : *His paucis diēbus interfectus est*.

i. Occasionally, by inference, the ablative of the time within which, especially with *tōtus*, may be equivalent to the accusative of the time how long ; as, *They marched all that night* : *Eā tōtā nocte iērunt*.

EXERCISE 17.

A.

1. After waiting in Italy three months he returned from Rome to Athens. 2. The enemy took up their position on wooded ground eight miles from Cæsar's camp. 3. Four years ago a battle was fought in the neighborhood of Massilia. 4. This river, he replied, was sixty feet wide and about five feet deep. 5. Setting out from the army in Gaul, he came a few days later to the river Thames in the enemy's country. 6. They were ordered to leave home within three days and hide in the nearest woods. 7. He set out for the country at the beginning of spring and returned home the next year. 8. The battle was begun on the right wing. 9. He came from Geneva in the consulship of Crassus and Pompey, and lived for several years at Rome and Athens. 10. On the same day, he was informed that the enemy's forces were three miles distant from Bibracte. 11. He said that he was nine years old. 12. After completing a march of twenty miles, they remained in camp for several successive days.

B. (Cæsar, Bk. IV. 32-34.)

1. For several days the rest of the cavalry remained in the camp. 2. On the seventh day Cæsar set out from Rome for Britain. 3. A few days later the Romans were driven out of the camp. 4. If they halt on unfavorable ground we shall suddenly attack them by

night on two sides. 5. At an opportune moment they came to steep ground. 6. After several days had elapsed the barbarians betook themselves to their forests. 7. For a larger part of that day Cæsar remained in the neighborhood of Rome. 8. Four years ago Cæsar departed for home. 9. Several days before Cæsar's arrival the legions had marched in that direction. 10. They lay concealed in the forest six miles from the enemy's camp.

C. (Cæsar, Bk. IV. 20.)

1. He found that the harbor was suitable for a large part of the winter. 2. In the war with the Gauls he summoned the leaders from every side. 3. On the north was an island. 4. Two days later the forces will set out for the harbor. 5. The winter is earlier in Gaul than at Rome. 6. War had been waged in those regions for many years. 7. Cæsar set out from Britain for home. 8. Setting out for the island they concealed themselves in a suitable place. 9. During all that time the Gauls were five miles distant. 10. Within that year he had examined all the coast.

CHAPTER XVIII.

IMPERATIVE—INDEPENDENT USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

132. **COMMANDS.**—The present imperative is regularly used to express commands and entreaties ; as,

Consider Gaul : Respice Galliam.

i. As in English, there are many substitutes for the imperative ; e.g., (a) periphrases with *jubeō*, *petō*, *crō*, etc. ; (b) *velim* (*I should like*), and *fac* or *cūrā* (*see to it, be sure*) with the present subjunctive (with or without *ut*).

ii. The future imperative expresses rather a contingent command than one to be immediately obeyed. Hence it is used in laws and precepts, and in distinct reference to the future.

133. **PROHIBITIONS** are usually expressed by *nōlī*, *nōlīte* (*be unwilling*) with the present infinitive ; as,

Do not suppose : Nōlīte existimāre.

i. Prohibitions are also expressed (a) by *cavē*, *cavē nē*, *vidē nē*, or *fac nē*, and the present subjunctive ; (b) by *nē* and the present or perfect subjunctive, but chiefly in familiar discourse ; (c) in poetry by *nē* and the present imperative.

134. The subjunctive is used independently to represent action as *willed*. The following varieties exist :

(a) **HORTATIVE.**—The first person of the present subjunctive is used to exhort, or, with *nē*, to dissuade ; as, *Let us consider Gaul : Galliam respiciāmus. Let us not despair : Nē dēspērēmus.*

(b) **JUSSIVE.**—The third person of the present subjunctive is used to command, or, with *nē*, to forbid ; as, *Let the consuls see to it : Videant cōsulēs.*

i. So too the second person of the present or perfect subjunctive is used with *nē* to express prohibition (section 133, i. b).

(c) **CONCESSIVE.**—The present and perfect subjunctive are used to concede for the sake of argument, the negative being *nē* ; as, *Granting that pain is not the greatest evil, still it certainly is an evil : Nē sit summum malum dolor, malum certē est.*

(d) **DELIBERATIVE QUESTION.**—The first person of the present and imperfect subjunctive is used to ask for direction (though without

expecting an answer), and thus comes to express perplexity or indignation; as, *What am I to do? Quid faciam? What was I to do? Quid facerem? Are we to yield to him? Huc cēdamus?*

135. The subjunctive is used independently to represent action as *desired*.

This is called the OPTATIVE subjunctive or the subjunctive of DESIRE. The negative is *nē*. The present tense is used to express wishes viewed as practicable; the imperfect and pluperfect to express wishes viewed as impossible of fulfilment in present and past time respectively. Such clauses are frequently introduced by *utinam*, regularly so in the case of the imperfect and pluperfect tenses; as, *May they be happy: Sint beāti. Would that he were present: Utinam adesset. Would that I had never been born: Utinam nē nātus essem.*

136. The subjunctive is used independently to represent action as *conceivable*.

This is the so-called POTENTIAL subjunctive, used of present and past time. It is generally to be translated by *could*, *would* or *should*, and takes the negative *nōn*. The following varieties exist:

(a) STATEMENTS.—(1) Modest expressions of wish or regret with *velim* or *vellem* and their compounds, followed often by another subjunctive of desire; as, *I should like to know: Velim scire. I would rather he were present: Māliem adesset.* (2) With the indefinite second person; as, *You (=one) would have thought: Putārēs.* (3) In softened assertions; as, *It would scarcely seem probable: Vix vērisimile videātur.*

This last usage is found chiefly in the protasis of subjunctive conditional sentences (see sections 61 and 63).

i. Latin, however, often has the indicative where we might expect the potential subjunctive. So regularly with *possum*, *dēbeō*, etc., with the passive periphrastic conjugation, and with *est* and predicate adjectives such as *aequum*, *melius*, *satis*, *facile*, etc.; as, *I might have said more: Plūra poteram dicere. It would be tedious to tell everything: Longum est omnia nārrāre.* (See section 64, i.)

(b) RHETORICAL APPEALS, asking whether something is conceivable; as, *Who could doubt? Quis dubitet? Who would ever have thought? Quis umquam arbitrārētur?*

137. Notice the values of *would* in the following sentences, and the different ways of translating it into Latin:

(a) *I thought he would come: Arbitrābar eum ventūrum esse* (15, c).

(b) *I asked what they would do: Rogavi quid facturillessent* (36).

(c) *He would not do this: Nōluit haec facere or Negāvit sē haec facturum.*

(d) *If he were alive he would be present: SI viveret, adesset* (61).

(e) *If you should do this, he would come: SI haec faciās, veniat* (63).

(f) *Would that he would come! Utinam veniat!* (135).

(g) *Would that he had come! Utinam vēnisset!* (135).

(h) *It would be better to do this: Melius est haec facere* (136, a, 1).

(i) *Who would venture to do this? Quis haec facere audent?* (136, b).

(j) *I was afraid he would come: Verēbar nē venīret* (138).

(k) *Whenever they came, he would do this: Ubi vēnerant, haec faciēbat* (180, b).

EXERCISE 18.

A.

1. Let us not fear the enemy, however numerous, nor return to the camp, unless victorious. 2. Would that Cæsar had not been unwilling to send two legions to the assistance of Labienus. 3. Who can endure that his freedom should be taken away from him? 4. Remember the former valor of the Helvetians, soldiers. 5. Let the Gauls send envoys to Cæsar to seek peace. 6. Do not let slip this opportunity of waging war. 7. What was I to say? It would have been easy to make many promises; but who would have believed me? 8. I should like you to inform me at once of his departure. 9. Would that Cæsar would allow us to march through the province. 10. Advance towards the shore and do not betray the eagle to the enemy. 11. He would not announce to the soldiers when he would set out. 12. One would have supposed that the envoys would not return the next day.

B. (Cæsar, Bk. IV. 35-38.)

1. Soldiers, withstand the attack of the enemy; do not take to flight. 2. Would that Cæsar had set sail the day before. 3. Let the other states not omit to send hostages. 4. I should not like

to use the marshes as a place of refuge. 5. One would have thought that the Senate would decree a thanksgiving. 6. Lay down your arms if you do not want to be put to death. 7. It would not have been easy to escape this danger. 8. After routing the enemy, let us burn all the buildings. 9. Where are we to betake ourselves (*nōs*)? Are we to conceal ourselves in the marshes?

C. (Cæsar, Bk. IV. 21).

1. Let us send the envoys home and set out as soon as possible with all the fleet. 2. Land from the vessel, soldiers, and find out these matters. 3. Would that an opportunity might be given of making the attempt. 4. What was he to do? Was he to report to Cæsar that he dared not return home? 5. I should have preferred that he had visited these states. 6. Let all the states give hostages and be faithful to the Roman people. 7. Return to the ship, Volusenus, do not entrust yourself to the Britons. 8. Who would embrace an alliance with Cæsar? It would be better to make trial of war. 9. Thinking they would discover his design, he would not announce what states he would visit.

CHAPTER XIX.

VERBS OF FEARING—USES OF *Quin* AND *Quominus*.

138. After verbs of fearing and such phrases as *metus est*, *periculum est*, *that* and *lest* are translated by *nē*,¹ and *that not* by *ut*, with the present subjunctive after the primary tenses, the imperfect subjunctive after the secondary tenses ; as,

I fear that he will do this (or I fear lest he do this): Vereor nē hōc faciat.

I fear that he will not do this: Vereor ut hōc faciat.

There was danger that they would be surrounded: Periculum erat nē circumvenirentur.

i. For *ut*, *nē nōn* is very commonly used, regularly so after *nōn vereor*.

ii. Verbs of fearing may be used as modal verbs, followed by the infinitive to represent a corresponding infinitive in the English ; as, *I fear to do this: Vereor haec facere.*

139. Verbs and phrases of *hindering* and *objecting*, and negative verbs and phrases of *doubting*, *failure* or *omission*, are regularly followed by the subjunctive with the introductory particles *quīn*, *quōminus* or *nē*,¹ according to the following rules ; the present subjunctive being used after the primary tenses, the imperfect subjunctive after the secondary tenses.²

N.B.—*Quīn* is used only after negatives or virtual negatives.

(a) Verbs of *hindering*, e.g., *dēterreō*, *impediō*, *retineō*, and also *recūsō*, *I object* (if negatived), take *quōminus* or *quīn* ; or (if not negatived) *quōminus* or *nē* ; as,

They did not object to coming: Nōn recūsābant quīn (or quōminus) venirent.

They hinder the Ædui from bringing in corn: Æduōs dēterrent quōminus (or nē) frūmentum cōferant.

1. The apparently redundant negative (*ne*, *quo-minus*, *quin=qui-ne*) in these clauses is due to the fact that the clauses now dependent were once independent clauses expressing a desire ; this has been developed through a final clause into a substantive clause ; as, *I fear ; may he not do this. They hinder the Ædui in order that they may not bring in corn.* English, unlike Latin, tends to look at prevention as the result, not the purpose, of the hindering.

2. It should be observed that *quīn* and *quōminus* with the subjunctive often answer to the English gerund governed by a preposition.

i. *Prohibeo* regularly takes the accusative and infinitive (section 22, i.), while *nōn recūsō* also may take the infinitive.

(b) Negative verbs and phrases of doubting, e.g., *nōn dubitō*, *nōn est dubium*, take *quān*; as,

There was no doubt that they had (or of their having) very great power: Nōn erat dubium quān plurimum possent.

i. *Dubitō*, *I hesitate*, regularly takes the infinitive.

X(c) Negative verbs and phrases of failure or omission, such as *nihil praetermittō* (*I leave nothing undone*), *haud multum absum* (*I am within a little*), *facere nōn possum* (*I cannot but or I cannot help*), take *quān*; as,

And a suspicion is not wanting that he committed suicide: Neque abest suspiciō quān ipse sibi mortem cōrselverit.

They let no time go by without stirring up the states: Nullum tempus intermisērunt quān civitatēs sollicitārent.

i. For *quān* after such expressions as *nēmō est* see section 33, ii.

EXERCISE 19.

A.

1. I fear the soldiers will not be able to take the city by storm. 2. Who could doubt that the Romans are going to take our freedom away from us? 3. They promised to raise no objections to being for ever under the sway of the enemy. 4. There was great danger of the enemy's crossing the river and making an attack upon the camp. 5. Cæsar could not but suspect that they were about to renew the war. 6. They believed that Cæsar by his influence could hinder the Germans from being brought across the Rhine. 7. He feared that the soldiers would not be able to cross the bridge and attack the enemy in the rear. 8. There was no doubt that the Ædui were hesitating to declare war. 9. Several vessels were prevented by the storms from being able to reach the same port. 10. There is no one who does not know that he feared to disembark. 11. We fear that the soldiers will be unwilling to defend the camp. 12. Not even at the conference could the Gauls be deterred from hurling weapons at our men.

B. (Cæsar, Bk. V. 1, 2.)

1. The Gauls feared that Cæsar would leave hither Gaul for the winter quarters of the army. 2. He prevented the Germans from setting out to lay waste the province. 3. There was no doubt that

they used lower ships in that sea. 4. The soldiers did not object to repairing the old vessels. 5. Cæsar was within a little of having the ships launched. 6. There is danger that the Gauls will not assemble nor obey Cæsar's authority. 7. Cæsar did not hesitate to place a lieutenant in charge of this business. 8. There was no one but knew that Cæsar was in command of the legion. 9. They promised to leave nothing undone to make amends to Cæsar.

C. (Cæsar, Bk. IV. 22.)

1. Thinking that they were afraid of being left behind, he ordered them to come to him. 2. He could not help preferring Britain to these trifling matters. 3. He will be prevented from having an opportunity of taking the legion across. 4. There is danger of this happening. 5. The Morini did not object to bringing a larger number of hostages. 6. No one doubted that they were staying in Britain for the purpose of guarding the harbor. 7. They fear they will not be able to carry on war. 8. He did not hesitate to promise to take them under his protection. 9. There is no one who does not think that he will assign these vessels to the cavalry.

CHAPTER XX.

DUTY, NECESSITY, POSSIBILITY, PERMISSION.

140. DUTY or OBLIGATION is expressed most frequently by the *gerundive with esse*, also by *dēbeō* and *oportet*.

(a) For the gerundive with *esse* (the passive periphrastic conjugation) see section 120.

(b) *Dēbeō* takes the present infinitive, and the impersonal verb *oportet* takes the accusative and the present infinitive;¹ as,

Cæsar ought to come to me: Cæsar ad mē venire dēbet, or Cæsarem ad mē venire oportet.

i. The infinitive remains in the *present* tense with all forms of these verbs, while the verbs themselves change according to the time of the action; as, *Cæsar ought to have come: Cæsar venire dēbēbat, or Cæsarem venire oportuit. Cæsar ought to come to-morrow: Cæsar venire crās dēbēbit, or Cæsarem venire crās oportēbit.*

141. NECESSITY is expressed most frequently by the *gerundive with esse*, also by *necesse est*.

(a) For the gerundive with *esse* (the passive periphrastic conjugation) see section 120.

(b) *Necesse est* is used with the dative and the present infinitive to express what is *inevitable* rather than what is obligatory or binding;¹ as,

All men must die: Omnibus necesse est mori.

142. POSSIBILITY or ABILITY is expressed by *possum* and the present infinitive; as,

The river can be crossed: Flūmen trānsiri potest.

They were unable to defend themselves: Sē dēfendere nōn poterant.

It is impossible for us to cross: Trānsire nōn possumus.

We could (or might) have been useful friends: Poterāmus esse ūtīlēs amici.

143. PERMISSION is expressed by *licet* with the dative and the present infinitive;¹ as,

1. The impersonal verbs *licet*, *necesse est* and *oportet* may also take the subjunctive; as, *You ought to do this: Haec facias oportet.* With *necesse est* the subjunctive often has *ut*.

You may remain: Licet vōbīs remanēre.

They were not allowed to depart: Discēdere illīs nōn licēbat.

i. A predicate noun or adjective referring to the dative agrees with it in case; as, *We may be free: Nōbīs licet esse liberis.*

144. Notice the values of *should* in the following sentences and the different ways of translating it into Latin:

(a) *I said I should return at once: Dixi mē statim redi-tūrum esse (15, c).*

(b) *He did this so that I should not return: Haec fecit nē redirem (24).*

(c) *If he had done this I should not be returning: Si haec fecisset nōn redirem (61).*

(d) *If he should do this (or Should he do this), I should return at once: Si haec faciat, statim redeam (63).*

(e) *It is best that he should return at once: Optimum est eum statim redire (110, i.).*

(f) *You should return at once: Statim vōbīs est redeun-dum (120).*

(g) *I should like you to return: Velim redeās (136, a).*

(h) *I feared that I should not return: Veritus sum ut (or nē nōn) redirem (138).*

(i) *He waited until they should return: Dum redirent expec-tāvit (155, b).*

(j) *He promised great rewards to anyone that should return: Si quis redisset, magna praemia pollicitus est (177).*

EXERCISE 20.

A.

1. You should have replied that you were unable to leave the city. 2. The soldiers had to advance into the waves. 3. He answered that Gaul ought to be free, and that he could not allow the Germans to cross the Rhine. 4. They asked to be allowed to march through the province. 5. We must not wait longer; we must set out for home at once. 6. Cæsar should have ordered that state to furnish hostages. 7. He was afraid this would inevitably happen. 8. They could not be persuaded to stay longer. 9. The Gauls may be cowards if they wish, but Romans must be brave men. 10. All will have to die some day. 11. You might have left

the camp yesterday, so far as I was concerned. 12. Our fields ought not to have been laid waste in sight of the enemy, and our towns taken by storm.

B. (Cæsar, Bk. V. 3, 4.)

1. The common people ought not to be compelled to revolt from the Romans. 2. He cannot point out what is going on among the Remi. 3. He could easily have kept his kinsmen true to their allegiance. 4. If they have revolted, we must begin to collect forces of infantry and cavalry. 5. They feared they should not be allowed to take thought for themselves. 6. All had to conceal themselves in the woods. 7. It is very important that Cæsar should be able to win over the Treveri. 8. Cæsar ought to have urged them to come to him in the camp. 9. He thought everything should have been made ready.

C. (Cæsar, Bk. IV. 23.)

1. Thinking that it was quite impossible for them to land, they weighed anchor. 2. The ship ought to be anchored in order that the troops may land. 3. Cæsar had to advance a mile and wait till the fourth watch in the further harbor. 4. He could not get suitable weather for embarking. 5. He pointed out that after the troops had been drawn up on the shore, the lieutenants must execute everything promptly. 6. They can hurl their weapons from the hill into the sea. 7. If you wish to find out what is the character of the mountains, you may land in a suitable spot. 8. He points out that the cavalry should have set sail and followed him. 9. He will point out what they have been allowed to do.

CHAPTER XXI.

CAUSAL SENTENCES—USES OF *Cum*.

145. Causal sentences are introduced by *quod*, or (less frequently) *quia*, *because*, *for the reason that*; *quoniam*, *seeing that*; *cum*, *since*, *as*; and *quī*, *since he*.

- i. For *quī* with the causal subjunctive see section 171.
- ii. For *quod*, meaning *the fact that*, see section 198.
- iii. *Cum* clauses (as giving attendant circumstances) regularly precede the principal clause; *quod* clauses (as emphasizing the reason) generally follow.

146. *Quod*, *quia* and *quoniam* take the indicative to express a reason advanced by the writer or speaker himself; as,

He set out for Illyricum, because he wished to become acquainted with that district: In Illyricum profectus est, quod eas regiōnes cōgnōscere volēbat.

- i. Frequently a sort of antecedent (such as *propterea*, *eō*, *hōc*, *eā dē causā*) is found preparing the way for the *quod* clause.

147. *Quod*, *quia* and *quoniam* take the subjunctive to quote some other person's reason;¹ as,

They begged him to lend them aid, because (as they said) they were hard pressed by the Suebi: Ōrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs premerentur.

Aristides was banished from his country on the ground that he was unreasonably just: Aristidēs expulsus est patriā quod praeter modum iustus esset.

- i. It should not be supposed that the subjunctive casts doubt upon the reason given, or refuses to vouch for its accuracy. It simply quotes without expressing any opinion, and is, in fact, identical with the subjunctive of virtual indirect narration (section 177). *Quod* with the indicative tells *why* something was said or done; *quod* with the subjunctive tells *on what grounds* something was said or done.

- ii. *Quod* is very commonly used after verbs of *accusation*, *praise*, *complaint*, *thanks*, *joy*, *anger*, and the like; the indicative and subjunctive being used according to the distinction just drawn; as, *I thank you for setting me free: Tibi grātiās agō, quod mē*

1. Or even to quote one's own previously expressed reason.

liberavisti. *Socrates was accused of corrupting the youth: Socratēs accūsātus est quod corrumpere juvenutem.*

iii. *Nōn quod* or *nōn quō* is used with the subjunctive of a reason mentioned only to be rejected, = *not because* (as one might suppose). So also *quam quod* or *quam quō* after an actual or virtual comparative.

iv. For the illogical *quod diceret* see section 177, ii.

148. *Cum*, with causal force, meaning *since* or *as*, takes the *subjunctive*; ¹ *as*,

Since they could not defend themselves, they sent envoys to Cæsar: Cum se defendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Cæsarem mittunt.

149. *Cum*, meaning *whenever*, in clauses denoting indefinitely recurring action, takes the *indicative*.

When, as is usually the case, the *cum* clause denotes an action preceding that of the main verb, the perfect and pluperfect tenses are used; but when it denotes what is simultaneous, the present and imperfect. The main verb is regularly present or imperfect indicative.

Whenever our men attack, the enemy fall back: Cum nostri impetum fecerunt, hostēs pedem referunt.

Whenever there is need, the enemy fall back: Cum ūsus est, hostēs pedem referunt.

Whenever our men attacked, the enemy fell back: Cum nostri impetum fecerant, hostēs pedem referēbant.

i. With the same force and with the same construction are used also *quotiēns*, *quotiēns cumque*, *ut*, *ubi*, *sī* *quandō*.

150. *Cum*, meaning *when*, referring to present or to future time, takes the *indicative*; *as*,

When I find out, I shall inform you: Cum cōgnōverō, faciam tē certiorē.

i. The future and future perfect are used with *cum* as with *sī* (section 62).

151. *Cum*, meaning *when* (or *while*), referring to past time, regularly takes the *subjunctive*; the imperfect of contemporaneous action, the pluperfect of antecedent action; *as*,

When they were approaching Britain, a storm arose: Cum Britanniae appropinquarent, tempestās coorta est.

1. For *cum*, with concessive force, meaning *although*, see section 65, a.

When he perceived this, he sent reinforcements: Quod cum animadvertisset, subsidia submittit.

In most cases *cum* with the subjunctive denotes the *circumstances* or *situation*, very often, as in the last example, combining the causal with the temporal idea.¹

The following exceptions to this use of *cum* with the subjunctive regularly occur:

i. *When*, meaning *whenever*, is regularly expressed by *cum* and the indicative (section 149).

ii. *Cum* expressing *identity of action* or *coincidence of time* regularly takes the indicative, chiefly when the principal clause contains *tum*, or some equivalent expression; as, *When they remain quiet (or in remaining quiet), they approve: Cum quiescunt, probant. At the time when he came to Gaul, there were two factions in that state: (Tum) cum in Galliam venit, in eā civitate duae erant factionēs.*

iii. *Cum*, meaning *when* or *when suddenly*, in a clause which is logically the principal one, takes the indicative. The principal clause often has *jam*, *vix* or *nōdum*; as, *They were already preparing to depart, when suddenly it was announced that the city had been captured: Jam discēdere parābant, cum repente nūntiātum est urbem captam esse.*

iv. *Cum primum*, as soon as, takes the indicative.

v. *Cum . . . tum*, meaning *both . . . and*, has regularly no influence on the mood of the verb.

EXERCISE 21.

A.

1. Cæsar complained because the enemy were laying waste the territories of the Ædui. 2. When the ships were drawing near the island, so great a tempest arose that they could with difficulty hold their course. 3. As they thought the enemy was within the gates, they rushed out of the town. 4. Cæsar feared an ambush, because he had not yet learned why they were withdrawing. 5. Whenever our men began to return to the place from which they had started, they were surrounded by the enemy. 6. They asked to be allowed to remain in our camp, on the ground that they dreaded the vengeance of the Gauls. 7. Since this is the case, I

1. Similarly combining the concessive with the temporal idea, *cum* (meaning *while* or *whereas*) is used with the subjunctive to contrast two situations; as, *The enemy numbered five thousand, while our men had no more than eight hundred cavalry: Hostium erat quinque millium numerus, cum nostri non amplius octingentos habent.*

shall set out at once. 8. The soldiers were proceeding with the greatest caution through the territories of the enemy, when the Helvetians suddenly attacked them in the rear. 9. When our men saw that the camp was being filled with great numbers of the enemy, they immediately took to flight. 10. When Cæsar returns to the camp, he will find the ships repaired. 11. At the time when the enemy were preparing to storm the camp, Cæsar was leading the soldiers across the bridge. 12. When Cæsar discovered what had been done, he reproved the rashness of the soldiers, because they had not halted on the signal being given.

B. (Cæsar, Bk. V. 5, 6.)

1. They begged to be left in Gaul, on the ground that they were not used to sailing. 2. Since he has discovered that the vessel is not ready for sailing, he has determined to return. 3. When Cæsar finds out what is the design of Dumnorix, he will send him as a hostage to the mainland. 4. Cæsar, whenever he is absent from the mainland, fears an uprising, not because the Ædui are eager for a change of government, but because Gaul has been stripped of all its nobles. 5. Whenever the ships set out, they are driven back by the storm. 6. The Ædui were on the point of setting out, when Cæsar returned. 7. Cæsar is taking the leading men over to Britain, because he is afraid to leave them in Gaul. 8. When this was reported to Dumnorix, he perceived that all hope had vanished. 9. He accused Dumnorix of being eager for supreme power.

C. (Cæsar, Bk. IV. 24.)

1. When they were fighting with the enemy they leaped down into the waves. 2. Since they are unacquainted with the country they cannot advance boldly. 3. There will be very great difficulty because our men are unaccustomed to fight in the waves. 4. As soon as they got a footing in the waves, they began to hurl their weapons. 5. When they have discovered the Romans' plans, they will follow them up with all their forces. 6. As they were weighed down with their armor, they could not get a footing in the waves. 7. Our men were landing from the ship, when suddenly weapons were hurled at them. 8. He accused them of not showing the same zeal in this battle. 9. Whenever our men leaped down, the enemy would spur on their horses.

CHAPTER XXII.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES.¹

152. WHEN, AFTER, AS SOON AS,² introducing clauses of time, are translated by

(a) *Cum* or *cum primum* (sections 149-151).

(b) *Postquam*, *posteaquam*, *ut*, *ubi*, *simul ac* (or *atque*) with the indicative, in narrative chiefly the perfect indicative; as,

After Caesar reached that place, he determined to cross the Rhine: Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, Rhēnum transire cōstituit.

When he heard that, he removed to Coreyra: Id ut audivit, Corcyram dēmigrāvit.

When they were informed of his approach, they sent envoys: Ubi dē ejus adventū certiorēs facti sunt, lēgātōs mittunt.

As soon as they perceived this, they began to take up arms: Quae simul atque cōspexērunt, arma capere coepērunt.

i. To indicate indefinitely recurring action the perfect and pluperfect tenses would be used as with *cum* (section 149).

ii. With *postquam* the pluperfect indicative is used when a definite interval is specified; as, *He was killed in the ninth year after he came to Spain: Nōnō annō postquam in Hispāniam vēnerat, occisus est.*

iii. *Postquam* and *posteaquam* are often written as two words, in which case *post* is sometimes treated as a preposition; sometimes *quam* is used for *postquam*.

153. WHILE, meaning *within the time that*, is expressed by *dum* with the *present* indicative; as,

While this was being done, the Treveri had gathered large forces: Dum haec geruntur, Trēverī magnās cōpiās coēgerant.

i. This idea may also be expressed by *cum* and the imperfect subjunctive (section 151), especially if there be any idea of contrast (section 151, fn.).

154. WHILE, meaning *as long as*, is expressed by *dum*, *quoad* or *quamdiū*³ with the indicative.

1. For the use of the tenses of the indicative see Chapter XXVII., especially section 178, ii.

2. Clauses introduced by *when*, *while*, *after*, are also often expressed in Latin by participial phrases, especially in the ablative absolute (see chapters VI. and VII.).

3. *Donec* also is used in poetry and late prose, often with the subjunctive.

The tenses are used as in English, except that for future time Latin uses the future where English loosely uses the present ; as,

While their strength lasted they held their ground: Dum virēs suppetēbant sustinuerunt.

He resisted as long as he could: Quoad potuit, restitit.

You shall study as long as you wish: Discēs, quamdiū volēs.

i. For *dum*, meaning *so long as, provided that*, where the temporal force no longer appears, see section 67.

155. UNTIL, introducing clauses of time, is expressed by *dum* or *quoad*.¹

(a) To denote *mere limit of time* the *indicative* is used, chiefly with *quoad* ; as,

He was in the senate that day until the senate adjourned: In senātū fuit eō diē quoad senātus est dimissus.

Until I learn that the winter camp has been fortified, I shall stay in Gaul: Quoad mūnita hiberna cōgnoverō, in Galliā morābor.

(b) To denote *expectation, purpose or end in view*, the *present* or *imperfect subjunctive* is used, generally with *dum* ; as,

He waited until the other ships should assemble: Dum reliquae nāvēs convenirent, expectāvit.

i. For *not until*, meaning *not before*, see section 156, iii.

ii. As a rule, actions referring to the future may be regarded as denoting either *mere limit of time* or *expectation*.

156. BEFORE is expressed by *antequam* or *priusquam*.

(a) To denote *mere priority or limit of time* the *indicative* is used ; as,

I was born the year before he died: Annō antequam est mortuus, nātus sum.

And they did not cease their flight before they reached the river Rhine: Neque prius fugere destiterunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum pervenerunt.

(b) To denote *purpose or anticipation or prevention* the *present* or *imperfect subjunctive* is used ; as,

Before they could recover from their panic, he led his army across: Priusquam sē ex terrōre reciperent, exercitum transdūxit.

1. *Donec* also is used, but not often in the best prose.

- i. *Antequam* and *priusquam* are often written as two words especially after a negative.
- ii. *Priusquam* is commoner than *antequam*, especially with the subjunctive.
- iii. To express *not before*, meaning *not until*, both indicative and subjunctive are found, but after secondary tenses the perfect indicative is preferred.
- iv. When the pluperfect subjunctive is found after *priusquam* or *antequam*, it is regularly either in indirect narration (actual or virtual) for the perfect or future perfect indicative of the direct, or it is due to attraction. (See section 177, i.)

EXERCISE 22.

A.

1. The Gauls decided they ought not to wait until Cæsar reached their borders. 2. Before he should make an attack on the enemy, he sent forward a scout to find out what their numbers were. 3. While these things were going on, the envoys who were in the camp took their departure. 4. As soon as they recovered from their panic, they sent envoys to Cæsar to sue for peace. 5. For that reason I shall keep silent as long as I can. 6. He did not set out for the army until he learned that the enemy were gathering their forces to one place. 7. Before he reached the harbor, the cavalry had set sail. 8. We shall hold our ground until Cæsar sends reinforcements. 9. After they had been informed of our advance, they withdrew into their remotest forests. 10. While our men were getting the ships ready, it was reported that the camp had been attacked. 11. Before these could learn of his departure, he crossed the river. 12. The enemy resisted bravely until they saw our cavalry approaching in the rear.

B. (*Cæsar*, Bk. V. 7, 8.)

1. After Dumnorix had taken his departure for home, Cæsar ordered the cavalry to bring him back. 2. So long as he disregards Cæsar's authority, I shall take measures to prevent him from doing harm to the state. 3. While this was going on in Britain, two thousand cavalry were guarding the harbor. 4. We shall not embark until supplies are provided. 5. Before Cæsar reached Britain, he learned that large forces had assembled. 6. They held on their course until the wind fell at sunset. 7. As often as

they caught sight of our soldiers, the enemy would conceal themselves in the higher ground. 8. Before Cæsar could get suitable weather, word was brought that the enemy had learned his design. 9. Cæsar should have put off his departure until he found in what part of the island was the best landing place.

C. (Cæsar, Bk. IV. 25.)

1. The natives retreated before the ships could be stationed on their exposed flank. 2. As long as you do your duty, everything will turn out happily. 3. They had halted until the commander should invoke the gods. 4. While the transport vessels were being withdrawn, Cæsar was encouraging the soldiers not to abandon the eagle to the enemy. 5. I shall not bear the eagle against the enemy until you are willing to follow. 6. The enemy caught sight of the soldier before he drew near the ship. 7. As soon as the ships were urged forward the enemy began to retreat. 8. Our men hesitated until Cæsar ordered them to leap down. 9. After this soldier had flung himself from the ship, the legion followed in a body.

CHAPTER XXIII.

PERSONAL, DEMONSTRATIVE, REFLEXIVE AND POSSESSIVE
PRONOUNS.¹

157. As the pronominal subject is really contained in the personal ending of the finite verb, the nominative of the personal pronouns is not, as a rule, expressed except for *emphasis* or *contrast*; as,

I drove out kings, you bring in tyrants: Ego régēs ejēcl, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcītis.

i. The third personal pronoun is supplied by *is*, *hic* or *qui*, or if emphatic by *ille*.

ii. *Nōs* is often used for *ego* (compare our 'editorial we'), but *vōs* should never be used for *tū*.

iii. For the use of the different forms of the genitive see Part III. 62, a.

158. *Hic*, *this* (the demonstrative of the first person), denotes something *near* (in place, time or thought). Hence it is used of something just mentioned or something just about to be mentioned; as,

This present war: Hōc bellum.

All these (the tribes just mentioned) *differ from one another in language: Hi omnēs linguā inter sē differunt.*

The character of the ground was as follows: Locī nātūra erat haec.

159. *Is*, *that*, *this*, *the*, refers without emphasis to something named in the preceding context, and also serves as the antecedent of the relative. It is thus also used as the unemphasized third personal pronoun; as,

They order Lutetia to be burnt and the bridges of that town to be destroyed: Lutētiam incendi pontēque ejus oppidī rescindi jubent.

The legion which he had with him: Ea legiō, quam sēcum habēbat.

1. N.B.—It will be understood that the words treated of in this and the two succeeding chapters are pronouns when they are substitutes for nouns, and pronominal adjectives when they modify nouns.

The number of those who returned home : Eōrum, qui domum rediērunt, numerus.

They send envoys to him : Lēgātōs ad eum mittunt.

i. *Is* sometimes has the force of *such* (= *tālis*).

ii. *Et is* and *neque is* are used to emphasize, with the force of *and that too* ; as, *One cohort, and that too a small one : Ūna cohors et ea parva.*

iii. Where English uses *that of* or *those of* to avoid repeating a noun, Latin does not use a pronoun, but the noun is either repeated or understood (see section 83, iii.).

160. *Ille, that* (the demonstrative of the third person), denotes something *remote* in place, time or thought. It is frequently used as the emphatic third personal pronoun, in contrast with *hic*, and also to call special attention to some person or thing ; as,

Trained not in the customs of former days, but after our modern fashion : Nōn antiquō illō mōre, sed hōc nostrō ēruditus.

These are under arms ; those remain at home : HI in armis sunt, illi domi remanent.

The famous Alexander the Great : Māgnus ille Alexander.

Part of the cavalry he assigned to him, part he left for himself : Equitātus partem illi attribuit, partem sibi reliquit.

i. A very common use of *ille* is to indicate a change of subject, where the new subject has been referred to in the preceding clause. In such cases it may be rendered by an emphatic *he* or *they*, or by *the other*, *the enemy*, *the latter*, or some similar phrase.

ii. *Ille*, often, especially in the neuter *illud*, is used to point forward with emphasis to a following clause.

iii. *Hic . . . ille* often mean *the latter . . . the former*.

161. *Iste, that* (the demonstrative of the second person), denotes something near or belonging to the person addressed ; as, *Those affairs of yours* (or *Those affairs you mention*) : *Istae res*. It has also at times a contemptuous force.

162. *Idem, the same*, expresses identity, and is often to be rendered by *also* or *likewise* ; as,

The same day he moved his camp : Eōdem diē castra mōvit.

Whatever is honorable is also expedient : Quicquid est honestum, idem est ūtile.

i. For *the same* as see section 174.

ii. As *idem* is a compound of *is*, *that same* is *ille idem*, not *is idem*.

163. *Ipse, -self*, is used for emphatic contrast, not as a reflexive pronoun. It may be used with nouns or with any of the personal pronouns, or may be used independently, meaning *he himself*; as,

They slew Dumnorix himself: Ipsum Dumnorigem interfecerunt.

Leaving Labienus on the mainland, he himself set sail: Labiënō in continenti relletō, ipse nāvēs solvit.

i. The emphatic force of *ipse* is often best rendered by *very* or *mere*; as, *They were fighting on the very banks of the river: In ipsi fluminis ripis proeliabantur.*

ii. The genitive of *ipse* with or without the possessive pronominal adjectives may be used as the equivalent of *own*; as, *My own fault: Mea ipsius culpa. Their own tongue: Ipsorum lingua.*

iii. *Ipse*, when used to emphasize a reflexive pronoun, agrees with the subject, unless very strong emphasis is to lie on the reflexive; as, *They kill themselves: Sē ipsi interficiunt.*

iv. Occasionally in indirect narration *ipse* is used as a reflexive for the sake of emphatic contrast, or where *sē* might be ambiguous.

164. *Sē, himself, him*, the reflexive pronoun of the third person, refers back to the subject of the verb. It should be carefully distinguished from (a) the emphatic pronoun *ipse*, and (b) the personal pronouns referring to others than the subject; as,

They cannot defend themselves: Sē dēfendere nōn possunt.

Commius took the cavalry over with him: Commius sēcum equitēs transportāvit.

i. When *sē* refers to the subject of the clause to which it belongs, it is called the 'direct reflexive'; but when, as often, *sē* belongs to a subordinate clause and refers to the subject of the principal clause, it is called the 'indirect reflexive.' As a rule, in subordinate clauses expressing a thought, statement, wish, command or question, the reflexive is indirect, referring to the person who thinks, commands, etc. The direct and the indirect use may be found together; as, *They asked the king not to keep Hannibal with him, but to surrender him to them: Ab rēge petēbant nē Hannibalem sēcum habēret sibi que dēderet.*

ii. For *inter sē*, used as a reciprocal pronoun, see Part III. 62, e.

iii. For the reflexives of the first and second persons, the personal pronouns are used.

iv. The passive voice of some verbs is used with reflexive force; as, *They exercise themselves: Exercentur* or *Sē exercent.*

165. *Meus, Tuus, Suus, Noster, Vester*, the possessive pronouns, are seldom expressed except for the sake of emphasis or clearness ; in other cases the context gives a sufficient indication ; as,

For the sake of your well-being, they have disregarded their own peril : Vestrae salutis causā suum periculum neglēxērunt.

i. These pronouns often express what is characteristic of a person ; as, *By his own peculiar methods : Suis artibus.*

ii. *Suus*, like *sē* (section 164, i.), is used both as a direct and as an indirect reflexive. Very frequently also *suus* refers to some word in its clause which is not a subject of any verb ; as, *They send Mago with his fleet to Spain : Māgōnem cum classe suā in Hispaniam mittunt.* As a rule, *ējus* and *eōrum* are used for *his* or *their* when not reflexive.

iii. The possessive pronouns are often used substantively, especially *nostri, sui* and *sua*.

iv. Sometimes we find a genitive in apposition with the genitive idea implied in these words ; as, *My name in my absence : Nōmen meum absentis.* *By our own help : Nostrā ipsōrum operā.* *Amid the tears of us all : In nostrō omnium flētū.* (See section 163, ii.)

EXERCISE 23.

A.

1. After these matters had been settled, a war suddenly broke out in the province itself. The cause of this war was as follows. 2. He himself placed you in charge of us. 3. The enemy had concealed their own forces in the same woods. 4. For the same reason he feared our men would inflict injury upon themselves. 5. I remained with you all that time ; he returned to his own home. 6. Cæsar had these two legions and those of Croesus with him. 7. They slew themselves in the very gates of the camp. 8. He also thought this present war itself was dangerous to all of us. 9. Our cavalry, after encouraging one another, joined battle with the enemy's horsemen. These latter at once betook themselves to their comrades. 10. This much he promised, that he would give them a safe passage through your province. 11. After their usual custom, they put their wives and all their property in the woods. 12. The Nervii and the Aduatuci were waging war against us ; the former had taken up their position on the other side of the river Sabis ; the latter were fortifying their own town.

B. (Cæsar, Bk. V. 9, 10.)

1. These messengers came from those who were pursuing the cavalry. 2. On that same day they found out that their own vessel had been wrecked. 3. These reputed to him that the nature of that place was as follows. 4. He himself forbade my advancing with him. 5. He also has put you in charge of that famous legion. 6. We repulsed the enemy; you fled. 7. He learned that they had, according to their custom, hidden themselves in the woods. 8. I wished you to advance to that river with all your forces. 9. In that place we caught sight of the enemy's camp. 10. These latter had begun to blockade the very entrances.

C. (Cæsar, Bk. IV. 26.)

1. He sent aid to his comrades. 2. This alone is lacking to you. 3. When he saw that these were putting our men to flight, he was himself alarmed. 4. These made an attack on those who had landed from that ship. 5. He also ordered them to follow him. 6. He ordered our cavalry to attach themselves to that same standard. 7. We held our course; they could not make the island. 8. Perceiving that the cavalry themselves were being thrown into confusion, he ordered the soldiers to follow their own standards. 9. The former hurl their weapons; the latter man the boats. 10. He perceived that the enemy were in distress, and that our own ranks were gaining a footing on the shore.

CHAPTER XXIV.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

ANY.

166. (a) **QUIS (QUĪ)** means *any, anyone*, after *sī, nē, num*, and *some, some one*, after *nisi* ; as,

If any one has heard anything he reports it to the magistrate : Si quis quid accēpit, ad magistrātum dēfert.

He ordered the soldiers not to hurl back any weapon : Militibus imperāvit nē quod tēlum rejicerent.

(b) **QUISQUAM** (substantival) means *any one*, and **ŪLLUS** (adjectival) means *any*, when all are excluded, that is, when *any* has the force of *any, even one*, suggesting the idea of *no one or none*. They are used in negative, or practically negative sentences ;¹ as,

Nor was any one found : Neque repertus est quisquam.

The battle was without any danger : Sine ūllō periculō erat proellum.

i. Instead of *nōn* followed by *quisquam* or *ūllus*, Latin prefers *nēmō, nihil* and *nūllus* ; but *neque* followed by *quisquam* or *ūllus* is preferred to *et* followed by *nēmō, nihil* or *nūllus* : as, *They do not expect any disaster : Nūllum cāsum exspectant. And nothing is considered more disgraceful : Neque turpius quicquam habētur.*

(c) **QUĪVĪS, QUĪLIBET** mean *any, any one*, when all are included, that is, when *any* has the force of *any you please*, suggesting the idea of *every one, all* ; as,

The vessels are built to withstand any violence : Nāvēs factae sunt ad quamvis vim perferendam.

SOME.

167. (a) **ALIQUIS (ALIQŪI)** means *some, some one (or other)*, wholly indefinite ; as,

He bade them send some one : Jussit eōs aliquem mittere.

They are devising some new plan : Aliquid novī cōsillī ineunt.

1. For instance, rhetorical questions, comparative clauses, and clauses containing such words as *sine, viz, aegre*.

Poen if some portion be surrounded, the rest can be saved: *SI* aliqua circumventa erit, reliqui servari possunt.

i. *Quispiam* has the force of *aliquis*, but is much rarer.

(b) *NŌNNŪLLĪ* means *some, some few*, suggesting the idea *some, but not many*; as, *They lost some (or a few) of their men*: *Nōnnūllōs ex suis amisērunt*.

(c) *NESCIO QUIS* means *some one or other* unknown to the speaker; often, through an affectation of ignorance, it implies contempt; as, *He had raised some rumor or other (or some trifling rumor)*: *Rūmōris nesciō quid affāverat*.

i. *Nesciō quis* in this sense is treated as a single word, and as such is not followed by the subjunctive of indirect question. Similarly *nesciō quō modō* or *nesciō quō pāctō*, *in some way or other*.

(d) *SUNT QUI* with the subjunctive (section 32) means *some (emphatic) or there are some who*; as, *Some said*: *Erant qui dicerent*.

(e) *QUIDAM* means *a certain one, a certain*, of what one has in mind, but is not anxious or able to specify further. Hence it is often used in vague descriptions, meaning *a sort of*; as,

One of the soldiers said: *Quidam ex militibus dixit*.

The Romans have defeated us not by valor but by a sort of trick: *Nōn virtūte vicērunt Rōmāni sed artificiō quōdam*.

(f) For *alius* repeated, meaning *some . . . other*, see section 168, a, and for *quis*, meaning *some*, see section 166, a.

OTHER.

168. a. *ALIUS* means *other, another*. When it is repeated in different clauses, the meaning in the singular is *one . . . another*, in the plural *some . . . others*. When, in the same clause, it is repeated in a different case, or is accompanied by a derivative adverb, the meaning is, in the singular *one . . . one, another . . . another*, in the plural *some . . . one, others . . . another*; as,

They fled in another direction: *Aliam in partem fugērunt*.

Some were filling the trenches, others were hurling weapons: *Alii fossās complēbant, alii tela conieciēbant*.

Some were carried in one direction, others in another: *Alii allam in partem ferēbantur*.

They believe one thing one moment, another another: *Aliās aliud sentiunt*.

i. After *alius* or *aliter* (and similarly after *contrā*) *ac* or *atque* is used to introduce a comparison (*other than*); as, *They wage war in a manner very different from (or far other than) the rest of the Gauls*: *Longē aliā ratiōne ac reliqui Galli bellum gerunt*.

ii. Sometimes *alius* repeated in the same clause is to be rendered by *one another*; as, *They lend aid to one another (or one to another)*: *Alius alii subsidium ferunt.*

(b) *ALTER* means *the other, the second* (of two). When repeated in different clauses, the meaning in the singular is *(the) one . . . the other*, in the plural *(the) one party . . . the other party*; as,

The one part he gave up to the Gauls, the other he assigned to the cohorts: *Alteram partem Gallis concessit, alteram cohortibus attribuit.*

One division fled to the mountain, the other to the baggage: *Alteri sē in montem recēperunt, alteri ad impedimenta.*

(c) *CĒTERĪ* and *RELIQUĪ* mean *the others, the rest, the remainder*; as,

They differ from the others: *Differunt à cēteris.*

The Veneti and the other states also prepare for war: *Veneti reliquaeque itē civitatēs bellum parant.*

EACH.

169. (a) *QUISQUE* means *each (of more than two), every*, and is especially frequent with the reflexive;² as,

It is best for each to return to his home: *Optimum est domum suam quemque reverti.*

i. With superlatives and ordinal numerals *quisque* has the force of *every (or all the)*; as, *Every man of noble birth*: *Nōbillissimus quisque.* *Every tenth man*: *Decimus quisque.* *Primus quisque* means *the very first, the first possible.*

(b) *UTERQUE* means *each (of two), freely both*; the plural *utrīque* meaning *both sides or both parties*; as,

On each bank (or on both banks) they had villages: *Ad utramque ripam vicōs habēbant.*

That day both armies keep within their own lines: *Eō diē utrīque sēsē suō locō continent.*

EXERCISE 24.

A.

1. They beheld certain of our men leaping down from the other vessel. 2. They used to inquire what every one had heard concerning each matter. 3. Before he should make any answer,

1. For the agreement of *ceteri* and *reliqui* see section 86, iv. b.

2. With pronouns *quisque* and *uterque* are used substantively, taking the partitive genitive; with substantives they are used adjectively in agreement.

he ordered the others to be summoned to him. 4. Some thought they could gain the victory without a (=any) wound. 5. It would be better to suffer any fate at the hands of the Romans. 6. They will not make peace on any other terms. 7. The enemy were advancing, some from one direction, others from another. 8. When he saw that the enemy was pressing him on each flank, he suspected some new design had been formed. 9. If any of the Gauls are captured, the rest will soon surrender. 10. He trusted both the *Ædui* and the *Remi*, the one because of their ancient loyalty, the other because of their recent services. 11. Scarcely any one perceived that some other plan must be devised than (they had formed) previously. 12. Lest the flight of the Gauls should alarm any, he pointed out that the Germans had won by some trick or other, rather than by their valor.

B. (Cæsar, Bk. V. 11, 12.)

1. *Labienus* said that he could build any number of ships. 2. There are some who say that there is timber in every part of the island. 3. If any workmen are summoned, they will be ordered to repair the other vessels. 4. He put a certain *Labienus* in charge of the other legion. 5. Some were born in the island; others had crossed over from the mainland. 6. Scarcely any one had discovered that *Cæsar* was leaving a garrison for both camps. 7. Some think that the cold is less intense in the interior; others on the coast. 8. Others said that some place or other should be chosen. 9. Scarcely any ships have been lost; but some few must be repaired.

C. (Cæsar, Bk. IV. 1-4.)

1. Killing some, they drove the rest from their lands. 2. Some one said that the *Suebi* could withstand the power of any state. 3. In each state some think this a merit, others regard it as unmanly. 4. If we wish anything imported, certain traders will be given access. 5. We take pleasure some in one thing, others in another. 6. Others thought that scarcely any state was more civilized. 7. And they do not permit any one to use wine. 8. Lest they seize any vessel, guards should be stationed on both banks. 9. There were some who said that the cavalry would reach another river.

CHAPTER XXV.

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

170. *Quī*, *who*, *which*, the relative or conjunctive pronoun, is regularly followed by the indicative; as,

The bridge which was at Geneva he orders to be destroyed: Pontem, quī erat ad Genāvam, jubet rescindī.

i. The indicative is regularly found also after relative adverbs, such as *unde*, *ubi*, *quō*, *ut*, relative adjectives such as *quālis*, *quantus*, and indefinite relatives such as *quisquis* and *quicumque*.

ii. For the agreement of the relative with its antecedent see section 13.

iii. In Latin, unlike the English usage, the relative is always expressed; as, *The liberty we have received from our forefathers: Ea libertās, quam à majōribus accēpimus.*

iv. In the case of two relative clauses coordinate with each other, the second relative is generally omitted if the two relatives would have the same case; as, *He prevails upon Dumnorix, who held the chief authority and was very popular with the common people: Dumnorigi, quī principātum obtinēbat ac maxīmē plēbi acceptus erat, persuādet.* When the two relatives would be in different cases, as a rule both are expressed; but sometimes the second is replaced by a demonstrative, or (if it would be in the nominative or accusative) is omitted; as, *He has sent a man whom we neither fear nor obey: Hominem, quem neque timēmus neque ei pārēmus, misit.*

v. Where the same preposition would be used with both antecedent and relative, it is regularly omitted with the relative.

vi. The relative is often found in the ablative absolute construction.

171. The relative is used with the *subjunctive* to introduce clauses of *purpose* (section 26), clauses of *characteristic* (section 32), and also clauses of *concession* and *cause or reason*;¹ as,

Though Cicero during all the previous days had kept the soldiers in the camp, on the seventh day he sent five cohorts to forage: Cicerō, quī omnēs superiōrēs diēs militēs in castris continuisset, septimō diē quinque cohortēs frumentātum mittit.

It is not without divine aid that the Romans carry on war, since they are able to move forward such mighty engines: Nōn

1. The causal relative sentence is often introduced and emphasized by *quippe*, *ut*, or *utpote*.

Rōmānī sine ope divīnā bellum gerunt, quī tantās māchīnatiōnēs prōmovēre possint.

172. THE COORDINATING RELATIVE.—*Quī* is often used at the beginning of a sentence to introduce, not a subordinate clause, but a *new independent sentence*, which it thus connects more clearly with the preceding words than a personal or demonstrative pronoun, such as English uses, would do. The relative may belong either to a principal or to a subordinate clause in the new sentence ; as,

For this reason the Helvetians surpass the other Gauls: Quā dē causā Helvētīī reliquōs Gallōs praeceēdunt.

Having completed this business Cæsar set out for Gaul: Quibus rēbus cōfectis Cæsar in Galliam profectus est.

When they perceived them, they began to close the gates: Quōs cum cōspexissent, portās claudere coepērunt.

173. The following peculiarities in the antecedent are of common occurrence :

(a) The antecedent is frequently omitted ; as, *They do what they are ordered: Quod jussī sunt, faciunt.* *He sent men to find out: Misit quī cōgnōscerent.*

(b) The antecedent is often repeated in the relative clause, especially the words *pars, rēs, locus, diēs* ; as, *Dust was seen in the direction in which the legion had marched: Pulvis in eā parte vidēbātur quam in partem legiō iter fēcerat.*

(c) The antecedent is often incorporated into the relative clause :
i. Where the relative clause precedes, an antecedent substantive is often put in the relative clause ; as, *That part which had caused the disaster paid the penalty: Quae pars calamitātem intulerat, ea poenās persolvit.*

ii. Where the antecedent is an appositive, it is as a rule put in the relative clause ; as, *They inhabit Kent, a country which lies entirely on the coast: Cantium incolunt, quae regiō omnis maritima est.*

iii. Somewhat similar is the transference of the superlative or other modifier of the antecedent to the relative clause ; as, *He sent the largest ship he had: Nāvem, quam māximam habuit, misit.*

(d) The substance of a sentence or phrase may be referred to parenthetically by *quod* or *id quod* ; as, *He told them that after the enemy were put to flight (as he saw would be the case) they were all to attack the king: Praecepit hostibus in fugam coniectis (quod fore vidēbat) omnēs peterent rēgem.*

174. The relative pronoun *as* in correlative sentences is represented by different words, according to the demonstrative in the antecedent clause. *Īdem* is followed by *quī*, or by *āc* (*atque*). (So also *pār* when used with the force of *īdem*.) *Tālis*, *tantus* and *tot* are followed by *quālis*, *quantus* and *quot* respectively ; as,

Our men resist in the same manner as on the previous day: Eādem ratiōne, quā pridē, ab nostris resistitur.

He was the same kind of man as I perceive you to be: Tālis erat quālem tē esse vidē.

i. *As* (*many*, *large*, etc.) *as possible* is expressed by *quam* and the superlative, with or without the proper form of *possum* ; as, *They gather as many ships as possible: Nāvēs quam plurimās (pos-sunt) cōgunt.*

ii. The antecedents *tālis*, *tantus*, *tot* are often omitted ; as, *They assign them as much land as seems best: Attribuunt quantum visum est agri.*

EXERCISE 25.

A.

1. The ships which he had built in the previous summer, were ordered to assemble at once. 2. Nor could any vessels be found on which the cavalry could be brought over. 3. Having made these preparations, they fixed a day on which all were to assemble at the banks of the river. 4. When they heard this, they withdrew to the camp whence they had set out. 5. The same thing will happen as has happened on previous days. 6. This legion he left to guard the camp, seeing that it was wearied with marching. 7. The number of those who set out from the country of the Helvetians was three hundred and sixty-eight thousand. Of these, those who could bear arms were ninety-two thousand. 8. Dismayed by his advance, the enemy took to flight, although they had gathered large forces. 9. These do not strive with as great eagerness as they are accustomed to exhibit in battles on land. 10. The enemy suddenly came in sight of the cavalry Cæsar had sent to the assistance of the Ædui. 11. These are allowed to go in safety in whatever direction they wish. 12. He sent the bravest horsemen he had with him to Vesontio, which is the largest town of the Sequani.

B. (*Cæsar*, Bk. V. 13, 14.)

1. Those who inhabit the district along the seacoast are more civilized. 2. Ireland is not considered to be so large as Britain. 3.

This island the Britons inhabit. These, seeing that they dye themselves blue, are of a hideous appearance. 4. When the ship was brought to land at this place, we saw that most of the people were clad in skins. 5. The region which is called Kent is on the sea. 6. In this island they have nothing on which to live except milk and flesh. 7. Although they are more civilized than the Britons, they do not live on grain. 8. By these inquiries we found that the nights are the same as in Britain. 9. The woad with which the Britons used to dye themselves is thought to have produced a blue color.

O. (Cæsar, Bk. IV. 5-10.)

1. The islands which the river forms are inhabited by tribes which live on birds. 2. When they heard this, they sent envoys to Cæsar to ask him into what district he was marching. 3. As he suspected that they had formed some new resolve, Cæsar determined not to move his camp nearer the Rhine. 4. There was no tribe for whom they were not a match. 5. The lands Cæsar allowed the Germans to settle in were not of the same character as those they had seized in Gaul. 6. Being driven from home, these tribes had come to the Rhine, where the Ubii had lands. 7. If these settle in Gaul, I shall assign them whatever lands they wish to hold. 8. The Germans, although they cannot protect their own territories, are asking to be allowed to drive out the Treveri from their lands. 9. When he discovered their design, he made them the same answer as he had given to the envoys of the Ubii some days before.

CHAPTER XXVI.

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT NARRATION.

175. In many of the preceding chapters rules have been given for using, now the indicative, now the subjunctive, in subordinate clauses introduced by a relative or conjunction.

But all such subordinate clauses are put in the *subjunctive* when dependent on a clause in indirect narration, that is, on a clause which is itself dependent on some verb of *stating, thinking, perceiving, ordering* or *asking*. The indicative should never be used to express any portion of the quoted words or thoughts of another ; as,

He answers that he has been silent as long as he has been able :
Respondet quamdiū potuerit sē tacuisse.

They thought they would recover the hostages that they had given to Crassus : Sē obsidēs quōs Crassō dedissent recipērātūrōs existimābant.

It was observed that our men were scarcely suited to an enemy of this sort because they could not follow up a retreating force :
Intellectum est nostrōs, quod Insequi cēdentēs non possent, minus aptōs esse ad hūjus generis hostem.

He ordered them to await his arrival in the place where they then were :
Eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum expectāre jussit.

He asked why Cæsar demanded this if he did not think it right :
Rogāvit cūr Cæsar, si nōn æquum existimāret, hōc postulāret.

i. An apparent exception is found in the use of the indicative in subordinate clauses that really form no part of the quoted words or thoughts, but either are parenthetic or explanatory additions made by the writer himself, or are the writer's substitute for something actually said or thought ; as,

He ordered the cohorts which were on guard to set out with him :
Cohortēs quæ in statīōnibus erant sēcum proficisci jussit.

Cæsar suspected that that would happen which did occur :
Cæsar fore id, quod accidit, suspicābātur.

Here *quæ in statīōnibus erant* formed no part of the order given, while no such clause as *quod accidit* could possibly have been in Cæsar's mind.

176. The *sequence of tenses* is observed in these subjunctive clauses, primary tenses following primary and secondary following secondary. In narrative, secondary sequence is the rule, the present and future indicative becoming the imperfect subjunctive, the perfect and future perfect indicative becoming the pluperfect subjunctive (see section 187, b).

But sometimes for the sake of vividness the primary sequence is used in narrative, the present and future indicative becoming the present subjunctive, the perfect and future perfect indicative becoming the perfect subjunctive. (See also section 190, vi.)

177. VIRTUAL INDIRECT NARRATION.—The subjunctive is used in any subordinate clause which is conceived as expressing the words or thoughts of another, without any formal or explicit statement to that effect. This is called the subjunctive of *virtual (informal or implied) indirect narration*; as,

He offered great rewards if they succeeded in carrying the despatches through: Magna prōposuit praeemia si litteras percellissent. (Here *prōposuit* is equivalent to *sē datūrum esse pollicitus est*.)

They led part of their troops across, in order, if possible, to storm the fortress: Partem suarum cōpiarum trādūxerunt ut, si possent, castellum expugnarent. (This represents the original thought *si poterimus, castellum expugnābimus*.)

*The enemy were waiting, in case our men should cross the marsh: Paludem si nostri transirent hostēs expectabant.*¹ (This represents some such thought as *si transibunt, adoriemur*.)

He gave me all the books that (as he said) his father had left: Omnēs librōs quōs pater suus reliquisset mihi dōnavit.

For other examples compare the subjunctive with *quod*, *dum* and *priusquam* (sections 147, 155 and 156).

i. A clause dependent on a subjunctive, and forming a close connection with it, is sometimes itself put in the subjunctive by attraction, without in any way being in virtual indirect narration; as, *So profound an impression was produced by this war among the barbarians, that envoys were sent to Cæsar by those tribes which dwelt beyond the Rhine: Tanta hūjus belli ad barbarōs opiniō perlāta est, uti ab iis nātiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, mitterentur lēgāti ad Caesarem.* *They drove the cavalry before them in such a panic that they did not cease from their flight until they came in sight of our army: Equitēs ita perterritōs ēgērunt, ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent quam in*

1. Such a clause seems to have the value of an indirect question, but is really a protasis in virtual indirect narration.

cōspectum agminis nostri vēnissent. *When he failed to influence him as he desired, he sent by night to the king the most trusty slave he had: Quem cum minus quam vellet movēret, noctū dē servīs suis quem habuit fidēlissimum ad rēgem misit.*¹

ii. There sometimes occurs an illogical extension (by mistaken analogy) of the subjunctive of virtual indirect narration, in which the verb of *saying* or *thinking* is expressed, and is itself put in the subjunctive; as, *He begged to be left in Gaul because, as he said, he was prevented by religious scruples: Petēbat ut in Galliā relinquerētur, quod religiōnibus impediri diceret* (for *quod religiōnibus impedirētur*).

EXERCISE 26.

A.

1. He promised to send all the cavalry he had with him. 2. He believes that if the Ædui are crushed, the rest of the Gauls will disperse to their homes. 3. Cæsar feared that the same thing would happen as had occurred on the previous day. 4. We were waiting in case the Gauls should attempt to break down the bridge. 5. Having offered rewards to those who should first mount the wall, he gave the signal. 6. He ordered Labienus, whom he had put in charge of the camp, to hinder, by whatever means he could, the enemy from crossing that river. 7. Cæsar complains because the Ædui have not lent him aid. 8. The enemy swarmed around in hopes of finding some means of approach. 9. Word was brought that Cæsar would send the cavalry by the same road by which the enemy had gone. 10. He inquired how many miles the town in which they dwelt was from the camp. 11. Driven by hunger, they secretly went out from the camp to see whether they could find any grain or cattle in the fields. 12. They gave reasons which (they held) were perfectly valid.

(*B. Cæsar, Bk. V. 15, 16.*)

1. He observed that when our men had an engagement with the enemy, the cavalry never fought in close order. 2. He feared that if the enemy were driven back our men would pursue them too closely. 3. The two cohorts which Cæsar had sent to reinforce

1. The subjunctive mood of *incolerent*, *venissent* and *vellet*, instead of *incolabant*, *venerunt* (see section 156, a) and *volebat* is due entirely to the subjunctives on which they depend.

our men, he ordered to drive back the charioteers who were boldly breaking through the cavalry. 4. They were waiting to see whether our men would follow those who were designedly retreating into the woods. 5. He thinks that our men will not dare to attack the charioteers, because they are not suited for this kind of fighting. 6. They asked what brought the same danger to the cavalry and to those who had leaped down from their chariots. 7. He had not posted guards, on the ground that all the soldiers were busy fortifying the camp. 8. He perceived that if our men left the standards, the enemy rushed out of the woods and slew them. 9. They generally fall back towards the hills until they have withdrawn our cavalry from the legions.

C. (Cæsar, Bk. IV. 11-14.)

1. He ordered his men to defend the camp as long as they could. 2. They begged him to give no time for employing treachery, to those who the day before had put our cavalry to flight. 3. They thought that the enemy would not join battle until their cavalry, who had gone across the Meuse, returned. 4. He waited in hopes that they would accept the terms he had offered. 5. He perceived how much prestige he would gain if he forced his way into the enemy's camp. 6. He intends to put to death all who deceive him. 7. They said that they had brought all their leading men and soldiers, as had been arranged. 8. Enraged at the thought of (*quod*) the enemy having treacherously slain our cavalry the day before, he ordered the envoys who had come to the camp to be detained. 9. They brought word that several of our men had been slain, among them Piso, whose grandfather had been called friend by our senate.

CHAPTER XXVII.

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

178. In the general use of the tenses Latin differs from English in two respects :

i. There is no distinction in form corresponding to the English Progressive, Indefinite and Emphatic tenses, except that the Latin imperfect and perfect nearly correspond to the English past progressive and past indefinite respectively.

ii. Especially in subordinate clauses Latin is more exact than English in indicating both the point of time (present, past or future),¹ and also priority of action in relation to the main verb ; as, *When I find out, I shall inform you, if I can* : **Cum cōgnōverō, faciam tē certiorē, si poterō.** (Literally, *When I shall have found out, I shall inform you, if I shall be able.*)

179. The PRESENT tense is used

(a) Of what is going on now at the present moment ; as, *They are preparing for war* : **Bellum parant.**

(b) Of general truths, and of continued, repeated or habitual actions or states ; as, *Fortune favors the brave* : **Fortūna fortēs adjuvat.** *Those in the interior do not sow grain* : **Interiōrēs frumenta nōn serunt.**

(c) As an historical present, in animated narrative ; as, *When the news was brought, he makes haste to set out* : **Cum id nūntiātum esset, mātūrat proficisci.**

(d) To express an action attempted or intended in present time (the conative present) ; as, *They are trying to avoid danger* : **Periculum vitant.**

(e) With *jam* and its compounds to express actions continued from the past into the present, where we should expect the perfect ; as, *He has long been collecting troops* : **Jamdū cōpiās comparat.**

(f) With *dum* (*while*), where we should expect the imperfect (see section 153).

180. The IMPERFECT tense is used

(a) Of what was going on in past time ; as, *He was wintering in Gaul* : **In Galliā hiemābat.**

1. In letters the writer often transfers himself in thought to the time of the reader, and uses the imperfect and pluperfect instead of the present and perfect ; as, *I have nothing to write* : **Nihil habebam quod scriberem.**

(b) Of continued, repeated, or habitual actions or states in past time, like the English past indefinite; as, *He used to (or would) lead his troops out daily*: **Cotidīe prōducēbat cōplās.** *He had the greatest confidence in this legion*: **Huc legiōni cōfidēbat mǎximē.** *He could not discover anything*: **Nihil reperlēbat** (suggesting repeated failures). *They would not come to the councils*: **Ad concilia nōn venlēbant** (implying repeated refusals).

(c) Hence appropriately i. to express one's usual way of thinking, or the thoughts or feelings which accompany consideration (while the perfect is used of coming to a decision); ii. to explain the situation of affairs; iii. to give the details of movements, or to describe the process as opposed to summing up the result; iv. to mention the natural features of the scene of past operations.

(d) To express an action attempted or intended or begun in past time (the conative imperfect); as, *They tried to prevent our march*: **Nostrōs itinere prohibēbant.** *He proceeded to stir up the Gauls*: **Gallōs sollicitābat.**

(e) With *jam* and its compounds to express action continued from a still earlier time into the past time spoken of, where we should expect the pluperfect; as, *He had long been carrying on war*: **Jampridem bellum gerēbat.**

(f) In the case of *possum*, *oportet*, *dēbeō* and such verbs, to express lack of correspondence with fact.

181. The FUTURE is used to denote what will take place at some future time; as, *Cæsar will take the camp by storm*: **Cæsar castra expūgnābit.**

i. Where English has the present in a subordinate clause referring to future time, Latin uses the future when the actions are contemporaneous (section 178, ii.). Compare section 184, i.

182. The PERFECT is used

(a) Like the English present perfect, to denote an action completed by the present time; as, *They have left their lands and have hidden in the forest*: **Finibus suis excessērunt, sēque in silvās abdidērunt.**

(b) Like the English past indefinite, to state that something took place in past time; as, *He sent forward the cavalry*: **Equitātum praeimisit.**

The perfect narrates; the imperfect describes. The perfect sums up; the imperfect dwells upon the process or the particulars. Compare section 180, c.

(c) In subordinate clauses to denote an indefinitely repeated action, preceding that of the main verb, which is in the present. (Section 149.)

(d) With *postquam*, *ut*, *ubi*, *simul atque*, where we might expect the pluperfect. (Section 152, b.)

(e) To denote the present state resulting from completed action ; as, *He is dead : Mortuus est. They are gone : Discesserunt. We are surrounded : Circumventi sumus.* This is especially the case with *cōsuēvi*, *I am accustomed* ; *meminī*, *I remember* ; and *nōvi*, *I know* (literally *I have become accustomed, I have called to mind, I have learned*).

Similarly the pluperfect of these verbs has the value of the imperfect, and the future perfect the value of the future.

i. The perfect tenses of the passive have sometimes *fuī, fueram, fuerō*, instead of *sum, eram, erō*. The form with *fuī* generally implies that the condition spoken of has ceased to exist.

ii. A sort of perfect is formed by *habēō* and the perfect participle passive,¹ emphasizing the continuance of the result of a past action ; as, *He has large forces collected : Magnās cōplās coactās habet.* Similarly for the pluperfect *habēbam* is used.

183. The PLUPERFECT is used

(a) To mark an act as completed or taking place before some point in past time mentioned or implied : as, *They had by this time reached the territories of the Ædui : Jam in Aeduōrum finēs pervenerant.*

(b) In subordinate clauses to denote an indefinitely repeated action, preceding that of the main verb, which is in the imperfect. (Section 149.)

i. Sometimes Cæsar uses the pluperfect instead of the perfect in referring to previous passages in his Commentaries.

184. The FUTURE PERFECT is used to express something completed or attained by some point in the future ; as, *Meanwhile they will have gone : Interim discesserint.*

i. Where English has the present or present perfect in a subordinate clause referring to future time, Latin uses the future perfect when the action of the subordinate verb is prior to that of the principal verb (section 178, ii.). Sometimes where two future actions are regarded as identical, one involving the other, the future perfect is found in both clauses ; as, *He who crushes Antony will (thereby) finish the war : Qui Antōnium oppresserit, is bellum cōfecerit.*

ii. The future perfect is sometimes used to emphasize the completion of a future act ; as, *I at least shall have my duty done (or I at least shall be found to have done my duty) : Ego certē meum officium praestiterō.* It thus may come to give assurance of rapidity of action ; as, *The first attack will carry the camp forthwith : Primus impetus castra cēperit.*

1. Compare in English *I have the letter written*, with *I have written the letter*.

EXERCISE 27.

A.

1. To this legion he always showed especial indulgence. 2. If you assist the enemy, I shall burn your villages. 3. The Druids are accustomed to hold aloof from war, and do not pay taxes. 4. After he had learned this, he thought he ought not to wait longer. 5. If Cæsar is at the head of the army, we shall easily conquer the Gauls. 6. He marched through the forest of Ardennes, which extended from the Rhine to the Nervii. 7. By this means they sought to terrify the others. 8. While this was going on, the enemy had already reached the territories of the Ædui, and were laying waste their lands. 9. On the following day they move their camp two miles. 10. Whenever he saw his men in distress, he would send reinforcements. 11. For the reasons which I have mentioned, Cæsar wished to set out for Britain. 12. Before midnight the enemy will be gone.

B. (*Cæsar, Bk. V. 17, 18.*)

1. The enemy are rallying. 2. When Cæsar learns this he will send forward the legions. 3. Whenever our men make an attack, the enemy betake themselves to flight. 4. They were accustomed to leap down from their chariots. 5. For a long time they had been contending with their full force. 6. Whenever they began to forage, the enemy would suddenly show themselves. 7. As soon as all the forces had assembled, he proceeded to cross the river. 8. The enemy's forces are drawn up on the hill. 9. While the cavalry was foraging the enemy had withdrawn.

C. (*Cæsar, Bk. IV. 15-19.*)

1. He did not think it right to give them permission to cross. 2. After the army had begun to be led across, they held a council. 3. If they lay waste these lands, I shall detain the envoys who are with me. 4. They were afraid of punishment, because they remembered what they had done. 5. They sought to keep Cæsar from lending aid to the Ubii. 6. When the Romans have the courage to cross the Rhine, we shall assemble. 7. He gave a kindly answer to whatsoever envoys came to him. 8. Whenever he punishes the Germans, he inspires fear in the Gauls. 9. While he was staying there, the cavalry was burning the enemy's buildings, cutting down their crops and breaking down their bridges.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

INDIRECT NARRATION—ORATIO OBLIQUA.

185. Direct Narration (*Ōrātiō Rēcta*) gives in their original form the words or thoughts of any person.

Indirect Narration (*Ōrātiō Oblīqua*) gives (in dependence upon some verb of *stating, thinking, perceiving, ordering* or *asking*) the substance of the words or thoughts of another person, and even of the writer or speaker when quoting himself.

This indirect mode of reporting speech is more usual in Latin than the direct, and is much more common in that language than it is in English.

The rules for changing Direct into Indirect Narration are as follows :

A. CHANGES IN MOOD.¹

186. 1. Principal Clauses.

(a) Clauses containing a *statement* (assertive sentences) have their verb in the *infinitive* with subject accusative. (Section 14.)

(b) Clauses containing a *question* (interrogative sentences) have their verb in the *subjunctive*. (Section 35.)

i. Indirect deliberative questions (section 134, d) retain the subjunctive.

(c) Clauses containing a *command* or *request* (imperative sentences) have their verb in the *subjunctive*.

i. This use of the subjunctive is closely related to the substantival final clause (section 27), both being developments of the independent jussive subjunctive (section 134, b). It is thus sometimes difficult, if not impossible, to distinguish the reported command and the substantival final clause, especially after *nē* or when *ut* is omitted (section 28, vi.); as for instance in the sentences, *Nūntiī postulābant hōs sibi dēderent*: *The messengers demanded that they should surrender these men to them.* *Militibus imperātum est nē hostēs aggrederentur*: *The soldiers were given orders that they should not attack the enemy.*

2. Subordinate Clauses.

All kinds of subordinate clauses (relative, temporal, conditional, causal, etc.) are put in the *subjunctive* mood. (Section 175.)

1. In no case is the indicative retained.

B. CHANGES IN TENSE.

187. (a) Clauses put in the *infinitive* change as follows :

DIRECT NARRATION.		INDIRECT NARRATION.	
Present Ind.		becomes	Present Infinitive.
Imperfect, Perfect or Pluperfect Ind.	}	"	Perfect "
Future Ind.		"	Future "
Present or Imperf. Subj. ¹	}	"	Inf. in <i>ūrum fuisse</i> .
Future Perf. Ind.		"	
Imperf. or Pluperf. Subj. ¹			

(b) Clauses put in the *subjunctive* as a rule observe the sequence of tenses (section 176) as follows :

DIRECT NARRATION.				INDIRECT NARRATION.			
				Primary Sequence.		Secondary Sequence.	
Present Indic. or Subj.	becomes	Present Subj.	Imperfect Subj.				
Future "	"	"	"	"	"	"	"
Imperfect "	"	Imperfect	"	"	"	"	"
Perfect "	"	Perfect	Pluperfect	"	"	"	"
Fut. Perf. "	"	"	"	"	"	"	"
Pluperfect "	"	Pluperfect	"	"	"	"	"

Certain exceptions occur, however, in *indirect questions* :

The future indicative becomes (according to sequence) the present or imperfect subjunctive of the active periphrastic conjugation (section 36).

The imperfect indicative becomes (according to sequence) the perfect or pluperfect subjunctive (section 36, fn. 1).

i. Of special importance is the use of the pluperfect subjunctive for the future perfect indicative of direct narration. The difficulty of this common use is due largely to the fact that the original future perfect is foreign to the English idiom (section 178, ii.). Thus, *If I find out, I shall bring back word: Si cōgnōverō, renūntiābō*, would become, *He answered that if he found out, he should bring back word: Respondit si cōgnōvisset, sē renūntiātūrum esse*. The pluperfect subjunctive in such cases means literally *should have*, not *had already*.

C. CHANGES IN PRONOUNS.

188. When, as is generally the case,² the first and second per-

1. In the apodosis of a conditional sentence.

2. Of course where the matter quoted refers to the person reporting or the person to whom it is reported, Latin, like English, will use the first or second persons in indirect narration.

sions of the original words are changed in indirect narration to the third person :

<i>Egō, nōs,</i>	become	<i>sē</i> (or if emphatic in the nominative, <i>ipse, ipsi</i>).
<i>Meus, noster,</i>	"	<i>suus</i> .
<i>tū, vōs,</i>	"	<i>illē, illi</i> (or sometimes <i>is, ei</i>).
<i>tuus, vester,</i>	"	<i>illius, illōrum</i> .
<i>hic, iste,</i>	"	<i>ille</i> (or <i>is</i>).

D. CHANGES IN ADVERBS.

189. Adverbs which are relative to the time or place of the speaker are, as a rule, adapted to the time and place of the reporter. Thus *nunc, hodiē, hic, hinc, heri* would become respectively *tum* or *tunc, illō diē, ibi, inde, pridē*.

190. The following real or apparent exceptions are found :

i. Clauses introduced by the coordinating relative, which are only apparently subordinate, are put in the accusative and infinitive.

ii. Because of the tendency in Latin to use the same construction after *quam* (*than*) as before it, the accusative and infinitive sometimes occurs in *quam* clauses instead of the subjunctive.

iii. For the indicative in parenthetical clauses in indirect narration see section 175, i.

iv. The hortative subjunctive (section 134, *a*) is usually changed into the infinitive of the passive periphrastic conjugation.

v. Rhetorical questions which are virtual denials are often put in the accusative and infinitive.

vi. Instead of the regular secondary sequence the more vivid¹ primary is often found after historical tenses ; and sometimes also a passage may begin with secondary sequence and suddenly change to primary sequence.

vii. The pronoun *hic* and the adverbs mentioned in section 189 are often retained unchanged in indirect narration.

viii. The regular rules for the use of *sē, ille* and *is* in indirect narration are not always rigidly followed, especially where no ambiguity arises. See particularly the use of *sē* and *suus* in sections 164 and 165.

191. The verb of *saying, thinking, etc.*, on which the indirect narration depends, is not always expressed, being often sufficiently suggested by the context.

Further, where the indirect narration includes more than one variety of reported utterance (statements, commands, questions, requests) it is not Latin usage to change the verb introducing the various indirect clauses, as English often does.

1. More vivid because presenting more exactly the original tenses of the direct narration.

Arlovistus sends envoys to Caesar saying that he wishes to treat with him about these matters . . . and asking him to appoint a day for an interview: Arlovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit: velle sē dē his rēbus . . . agere cum eō: uti colloquīō diem cōstitueret.

192. In indirect narration conditional sentences assume the following forms:

SI quid habeo dō, <i>becomes</i>	{ dicit sē, SI quid habeat, dare. dixit sē, SI quid haberet, dare.
SI quid habēbam dabam, <i>becomes</i>	{ dicit sē, SI quid haberet, dedisse. dixit sē, SI quid haberet, dedisse.
SI quid habui dedi. <i>becomes</i>	{ dicit sē, SI quid habuerit, dedisse. dixit sē, SI quid habuisset, dedisse.
SI quid habēbō dabō, <i>becomes</i>	{ dicit sē, SI quid habeat, datūrum esse. dixit sē, SI quid haberet, datūrum esse,
SI quid habeam dem, <i>becomes</i>	{ dicit sē. SI quid habeat, datūrum esse. dixit sē, SI quid haberet, datūrum esse,
SI quid habērem darem, <i>becomes</i>	{ dicit } sē, SI quid haberet, datūrum fuisse { dixit } (or esse).
SI quid habuissem dedissem, <i>becomes</i>	{ dicit } sē, SI quid habuisset, datūrum { dixit } fuisse.

193. The following examples illustrate the rules for changing from direct to indirect narration:

- (1) *Direct*.—Your gift is pleasing and welcome; the hostages will be in the place you ask; the prisoners we shall not send back, because Hannibal, through whose agency the war was undertaken, you keep even now in command. *Mūnus vestrum grātum acceptumque est; obsidēs, quō locō rogātis, erunt; captīvōs nōn remittēmus, quod Hannibalem, cūjus operā susceptum bellum est, etiam nunc cum imperiō habētis.*

Indirect.—(This answer was given them:) that their gift was pleasing and welcome; the hostages would be in the place they asked; the prisoners they should not send back, because Hannibal, through whose agency the war had been undertaken, they kept even then in command. *(His respōnsū est:) mūnus illōrum grātum acceptumque esse; obsidēs, quō locō rogārent, futūrōs; captīvōs nōn remisūrōs, quod Hannibalem, cūjus operā susceptum bellum esset, etiam nunc cum imperiō habērent.*

(2) *Direct.*—All of you make your attack on the ship of Eumenes alone, against the rest be content merely to defend yourselves. You will easily accomplish this. I shall see that you know in which vessel the king is sailing; if you capture or slay him, you shall be well rewarded.

Indirect.—(He gives instructions) that they are all to make their attack on the ship of Eumenes alone, and against the rest are to be content merely to defend themselves. They would easily accomplish that. He should see that they knew in which vessel the king was sailing; if they captured or slew him, they should be well rewarded.

(3) *Direct.*—We are not the aggressors in making war on the Roman people, but yet we do not refuse to fight in case we are attacked. If you desire our goodwill, we can be useful friends to you; either assign us lands or permit us to hold those which we have acquired by our arms.

Indirect.—(They said) they were not the aggressors in making war on the Roman people, but yet they did not refuse to fight in case they were attacked. If the Romans desired their goodwill, they could be useful friends to them; let

Omnēs in ūnam Eumenis rēgis concurrite nāvem, ā cēteris tantum satis habēte vōs dēfendere. Hōc facile cōsequēminī. Rēx autem in quā nāvī vehātur, ut sciātis, ego faciam; quem sī aut cēperitis aut interfeceritis, māgnō vōbis praemiō erit.

(Praecipit) omnēs ut in ūnam Eumenis rēgis concurrant nāvem, ā cēteris tantum satis habeant sē dēfendere. Id illōs facile cōsecūtūrōs. Rēx autem in quā nāvī veherētur, ut scirent, sē faciātūrum; quem sī aut cēpissent aut interfēcissent, māgnō illis praemiō fore.

Nōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum inferimus, neque tamen recūsāmus, sī lacessēmur, quā armis contendāmus. Sī nostram grātiā vultis, possumus vōbis ūtilēs esse amici; vel nōbis agrōs attribuite vel patimini eōs tenēre quōs armis possēdimus.

(Dixerunt) sē neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum inferre, neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacessantur, quā armis contendant. Sī suam grātiā Rōmānī velint, posse illis ūtilēs esse amicos; vel sibi agrōs attribuant, vel pa-

them either assign them lands, or permit them to hold those which they had acquired by their arms.

tiantur eōs tenēre, quōs armīs possēderint.

- (4) *Direct.*—I can have no friendship with you, if you remain in Gaul; there are no lands vacant in Gaul; but if you wish, you may settle in the lands of the Ubii, whose envoys are with me, and are asking aid of me; I shall give this order to the Ubii.

Mihi nulla vōblscum amicitia esse potest, si in Galliā remanēbitis; neque ulli in Galliā vacant agri; sed licet, si vultis, in Ubiōrum finibus cōnsidere, quōrum sunt lēgātī apud mē, et ā mē auxilium petunt; hōc Ubiis impērabō.

Indirect.—(Cæsar answered) that he could have no friendship with them, if they remained in Gaul; there were no lands vacant in Gaul; but if they wished, they might settle in the lands of the Ubii, whose envoys were now with him, and were asking aid of him; he should give this order to the Ubii.

(Cæsar respondit) sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse, si in Galliā remanērent; neque ullōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs; sed licēre, si velint, in Ubiōrum finibus cōnsidere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē, et ā sē auxilium petant; hōc sē Ubiis impērātūrum.

- (5) *Direct.*—Let them not provoke the enemy to battle, but if they are themselves attacked, let them hold their ground, until I myself come up.

Nē hostēs proeliō lacessant, et si ipsī lacessentur, sustineant, quoad ipse accesserō.

Indirect.—(He sent men to tell them) not to provoke the enemy to battle, but if they were themselves attacked, they were to hold their ground, until he himself came up.

(Mittit quī nūntiārent) nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent, et si ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent, quoad ipse accessisset.

- (6) *Direct.*—Surrender to me those who have made war on me and on Gaul.

Eōs, quī mihi Galliaeque bellum intulērunt, mihi dēdite.

The Rhine is the limit of the Roman people's authority. If you think it wrong for

Populī Rōmānī imperium Rhēnus finit. Si tē invitō Germānōs in Galliam

the Germans to cross into Gaul against your wish, why do you claim that anything beyond the Rhine is under your sway or power?

trānsīre nōn aequum existimās, cūr tui quicquam esse imperiī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulās?

Indirect. — (Cæsar called on them) to surrender to him those who had made war on him and on Gaul.

(Caesar postulāvit) eōs, qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dederent.

(They answered) that the Rhine was the limit of the Roman people's authority. If he thought it wrong for the Germans to cross into Gaul against his wish, why did he claim that anything beyond the Rhine was under his sway or power?

(Respondērunt :) Populi Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum finire ; si sē invito Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre nōn aequum existimāret, cūr sui quicquam esse imperiī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret?

(7) *Direct.* — Do no harm to the Trinobantes, Cassivellanus.

Nōll, Cassivellaune, Trinobantibus nocēre.

Indirect. — He orders Cassivellaunus to do no harm to the Trinobantes.

(Imperat Cassivellaunō) nē Trinobantibus noceat.

(Observe how the vocative may be turned in the indirect speech.)

EXERCISE 28.

4.

1. To these ambassadors he replied : "I will come now, if you are ready to follow." 2. They sent ambassadors to Cæsar saying that they were ready to open the gates they had closed the day before. 3. He told them not to forget the former valor of the Helvetians, nor the wrongs done by them to the Roman people. 4. "I," answered he, "have spared the citizens, you the Gauls." 5. He began to urge them not to set out ; Cæsar did not dare to leave them in Gaul ; but if they crossed over to Britain, he would kill them all. 6. "Leap down," he said, "fellow-soldiers, unless you wish to abandon the eagle to the enemy. Let us not incur such disgrace. I at any rate will do my duty." 7. They replied that if these proceedings were reported to Ariovistus, they did not doubt that he would inflict the severest punishment on all the

hostages who were in his power. 8. What were they to do? he asked; it was impossible to defend the camp any longer, and Cæsar would have been annoyed if they had set out without his orders. 9. In his consulship (he said) the Germans had most eagerly sought the friendship of Rome. Why should anyone imagine that they would forsake their allegiance? 10. Would they have sent Commius back, he asked, if he had not led his army across?

B. (Cæsar, Bk. V. 19-21.)

1. He pointed out that if the cavalry wandered too extensively, the enemy would rush out from the woods and seize them. 2. "We shall send you all the corn we have," they answered Cæsar. "Why are you setting out with the legions? Do not make an attack on our town." 3. He said that this young man would have had supreme power if he had not been slain by Cassivellaunus. 4. "Let us cross the river," they answered. "Who can harm us if we are able to conceal ourselves in the marshes?" 5. The Trinobantes sent envoys to Cæsar, saying that they would surrender to him all the hostages he demanded and begging him not to suffer the soldiers to lay waste their lands. 6. They feared that if Cæsar allowed the legions to leave the line of march, the enemy would seize many of the soldiers. 7. They said they were accustomed to assemble in these towns, whenever the enemy made a raid.

C. (Cæsar, Bk. IV. 20-22.)

1. He said that this had happened very opportunely; for if he had set out for Britain, he would not have found suitable harbors. 2. "What was I to do?" he asked. "Was I to trust myself to barbarians?" 3. He ordered him to explore whatever islands he visited and bring him back word of the size of their harbors. 4. He was aware that Commius, who had been made king there, had discovered his design and would report it to the Atrebates. 5. "Do not land from the vessel," he urged Volusenus. "We have done all that Cæsar ordered. Let us return to Gaul." 6. "How many legions," he asked, "were sufficient last year to make war on Britain?" 7. Envoys came from Britain to Cæsar, saying that they wished to attach themselves to his alliance, promising to be faithful to the Roman people and not to furnish aid to the Gauls, and asking him to visit the island at his first opportunity.

CHAPTER XXIX.

DIFFERENT FORMS OF THE NOUN CLAUSE.

194. A noun (or substantive) clause is one that takes the place and discharges the functions of a substantive, whether as *subject* or *object* of a verb or equivalent phrase, or as an *appositive*¹ to some other word in the sentence.

N.B.—The accusative and infinitive construction is here treated as a noun clause because it represents the English noun sentence introduced by the conjunction *that*. Similarly in substantival clauses of result, and in clauses with *quān* and *quōminus*, the adverbial notion of result or purpose has become so weakened that they are properly treated as noun clauses like their English equivalents.

i. Clauses, like infinitive phrases, are always regarded as neuter.

195. After verbs of *saying* and *thinking*, many so-called impersonal verbs, and many expressions composed of a neuter adjective and *est*, English noun clauses with *that* are expressed by the accusative and infinitive.

(a) Subject.—*It is not right that the Germans should cross the Rhine*: **Nōn aequum est Germānōs Rhēnum trānsire.**

(b) Object.—*They thought they possessed limited territories*: **Angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrabantur.**

(c) Appositive.—*This report was brought to Cæsar, that they were attempting to march through our province*: **Caesari id nūntiatum est, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī.**

196. After verbs of *ordering*, *asking*, *determining*, and verbs of *fearing*, English noun clauses with *that* are expressed by clauses with *ut* or *nē* and the subjunctive. This subjunctive is akin to the subjunctive of purpose, and like it is in its origin the subjunctive expressing will or wish. (See section 186, 1, c. i.)

(a) Subject.—*The soldiers have been given orders that they are to attack the enemy*: **Militibus imperātum est ut hostēs aggrediantur.**

(b) Object.—*I fear that I may be deserted by all*: **Vereor nē ab omnibus dēserar.**

(c) Appositive.—*Their aim is that they may recover their liberty*: **Id agunt ut libertātem recipiant.**

1. A noun clause is occasionally used as a restrictive appositive to an accusative of anticipation; as, *You know Marcellus, how slow he is*: **Nosti Marcellum, quam tardus sit.** *They feared that supplies could not be brought in*: **Rem frumentariam ut supportari posset timent.**

197. After verbs of *happening* and *causing*,¹ English noun clauses with *that* are expressed by clauses with *ut* and the subjunctive, which is a weakened subjunctive of result.²

(a) Subject.—*It happened that there was a full moon*: *Accidit ut esset plēna lūna*.

(b) Object.—*He brought it about that supplies could be conveyed without danger*: *Commeātūs ut sine periculō portārī possent, efflēbat*.

(c) Appositive.—*The day had this result, that a very great number of the enemy were wounded*: *Diēs hunc habuit ēventum ut māximus hostium numerus vulnerārētur*.

198. English noun clauses with *that* after verbs expressing emotion, and clauses with *that*=*the fact that*, are expressed by clauses with *quod* and either the indicative, or the subjunctive of virtual indirect narration.

(a) Subject.—*There was also the fact that he had stated this in the assembly of the Ædui*: *Accēdēbat hūc quod in conciliō Aeduōrum hæc dixerat*.

(b) Object.—*He complains that he has been abandoned*: *Quod sit dēstitūtus queritur*.³

(c) Appositive.—*A most fortunate thing happened, that the next day the Germans came into the camp*: *Opportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postridiē Germānī in castra vēērunt*.

(d) Adverbial Accusative.—*As to the fact that you threaten me you will not disregard the wrongs of the Ædui, no one has contended with me, except to his own destruction*: *Quod mihi dēnūtiās tē Aeduōrum injūriās nōn neglētūrum, nēmō mēcum sine suā perniciē contendit*.

199. After verbs of *asking*, *learning*, *knowing*, *telling*, etc., English noun clauses introduced by an interrogative are expressed by an interrogative clause with the subjunctive of indirect question.

(a) Subject.—*It cannot be determined with the eyes in which direction it flows*: *Oculis in utram partem fluat iudicārī nōn potest*.

(b) Object.—*He found out what was being done*: *Cōgnōvit quid gererētur*.

1. Substantive clauses of result with *ut* are also found as subjects of such verbs and phrases as *sequitur*, *restat*, *relinquitur*, *reliquum est*, *jus est*, *mos est*, *consuetudo est*.

2. The substantive notion became so much more prominent than the notion of result that this construction came to be used in cases where not even the faintest trace of result can be discerned.

3. Here, as often, the substantival and causal notions are combined.

(c) Appositive.—*This is the real question, whether he has returned : Illud quaeritur num redierit.*

200. The same verb may have more than one construction, the difference of construction in most cases representing a difference of meaning.¹

(a) *They determine that these should leave the town : Cōstituunt ut hī oppidō excēdant.*

They determine that it is best to return : Cōstituunt optimum esse reverti.

He determined what tribute Britain should pay : Quid vectigālīs Britannia penderet, cōstituit.

(b) *Word was brought that they were not to attack the enemy : Nūntiātum est nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent.* (Compare section 195, c.)

(c) *There was also the fact that they fought in small groups : Accēdebāt hūc ut rārī proeliārentur.* (Compare section 198, a.)

N.B.—It is important to distinguish carefully (a) between substantial clauses with *that* and the purely adverbial clauses of purpose and result also introduced by *that*, and (b) between substantial interrogative clauses and relative clauses with omitted antecedent (section 39, v.).

EXERCISE 29.

A.

1. It is best that we should announce to the soldiers that they are not to provoke the enemy to battle. 2. They made the complaint that the enemy were laying waste their lands. 3. The result was that it was quickly ascertained what tribes inhabited the island. 4. There was a danger that it would be difficult to determine what should be done. 5. There was added the fact that he had stated that Cæsar had conferred the chief power upon him. 6. It happened that some of the soldiers were intercepted by the sudden approach of the cavalry. 7. It was reported that Cæsar had given orders to the soldiers to storm the enemy's camp. 8. By means of messengers he informs Cæsar what he thinks should be done. 9. He answered that he did not know why the soldiers had received orders that they were to attack the town. 10. There

¹ Observe that the clause which follows verbs of *determining, announcing, telling, etc.*, will be in the infinitive or subjunctive, according to the rules of indirect narration (section 186, a).

is no doubt that the Helvetians are the most powerful. 11. He was of the opinion that it would be dangerous to the province that the enemy should become accustomed to cross the Rhine. 12. This report had been brought, that the Germans had betaken themselves to the woods.

B. (Cæsar Bk. V. 22, 23.)

1. There was added the fact that some ships had been driven back. 2. This report had been brought to Cassivellaunus that Cæsar had determined to lead his forces back to the mainland. 3. When he had determined what to do, he announced that they were to wait for the vessels. 4. There is danger that Cæsar will determine that all the legions shall winter in Gaul. 5. It happened that the ships in which he had ordered that the enemy should be taken back had been lost in the storm. 6. Cæsar complained that they had not paid the tribute. 7. He announced that the best (*optimus*) thing was for the envoys to fritter away the rest of the summer. 8. The result was (*quō factum est*) that Cæsar was not aware how many losses had been sustained. 9. As to the fact that you announce that the equinox is at hand, I am aware that the army must be taken back at one trip.

C. (Cæsar, Bk. IV. 23-26.)

1. It happened that he perceived that some were in distress. 2. He prayed the gods that aid might be sent him. 3. Cæsar had warned them that they were not to land from the ship. 4. He warned the soldiers that the country was perfectly familiar to the enemy but unknown to them. 5. There is added the fact that he perceived this would be of great service to him. 6. They had learned what Cæsar had pointed out should be done. 7. He complained that the men were doing their work too slowly. 8. This has been determined, that the lieutenants shall point out to the soldiers what Cæsar wishes done. 9. The science of warfare demands that all should do their duty.

CHAPTER XXX.

CONTINUOUS NARRATIVE PROSE.

201. Passages of continuous narrative set for translation into Latin prose may conveniently be arranged in three divisions of increasing complexity: *first*, those passages in which little more is required than in the detached sentences heretofore given for translation, namely proper choice of words, correct inflection and observance of the rules of Latin syntax; *second*, those passages where, in addition, the phraseology requires alteration, either to adapt the passage to Latin idiom or to avoid difficulties arising from a limited vocabulary; and *third*, those passages in which some alteration is necessary or desirable not merely in phraseology but also in the structure or relation of sentences.

The three following sections discuss the chief points to be observed in each of these divisions.

CONNECTION OF THOUGHT.

202. Even in the simplest kind of narrative passage it will not do to treat the component sentences as so many independent units. Latin differs very markedly from English in regard to the connection of sentences. If a modern book or newspaper be compared with such an author as Cæsar, it will be found that in narrative English it is the exception rather than the rule to give formal expression to the connection of thought, while in narrative Latin the reverse holds true.

Hence the general rule that at the beginning of each new sentence care should be taken to make plain the connection in thought with the preceding words.

(a) The usual means of expressing the connection between sentences are as follows:

i. Particles such as *atque*, and *moreover*; *neque*, and *not*; *at*, *but*; *autem*, *however*; *vērō*, *but indeed*; *itaque*, *therefore*; *nam* or *enim*, *for*.

ii. Pronouns, especially the coordinating relative *quī* (section 172) and the demonstratives *hic*, *is*, *ille*, *ipse* and *idem* (sections 158-163).

iii. Words or phrases whose meaning suggests a reference to the preceding context, such as *interim*, *meanwhile*; *ita*, *in this way*; *tum*, *hereupon*; *eō*, *to that place*; *posterō diē*, *the next day*; *eādē dē causā*, *for the same reason*; *accēdit quod* or *ut*, *besides this*.

(b) Where the scene shifts and a new actor comes upon the stage, Latin is generally careful to mark the change of subject *early* in the sentence. If the new subject has been mentioned in the preceding sentence, *quī, hīc, is* or (for emphatic contrast), *ille* are generally used; if it has not been mentioned, a substantive is used, as, for instance, *Cæsar, hostēs* or *nostrī*. In the latter case very often none of the connecting links mentioned above is used; apparently the contrast afforded by the change of subject is in such cases felt to be a sufficient mark of connection.

On the other hand, where there is no change, the subject is seldom indicated in Latin except by the personal ending of the main verb of the new sentence.

(c) It may be noticed here that Latin prefers as a connective *neque* (or *nec*) to *et* followed by *nōn*; and similarly *nec quisquam, nec ullus, nec umquam* are preferred to *et nēmō, et nullus, et numquam*.

PHRASEOLOGY.

203. Before an English sentence can be turned into idiomatic Latin, it often requires remodelling and adaptation (in whole or part) because of differences in the form of expression preferred by each language. In our own language, as we know, the same thought may be expressed in many different ways, and of these some are sure to be more, some less, like the form of expression a Roman would choose. So it often happens that when at first it would seem impossible to turn some English sentence into Latin because it contains some words for which the student knows no Latin equivalent, the whole difficulty is easily solved by expressing the thought of the sentence in some other way. But again, even when the student does know a Latin equivalent for each *individual word* in an English sentence, he may yet fail to get a tolerable rendering, for the reason that Latin may put the *whole thought* into a form quite unlike the English.

To a certain extent differences of phraseology between Latin and English are matters of detail that the most complete vocabulary could not fully treat, but certain general rules may be given which have a very wide application. These rules are really illustrations of one great principle: that the genius of the Latin language is above all things *direct, definite and concrete*, like the Roman character itself, straightforward, business-like, practical and unimagi-

Hence the general rule for narrative prose, first to see clearly what is the exact meaning of the English phrase, and then to express that meaning in the simplest and most direct manner. Some important special applications of this rule are as follows :

(a) *Avoid metaphorical or picturesque expressions.* Very little modern English prose is as simple and direct as Cæsar's style ; much even of our everyday language is in fact highly metaphorical. In narrative prose, the best plan is to avoid figurative language altogether ; translate the thoughts and not the words. So, for example :

He left no stone unturned : Nihil prætermisit.

He turned a deaf ear to this advice : Quod cōsiliū nōn probavit.

He sacrificed friendship on the altar of patriotism : Amicitiam rei publicæ posthabuit.

Where figurative language is found in Latin (as in Cicero's oratory and Livy's semi-poetical prose) we constantly find either that a simile is preferred to the metaphor or that the metaphor is quite different from the English one, and even then is apt to be toned down by *tamquam*, *quasi*, *quidam*, etc.

(b) *Avoid abstract forms of expression.* Latin has fewer abstract words than English, and those it does possess it uses much more sparingly than we do, many of them being found only in philosophical writings. The number of abstract words which can safely be ventured upon in narrative prose is very limited, such as *amicitia*, *auctoritās*, *celeritās*, *māgnitūdō*, *studium*. Almost invariably the English abstract expression should be turned by a concrete Latin phrase ; as,

On the conclusion of this war : Hōc bellō cōfectō.

On the receipt of this information : Quod cum nūntiatum esset.

They promised submission to his authority : Ea quæ imperasset sē factūrōs polliciti sunt.

In Cæsar's consulship : Caesare cōsule.

His measures : Ea quæ faciēbat.

In pursuance of his annual custom : Ut quotaanīs cōsuēverat.

So the indirect question furnishes an equivalent for many abstract words (see section 37) and the vague word *rēs* often affords a convenient translation for various words such as *circumstances*, *situations*, *measures*, etc.

Similarly Latin is very deficient in class names which express the doer of an action, such as *fugitive*, *defender*, *combatant*, *discoverer*, *believer*. These can generally be expressed by the verb ; e.g., *fugientēs* or *eī quī fugiēbant*.

(c) *Avoid the personification of inanimate things or of qualities.* Latin seldom represents anything but a living thing as the doer of some action, while English so constantly makes inanimate objects

or abstract nouns the subject of a verb of action that we scarcely notice the personification.

Cæsar's sudden approach frightened them into submission: Cæsar's repentinō adventū commōti, lēgātōs dē dēditiōne mittunt.

The darkness of the night hid us from the enemy: Propter tenebrās, hostēs nostrōs nōn cōnspecti sūnt.

Speed alone will save us: Ūna est in celeritatē posita salūs.

His dying words: Ejus morientis verba.

(d) *The chief weight of the sentence falls in Latin upon the verb, whereas in English there is a tendency to make the noun the significant word. So for English phrases consisting of some unemphatic verb, such as make, have, take, do, etc., followed by a verbal noun which is the really significant word, Latin often has a verb which contains the meaning of the English noun within itself; as,*

He made reply to me: Mihi respondit.

He has no hesitation: Nōn dubitat.

He took his departure: Discessit.

This verb is often accompanied by a cognate accusative (see section 72) in the form of a neuter pronoun or adjective; as,

They can do no harm to us: Nihil nobis nocere possunt.

He made many promises: Multa pollicitus est.

They make the same attempt: Idem cōnantur.

This idiom is especially noticeable in the impersonal use of the passive voice of intransitive verbs (section 56); as,

Mention has been made of him: Dē illō dictum est.

There must be no delay: Nōn cunctandum est.

(e) *The active voice is preferred to the passive in the leading verbs in narrative prose, because of the desire to state exactly and naturally what takes place. But as Latin prefers to keep the same subject throughout a period, the verbs in the subordinate clauses and in participial phrases will often be passive while the main verb is, according to rule, in the active voice. Two important and frequent examples of the use of the passive are the ablative absolute construction, and the impersonal passive construction.*

(f) *The precise meaning of both English and Latin words must be closely watched. It will seldom happen that a word in one language corresponds exactly in all its uses to any one word in the other.*

i. For instance, in English very many transitive verbs may be used intransitively also, whereas in Latin this much less frequently occurs. In such cases the intransitive use is expressed sometimes by the passive voice, sometimes by the active with the reflexive pronoun, and sometimes by a quite different verb; as,

move (transitive), *movēre*; (intransitive), *movēri*.

surrender (transitive), *dēdere*; (intransitive), *sē dēdere*.

increase (transitive), *augēre*; (intransitive), *crēscere* or *augēri*.

ii. Again, many English words have widely different meanings, according to the context; as,

weight (burden), *onus*; (*influence*), *auctoritās*.

Rome (the city), *Rōma*; (*the nation*), *populus Rōmānus*.

field (piece of land) *ager*; (*battle*), *aciēs* or *proellum*.

ask (make a request), *petō*; (*put a question*), *quaerō*.

command (give an order), *imperō*; (*have authority over*),

praesum.

iii. An entirely different source of mistakes is the fact that many English words derived from Latin originals have in the course of time taken on a very different meaning. For instance:

obtineō = *hold, possess*; *obtain* = *cōsequor, adipiscor*.

occupō = *seize*; *occupy* = *obtineō*.

officium = *duty*; *office* = *magistrātus*.

recipio = *recover, regain*; *receive* = *accipio*.

sēcūrus = *free from anxiety*; *secure* = *tūtus*.

(g) *Omit unnecessary and merely ornamental epithets.* Some English writers are fond of heightening the effect by adding words or phrases that may adorn the style, but add nothing to the meaning. These may safely be omitted; as, *The enemy was awaiting the approach of our (gallant) leader. They aimed their weapons particularly at the horses (of the enemy's cavalry).*

(h) Here also it may be in place to call attention again to the precision shown in the Latin use of the tenses, especially i. in subordinate clauses referring to an action prior to that of the main verb (sections 178, ii. and 187, b, i.); ii. in the tenses of the participle (section 41); iii. after verbs of *promising* and *hoping*, etc (section 17). In one important respect only is Latin less exact than English, namely, in the frequent use of primary sequence after secondary tenses (section 190, vi.).

STRUCTURE.

204. It may happen, however, that all the preceding rules about syntax, connection and phraseology have been carefully observed, and yet that the result is far from being good Latin prose. For it may be that the English passage is constructed in a way that is very unlike Latin usage.

Modern English narrative is apt to consist of a series of detached sentences, each comparatively simple in its structure, generally short, and containing very few verbs. Classical Latin narrative is more apt to group several of these crisp sentences into a longer and more complex sentence, making the verb which expresses the main idea the principal verb, and putting the others in various subordinate relations.

Again, even when English does have a long complex sentence, it is more loosely constructed than the Latin period (section 9). In the Latin period (as in the Latin short sentence) the main thought is, as a rule, not complete until the final words are given; the period is intended to be grasped as a whole: grammatically it may appear very involved, but the thoughts are marshalled in a perfectly logical order. While in the English long sentence (as often in the short sentence also) we seldom find the main thought left in suspense until the very end of the sentence; the final words are not the emphatic ones; the thought is intended to be grasped in detail.

Contrast the following passages:

Our men then marched back to camp. Not a man had been killed, and very few wounded. Yet they had expected a formidable campaign, for the enemy numbered four hundred and thirty thousand men. Nostri ad unum omnes incolumēs perpaucis vulnerātis ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum quadringentōrum trigintā millium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt.

In the elementary stages of the writing of continuous Latin prose, it is not necessary to study very closely the formation of the Latin period, which, after all, is by no means invariably employed by even the most careful Latin prose authors; the following suggestions, however, will be found of importance for even the beginner.

(a) Arrange the various clauses of a sentence in the logical order of thought, which in narrative commonly means the order of time. Put all clauses or phrases expressing attendant circumstances before the main verb, and put last the clause on which the emphasis falls. This will generally be the principal clause, but see section 6, ii.

(b) Reduce the number of principal verbs by grouping short independent sentences that relate to a common topic into a complex sentence.

(c) Within this complex sentence or period, avoid as far as possible changes of subject. The subject of the main verb should, if expressed at all (section 202, b), appear early in the sentence and be made, where possible, the subject of the dependent clauses also.

(d) Latin is very fond of inserting a subordinate clause in the middle of the clause on which it depends, but the loosely joined parenthesis should be carefully avoided.

(e) Even where there is no need for grouping short sentences into a period, it may often be convenient to readjust some of the

clauses or phrases in the passage for translation, shifting them from one part of the sentence to another or even transferring them to the preceding or the following sentence. For instance, in the passage : *On receiving this news he led his forces against the enemy. His march, though rapid, was so conducted as to save the troops from all fatigue*, the translation is simplified by transferring the idea of *marching rapidly* to the preceding clause : **Quae cum audivisset, cōpiās adversus hostēs quam celerrimē dūxit; ita tamen ut militēs labōre et itinere nōn dēfatigātī sint.** Similarly, instead of representing one action as the *result* of some preceding action it may be more convenient to represent the latter as the *cause* of the former.

205. Some miscellaneous differences of idiom also deserve notice.

(a) English often expresses emphasis by means of the verb *to be*, generally followed by the relative pronoun or adverb ; as, *It was I who did it. Piso was the first to reach the camp.* Latin has nothing corresponding to this, but expresses emphasis by other means ; as, **Ego fēcī. Primus ad castra pervēnit Pīsō.**

(b) Latin constantly tends to look upon an action as proceeding from a certain source or quarter, where in English it is considered as happening in that quarter ; as, *He fought on horseback : They attack our troops on both flanks :* **Ex equō pugnābat. Nostrōs ab utrōque latere aggrediuntur.** (See also section 128, v.)

(c) In Latin, demonstrative and relative pronouns (especially *hic*) referring to some previous noun or the substance of a previous clause are put in agreement with a noun, instead of in the objective genitive depending on it. English has frequently this same condensed form of expression ; as, *Through fear of this circumstance (or through this fear) :* **Hōc metū (= Hūjus rei metū).**

(d) In such expressions as *The shrewd Fabius, Your excellent father, So brave a man as you*, Latin uses an appositive with the superlative in agreement ; as, **Fabius callidissimus imperātor. Pater tuus vir optimus. Tū vir fortissimus.** When, however, such epithets have no bearing on the context they should be omitted altogether (see section 203, g).

(e) *This great* is regularly in Latin **hic tantus** not **hic magnus**.

(f) Latin frequently uses **et** or **-que** to join adjectives, where English omits the connective ; so especially with *multi* ; as, *Many great contests :* **Multae et magnae contentiōnēs.**

(g) The Latin adjective or participle frequently has the value of a noun ; as, **nostrī**, *our men* ; **omnia sua**, *all their property* ; **sapientēs**, *wise men, philosophers* ; **fugientēs**, *the retreating force*.

EXERCISE 30.

(Based on *Cæsar*, Bk. IV. 1-3.)

In the following year a large number of Gauls crossed the Rhine for the purpose of harassing the Ubii and keeping them from tilling their lands. They thought that by this means they would make the Ubii tributary to them, and that the men and boys whom they captured in war they would sell at a high price to the Suebi. These latter were desirous of making the Ubii as weak as possible, because they thought it disgraceful to permit any tribe to become accustomed to dwell not far from their territories, and believed that if the Ubii were driven out, the Tencteri, who adjoined them on the other side, would not venture to remain. The Suebi have large experience in war; they are able to endure any toil, and they use skins for (*pro*) clothing. From childhood they are not allowed to do anything contrary to custom, and to be refined is considered unmanly. On account of (*propter*) the character of their food and their daily training under arms they are men of immense strength, and are said to be the most warlike of all the Germans.

EXERCISE 31.

(Based on *Cæsar*, Bk. IV. 4, 5.)

The traders were compelled against their will to halt and state what they had learned in the districts through which they had been wandering. At first (*primo*) they pretended to have heard nothing. At last they informed *Cæsar* that the Menapii whom he had driven out of Germany had returned secretly to their villages, that a large part of their cavalry had crossed the Rhine and were putting to death those who dwelt on this side the river. Knowing the fickleness of the Gauls, and fearing they would be anxious for a change, he thought he ought to cross the Rhine and, after crushing the Menapii, seize their boats. Before he could reach the river, however, they had been informed of his approach, and had placed guards along the banks. Being unable to advance, he halted for three days, in order to discover what plans the Gauls were forming.

EXERCISE 32.

(Based on *Cæsar*, *Bk. IV. 6-8.*)

Hearing that the Germans, after seizing the lands of others, had begun to wander far and wide, and were but a few days' march from him, he determined to set out for the army. The leading men of the Suebi, who were with him, suspecting what he was going to do, asked to be allowed to remain in Gaul. To these Cæsar made answer as follows: "I have set out unwillingly earlier than I am accustomed, in order that the Suebi and their dependants may not begin a more serious war than I wish to meet. I shall not allow the Suebi to drive out the friends of the Roman people from their homes, and I shall assign no lands to those who have invited the Germans to make war upon the Treveri. No one can be more useful to you than the Romans; some think that we are no match for the Germans, but there is no one whom we are not ready to resist. If you ask aid from us, we shall protect your territories; if you should wish to settle in Gaul, we should give you lands. But it is not right for those who have been the aggressors in doing wrong, to complain and beg for mercy. This was not the custom of your ancestors."

EXERCISE 33.

(Based on *Cæsar*, *Bk. IV. 9-11.*)

When these ambassadors returned to Cæsar they said they had reported his demands to their friends and that the next day the leading men of the tribes which inhabited the Vosges range would assemble to discuss these matters. Meanwhile, they said, envoys were being sent to beg the Helvetians not to cause delay, but to accept these terms, and that if he should give them an opportunity of returning beyond the Rhine they would keep the Sequani from fighting.

Thinking that he ought to wait until all his army should assemble, Cæsar said that he would not move his camp that day, but that on the day following they must all meet (*congregior*) him four miles from the camp, as had been agreed. Having arranged this matter, he announced to the officers whom he was sending in advance for the purpose of foraging, that the Helvetians had been advancing for several days, and were drawing near the camp; and that he had given a pledge to the senate not to harass their line of march.

EXERCISE 34.

(Based on *Cæsar, Bk. IV. 1-11.*)

The Ubii had been overpowered by the Treveri three days before in a cavalry engagement, and after many had been slain, the rest had betaken themselves to the islands which are formed by the Rhine and Meuse, not far from the sea, and inhabited by many savage tribes. Impelled by their lack of provisions, these send ambassadors to Cæsar, to beg him not to suffer any state to make war on those who had sought the good-will and friendship of the Roman people. Cæsar, on learning of this, thought that he ought not to wait for the remaining portion of his army, which was too far distant, and set out as early as possible for the sea. When he drew near the islands, he was informed by those who were preceding his column, that the Gauls had moved their camp nearer the river, and with their cavalry, who are accustomed to leap down from their horses and fight on foot, had crossed the Meuse for the purpose of securing forage and plunder.

EXERCISE 35.

(Based on *Cæsar, Bk. IV. 1-11.*)

Although (*etsi*) he had not yet discovered their plans, yet, knowing their custom, he suspected that this would happen, namely, that they would invite the Suebi to seize all the towns before he could gather supplies and post garrisons. He was also afraid of the fickleness of the Treveri, who are more unstable than the other Gauls, and thought he ought not to give them time for forming new plans. So he decided to summon all the leading men and the senate to him, and pretended to have heard that no one was willing to remain in the lands which he had assigned them. When he asked what was their reason for complaining, or why (*cur*) they repented their oath, they made no answer. At last some began to beg for mercy and said that they would conceal nothing; they had thought that if they drove out the Romans, they would obtain from the Suebi whatever they asked for. Cæsar thought he could put no confidence in them, and determined not to give them permission to return to their own districts, even if they gave a pledge that they would not be the slaves of untrustworthy rumors. But

in order to calm and reassure their hearts, he announced that it seemed best for them to remain with him for some days ; after he had inquired into the outrages of the Suebi, they might depart.

EXERCISE 36.

(Based on *Cæsar, Bk. IV. 12, 13.*)

After listening to the ambassadors, he said that they could not obtain their request for a truce until all their leading men came to him to clear themselves ; that they had without provocation surrounded and put to death several of our men the day before, among them the brother of Piso the Aquitanian. Cæsar was aware that the Gauls had deceived him, and that their forces were being increased, and, knowing their treachery, he thought he ought to detain the envoys as long as he could. He gave orders next day that all the cavalry be led out of the camp, and that after the battle had begun, the rest of the forces should bring aid, if they perceived that our men were being thrown into confusion. The enemy did not wait for an attack to be made ; putting spurs to their horses, they did not cease from their flight until they caught sight of the Meuse. More than eight hundred were slain in this battle, and Cæsar gained such (*tantus*) prestige that the Germans thought it would be the height of madness to make war on those who had so (*tam*) quickly put to flight five thousand Gauls.

EXERCISE 37.

(Based on *Cæsar, Bk. IV. 14-16.*)

As their lands had been laid waste by the Suebi, the Ubii were easily induced to leave home with their women and children. After holding a council, they began to beg the Gauls to give them lands ; if they were prevented from lending aid, let them merely give them permission to cross. As the Gauls had given hostages to Cæsar, they did not venture to do so without Cæsar's consent. Besides which they were aware that it was better to be safe in the friendship of the Roman people than to be afraid of the treachery of the Germans. Accordingly (*itaque*) they quickly sent messengers to Cæsar to beg him to lead his forces against the people across the Rhine, and defend them from the cruel vengeance of the Ubii.

Cæsar, for these reasons, thought he ought to join battle before the Ubii could join the forces of Ariovistus. The enemy, alarmed at his approach, speedily took up arms and began to offer resistance; but when they saw they could not prevent our men bursting into their camp, they despaired of safety and threw away their arms. Four hundred of them rushing out of the camp sought safety in flight. These reached the Rhine in safety, but being unable to cross on account of (*propter*) the force of the current, they were killed to a man by our cavalry. The rest surrendered to Cæsar. On that day Cæsar captured (*capio*) thirty-eight military standards, and a large amount of baggage. On hearing of the battle the most distant tribes of Germany sent envoys to Cæsar to promise that they would not make war on the Roman people.

EXERCISE 38.

(Based on Cæsar, Bk. IV. 18, 19.)

On discovering that the bridge had been finished and that the army had begun to be led across, the Suebi removed from their towns and burned all their dwellings. All who could not bear arms were ordered according to their custom to hide in the woods. Meanwhile they sent out messengers to several states telling them to prepare for flight and to remove all their possessions into the midst of their territories. Cæsar had decided to spend eighteen days in the districts in which the enemy had collected, in order that he might cut down the crops and fight a decisive battle with the Germans, but after he learned that the garrison which he had left at the bridge was being hard pressed, he left their territories within ten days after he had brought his army across. He broke down the bridge and withdrew to the country of the Treveri. Here he learned that the Suebi had returned to their villages, had set free the hostages which were being brought to him, and were taking vengeance on the states which had sought peace from the Romans; and that these were awaiting the assistance he had promised.

EXERCISE 39.

(Based on Cæsar, Bk. IV. 20, 21.)

Before setting out himself for Britain, Cæsar had the previous winter sent in advance Caius Volusenus, whom he considered to

be (a man) of great worth and discretion ; he had given him instructions to get acquainted with the country, as far as he could, and find out what states would ally themselves with the Roman people. Volusenus had not ventured to approach the island that year, as he understood that the winters are early in that region and that there are no suitable harbors ; he had, however, discovered from certain (*quidam*) traders what was the character of the inhabitants and from what place was the shortest passage. As soon as (*ubi*) the time of year was suitable he set out, and landing from his ship, examined the whole sea-coast. He visited several states and made liberal promises if the Britons would give hostages to Cæsar and promise not to furnish aid to our enemies ; he announced that a large number of ships of war had been ordered to assemble, and that, if opportunity offered, Cæsar would set out for Britain that summer. On discovering that Cæsar was building a fleet and was going to visit the island, several traders who had been of great assistance to us in the former wars, came to him and urged him not to venture on making the attempt, because he could not conquer the island, a large part of which was inhabited by barbarians ; these had great experience in war, and would not obey the authority of anyone. Although Cæsar knew that these traders were loyal to him, he yet did not think highly of their opinion, and gave orders that the forces should set out as quickly as possible.

EXERCISE 40.

(Based on Cæsar, Bk. IV. 12-21.)

When he had formed this plan, Cæsar sent out messengers to all the states that had promised him vessels, to announce that, as (*cum*) he had accomplished everything for which he had crossed the Rhine, he was going to visit Britain, and would spend the rest of the summer in that island ; accordingly they were to assemble with all their vessels as soon as possible, for the purpose of making war. As soon as this plan was communicated to Commius, the Atrebatian, who was sovereign over the states which Cæsar had conquered in the war with the Veneti, he decided that he ought for several reasons to go to Cæsar in order to urge him not to cross over until he surveyed the whole situation. He thought that even if Cæsar returned in safety to Gaul, he would gain no prestige by

this war, and would inspire fear in no one ; that the Roman people had no good reason for demanding supreme power in Britain, while the Britons resist most valiantly those who make war on them ; and that if Cæsar should be hard pressed by the Britons, he himself would have reason to fear for his own safety. Cæsar, however, answered that if anyone was alarmed by the enemy's renown in war, and did not dare to make the attempt, but wished to remain in Gaul, he would grant him permission, but that on his return he would, according to his custom, punish all who urged the leading men of Gaul not to take part in the war.

EXERCISE 41.

(Based on *Cæsar, Bk. IV. 12-21.*)

After the flight of the Morini, Cæsar determined that he ought not to wait for the bridge to be finished, but should take his men over in boats. He had no fears for the cavalry who were pursuing the enemy, although they had not yet returned, as he had ordered them to stay for a few days in the country of the Morini to secure forage. Crossing the river with the rest of his army, he sent Labienus in advance to find out what were the numbers of the enemy and in what direction they had retired. The enemy, on learning of Cæsar's advance, were rejoicing that he was giving them an opportunity of freeing themselves. They thought that if they could surround our column and prevent our men from returning to Gaul, they should be safe for the future, and no one would venture to lead his forces against them. Accordingly under the pretext of surrendering, their leading men and elders came in large numbers to Cæsar to promise to accept his terms and to beg him not to make war on them. Such was the reputation of his army, they said, that they considered it the height of folly to resist the Romans, and for this reason they sought peace and friendship. Cæsar thought that a most fortunate thing had happened, and answered them in kindly terms, promising to make peace with them, if they should surrender to him the men who, in the war with the Veneti which he had finished a short time before, had treacherously put to death the king of the Aquitanians. They promised to bring them within a few days, and urged him to visit their villages. The next day Cæsar setting out in the morning

reached the confluence of two rivers. Suddenly the Germans rushed out of the woods, and confronted our men. Before Cæsar could draw up the triple line of battle, the enemy made their attack. Several of our men, panic-stricken by the confusion, threw themselves into the river; the rest Cæsar ordered to put the baggage in one place, and quickly taking their arms to join battle.

EXERCISE 42.

(Based on Cæsar, Bk. IV. 22, 23.)

Having pointed out what he thought should be done in order to settle these affairs, Cæsar gave two legions to Cotta to lead against the Morini, who had not done what they had promised; the remaining legion, with all the cavalry, was ordered to occupy the harbors. While he was carrying out these measures, the Morini, thinking it by no means a favorable time for waging war, sent ambassadors to Cæsar. He demanded of the envoys eighty men-of-war and seven transports, and ordered a large number of hostages to be brought to him. When the vessels had been collected, he warned the lieutenants to wait until they got a suitable wind, and meanwhile to anchor their vessels in the farther harbor. After waiting eight days, on the ninth he ordered the signal to be given and the anchors raised. The cavalry, to whom the transports had been assigned, were prevented by the wind from embarking; the rest of the forces advanced about eighteen miles, and having found an unobstructed and level shore, waited at anchor for the cavalry to follow. When all the vessels had assembled, and the troops had been ordered to land, Cæsar learned that the higher ground and all the hills were held by the enemy.

EXERCISE 43.

(Based on Cæsar, Bk. IV. 24-26.)

Terrified by the unusual appearance of the ships of war and the motion of the oars, which they are not accustomed to use on their larger vessels, the barbarians hesitated a little, while our men, leaping down into the waves, began to advance towards the shore. As soon, however, as they perceived that our men were impeded because of the heavy burdens they were carrying, the enemy, encouraging each other not to retreat, tried to keep our men from

gaining a footing on solid ground, and whenever some would draw near the shore, they would advance with the utmost boldness into the water, and, making an attack, throw them into great confusion.

Cæsar perceived that there would be very great difficulty, chiefly because the ships, on account of the shoals, were anchored in deep water, and that unless he sent aid to those who were in distress, he would incur very great disgrace. Having prayed, in a loud voice, to all the gods that his former good fortune might not fail him, he cried out, "We must not abandon the eagle; fight vigorously, men, unless you wish this action to turn out favorably for the barbarians." He then ordered the soldiers to man the small boats of the nearest transports and hurl their weapons at those who were surrounding and attacking our men. When the enemy had been dislodged and driven off, Cæsar sent forward the cavalry in order to follow them up.

EXERCISE 44.

(Based on *Cæsar, Bk. IV. 22-26.*)

While Cæsar was procuring vessels for carrying the army across to Britain, envoys came from the nearest canton of the Morini, to apologize for not having done their duty in time past, and to reveal what was the policy of the Menapii. Cæsar, after demanding eighty hostages and promising to take the Morini under his protection, dismissed the envoys. When all the forces had gathered, he assigned the ships, some to one legion, others to another, and leaving Labienus with two legions by (*ad*) the sea to hold the harbors, he ordered the rest of the troops to set sail in a body about the third hour. As the soldiers promptly executed all his commands, the foremost ships reached Britain in a few hours; but the transport vessels, which followed the men-of-war, sailed so slowly that they did not make the island that day.

There was very great difficulty in (*use genitive*) landing, because the cavalry and charioteers of the enemy were drawn up on the shore and sought to prevent our men getting a footing on the island. Both sides were unskilled in naval affairs, but the ground was perfectly familiar to the natives. Cæsar ordered the eagles to be borne against the enemy. A few of our men were dismayed by the depth of the water and hung back, but the rest with the

utmost zeal and alacrity leaped down from the vessels, though impeded by their arms. They advanced rather (*magis*) as the nature of the place than (*quam*) as the science of war required, and being unable to keep their ranks, they followed whatever standards were nearest, and making an attack on the enemy, quickly put them to flight.

EXERCISE 45.

(Based on *Cæsar, Bk. IV. 1-19.*)

The Suebi, who were the most warlike of all the Germans, used to think it was greatly to their credit as a community, that the merchants to whom they sold the fish and eggs which they could not use themselves, should have access to their territories. These merchants, however, all of whom came from the districts beyond the Rhine, they would compel to halt, even against their will, and to inform them what they had severally learned about the war, and what was going on across the river I have mentioned above. On that occasion, after receiving information on these points, the Suebi, fearing the merchants would not go back the same way they came, refused them permission to depart unless they promised not to approach the ocean, into which the Rhine, which rises in the Alps, flows, after forming several islands. On this account the merchants, fearing a conspiracy, as no time was allowed for forming a plan, began to entreat Cæsar to lend them aid on the ground that they were sorely afflicted by the Suebi. On hearing this Cæsar ordered a bridge to be built over the Rhine, and leaving forces at each end as a guard, conducted the merchants back (*reduco*) to their homes in Germany in safety, before the Suebi could learn of the bridge being built.

EXERCISE 46.

(Based on *Cæsar, Bk. IV. 1-19.*)

In the meantime, Cæsar, having proceeded a three days' journey, fell in with the enemy on the march about four miles from the Rhine, and earnestly besought them to advance no further; the Ubii were friends of the Roman people; why did the Suebi claim any power or authority on this side of the Rhine? he did not think it was fair for the Gauls to cross into Germany, nor for the

Germans to cross into Gaul ; they must return to their own lands if they wished friendly relations to exist between him and them. To these remarks, the Suebi made answer as they thought fit. They were willing, provided they might, to settle in the territory of the Ubii, but they were not willing to become tributary to them, even if they were much more civilized than the Germans ; if this were not granted them, let Cæsar as speedily as possible lead his army against them ; they were prepared to offer a brave resistance, and would not beg off. Cæsar feared he would be prevented from setting out for Britain, and that his forces might be crushed by the superior numbers of the enemy, and in order to secure a few days' delay, he told them to go back at once to their own town and return to him on the following day. This they promised to do on the condition that Cæsar should not take his departure until they returned at the date specified.

EXERCISE 47.

(Based on Cæsar, *Bk. IV. 1-19.*)

In the winter of Pompey's consulship, the Ubii attempted to reduce to subjection the Suebi, a very powerful tribe, who had crossed the Rhine for the purpose of carrying on war against the Romans. These Suebi were a race of giants, who from boyhood followed their own caprice, accustomed to no system of instruction and recognizing no obligation. Their diet was composed mainly of animal food, and their apparel was confined to skins, which they procured by the chase, in which much of their time was spent, while (*et*) their bath was taken in the coldest rivers. As the Ubii, who were much more refined than the rest of the Germans, were unable to make headway against the violence of the Suebi, they sent envoys to Cæsar to ask aid on the ground that, owing to the proximity of the enemy, there was a complete cessation of agricultural operations. Cæsar made reply to them as follows : That as he regarded it the height of folly for the Roman people to allow the Suebi to grow too powerful, he would send the two legions he had with him to the assistance of the Ubii ; they themselves were to remain in the place where they had encamped, until he should come to them a few days later, in case he were not forced to take his army across into the country of the Sugambri. After waiting

a few days, they heard that envoys from the Suebi were with Cæsar ; so thinking no confidence ought to be placed in him, the envoys returned to their own countrymen and informed them what the Roman leader had stated were his intentions, and what they had learned was going on in the camp.

EXERCISE 48.

(Based on *Cæsar*, Bk. IV. 20-26.)

On reaching Britain with the larger vessels, Cæsar learned from Volusenus what was the nature of the hills which bordered so closely on the sea that there was great difficulty in finding a suitable harbor. Volusenus advised him to disembark and give two legions to the lieutenants to lead against the state from which no envoy had come, but he thought that if he waited at anchor until the first watch, all the rest of the men of war would assemble there, and that he would meet with suitable weather for drawing near the shore. The natives learned of this plan of Cæsar's and said that our men must not disembark ; they wished to keep the Romans from visiting the islands, and they would advance into the water if the Romans were to leap down from their vessels, and would hurl their weapons at the horses, a mode of fighting they are accustomed to practise very successfully. In the meanwhile the eagle-bearers of the first and the third legion called the boldest soldiers together from the nearest ships, and in a loud voice bade them leap down, unless they were minded to let the eagle fall into the hands of the enemy ; they for their part would not hesitate to do their duty to their country. They thought that when a few had ventured to trust themselves to the waves, the rest would leap down in a body and attack the enemy. But they found that Cæsar's old luck had forsaken him, for although the Roman soldiers generally display the greatest zeal in battle, the barbarians attacked them so vigorously that they quickly put them to flight, and the Romans had to draw off their vessels and anchor them in the deep water a mile from the shore.

EXERCISE 49.

(Based on *Cæsar*, Bk. IV. 1-26.)

Certain traders, to whom the natives were wont to sell such things as were taken in war, brought word to Cæsar that the

Germans, however few, would have the courage to advance against any number of more civilized men, because they had been accustomed to military discipline from boyhood. On these merchants, however, Cæsar considered he could place no reliance, since they for the most part blindly followed untrustworthy rumors, and too often made use of the wine which, on the ground that men were rendered effeminate thereby, the Germans thought should not be brought into the country. On learning that Cæsar had determined to make war on the Germans, several states sent ambassadors to him, begging him not to form the plan of crossing the river Rhine. Cæsar, after listening to their statement, thought it best to make a kindly answer in order to calm and reassure their hearts; but the end of his speech was about as follows: That they must not remain in Gaul if they wished to be on friendly terms with the state (*res publica*); he had learned that their cavalry had been sent across the Rhine for the purpose of laying waste the lands of the Gauls and burning their villages; he would not allow them to harass the Gauls, who had embraced the alliance of the Roman people many years before and had remained faithful; the Gauls were complaining and asking aid of him, and he had promised to send three legions to their assistance. After these envoys were dismissed by Cæsar, who also ordered the Germans to bring him a large number of hostages, they returned to their own country, where they reported to the leading men of the cantons the answer Cæsar had made.

EXERCISE 50.*

While Cæsar was attending to these matters, the Bituriges sent envoys to him to ask his assistance against the Carnutes, who, they complained, had made war on them. On receiving this information, he led out of the camp the third and the sixth legion, which, as has already been stated, had been sent across the river to get supplies. Thus with two legions he set out to punish the Carnutes, who, on learning of Cæsar's approach, left the towns and villages they were inhabiting and betook themselves to flight.

* The exercises which follow are all based upon Cæsar, Bk. IV. 1-26; all additional words and phrases required are given in the footnotes.

EXERCISE 51.

Having decided upon this plan, Cæsar sent the baggage belonging to the whole army to Labienus, in the country of the Treveri, and gave orders for two legions to set out for the same destination: he himself taking five legions without baggage,¹ began his march against the Menapii. These latter did not gather any forces, but took refuge in the forests, where they collected² all their belongings. Cæsar before very long had burned many of their villages, and had captured a large number of both people and cattle.³ These measures compelled the Menapii to send and sue for peace. He demanded of them two hundred hostages, and declared that he would take vengeance upon them if they gave any aid to Ambiorix or his officers.

1. *expeditus*, adj. 2. *confero*. 3. *pecus*.

EXERCISE 52.

When all the troops had mustered, he sets out against the Bellovaci, and establishes¹ his camp in their country. Cavalry is sent out in all directions to capture some people from whom he may discover the enemy's projects. The report these bring back is that but few were found in the houses, and these not men who had stayed behind to till the land, but men who had been sent back to reconnoitre. Cæsar questioned these to find where the main body² of the Bellovaci was posted, and what were their intentions, and learned that all the Bellovaci capable of bearing arms had collected in one place, as well as the Aulerci and Atrebates; that the place they had chosen for their camp was in a wood surrounded³ by a marsh,⁴ and that all their baggage they had placed in more distant parts.

1. *pono*. 2. *multitudo*. 3. *circumdo*. 4. *palus*.

EXERCISE 53.

He soon gathered a large army by this means, and sent Luc-terius, a man possessed of great daring,¹ with a portion of the force against the Ruteni; Vercingetorix himself went against the Bituriges. As he drew near, the Bituriges sent to the Ædui, under whose protection they were, and besought their assistance, in order to be able to hold out against the invaders. On the

vice of the lieutenants whom Cæsar had left with his army, the Ædui sent a detachment of both infantry and cavalry to reinforce the Bituriges. The auxiliary forces, on reaching the river which separates² the Bituriges from the Ædui, remained there a few days, and then returned home without having ventured to cross the river. They told our lieutenants that they had returned because they were afraid of treachery on the part of the Bituriges; they had discovered that it was their intention, in case they crossed the river, to surround them and put them to death. The Bituriges, on their departure, at once joined Vercingetorix.

1. *audacia*. 2. *divido*.

EXERCISE 54.

As soon as the natives caught sight of our men they set upon them from every side. Our troops were thrown into confusion at first;¹ some advised making a rush and breaking through,² seeing that the camp was close by;³ even if some portion should be surrounded and slain, they were sure⁴ the rest could be saved;⁵ to others it seemed best to make a stand on the hill. This plan the veteran⁶ soldiers did not approve.⁷ Accordingly with mutual exhortations to remember⁸ their old-time valor, they forced their way through the midst of the enemy and reached the camp in safety to a man. Those who had taken up their position on the hill were unable to abide by their resolve to defend themselves on the higher ground, and at the same time could not display the same energy⁹ and quickness as the rest; they tried to make their way back to the camp, and got on unfavorable¹⁰ ground, where a large number of them were surrounded by the natives and perished.

1. *primo*. 2. *perrumpo*. 3. *propinquus*. 4. *confido*. 5. *servo*. 6. *vetus*, -*eris*. 7. *probo*. 8. *reminiscor* (w. gen.). 9. *vis*. 10. *iniquus*.

EXERCISE 55.

When the news came, Cæsar sent Labienus with six cohorts¹ to aid the hard-pressed troops; he gives him instructions to withdraw² the garrison, if he cannot hold his ground, and make a sally;³ but not to do so unless it is unavoidable.⁴ Finding the fortifications⁵ incapable of withstanding the enemy's fierce onset, Labienus gathered together all the cohorts, and informed Cæsar by mes-

sengers what in his opinion should be done. Cæsar made all haste to the point to which he had dispatched Labienus, withdrawing four cohorts from the nearest fort,⁶ and ordering part of the cavalry to accompany him, while the others were to take the enemy in⁷ the rear. When they perceived him approaching, and saw the cavalry and cohorts which he had ordered to follow him, our men, raising⁸ a cheer, began the attack. Suddenly, while the fight is raging fiercely on both sides, the cavalry is seen in the rear, the enemy take to flight, the cavalry meets the fugitives and a great slaughter⁹ follows.

1. *cohors*. 2. *deduco*. 3. *eruptio*. 4. *necessario*, adv. 5. *munitio*. 6. *castellum*. 7. *a*. 8. *tollo*. 9. *caedes*.

EXERCISE 56.

He surprised and overwhelmed the Arverni, and then told the cavalry to range over as wide a tract of country as possible, and inspire as much alarm in the enemy as they could. When news of this occurrence was brought, the rest of the Arverni in terror crowded about Vercingetorix and besought him to take thought¹ for them, and not² allow them to be plundered³ by the Romans. Influenced by their entreaties⁴ he shifted his camp from the country of the Bituriges towards the Arverni. Cæsar after two days' stay in this neighborhood, started off from the army to levy cavalry, leaving Brutus in charge of the troops and telling him that he would take care⁵ not to be more than three days absent from the camp.

1. *consulo*. 2. *neu*. 3. *diripio*. 4. *preces*. 5. *operam do*.

EXERCISE 57.

At the same time representatives of both the Ædui and the Treveri came to Cæsar; the former to complain that the Harudes, who had recently¹ crossed over from Germany, were laying waste² their lands; they had found it impossible, they said, to purchase³ peace even by giving hostages; the Treveri to state that a hundred cantons of the Suebi had encamped⁴ by the bank of the Rhine, and were attempting to cross over; these were under the leadership of the brothers Nasua and Cimberius. This news deeply stirred⁵ Cæsar; he decided that he must make haste⁶ lest resistance be less

easy in case of a combination of the new band⁷ of the Suebi with the old³ forces of Ariovistus. He got together supplies with the utmost expedition and by forced⁹ marches hastened against Ariovistus.

1. *nuper*. 2. *popular*. 3. *redimo*. 4. *consido*. 5. *vehementer commoveo*. 6. *maturo*. 7. *manus*. 8. *vetus*. 9. *magnus*.

EXERCISE 58.

Cæsar with an inferior force was besieging¹ troops which had not yet suffered defeat ; they were supplied with an abundance of everything : every day² a great number of ships arrived from all parts to bring³ provisions. Cæsar on the other hand had consumed⁴ all the corn which he had been able to procure, and was in great distress ; yet his men bore these privations⁵ with extraordinary patience.⁶ In the meantime Labienus, whom Cæsar at his departure had left in command of the camp, received information of this state of affairs, and came to the assistance of the investing army with two legions. This movement was most effectual ; for within three days after Labienus arrived, the town of the enemy was captured without the loss of even one man on the side of the Romans.

1. *obsideo*. 2. *cotidie*. 3. *supporto*. 4. *consumo*. 5. *res*. 6. *singularis patientia*.

EXERCISE 59.

The news of Cæsar's advance caused Vercingetorix at once to give up¹ this design and set out to meet the Roman commander. The latter had got ready² to make an attack³ on Noviodunum, a town of the Bituriges. Envoys had come out to clear themselves of the charge of having made war on Rome, and to sue for peace, and Cæsar, in order to carry out the rest of his purposes with the same speed with which he had succeeded in⁴ most of his undertakings, gave orders that their arms were to be brought in⁵ and hostages given. Some of the hostages had already been delivered up, and the other matters were being attended to, a few of the soldiers having been admitted⁶ to collect⁷ the arms, when in the distance there was seen the enemy's cavalry, which had gone in advance of the main column of Vercingetorix. No sooner did the citizens⁸ catch sight of this body of cavalry than the prospect of assistance

led them to seize their arms. Our troops in the town perceived that some new scheme was on foot among the Gauls. They made a rush, took possession of the gates,⁹ and got away without loss.

1. *desisto* (with abl.). 2. *instituo*. 3. *oppugno*. 4. *consequor*. 5. *confero*. 6. *intromitto*. 7. *conquiro*. 8. *oppidanus*. 9. *porta*.

EXERCISE 60.

Before the army was ready to march, two Iroquois warriors came to the fort pretending friendship, but more probably in the hope of retarding the expedition until the approaching winter should make it impossible to proceed. They represented the numbers of the enemy and the extreme difficulty of penetrating so rough a country ; and affirmed that if the troops refrained from hostilities, the hostile tribes, who were already collecting their prisoners, would soon send to make their submission. Bouquet turned a deaf ear to their advice and sent them to inform the Delawares and Shawanoes that he was on his way to chastise them, unless they made speedy atonement for their perfidious and wrongful acts.

[*To show how a passage from modern English may be dealt with, and especially how modern proper names may be handled, the following adaptation is given :*]

Before the army was ready to march, two of the Morini came to the camp, pretending that they were friends, but, what is more probable,¹ hoping² to be able to hinder our men from marching³ until, on account of the winter which was at hand,⁴ they should not be able to set out. These pointed out how great was the number of the enemy, and how great the difficulty of marching through country so rough ;⁵ that if our men would not make war on them, the enemy, who were collecting their prisoners,⁶ would soon send envoys about surrendering.⁷ Cæsar did not approve⁸ this plan, and sent them to inform the Usipetes and Tencteri that he was setting out to punish them unless they quickly made reparation for⁹ their perfidy and wrong-doing.

1. *verisimilis*. 2. *spero*. 3. *iter*. 4. *subsum*. 5. *impeditus*. 6. *captivus*. 7. *deditio*. 8. *probo*. 9. *satisfacio de*.

EXERCISE 61.

Between the town of Ilerda and the nearest hill, on which Afranius was encamped, there lay some half mile of level ground,¹ and about half way² was a slight eminence.³ If Cæsar could get possession of this, he felt sure⁴ he could cut off his opponents from the town and the supplies they had gathered⁵ there. With this idea, he proceeded to lead out a force of three legions, which he drew up⁶ in a suitable position, and then ordered the front rank to hasten forward⁷ and seize the desired position. However, Afranius perceived his design and speedily sent the troops on guard⁸ before⁹ the camp by a shorter route to forestall¹⁰ him. The other side having reached the place first, our troops were forced back, and on fresh¹¹ forces of the enemy coming up, were compelled to make their way back to their comrades.

1. *planities*. 2. Say 'in about the middle of this interval' (*spatium*). 3. *tumulus*. 4. *confido*. 5. *confero*. 6. *instruo*. 7. *procurro*. 8. *statio*. 9. *pro*. 10. *præoccupo* ('seize beforehand'). 11. Say 'other.'

EXERCISE 62.

Cæsar determined to come over to Britain because the Belgians¹ of South Britain² had sent help to their kinsmen³ in Gaul, with whom he was at war. So he set sail for Britain with a small army. When the Britons, who were watching for him, saw his fleet draw near the shore, they advanced into the waves and kept the Romans from landing, till a brave standard-bearer⁴ leapt from the galley into the water and advanced against the Britons. When the Roman soldiers saw him in the midst of their foes, they followed him to save⁵ the standard, and at last made good their landing and drove the Britons up into the country.⁶ Then Cæsar marched through Kent,⁷ fought⁸ several battles, and forced the nearest tribes to give hostages and sue for peace.

1. *Belgae*. 2. Say 'who inhabited the lower part of the island.' 3. *propinquus*. 4. *aquilifer*. 5. *servo*. 6. Say 'from the coast.' 7. *Cantium*. 8. *facio*.

EXERCISE 63.

The next night, Hasdrubal led his men silently¹ out of their camp, and moved towards the Metaurus, in the hope of placing that river between² himself and the Romans before his retreat was discovered. The Roman cavalry, however, was soon³ seen coming

up in pursuit, followed at no great distance⁴ by the legions, which marched in readiness for an engagement. It was hopeless for Hasdrubal to think of continuing his retreat.⁵ He therefore ordered his men to prepare for action, and made the best arrangement of them that the nature of the ground would permit.⁶

1. *silentio*. 2. Say 'cross.' 3. *brevis*. 4. *spatium* or *intervallum*. 5. Say 'despairing of flight,' and connect closely with the next sentence. 6. Say 'drew them up (*instruo*) as advantageously (*commode*) as possible, considering (*pro*) the nature of the ground.'

EXERCISE 64.

The Gauls had an unusually able¹ leader, whom Latin historians² call Brennus. He had brought a great host of Gauls to attack Clusium, a Tuscan³ city, and the inhabitants sent to Rome to entreat succor. Three ambassadors were sent from Rome to intercede for the Clusians.⁴ They asked Brennus what harm the men of Clusium had done the Gauls, that they thus made war⁵ on them. Brennus made answer that the injury was⁶ that the Clusians possessed land that the Gauls wanted,⁷ remarking, that it was exactly the way⁸ in which the Romans themselves treated⁹ their neighbors.

1. Say 'of exceptional knowledge (*singularis scientia*) of the science of war.' 2. *Romanus scriptor*. 3. Say 'of the Etruscans (*Etrusci*).' 4. Say 'to urge Brennus to do no harm (*noceo*) to the Clusians (*Clusini*).' 5. Say 'provoked by what wrongs were they making war.' 6. Say 'that the Clusians were doing wrong in that (*quod*).' 7. *appeto*. 8. *modus* or *ratio*. 9. *tracto*.

EXERCISE 65.

The chiefs, when they saw that our men were resisting so bravely, and that there was no hope¹ of the speedy capture of the camp, sent ambassadors to Cicero to say that they desired a parley.² When leave was granted, they told the same story that the king had told Titurius; that the Germans had crossed the river and all Gaul was in arms. They add³ that Titurius had perished with his whole army; but they had no wish to hurt⁴ Cicero or his men; their sole desire was to prevent the Romans from quartering their legions permanently⁵ in their country; if he were willing to leave his camp, he was free to go without fear where he pleased.

1. Say 'all hope having been lost (*adimo*).' 2. Use *colloquor* ('have a conference'). 3. Use *etiam* ('also'). 4. *noceo* (with dat.). 5. Say 'from becoming accustomed to remain (*versor*).'

EXERCISE 66.

After making all preparations, Cæsar quickly carried the greater part of his forces over to Britain without the loss of a single man. Within a few days he marched against the enemy, who, he learned, had mustered in great numbers and now held a very strong position. Since his arrival the previous summer, the Britons, with the object of offering as strong opposition as possible to the Romans when they should return, and of driving them more quickly from the island, had decided to entrust the entire conduct of the war² to one of their chiefs, Cassivelaunus. But it was soon clear³ to the latter that he could not defeat Cæsar in battle, nor even prevent him from laying waste the country; and so he sent envoys to the Roman commander to treat for peace.

1. Say 'well fortified' (*egregie munitus*). 2. *summam imperii permittere*. 3. Use *animadverto*.

EXERCISE 67.

Cæsar, on coming up to the tenth legion, exhorted the soldiers to sustain with courage the assault of the enemy and not¹ to be thrown into confusion by a few savages. The army was drawn up² as the nature of the ground demanded; for the legions, being separated,³ were resisting the enemy, some in one quarter, others in another. It could not be foreseen⁴ what needed to be done in each direction, and it was impossible for one man to attend to everything. The men of two legions, the eighth and the ninth, did not hesitate⁵ to cross the river, on the other side of which the enemy were drawn up in great force under the direction⁶ of Boduognatus, whom the Nervii had put in command of the whole army. At the same time our horse, who, as I stated, had been routed at the first onset of the Nervii, met the enemy face to face⁷ while retreating to the camp, and, thrown into a panic, sought flight in another direction. Cæsar, on perceiving his men hard pressed, sent four cohorts to the assistance of the cavalry, who had already lost many of their number at the hands of the pursuing enemy. In the meantime, two other legions, which had been acting as an escort⁸ for the baggage, were observed on the top of the hill⁹ by the enemy, who immediately took to flight with the loss of one hundred and eighty killed and more than eight hundred wounded.

1. *neu*. 2. *instruo*. 3. *diversus*. 4. *provideo*. 5. *dubito*. 6. Say 'Boduognatus being leader (*dux*).'⁷ 7. *adversus*. 8. *praesidium*. 9. *summus collis*.

EXERCISE 68.

Cæsar, who was at a great distance, at last getting intelligence of their danger, returned with all expedition; and having collected a body of men, which did not exceed seven thousand, hastened to the relief of Cicero. The Gauls, who were not ignorant of his movements, raised the siege¹ and went to meet him with their entire strength. Cæsar, to deceive² them, made a feint as if he fled, till he came to a convenient place, and there he fortified³ his camp. The instructions he issued to his men were not to fight, but to barricade the gates,⁴ continuing by these manœuvres to increase the impression⁵ of fear. It succeeded as he wished; the Gauls came up in great disorder⁶ to attack his entrenchments. Then Cæsar, making a sally,⁷ defeated them and destroyed the greatest part of them. This success laid the spirit of revolt⁸ in those parts.

1. Say 'left the siege (*obsidio*).'
2. *decipio*. 3. *munio*. 4. *portas obstruo*. 5. *opinio*. 6. Say 'their ranks being in great confusion.'
7. *eruptio*. 8. Use *deficio* (I revolt).

EXERCISE 69.

When spring was almost come,¹ a considerable company of Virginians, under Captain Trent, hastened across the mountains and began to build a fort² at the confluence of the Monongahela and Alleghany, when suddenly³ they found themselves invested by a host of French and Indians, who, with sixty bateaux and three hundred canoes, had descended from Le Boeuf. The English were ordered to evacuate the spot; and being quite unable to resist, they obeyed the summons and withdrew to Virginia. Meanwhile, Washington with another party was advancing from the borders; and hearing of Trent's disaster,⁴ he resolved to fortify himself⁵ on the Monongahela and hold his ground, if possible, until troops could arrive to support him. The French sent out a scouting party under M. Junonville, with the design of watching his movements; but a few nights afterwards Washington surprised them not far from his camp, killed the officer and captured the whole detachment.

1. Say 'when but a small part of the winter remained.'
2. *castellum*. 3. *subito*.
4. Say 'what had happened to.'
5. *castra munio* ('fortify a camp').

EXERCISE 70.

Finding great difficulty in pacifying¹ the Soudan, the Government² resolved to send some famous military leader³ to drive out the barbarian chief, and rescue the garrisons which were besieged⁴ in several towns. They asked Gordon, a man of the utmost skill and bravery, to do what he could in that country, which a few years previously he had ruled with great uprightness and wisdom. He consented⁵ to try ; and travelling as fast as possible, he arrived at the capital,⁷ Khartoum, which was many miles distant from the sea. Holding it for many months⁸ against the swarms of barbarians, he repeatedly sent messages home to ask for help ; but the Government for a long time⁹ refused to send reinforcements. At last, however, thinking that he was in danger, they carefully¹⁰ organized an army and entrusted the command to the best general they had.

1. *paco*. 2. Say 'the senate.' 3. Say 'of great reputation for (*genitive*) merit in war (*bellicus*).' 4. *obsideo*. 5. *justitia prudentiaque*. 6. Say 'promised.' 7. Say 'largest town.' 8. *mensis*. 9. *diu*. 10. Say 'with great care (*diligentia*).'

EXERCISE 71.

Before the task¹ was completed a deputation of chiefs arrived, bringing word that their warriors were encamped in great numbers about eight miles distant, and desiring our general to appoint² the time and place for a council. He ordered them to meet him on the next day near his camp. In the morning the little army moved in battle order to the place of council, and at the appointed hour³ the deputation appeared. Their orator⁴ declared that the war had arisen without any fault of theirs ; they desired that there should be peace between us and his people ; and to show their good-will,⁵ at once⁶ delivered eighteen prisoners⁷ they had brought with them, promising that we should receive the rest as soon as they could collect them.

1. *negotium*. 2. *constituo*. 3. *ad certam horam*. 4. Say 'he who spoke for (*loquor pro*) the envoys.' 5. *benevolentiam praesto*. 6. *statim*. 7. *captivus*.

EXERCISE 72.

The English army began to cross the bridge, Cressingham leading the van.¹ That took place which Lundin had foreseen.² Wallace suffered a considerable part of the English army to pass

the bridge, without offering any opposition ;³ but when about one-half⁴ were over and the bridge was crowded with those who were following,⁵ he charged those who had crossed with his whole strength, slew a very great number, and drove the rest into the river Forth, where the greater number were drowned. The remainder of the English army, who were left on the southern⁶ bank of the river, fled in great confusion, having first set fire to the wooden bridge that the Scots might not pursue them. Cressingham was killed in the very beginning of the battle.⁷

1. *primum agmen*. 2. Say 'had suspected would happen.' 3. Omit because involved in 'suffered.' 4. *dimidia pars*. 5. Say 'and the rest were following in dense array (*conferti*).' 6. Say 'the other.' 7. Say 'the battle having scarcely (*vix*) been begun.'

EXERCISE 73.

Soon after their arrival, a party of Indian chiefs and warriors entered the camp. They proclaimed themselves an embassy from Pontiac, ruler of all that country, and directed in his name¹ that the English should advance no farther until they had had an interview² with the great chief, who was already close at hand. Before the day closed³, Pontiac himself appeared. He greeted Rogers with the haughty demand,⁴ what was his business in that country, and how he dared enter it without his permission.⁵ Rogers informed him that the French were defeated, that Canada had surrendered, and that he was on his way to take possession of Detroit, and restore a general peace.⁶ Pontiac replied that he would stand in the path of the English until morning.⁷ Having inquired if the strangers were in need of⁸ anything, he withdrew with his chiefs at nightfall to his own encampment ; while the English, dreading treachery, stood well on their guard throughout the night.⁹

1. Say 'said that he commanded.' 2. *colloquor*. 3. *ante occasum solis*, 'before sunset.' 4. Say 'he haughtily (*superbe*) demanded.' 5. *injussu suo*. 6. Say 'establish (*confirmo*) peace and friendship with all the states.' 7. Say 'hinder from marching (*iter*) until the next day.' 8. *deside*. 9. Say, 'spent the whole night in watching (*vigiliae*).'

EXERCISE 74.

A deputation of the Wyandots came to the fort, and begged for peace, which was granted them ; but when the Pottawattamies came on the same errand, they insisted as a preliminary¹ that some of their people, who were detained in the English fort, should first be given up. Gladwyn demanded, on his part,² that the English

captives³ known to be in their villages should be brought to the fort, and three of them were accordingly produced. As these were but a small part of the whole, the deputies were sharply rebuked for their duplicity, and told to go back for the rest. On the following day, a fresh deputation of chiefs made their appearance, bringing with them six prisoners. The Indians detained in the fort were about to be given up and a treaty concluded, when one of the prisoners declared that there were several others still⁴ remaining in the Pottawattamie village. Upon this the conference was broken off⁵ and the deputies ordered instantly⁷ to depart.

1. Use *priusquam*. 2. *et ipse* ('himself also'). 3. *captivus*. 4. Say 'he complained bitterly (*gravissime*), because they displayed such perfidy.' 5. *etiam nunc*. 6. *colloquium dirimo*. 7. *statim*.

EXERCISE 75.

The British general, whose forces had now swelled to sixteen hundred, retreated to a new position at Beaver Dam, about twelve miles from Niagara. The Americans pursuing him with a force of twenty-five hundred¹ men, he continued his retreat to Burlington Heights. The enemy advanced to a stream known as Stoney Creek, where they encamped for the night. Relieved from immediate² pressure, Vincent sent out a strong reconnoitring party under Colonel Harvey, to examine the enemy's position. Finding the entrenchments carelessly³ guarded, Harvey made a daring attack in the darkness. The American soldiers, rudely awakened, sprang up from their glimmering camp-fires⁴ and stood their ground bravely for a time. But they were bewildered and without discipline.⁵ After a brief struggle, they were routed at the point of the bayonet, and their two generals, Winder and Chandler, with one hundred other prisoners, fell into Harvey's hands. Vincent at once followed up the retreat of the invaders, and sent a small advance party to reoccupy the position of Beaver Dam. This dangerous duty,⁶ which was entrusted to Lieutenant James FitzGibbon, with but thirty British regulars and thirty Mohawk Indians, was successfully performed.

1. Use *quingenti* ('five hundred'). 2. Use *in praesentia* ('for the present'). 3. *indiliger*, or say 'by no means carefully (*diligenter*) defended.' 4. Say 'being surprised when off their guard and taken unawares, quickly seized their arms.' 5. Say 'unskilled in warfare.' 6. Say 'this task (*negotium*), although dangerous (*periculosus*), was quickly finished.'

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES.

(Based on *Cæsar, Bk. IV. 1-26.*)

1.—1. They had crossed in that year. 2. They had been harassed for several winters. 3. A large number of Germans crossed the rivers in the following year. 4. All the other tribes were staying at home. 5. This canton is the largest, that the most warlike. 6. Several years after, they were led out of this place. 7. With a hundred thousand Germans he was making war. 8. On account of their huge size they do none (lit. nothing) of those things. 9. The country was very cold. 10. The milk and corn make the Germans very warlike. 11. They used to bathe in the river.

2.—1. The merchants do not desire beasts of burden to be imported. 2. They used to use small and scrubby beasts. 3. They sell what they have taken to the Gauls. 4. The merchants have right of entry. 5. They had not ventured to leap down. 6. They betook themselves to the cavalry. 7. He betook himself to them. 8. It used to be considered disgraceful. 9. He leaps down on foot (lit. to the feet) because the cavalry are approaching. 10. They think it is disgraceful to use imported horses.

3.—1. On (*ex*) the other side, the country is unoccupied for six hundred paces. 2. The Suebi could not withstand the power of the state. 3. The same merchants used to come often to the Gauls themselves. 4. They think their state is large and flourishing. 5. It is the greatest possible glory to be more civilized than the Germans. 6. This state is said to be insignificant and weak. 7. They cannot be driven out because they are tributary to this state. 8. They are more civilized than the Germans themselves.

4.—1. Terrified by so great a number, they station guards. 2. The Germans drove the Menapii from their lands. 3. They keep the Menapii from wandering. 4. They had removed from both banks of the Rhine. 5. They pretend to cross the river. 6. He was informed of their arrival. 7. Being unable to maintain themselves they had returned to the river. 8. The whole journey had been finished in three days. 9. Having crushed the Menapii, they advanced for the rest of this night. 10. As the Germans had crossed the river, he seized their ships and villages

5.—1. Influenced by this report, he asked what plans they were adopting. **2.** He compelled the Gauls to answer. **3.** He asked what they had heard or learned. **4.** He repents of the plans which he has adopted. **5.** No answer should be given to those who yield to these rumors. **6.** The merchants, against their will, were compelled to come from each town.

6.—1. Having sent embassies to the leading men, they determined to set out for the Rhine. **2.** They were invited to come. **3.** Having determined to wage war they sent embassies to several states. **4.** Some wander farther than usual. **5.** On learning this he thought he ought to summon the leading men and demand an army. **6.** When everything which he had demanded had been prepared, they thought that embassies should be sent.

7.—1. As ambassadors had not come from the Germans, he began to pick out cavalry. **2.** Our ancestors have handed down this custom. **3.** He had heard that the Roman people had made war on the Germans. **4.** He began to attack the Germans from whom ambassadors had not come. **5.** We wish to be friends to the Romans. **6.** They said that the Suebi alone had been driven from their lands. **7.** The Suebi do not yield even to the immortal gods. **8.** As they have come against their will, having been driven from home, he assigns them lands.

8.—1. He answered that he could not give any lands to those who were seeking aid. **2.** There cannot be friendship between Cæsar and the Ubii. **3.** They may remain in their own lands. **4.** It seems best to ask aid of Cæsar. **5.** They are complaining of the outrages of the Ubii, who have settled in lands not their own. **6.** So great a multitude cannot remain without wrong.

9.—1. The ambassadors said they would send the cavalry some days after. **2.** They thought that the camp had been moved nearer. **3.** Having reported this to their friends they returned to him. **4.** He said he would move the camp. **5.** He learned that some horsemen had not returned, and that the Ambivariti were awaiting him. **6.** They thought they could gain their request from Cæsar.

10.—1. The island used to be inhabited by the Batavi. **2.** A river which is called Mosa is thought to rise in (*ex*) the Alps.

3. The Alps are inhabited by a fierce nation which lives on birds.
4. After forming the island, it receives a branch from the Vacalus.
5. Many barbarous nations inhabit a large part of the islands.

11.—1. When the ambassadors were returning to Cæsar, the cavalry whom he had sent in advance were twelve miles distant. 2. Cæsar, meeting the leading men on the way, gave them three days' time to send ambassadors. 3. As he had not given them an opportunity of advancing, they begged him not to carry out these plans. 4. They sent ambassadors to say that the army was approaching nearer. 5. He thought they would not return the same day. 6. They said that as many as possible would assemble, and that as all the cavalry were approaching, he would gain his request.

12.—1. As soon as the cavalry returned, the ambassadors left the enemy. 2. Our men have no fear, because not more than eight hundred horsemen have returned. 3. Having put the cavalry to flight, and thrown the rest into confusion, they return to Cæsar. 4. He did not cease until his brother was saved from all danger. 5. When he had rescued his brother, he brought aid to his grandfather. 6. While resisting bravely, he was surrounded by the cavalry, and received many wounds. 7. As soon as they could, they brought aid to Piso, whom our senate had called friend.

13.—1. No time was given to the enemy for seeking peace. 2. After these ambassadors had been heard, he waited till they should adopt the plan. 3. He thought that the enemy had gained no prestige by these terms. 4. He perceived that, after accepting these terms, they were making war. 5. Cæsar is glad that the chief men and the ambassadors have been detained. 6. No time should be given for arranging these matters. 7. The cavalry, having followed up the enemy, had begun battle. 8. Cæsar, the next day, after leading out all the cavalry, ordered the battle to be begun.

14.—1. He began to draw up a triple line of battle. 2. The cavalry had been sent to defend the camp. 3. Terrified by the arrival of our cavalry, he had sought safety in flight. 4. The forces, alarmed by all this, perceived that they could not cross the Rhine. 5. Taking arms they gave the enemy no time to draw up

the line of battle. 6. With the rest of the women and children they fled to their friends.

15.—1. Seeing that a large number of our men had been killed, he threw away his arms. 2. Thirty thousand Germans had perished in that flight. 3. As they wished to depart, he said he would allow them their freedom. 4. Cæsar reached the river Rhine in safety. 5. They said that thirty military standards had been left. 6. Hearing the shouts of his men, and fearing the Gauls, he rushed out of the camp.

16.—1. The Germans had been very easily induced to cross the Rhine and make war on the Roman people. 2. Messengers were sent to promise vessels for crossing the Rhine. 3. After sending ambassadors and giving up hostages, they betook themselves to their friends. 4. As the Suebi had joined the Usipetes, he had, against his will, lent aid to these tribes. 5. Against Cæsar's will they had ventured to carry over the army. 6. He resolved that the war must be finished. 7. Perceiving that they were hard pressed by the Germans, they were alarmed. 8. They answered that they would prevent Cæsar from conveying his army across the Rhine. 9. They thought that they could not be safe without his consent. 10. He besought Cæsar to take part in the battle. 11. The Germans who had made war on Cæsar, were surrendered to him. 12. So great was Cæsar's reputation that the farthest tribes sent ambassadors and gave hostages.

18.—1. Cæsar began to lead the army across. 2. The army began to be led across. 3. For several days they were bringing in timber. 4. He ordered ambassadors to come to him from both states. 5. He ordered a garrison to be left at the bridge. 6. They began to conceal themselves in the woods. 7. Meanwhile, all the timber having been collected and the army led across, they began to prepare for flight.

19.—1. Cæsar learned that their wives and children had been placed in the woods, and that they were gathering to one place. 2. As the bridge had been torn down, Cæsar resolved to punish the Germans. 3. When the Ubii learned that all the buildings had been burned, and a bridge built, they betook themselves to the woods. 4. All can bear arms. 5. For ten days they had

awaited his arrival. 6. He thought that everything, for which he had led the army across, had been accomplished. 7. The Suebi, after learning this through scouts, had determined to burn all their villages and buildings. 8. Eight days in all had been spent in the districts which the Suebi held. 9. They betook themselves to their own territories.

20.—1. He found out that the traders did not visit these islands. 2. Almost all the harbors are suitable. 3. He found out to whom they had furnished auxiliaries. 4. He thought that the traders could find out how large the harbor was. 5. Although the harbors were not suitable, he set out for the island. 6. He knew that the winters were early. 7. All this will be of great service. 8. He found out that all the tribes had these customs.

21.—1. He instructs Volusenus to find out these things. 2. Ambassadors came from the states which he had conquered that summer. 3. Commius, who was faithful to Cæsar, had visited these states on the previous days. 4. They themselves, with all the fleet, assembled as quickly as possible. 5. Him he orders (*jubeo*) to visit the states. 6. He orders (*impero*) the traders to come to him. 7. Having given hostages, they return home. 8. He urges Volusenus to leave the ship. 9. He reported what they had promised. 10. Commius had been made king.

22.—1. He ordered about eight ships of war and a large number of transports. 2. They promised to make ready the ships which he had required. 3. While they were collecting the ships, ambassadors came from the Morini. 4. The rest of the ships could not carry over the legion. 5. After the two legions had been taken over, he gave the rest to Rufus to lead against the Morini. 6. When the hostages had been brought, he promised to receive them under his protection. 7. He left a garrison of two legions. 8. He does not wish either to wage war or to delay for the purpose of collecting cavalry. 9. In the previous year he had had an opportunity of taking over the legions. 10. This happened very opportunely.

23.—1. As the cavalry had advanced to the higher ground, he ordered the rest of the soldiers to follow them. 2. He ordered the anchors to be raised. 3. We cannot throw weapons from the

ship to the shore. 4. Thinking the shore suitable, they landed. 5. On the signal being given, they embarked and followed him. 6. He waited until he found a suitable tide for sailing. 7. About the ninth hour of the day he found out what was being done. 8. On the ninth day he ordered the tribunes to set sail from the farther harbor.

24.—1. They kept our men from leaping down. 2. Sending the charioteers in advance, they hurled their weapons more boldly. 3. The soldiers, burdened by their arms, leaped down from the ship. 4. The locality was unknown to our men, who did not show the same zeal as the enemy. 5. They had to advance into the water. 6. On account of the great difficulty, the rest of the forces cannot follow up the cavalry. 7. They were wont to use horses in their battles. 8. The enemy, dismayed by the size of the vessels, could not hurl their weapons.

25.—1. The soldiers were ordered to leap down. 2. As the soldier was leaping down, Cæsar noticed that the enemy had halted. 3. On the ships of war being removed a short distance, the enemy began to retreat. 4. He urged the soldiers not to betray the eagles to the barbarians. 5. He cried with a loud voice that he was willing to do his duty. 6. On account of the unusual kind of vessels, the matter turned out most favorably for Cæsar. 7. "Leap down, Cæsar," he said, "unless you wish to incur disgrace." 8. Our soldiers exhorted one another not to hesitate on account of the appearance of the barbarians.

26.—1. On the vessels being filled, he ordered aid to be sent to those who were in difficulty. 2. Whenever the enemy made an attack, Cæsar would order our men to keep their ranks. 3. Both sides were unable to leave their ships. 4. Whomsoever they attacked they put to flight. 5. Making an attack, they surrounded the enemy. 6. Having reached the island, the cavalry landed from the ship. 7. Having attacked the enemy, they fought fiercely. 8. This alone is lacking. 9. He had manned the ships of war with the cavalry.

II. EXERCISES IN TRANSLATION AT SIGHT.*

1. Gaul and Its Divisions.

Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres, quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur. Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus, inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit. Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, 5 propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate provir-iae longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatores saepe commeant atque ea, quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent, important, proxinque sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Qua de causa Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos 10 virtute praecedunt, quod fere cotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt. Eorum una pars, quam Gallos obtinere dictum est, initium capit a flumine Rhodano; continetur Garumna flumine, Oceano, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ab Sequanis et 15 Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; vergit ad septentriones. Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni; spectant in septentrionem et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenaeos montes et eam partem Oceani, quae est ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat inter occasum 20 solis et septentriones.

2. Caesar's Second Invasion of Germany, B.C. 53.

Caesar, postquam ex Menapiis in Treveros venit, duabus de causis Rhenum transire constituit; quarum una erat quod Germani auxilia

* All the words not given in the footnotes occur with the same meaning in the selections from Nepos and Caesar in Part IV.

1.—2. *lingua, language.* 6. *cultus, civilization.* 6. *humanitas, refinement.* 7. *minime, by no means.* 7. *commeo, visit.* 8. *pertineo, tend.* 9. *continenter, continually.* 11. *praecedo, surpass.* 14. *contineo, bound.* 15. *ab, on the side of.* 20. *ad, next to.*

contra se Treveris miserant ; altera, ne ad eos Ambiorix receptum haberet. His constitutis rebus, paulo supra eum locum quo ante exercitum traduxerat facere pontem instituit. Magno militum studio, paucis diebus opus efficitur. Firmo in Treveris ad pontem praesidio relicto, ne quis ab his subito motus oreretur, reliquas 5 copias equitatumque traducit. Ubii, qui ante obsides dederant atque in deditionem venerant, purgandi sui causa ad eum legatos mittunt, qui doceant auxilia ex sua civitate in Treveros non missa esse ; petunt atque orant ut sibi parcat ; si amplius obsidum velit dari, pollicentur. Cognita Caesar causa reperit ab Suebis auxilia missa 10 esse. Ubiorum satisfactionem accipit ; aditus viasque in Suebos perquirat.

Interim paucis post diebus fit ab Ubiis certior Suebos omnes in unum locum copias cogere, atque eis nationibus quae sub eorum sint imperio, denuntiare, ut auxilia peditatus equitatusque mittant. 15 His cognitis rebus rem frumentariam providet, castris idoneum locum deligit, Ubiis imperat ut pecora deducant, suaeque omnia ex agris in oppida conferant (sperans hostes inopia cibariorum adductos ad iri quam pugnandi condicionem posse deduci) ; mandat ut crebros exploratores in Suebos mittant, quaeque apud eos 20 gerantur, cognoscant.

Illi imperata faciunt, et paucis diebus intermissis referunt : Suebos omnes, posteaquam certiores nuntii de exercitu Romanorum venerint, cum omnibus suis copiis quas coegissent, ad extremos fines se recepisse ; silvam esse ibi infinita magnitudine ; ad ejus silvae 25 initium Suebos adventum Romanorum expectare constituisse.

Caesar, postquam per Ubios exploratores comperit Suebos sese in silvas recepisse, inopiam frumenti veritus (quod, ut supra demonstravimus, minime omnes Germani agriculturae student), constituit non progredi longius ; sed, ne omnino metum reditus sui 30 barbaris tolleretur, reducto exercitu partem ultimam pontis, quae ripas Ubiorum contingit, rescindit, atque in extremo ponte turrim constituit, praesidiumque cohortium duodecim pontis tuendi causa ponit, magnisque eum locum munitionibus firmat ; ipse ad bellum Ambiorigis proficiscitur.

35

2.—1. Ambiorix was the leader of a formidable revolt in north-eastern Gaul. 10. cognosco causam, investigate a case. 11. satisfactio, excuses. 12. perquiro, inquire about. 15. denuntio, give notice. 18. spero, hope. 18. cibaria, provisions. 19. iniquus, unequal. 24. extremus, remotest. 29. minime studeo, pay very little attention. 31. tollo with dat., take away from. 32. contingo, touch. 32. extremus pons, the end of the bridge. 32. turris, tower. 33. constituo, erect. 34. firmo, strengthen.

3. The Campaign against the Belgæ, B.C. 57.

Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia in hibernis, litteris Labienus certior factus est, omnes Belgas contra populum Romanum conjurare, quod vererentur ne, omni Gallia pacata, ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur. His nuntiis commotus, Caesar duas legiones in citeriore Gallia novas conscripsit, et inita aestate ad exercitum venit. Imperat Senonibus, qui finitimi Belgis erant, uti ea, quae apud eos gerantur, cognoscant, seque de his rebus certiores faciant. Hi omnes nuntiaverunt manus cogi, exercitum in unum locum conduci. Tum Caesar re frumentaria comparata castra movet, diebusque circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervenit. 10

Posteaquam omnes Belgarum copias in unum locum coactas esse, et ad se venire vidit, neque jam longe abesse ab expiatoribus cognovit, flumen Axonam, quod est in Remorum finibus, exercitum traducere maturavit, atque ibi castra posuit. In eo flumine pons erat. Ibi praesidium ponit, atque in altera parte fluminis Q. Titurium Sabinum legatum cum sex cohortibus reliquit. Ab his castris oppidum Remorum, nomine Bibrax, aberat millia passuum octo. Id magno impetu Belgae oppugnare coeperunt. Aegre eo die sustentatum est. Cum finem oppugnandi nox fecisset, Iccius, qui tum oppido praeerat, nuntium ad Caesarem mittit : nisi subsidium sibi submittatur, sese diutius sustinere non posse. Eo media nocte Caesar duas cohortes subsidio oppidanis mittit : quorum adventu hostes discesserunt, agrosque Remorum depopulati, omnibus vicis atque aedificiis quos adire potuerant incensis, omnibus copiis ad flumen Axonam contenderunt, quod esse post nostra castra demonstratum est. 25

Ibi vadis repertis, partem suarum copiarum transducere conati sunt, eo consilio, ut, si possent, castellum, cui praeerat Q. Titurius legatus, expugnarent ; si minus potuissent, agros Remorum popularentur, commeatuque nostros prohiberent. 30

Caesar, certior factus ab Titurio, omnem equitatum pontem traducit, atque ad eos contendit. Acriter in eo loco pugnatum est. Hostes impeditos nostri in flumine aggressi, magnum eorum nume-

3.—2. conjuro, *conspire*. 3. paco, *subdue*. 4. commoveo, *alarm*. 5. conscribo, *raise*. 9. conduco, *gather*. 14. maturo, *hasten*. 17. Remi, these were allies of the Romans. 19. sustento, *hold out*. 22. oppidani, *townspeople*. 23. depopulo, *lay waste*. 29. minus, *not*. 29. populo, *lay waste*.

rum occiderunt. Per eorum corpora reliqui audacissime transire conantes, multitudine telorum repulsi sunt; primi, qui transierant, equitatu circumventi interfectique sunt. Hoc proelio superati, hostes concilio convocato constituerunt optimum esse domum suam quemque reverti, et quorum in fines primum Romani exercitum 5 introduxissent, ad eos defendendos undique convenirent.

Ea re constituta, secunda vigilia magno cum strepitu atque tumultu castris egressi sunt; ita ut consimilis fugae profectio videretur. Hac re statim Caesar per speculatores cognita, insidias veritus, quod qua de causa discederent nondum perspexerat, exer- 10 citum equitatumque castris continuit. Prima luce confirmata re ab exploratoribus, omnem equitatum qui fugientes persequeretur, misit. Hi novissimos adorti magnam multitudinem eorum conciderunt, subque occasum solis destiterunt, seque in castra, ut erat imperatum, receperunt. 15

Postridie ejus diei Caesar, priusquam se hostes ex terrore ac fuga reciperent, in fines Suessionum, qui proximi Remis erant, exercitum duxit et ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit. Id oppugnare conatus, propter latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem, paucis defendentibus, expugnare non potuit. Castris munitis, quae ad 20 oppugnandum usui erant, comparare coepit. Interim Suessionum multitudo in oppidum proxima nocte convenit. Celeriter aggere jacto, magnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritate Romanorum permoti, legatos ad Caesarem de deditioe mittunt. 25

His rebus gestis, tanta hujus belli ad barbaros opinio perlata est, uti ab iis nationibus quae trans Rhenum incolunt, mitterentur legati ad Caesarem, qui se obsides daturus, imperata facturos, pollicerentur.

4. The Gauls and the Germans.

In Gallia non solum in omnibus civitatibus atque in omnibus 30 pagis sed paene in singulis domibus factiones sunt; atque eodem modo tota Gallia divisa est in duas partes. Cum Caesar in Galliam venit, alterius factionis principes erant Aedui, alterius Sequani.

3.—1. per, over. 6. introduce, lead in. 8. tumultus, commotion. 9. speculator, spy. 11. confirmo, confirm. 13. novissimi, the rear. 14. sub, towards. 19. latitudo, breadth. 23. jacio, throw up. 23. opera, siege-works.

4.—31. factio, party, side. 32. pars, party.

In omni Gallia eorum hominum qui aliquo sunt honore genera sunt duo; nam plebs paene servorum habetur loco. De his duobus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Druides rebus divinis intersunt; sacrificiis publica atque privata procurant; de omnibus controversiis publicis privatisque constituunt. His autem 5 omnibus druidibus praeest unus, qui summam inter eos habet auctoritatem. Druides a bello abesse consueverunt, neque tributa una cum reliquis pendunt. Tantis excitati praemiis, et sua sponte multi in disciplinam conveniunt et a parentibus mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ediscere dicuntur. Multa praeterea de 10 sideribus atque eorum motu, de mundi ac terrarum magnitudine, de rerum natura, de deorum immortalium vi ac potestate disputant. Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, cum aliquod bellum incidit (quod fere ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solebat) omnes in bello versantur, plurimosque clientes habent. 15

Natio est omnis Gallorum admodum dedita religionibus; atque ob eam causam qui in proeliis periculisque versantur, aut pro victimis homines immolant aut se immolatu-ros vovent; publiceque ejusdem generis habent instituta sacrificia.

Germani multum ab hac consuetudine differunt, nam neque 20 druides habent qui rebus divinis praesint, neque sacrificiis student. Vita omnis in venationibus atque in studiis rei militaris consistit; a parvis labori ac duritiae student. Pellibus utuntur, magna corporis parte nuda. Agriculturae non student, majorque pars eorum victus in lacte, caseo, carne consistit. Neque quisquam 25 agri modum certum aut fines habet proprios; sed magistratus ac principes in annos singulos quantum visum est attribuunt, atque anno post alio transire cogunt.

Civitatis maxima laus est quam latissime circum se vastatis finibus solitudines habere. Hoc proprium virtutis existimant, 30 expulsos agris finitimos cedere, neque quemquam prope se audere

4.—1. honor, *repute, distinction*. 2. paene, *almost*. 3. druides, *the druids*. 3. eques, *knight*. 4. res divinae, *matters of religion*. 4. intersum, *am concerned with*. 4. sacrificium, *sacrifice*. 5. controversia, *dispute*. 7. tributum, *tax*. 8. excito, *stimulate*. 8. praemium, *reward*. 9. in disciplinam, *for instruction*. 10. versus, *verse*. 10. edisco, *learn by heart*. 11. sidus, *star*. 11. mundus, *the universe*. 12. disputo, *discuss*. 13. incido, *occur*. 14. soleo, *am wont*. 16. religio, *religious observance*. 17. victima, *victim*. 18. voveo, *vow*. 21, 23, 24. studeo, *indulge in, devote myself to, follow*. 22. studium, *pursuit*. 22. consisto in, *consist of*. 23. duritia, *hardiness*. 24. nudus, *bare*. 25. victus, *food*. 25. caseus, *cheese*. 26. modus, *quantity*. 26. proprius, *private*. 28. alio, *elsewhere*. 29 circum, *around*. 30. proprium, *a mark*.

consistere; simul hoc se fore tutiores arbitrantur, repentinae incursionis timore sublato. Cum bellum civitas gerit, magistratus qui ei bello praesint deliguntur. In pace nullus est communis magistratus sed principes regionum atque pagorum inter suos jus dicunt. Hospitem violare fas non putant; qui quacumque de causa 5 ad eos venerunt ab injuria prohibent sanctosque habent.

Ac fuit antea tempus cum Germanos Galli virtute superarent, ultro bella inferrent, propter hominum multitudinem agrique inopiam trans Rhenum colonias mitterent. Nunc quidem in eadem inopia atque egestate Germani permanent, eodem victu et 10 vestitu utuntur; Gallos autem provinciarum propinquitas et transmarinarum rerum notitia humaniores effecit. Paulatim assuefacti superari, multisque victi proeliis, ne se quidem ipsi cum illis virtute comparant.

5. The Battle of Marathon.

Darius autem, cum ex Europa in Asiam redisset, hortantibus 15 amicis ut Graeciam redigeret in suam potestatem, classem quingentarum navium comparavit, eique Datim praefecit et Artaphernem, iisque ducenta peditum, decem equitum millia dedit, causam interponens se hostem esse Atheniensibus, quod eorum auxilio Iones Sardes expugnassent suaque praesidia interfecissent. Illi, classe 20 ad Euboeam appulsa, celeriter Eretriam ceperunt omnesque ejus gentis cives abreptos in Asiam ad regem miserunt.

Inde ad Atticam accesserunt ac suas copias in campum Marathonam deduxerunt. Is est ab oppido circiter millia passuum decem. Hoc tumultu Athenienses tam propinquo tamque magno permoti, 25 auxilium nusquam nisi a Lacedaemoniis petiverunt. Domi autem creant decem praetores qui exercitui praecessent, in iis Miltiadem. Inter quos magna fuit contentio, utrum moenibus se defenderent, an obviam irent hostibus acieque decernerent. Unus Miltiades maxime hortabatur ut castra fierent: id si factum esset, et civibus 30 animum accessurum, cum viderent de eorum virtute non desperari,

4.—1. consisto, *settle*. 4. jus dico, *dispense justice*. 5. hospes, *guest*. 5. violo, *harm*. 6. sanctus, *sacred*. 9. colonia, *colony, settlement*. 10. egestas, *poverty*. 11. propinquitas, *nearness*. 11. transmarinus, *foreign*. 12. notitia, *acquaintance*.

5.—15. Darius, king of Persia from 521 to 485 B.C. 16. redigo in, *bring under*. 19. Iones, *the Ionians*. 22. abripio, *carry off*. 25. tumultus, *sudden attack*. 26. nusquam, *nowhere*. 28. contentio, *controversy*. 29. decerno, *fight, contend*. 30. castra facio, here meaning *take the field*. 31. accedo, *come, am given*.

et hostes eadem re fore tardiores, si animadverterent auderi adversus se tam exiguis copiis dimicari.

Hoc in tempore nulla civitas Atheniensibus auxilio fuit praeter Plataenses. Ea mille misit milites. Itaque horum adventu decem milia armatorum completa sunt, quae manus mirabili flagrabat pugnandi cupiditate. Quo factum est ut plus quam collegae Miltiades valeret. Ejus ergo auctoritate impulsu Athenienses copias ex urbe eduxerunt, locoque idoneo castra fecerunt. Deinde postero die sub montis radicibus acie instructa (atque arbores multis locis erant raras) proelium commiserunt hoc consilio ut et montium altitudine tegerentur et arborum tractu equitatus hostium impediretur.

Datis, etsi non aequum locum videbat suis, tamen fretus numero copiarum suarum configere cupiebat, eoque magis, quod priusquam Lacedaemonii subsidio venirent, dimicare utile arbitrabatur. Itaque in aciem peditum centum, equitum decem milia produxit, proeliumque commisit. In quo tanto plus virtute valuerunt Athenienses ut decemplex numerum hostium profligarint, adeoque eos perterruerunt ut Persae non castra sed naves petierint.

6. Hannibal's Father, Hamilcar.

Hamilcar, Carthaginiensis, primo Punico bello, admodum adulescentulus in Sicilia praeesse coepit exercitui. Cum ante ejus adventum et mari et terra male res gererentur Carthaginiensium, ipse, ubi adfuit, numquam hosti cessit neque locum nocendi dedit, saepeque e contrario, occasione data, laccessivit semperque superior discessit. Quo facto, cum paene omnia in Sicilia Poeni amisissent, ille Erycem sic defendit ut bellum eo loco gestum non videretur.

Interim Carthaginienses, classe apud insulas Aegates a C. Lutatius, consule Romanorum, superati, statuerunt belli facere finem. Paucis post annis, quo facilius causam bellandi cum Romanis reperiret, effecit ut imperator cum exercitu in Hispaniam mitteretur, eoque secum duxit filium Hannibalem annorum novem.

5.—5. compleo, *make up*. 5. mirabilis, *wonderful*. 5. flagro, *be inflamed with*. 6. collega, *colleague*. 7. impello, *lead*. 9. sub radicibus, *at the foot*. 11. altitudo, *height*. 11. tego, *protect*. 11. tractus, *row*. 13. aequus, *favorable*. 13. fretus, *relying on*. 15. utile, *a good thing*. 16. produco, *lead out*. 18. decemplex, *tenfold*.

6.—20. admodum adulescentulus, *a mere youth*. 23. adsum, *am present*. 23. locus, *opportunity*. 24. e contrario, *on the contrary*. 24. occasio, *opportunity*. 25. paene, *almost*. 26. Eryx, a town in Sicily. 29. causa, *pretext*.

Erat praeterea cum eo adolescens Hasdrubal, qui, Hamilcare occiso, exercitui praefuit resque magnas gessit. Ejus post mortem Hannibal ab exercitu accepit imperium.

At Hamilcar, posteaquam mare transiit in Hispaniamque venit, magnas res secunda gessit fortuna; maximas bellicosissimasque 5 gentes subegit, equis, armis, viris, pecunia totam locupletavit Africam. Hic cum in Italiam bellum inferre meditaretur, nono anno postquam in Hispaniam venerat, in proelio pugnans adversus Vettones occisus est.

Hujus perpetuum odium erga Romanos maxime concitasse videtur 10 secundum bellum Punicum. Namque Hannibal, filius ejus, assiduus patris obtestationibus eo est perductus ut interire quam Romanos non experiri mallet.

7. Datames Captures Aspis.

Datames cum maximo studio compararet exercitum, Aegyptumque proficisci pararet, subito a rege litterae sunt ei missae, ut 15 Aspim aggrederetur, qui Cataoniam tenebat, quae jacet supra Ciliciam. Namque Aspis, saltuosam regionem castellisque munitam incolens, non solum imperio regis non parebat sed etiam finitimas regiones vexabat, et quae regi portarentur abripiebat. Datames, etsi longe aberat ab iis regionibus et a majore re abstra- 20 hebatur, tamen regis voluntati morem gerendum putavit.

Itaque cum paucis sed viris fortibus navem conscendit, existimans, quod accidit, facilius se imprudentem parva manu oppres- surum, quam paratum quamvis magno exercitu. Hac delatus in Ciliciam, egressus inde, dies noctesque iter faciens, Taurum trans- 25 iit. Quaerit quibus locis sit Aspis; cognoscit haud longe abesse, profectumque venatum. Interim, adventus ejus causa cognoscitur. Pisidas, cum iis quos secum habebat, ad resistendum Aspis comparat. Id Datames ubi audivit, arma sunit, suos sequi jubet; ipse equo concitato ad hostem vehitur. Quem procul Aspis con- 30 spiciens ad se ferentem pertimescit atque a conatu resistendi

6.—5. secundus, good. 6. locupletus, enrich. 7. meditor, plan. 10. perpetuus, unceasing. 10. concito, provoke. 12. assiduus, constant. 12. obtestatio, adjuration. 12. perduco, lead. 13. experior, try conclusions with. 13. malo, choose rather.

7.—14. Datames, a Persian general of Artaxerxes II. 16. jaceo, lie. 16. supra, beyond. 17. saltuosus, full of forests. 19. abripio, carry off. 20. abstraho, draw away, divert. 24. hac, sc. navi. 27. venor, hunt. 28. Pisidae, the Pisidians. 30. concito, spur on. 30. vehor, am borne, ride. 31. fero (here intransitive, se being omitted), advance. 31. pertimesco, become frightened. 31. conatus, attempt.

deterritus sese dedit. Hunc Datames vinctum ad regem tradendum dedit Mithridati.

8. The Military Genius of Iphicrates.

Iphicrates Atheniensis non tam magnitudine rerum gestarum quam disciplina militari nobilitatus est. Fuit enim talis dux, ut non solum aetatis suae cum primis compararetur, sed ne de maioribus natu quidem quisquam anteponeretur. Multum vero in bello est versatus, saepe exercitibus praefuit, tantumque eo valuit, ut multa in re militari partim nova attulerit, partim meliora fecerit. Namque ille pedestria arma mutavit. Cum ante illum maximis clipeis, brevibus hastis, minutis gladiis uterentur, ille, e contrario peltam pro clipeo fecit, ut ad motus concursusque essent leviores; hastae modum duplicavit, gladios longiores fecit. Idem genus loricarum novum instituit, et pro aeneis linteas dedit. Quo facto expeditiores milites reddidit.

Apud Corinthum tanta severitate exercitui praefuit, ut nullae umquam in Graecia neque exercitiores copiae neque magis dicto audientes fuerint duci; in eamque consuetudinem adduxit, ut cum proelii signum ab imperatore esset datum, sine ducis opera sic ordinatae consisterent, ut singuli a peritissimo imperatore dispositi viderentur. Hoc exercitu moram Lacedaemoniorum interfecit, quod maxime tota celebratum est Graecia. Iterum eodem bello omnes copias eorum fugavit, quo facto magnam adeptus est gloriam.

9. The Honesty and Foresight of Epaminondas.

Diomedon, rogatu Artaxerxis regis, ut Epaminondam pecunia corrumperet, magno cum pondere auri Thebas venit et Micythum adolescentem, quem Epaminondas plurimum diligebat, quinque talentis ad suam perduxit voluntatem. Micythus Epaminon-

7.—1. vincio, put in chains.

8.—4. disciplina, skill. 4. nobilito, make famous. 6. vero, in fact. 8. affero, introduce. 8. melior, better. 9. pedester, of infantry. 9. muto, change. 10. clipeus, shield. 10. hasta, spear. 10. minutus, very short. 10. gladius, sword. 10. e contrario, on the contrary. 11. pelta, light shield. 11. pro, in place of. 11. levis, light. 12. modus, measure, length. 13. lorica, cuirass. 13. instituo, introduce. 13. linteus, of linen. 13. severitas, strictness. 16. exercitatus, well trained. 16. dicto audiens, obedient. 18. opera, assistance. 19. ordino, set in order. 19. peritus, experienced. 20. mora, a division of the Spartan army, regiment. 21. celebros, talk of, praise.

9.—24. rogatu, at the request. 25. corrumpro, bribe. 26. diligo, be fond of. 27. perduco, bring over.

dam convenit, et causam adventus Diomedontis ostendit. At ille, Diomedontis coram : "Nihil," inquit, "opus pecunia est ; nam si rex ea vult quae Thebanis sunt utilia, gratiis facere sum paratus ; sin autem contraria, non habet auri atque argenti satia. Namque orbis terrarum divitias accipere nolo pro patriae caritate. Tu quod 5 me incognitum tentasti, tuique similem existimasti, non miror, tibi que ignosco ; sed egredere propere, ne alios corumpas, cum me non potueris. Et tu, Micythe, argentum huic redde, aut, nisi id confestim facis, ego te tradam magistratui." Hunc Diomedon cum rogaret ut tuto exire suaque liceret efferre : "Istud quidem" 10 inquit "faciam, neque tua causa, sed mea, ne, si tibi sit pecunia adempta, aliquis dicat id ad me pervenisse." A quo cum quaesivisset quo se deduci vellet, et ille Athenas dixisset, praesidium dedit, ut tuto perveniret.

Atque Meneclides quidam, adversarius Epaminondae, quod in 15 re militari florere illum videbat, hortari solebat Thebanos ut pacem bello anteferrent, ne illius imperatoris opera desideraretur. Huic ille, "Fallis," inquit, "verbo cives tuos, quod eos a bello avocas ; otii enim nomine servitutem concilias. Nam paritur pax bello. Itaque qui pace diutina volunt frui, bello exercitati esse debent. 20 Quare si principes Graeciae vultis esse, castris est vobis utendum, non palaestra."

10. The Story of Ulysses.

The Lotus-Eaters.

Cum urbs Troja, a Graecis decem annos obsessa, tandem per insidias capta esset, Graeci longo bello fessi domum redire maturaverunt. Omnibus igitur ad protectionem paratis naves deduxerunt 25 et tempestatem idoneam nacti magno cum gaudio solverunt. Erat inter primos Graecorum Ulixes quidam, vir summae virtutis ac prudentiae. Hic regnum insulae Ithacae obtinuerat et, paulo antequam cum reliquis Graecis ad bellum profectus est, puellam

9.—1. convenio, go to. 2. coram, in the presence of. 2. opus, need of (w. abl.) 3. gratiis, for nothing. 4. sin, but if. 4. contrarius, opposite. 5. orbis terrarum, the whole world. 5. caritas, love. 6. tento, seek to bribe. 6. simili, like. 8. reddo, give back. 10. efferro, carry away. 10. istud, what you ask. 11. causa, for . . . sake. 16. floreo, am conspicuous. 16. soleo, am wont. 17. opera, services. 18. avoco, dissuade. 19. otium, peace. 19. servitus, slavery. 19. concilio, bring about. 19. pario, obtain. 20. diutinus, lasting. 20. fruor, enjoy (w. abl.). 20. exercitatus, well-trained. 22. palaestra, wrestling school (as typical of peace.)

10.—23. obsideo, besiege. 24. fessus, wearied. 24. maturo, hasten. 26. gaudium, joy. 29. antequam, before. 29. puella, maiden

formosissimam, nomine Penelopen, in matrimonium duxerat. Nunc igitur, cum jam decem annos quasi in exilio consumpsisset, magna cupiditate patriae et uxoris videndae incensus est.

Postquam tamen pauca millia passuum a litore Trojae progressi sunt, tanta tempestas subito coorta est ut nulla navium cursum 5 tenere posset, sed aliae alias in partes disjicerentur. Navis autem qua ipse Ulixes vehebatur, vi tempestatis ad meridiem delata, decimo die ad litus Libyae appulsa est. Ancoris jactis Ulixes constituit nonnullos e suis in terram exponere, qui aquam ad navem referrent et qualis esset natura ejus regionis cognoscerent. 10 Hi igitur e navi egressi imperata facere parabant. Dum tamen fontem quaerunt, quibusdam ex incolis obviam facti ab eis hospitio accepti sunt. Accidit autem ut maximam partem miro quodam fructu, quem lotum appellabant, hi homines viverent. Quem cum Graeci gustassent, patriae et sociorum statim obliti, se confirmave- 15 runt semper in ea terra mansuros, ut dulci illo cibo in perpetuum fruerentur.

At Ulixes, cum ab hora septima ad vesperum exspectasset, veritus ne socii sui in periculo versarentur, nonnullos e reliquis misit, ut quae causa esset morae cognoscerent. Hi igitur in terram 20 expositi, cum ad vicum qui non longe aberat pervenissent, socios suos quasi vino ebrios reppererunt, atque eis persuadere conabantur ut secum ad navem redirent. Illi tamen resistere ac manu se defendere coeperunt, saepe clamitantes se numquam ex eo loco discessuros. Quae cum ita essent, nuntii re infecta ad Ulixem 25 redierunt. His rebus cognitis Ulixes ipse cum omnibus qui in navi relictii sunt ad locum venit; et socios suos frustra hortatus ut sponte sua redirent, manibus eorum post terga vinctis, invitos ad navem reportavit. Tum ancoris sublatiis quam celerrime e portu solvit.

30

The Giant, Polyphemus.

Postridie ejus diei postquam totam noctem remis contenderant, ad terram ignotam navem appulerunt. Tum, quod naturam ejus

10.—1. formosus, beautiful. 1. matrimonium, marriage. 2. quasi, as it were. 6. disjicio, scatter. 10. refero, bring back. 12. fons, spring. 12. obviam fio, fall in with. 12. hospitium, hospitality. 13. mirus, wonderful. 14. fructus, fruit. 14. lotus, the lotus. 15. obliviscor, forget (w. gen.). 16. dulcis, sweet, pleasant. 17. fruor, enjoy (w. abl.). 18. vesper, evening. 19. socius, comrade. 22. ebrius, drunk. 25. re infecta, without accomplishing their purpose. 28. vincio, bind.

regionis ignorabat, ipse Ulixes cum duodecim e sociis in terram egressus locum explorare constituit. Paulum e litore progressi ad specum ingentem pervenerunt; quem, etsi intellegebant non sine periculo id facturos, intraverunt. Ibi magnam copiam lactis invenerunt in vasis ingentibus conditam. Dum tamen mirantur 5 quis eum locum incoletet, subito monstrum horribile animadvertunt, humana quidem specie et figura, sed immani corporis magnitudine. Cum autem vidissent gigantem unum omnino oculum habere in media fronte positum, intellexerunt hunc esse unum e Cyclopibus, de quibus famam jam acceperant. 10

Quod monstrum simul atque viderunt, timore perterriti in interiorem partem speluncae confugerunt. Polyphemus autem (id enim gigantis nomen erat) pecora sua in speluncam egit; tum cum saxo ingenti portam obstruxisset, ignem in medio specu accendit. Hoc facto, cum Graecos animadvertisset, voce magna clamavit: 15 "Qui estis homines? Mercatores an praedones?" Tum Ulixes respondit se neque mercatores esse neque praedandi causa venisse; sed e Troja redeuntes vi tempestatum a cursu depulsos esse; oravit etiam ut sibi sine injuria discedere liceret. Tum Polyphemus, nullo dato responso, duo e Graecis manu corripuit et membris eorum 20 divulsis carnem devorare coepit.

Dum haec geruntur, Graecorum animos tantus terror occupavit ut omni spe salutis deposita mortem praesentem expectarent. At Polyphemus humi prostratus somno se dedit. Quod cum vidisset Ulixes, tantam occasionem rei bene gerendae non amittendam 25 arbitratus, in animo habebat Polyphemum gladio occidere. At cum saxum animadvertisset, quo introitus praeclusus erat, nihil se profecturum intellexit si Polyphemum interfecisset. Tanta enim erat ejus saxi magnitudo, ut ne decem quidem homines movere possent. 30

Orta luce Polyphemus jam e somno excitatus idem quod superiore die fecit; correptis enim duobus e reliquis viris, carnem eorum sine mora devoravit. Tum cum saxum amovisset, ipse cum

10. - 3. specus, cave. 4. intro, enter. 5. condo, put away. 6. monstrum, monster. 6. horribilis, dreadful. 7. humanus, human. 8. gigas, giant. 9. frons, forehead. 10. Cyclops, a fabulous kind of giant. 12. spelunca, cavern. 14. saxum, stone. 14. obstruo, barricade. 14. ignis, fire. 14. accendo, kindle. 15. clamo, shout. 20. corripio, seize. 21. divello, tear asunder. 21. devoro, devour. 23. praesens, immediate. 24. humi, on the ground. 24. prosterno, stretch prostrate. 24. somnus, sleep. 25. occasio, opportunity. 26. gladius, sword. 31. excito, arouse. 33. amoveo, remove.

pecore suo progressus est, atque postquam omnes oves exierunt saxum in locum restituit.

Sub vesperum Polyphemus ad specum rediit et eodem modo quo ante cenavit. Tum Ulixes utrem vini prompsit, quam forte secum habebat, et giganti prae-buit. Polyphemus, qui numquam antea 5 vinum gustaverat, statim hausit; quod cum fecisset, quaesivit quo nomine Ulixes appellaretur. Ille respondit se Neminem appellari. Quod cum audivisset, Polyphemus, "Hanc tibi gratiam," inquit, "pro tanto beneficio referam; te ultimum omnium devorabo." His dictis, cibo vinoque gravatus, brevi tempore somno oppressus 10 est. Tum Ulixes sociis convocatis, "Habemus," inquit, "quam petimus facultatem." Tum postquam quid fieri vellet ostendit, eadem praeacutam conquirebat. Quam cum repperisset, igni calefecit, atque oculum Polyphemi dum dormit transfodit; quo facto omnes in ultimas speluncae partes se abdiderunt. 15

At ille subito illo dolore, quod necesse fuit, e somno excitatus, clamorem ingentem sustulit, et dum per speluncam errat, Ulixem manu comprehendere conatur; cum tamen jam omnino caecus esset, nullo modo hoc efficere potuit. Interea reliqui Cyclopes clamore audito undique ad speluncam convenerunt et quid gerere- 20 tur quaesiverunt. Ille respondit se graviter vulneratum esse. Cum tamen ceteri quaesivissent quis ei vim intulisset, respondit ille Neminem id fecisse. Quibus auditis unus e Cyclopibus "At si nemo," inquit, "te vulneravit, non dubium est quin consilio deorum, quibus resistere nec possumus nec volumus, hoc 25 supplicio afficiaris." His dictis, arbitrati eum in insaniam incidisse, discesserunt Cyclopes.

At Polyphemus, ubi socios suos abiisse sensit, furore atque amentia impulsus Ulixem iterum quaerere coepit; tandem cum portam invenisset, saxum amovit ut pecus ad agros exiret. Tum 30 ipse in introitu sedit, et ut quaeque ovis ad locum venerat, tergum ejus manibus tractabat, ne Graeci inter oves effugere possent. Quod cum animadvertisset Ulixes, hoc iniit consilium: intellexit enim omnem spem salutis in dolo magis quam in virtute poni.

10.—1. ovis, *sheep*. 2. restituo, *put back*. 3. sub, *towards*. 4. uter, *skin*. 4. promo, *bring out*. 4. forte, *by chance*. 6. haurio, *drink off*. 9. beneficium, *service*. 9. ultimus, *last*. 10. gravatus, *heavy*. 13. praeacutus, *sharpened at the end*. 13. conquire, *look about for*. 14. calefacio, *heat*. 14. dormio, *sleep*. 14. transtodio, *pierce*. 16. dolor, *pain*. 17. erro, *wander*. 18. caecus, *blind*. 26. in insaniam incido, *become mad*. 28. abeo, *go away*. 28. furor, *rage, frenzy*. 31. sedeo, *sit down*. 32. tracto, *feel*.

Primum tres quas vidit pinguissimas oves delegit ; quas cum inter se conexuisset, unum sociorum ventribus earum ita subjecit ut omnino lateret ; deinde oves hominem secum ferentes ad portam egit. Id accidit quod fore suspicatus erat. Polyphemus enim, postquam manus tergis earum imposuit, oves exire passus est. 5 Eodem modo omnes suos socios emisit ; ipse ultimus evasit.

His rebus ita confectis, Ulixes cum sociis magnopere veritus ne Polyphemus dolum sentiret, ad litus contendit. Quod cum venisset, non satis tutum esse arbitratus si in eo loco maneret, quam celerrime proficisci constituit. Jussit igitur omnes navem conscendere, et ancoris sublatis paulum a litore in altum provectus est. Tum magna voce dixit, "Tu, Polypheme, qui jura hospitii spernis, justam et debitam poenam solvisti." Hac voce audita Polyphemus ira et dolore incensus ad mare se contulit, et ubi intellexit navem paulum e litore remotam esse, saxum ingens manu correptum in 15 eam partem conjecit unde vocem venire sensit. Graeci autem, nullo accepto damno, cursum tenuerunt.

Circe, the Enchantress.

Brevi intermisso spatio insulae cuidam appropinquaverunt, quam Circe, filia Solis, incolebat. Ibi cum navem appulisset, Ulixes in terram frumentandi causa egrediendum esse statuit ; cognoverat 20 enim frumentum quod in navi haberet jam deficere. Sociis igitur ad se convocatis quo in loco res esset et quid fieri vellet ostendit. Cum tamen omnes memoria tenerent quam crudelem mortem occubuissent ei qui in fines Cyclopum egressi essent, nemo repertus est qui hoc negotium suscipere vellet. Tandem res ad sortem revocatur, atque Eurylochus cum duobus et viginti sociis proficiascitur. Vix quidem poterant ei qui in navi relictis erant lacrimas tenere ; credebant enim se socios suos numquam iterum visuros.

Illi autem aliquantum itineris progressi ad villam quandam pervenerunt summa magnificentia aedificatam. Cujus villae domina, cui nomen erat Circe, Graecos invitavit ut apud se deversarentur. Eurylochus autem insidias suspicatus foris exspectare

10.—1. pinguis, fat. 2. conecto, fasten together. 2. venter, belly. 2. subjicio, place beneath. 3. lateo, am hidden. 5. impono, put on. 6. evado, escape. 12. sperno, despise. 13. debitus, deserve. 13. solvo, pay. 14. ira, anger. 17. damnum, loss, damage. 21. deficio, give out. 23. crudelis, cruel. 23. occumbo, meet. 25. ad sortem revocari, to be decided by lot. 27. lacrima, tear. 29. villa, country-house. 30. magnificentia, splendor. 30. domina, mistress. 31. deversor, stay. 32. foris, outside (the door).

constituit ; reliqui rei novitate adducti introierunt atque convivium magnificum invenerunt omnibus rebus instructum. At Circe vinum medicamento quodam miscuerat ; quod cum illi bibissent, gravi sopore omnes subito oppressi sunt. Tum Circe baculo aureo quem gerebat capita eorum tetigit ; quo facto omnes in porcos 5 statim conversi sunt. Interea Eurylochus ignarus quid gereretur, ad ostium sedebat ; postquam tamen ad solis occasum frustra expectavit, solus ad navem reverti constituit. At Ulixes, cum intellexisset socios suos in periculo versari, Eurylocho imperavit ut sine mora viam ad istam domum monstraret. Ille tamen multis 10 cum lacrimis Ulixem complexus obsecrare coepit re in tantum periculum se committeret ; si quid gravius ei accidisset, omnium salutem in summo discrimine fore. Ulixes autem respondit se neminem invitum secum adducturum ; ei licere, si mallet, in navi manere ; se ipsum sine ullo auxilio rem suscepturum. Hoc cum 15 voce magna dixisset, e navi desiluit.

Aliquantum itineris progressus, subito adolescentem quendam conspicatus est, forma pulcherrima, aureum baculum manu gerentem. Hic "Quo proficisceris ?" inquit, "Nonne scis amicos tuos in Circes domu inclusos esse, in porcos conversos ? Num vis ipse 20 in eandem calamitatem venire ?" Ulixes, simul atque vocem audit, deum Mercurium agnovit ; nullis tamen precibus ab instituto consilio deterreri potuit. Quod cum Mercurius sensisset, herbam quandam ei dedit, quam contra carmina plurimum valere dicebat.

25

Brevi intermisso spatio, Ulixes ad omnia pericula subeunda paratus ad villam pervenit atque ab ipsa Circe benigne exceptus est. Omnia eodem modo atque antea facta sunt. Servi panem et obsonia ei apposuerunt. Mox, ubi cenasset, Circe poculum aureum vino repletum dedit. Ille, etsi suspicatus est venenum sibi paratum 30 esse, poculum exhausit. Quo facto Circe, postquam caput ejus baculo tetigit, ea verba locuta est quibus socios ejus antea in

10. - 1. introeo, *enter*. 1. convivium, *dinner*. 2. magnificus, *sumptuous*. 3. medicamentum, *drug*. 3. misceo, *mix*. 3. bibo, *drink*. 4. sopor, *sleep*. 4. baculum, *wand*. 5. porcus, *pig*, *swine*. 6. converto, *turn*. 6. ignarus, *not knowing*. 7. ostium, *door*. 10. monstro, *point out*. 11. complector, *embrace*. 11. obsecro, *beg*, *beseech*. 12. committo, *put*. 12. gravius, *serious*. 13. discrimen, *peril*. 14. malo, *prefer*. 18. pulcher, *comely*, *handsome*. 19. scio, *know*. 20. includo, *imprison*. 21. calamitas, *misshap*. 22. Mercurius, *Mercury*, the messenger of the gods. 22. agnosco, *recognize*. 24. herba, *plant*. 24. carmen, *incantation*. 26. subeo, *undergo*, *encounter*. 27. benigne, *cordially*. 27. excipio, *welcome*. 29. appono, *set before*. 29. poculum, *goblet*. 30. repleo, *fill*. 31. exhaurio, *drain*. 32. loquor, *speak*.

porcos converterat. Res tamen aliter evenit atque illa speraverat. Tanta enim vis erat ejus herbae quam dederat Mercurius ut neque venenum neque verba quicquam efficere posset. Tum Circe multis cum lacrimis eum obsecrare coepit ne interficeret.

Ulixes autem, ubi animadvertit eam timore perterritam esse, 5 postulavit ut socios sine mora in speciem pristinam reduceret; nisi id factum esset, ostendit se statim cum cruciatu necaturum. At Circe graviter his rebus commota ad pedes ejus se projecit et multis cum lacrimis jurejurando confirmavit se quae imperasset omnia facturam. Ita sociis receptis, nuntium ad navem misit qui 10 reliquis Graecis quae facta essent nuntiaret.

Atque multa alia pericula Ulixi subeunda erant priusquam in patriam suam perveniret; quae tamen longum est omnia enumerare.—(*Adapted from Ritchie, Fabulae Faciles.*)

11. Hannibal's Youth.

Illud bellum maxime omnium erat memorabile, quae umquam 15 gesta sunt, quod Hannibale duce Carthaginenses cum populo Romano gesserunt. Numquam enim validiores opibus ullae inter se civitates gentesque contulerunt arma; atque odiis prope majoribus certarunt quam viribus. Fama est etiam Hannibalem annorum ferme novem, pueriliter blandientem patri Hamilcari, ut 20 duceretur in Hispaniam, altaribus admotum esse ac jurejurando adactum, se cum primum posset hostem fore populo Romano. Si autem diutius vixisset, Hamilcare duce Poeni arma Italiae illaturi erant; sed mors Hamilcaris opportuna et pueritia Hannibalis distulerunt bellum. Tum Hasdrubal octo ferme annos imperium 25 obtinuit, atque, plura consilio quam vi gerens, rem Carthaginensem auxit. Is Hannibalem adolescentem litteris ad se arcessivit.

Missus Hannibal in Hispaniam primo statim adventu omnem exercitum in se convertit; Hamilcarem juvenem redditum sibi veteres milites credebant. Numquam ingenium idem ad res 30 diversissimas, parendum atque imperandum, habilis fuit. Itaque

10.—1. *spero, hope, expect.* 2. *vis, power, virtue.* 8. *commoveo, alarm.*

11.—15. *memorabilis, famous.* 17. *validus, powerful.* 18. *arma confero, engage in war.* 19. *certo, contend.* 20. *ferme, about.* 20. *pueriliter, in boyish fashion.* 20. *blandior, coax (with dat.).* 21. *altaria, altar.* 21. *admoveo, bring up to.* 22. *adigo, bind.* 24. *pueritia, boyhood.* 25. *differo, postpone.* 26. *res, power.* 29. *convertito, attract the attention of.* 29. *juvenis, young man.* 30. *ingenium, mind, genius.* 31. *diversus, different.* 31. *habilis, fitted.*

haud facile discerneres, utrum imperatori an exercitui carior esset neque Haadrubal alium quemquam praeficere malebat, ubi quid fortiter ac strenue agendum esset, neque milites alio duce plus confidebant aut audebant.

Plurimum audaciae ad pericula capessenda, plurimum consilii 5 inter ipsa pericula erat. Nullo labore aut corpus fatigari aut animus vinci poterat. Equitum peditumque idem longe primus erat; princeps in proelium ibat, ultimus conserto proelio excedebat. Has tantas viri virtutes ingentia vitia aequabant, inhumana crudelitas, perfidia plus quam Punica, nihil veri, nullus deorum 10 metus, nulla religio.

11.—1. haud, *not*. 1. discerno, *decide*. 1. utrum, *whether*. 1. carus, *dear*. 2. malo, *prefer*. 3. strenue, *vigorously*. 5. audacia, *boldness*. 6. fatigo, *weary*. 8. princeps, *foremost*. 9. aequo, *equal*. 9. inhumanus, *savage, inhuman*. 10. crudelitas, *cruelty*. 10. Punica, *Punic, Carthaginian*.

SUPPLEMENTARY CHAPTER.

THE ROMAN MODE OF RECKONING TIME.

1. After the reform of the calendar by Julius Cæsar, in B.C. 46, the Roman year consisted of 365 days (in leap year, 366), the months containing the same number of days respectively as the English months.

2. The day of the month was calculated in the following manner:—Three points were taken in the month, the Calends (*Kalendæ*), the Ides (*Idūs*), and the Nones (*Nōnæ*), which the names¹ of the months qualified adjectively, and from these three points respectively the date was calculated *backward*.

3. The Calends fell in every case on the first of the month; in March, May, July and October, the Ides were on the fifteenth and the Nones on the seventh; in the other months, the Ides came on the thirteenth and the Nones on the fifth. Any day between the Calends and the Nones was reckoned such and such a day before the Nones; any day between the Nones and the Ides such and such a day before the Ides, and any day after the Ides such and such a day before the Calends of the following month.

1. These names are Jānuārius, Februārius, Mārtius, Aprīlis, Māius, Jūnius, Quintīlis (or Jūlius), Sextīlis (or Augustus), September, Octōber, November and December. The names Quintīlis, *fifth month*, Sextīlis, *sixth month*, September, *seventh month*, etc., are explained by the fact that the Roman year originally began with March.

4. From these three dates the other days were reckoned inclusively, that is, both days were counted in, and consequently to obtain the corresponding English date we must subtract the given day from the day on which the Nones or Ides fall increased by one, and as the Calends fall within the next month, if the day come before that date, we must add two to the last day of the month and then subtract.

5. The Romans had no *second day before* any of these three fixed points. The day before was called *pridie Kalendās* (or *Kalendārum*), *pridie Nōnās*, *pridie Idūs*. The day before that was called the *third day before*, being the *second* according to our mode of reckoning.

6. The following examples will illustrate these calculations :

July 10th = $(15 + 1 - 10) =$ VI. Id. Jul.

Feb. 15th = $(28 + 2 - 15) =$ XV. Kal. Mart.

June 3rd = $(5 + 1 - 3) =$ III. Non. Jun.

May 14th = $(15 + 1 - 14) =$ Pridie Id. Mal.

Sept. 13th = *Idibus Septembris*.

7. The Roman dates given in the above section are somewhat contracted. For example, *VI. Id. Jul.* is strictly *diē sextō ante Idūs Jūliās*, *diē* and *ante* being omitted, the numeral *VI.* being substituted for *sextō* and the other words abbreviated.

Frequently we find it in the form *a.d. VI. Id. Jul.*, that is *ante diem sextum Idūs Jūliās*, where *diē sextō*, coming between the preposition and its object, is attracted into the accusative *diem sextum*. Such expressions are looked upon as single words and may be governed by other prepositions ; as, *They fix their departure for the 12th of July: Profectionem in a.d. IV. Id. Jul. cōfirmant.*

8. The additional day in leap year was inserted after February 23rd, the 24th (*i.e.*, *VI. Kal. Mart.*) being reckoned twice and in the second case of occurrence called *bis sextus* ; whence the year itself was called *bisextilis*, from which we have our word *bissextile*.

9. The Romans reckoned their time from the building of the city (Rome), the date of which is fixed at 753 B.C., and to reduce the Roman date to the corresponding year before Christ, the year of the city is to be subtracted from 754, and *vice versa* ; as, *Cicero delivered an oration against Catiline on November 8th, B.C. 63: Cicero in Catilinam VI. Id. Nov. A.U.C. DCXCI. orationem habuit.* (A.U.C. = *ab urbe conditā*, or *annō urbis conditæ*.) If the year specified is written out in full, the ordinal numerals agreeing with *annō* are used ; as, *Annō sescentēsimō nōnāgēsīmō primō.*

10. Any date in our era may be calculated from the birth of Christ with or without *Annō Domini* ; as, *Queen Victoria ascended the throne June 20th, 1837: Victōria Rēgina rēgnū exēpit XII. Kal. Jul. MDCCCXXXVII.*

EXPLANATORY NOTES TO THE VOCABULARY.

The quantity of all vowels long by nature has been marked. Vowels not marked are to be considered short by nature.

The following abbreviations are used :

abl.	<i>ablative.</i>	n. or neut.	<i>neuter.</i>
acc.	<i>accusative.</i>	part.	<i>participle.</i>
adj.	<i>adjective.</i>	pass.	<i>passive.</i>
adv.	<i>adverb.</i>	perf.	<i>perfect.</i>
conj.	<i>conjunction.</i>	plur.	<i>plural.</i>
dat.	<i>dative.</i>	prep.	<i>preposition</i>
f. or fem.	<i>feminine.</i>	pres.	<i>present.</i>
gen.	<i>genitive.</i>	pron.	<i>pronoun.</i>
indecl.	<i>indeclinable.</i>	sing.	<i>singular.</i>
interj.	<i>interjection.</i>	subst.	<i>substantive.</i>
m. or masc.	<i>masculine.</i>	w.	<i>with</i>

PART VI.

VOCABULARIES AND INDEX.

I. LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

A

A, an abbreviation for *Aulus*.

â, ab, 1. *prep. with abl.* (*â before consonants; ab before vowels and some consonants*), away from, from, at a distance of; by; on the side of, at, on, in, against. 2. *adv. off.*

ab-dô, ere, -didî, -ditum, hide, conceal.

ab-dûcô, ere, -dûxî, -ductum, lead off, remove; carry off.

abl-ês, -etis, F., fir.

ab-jicô, ere, -jêcî, -jectum, throw away, throw to one side (*as of no value*).

absêns, -entis, absent, away, being away.

absimilis, e, unlike.

ab-sistô, ere, -stitî, keep away (*from*).

abstinentia, ae, F., self-restraint, unselfishness, integrity.

abstull, from auferô.

absum, abesse, âful, be absent, be wanting; be far, be distant; be away, lack, be lacking.

âc (*shorter form for atque, used only before consonants*), and, and further; in comparisons, as, than.

ac-cêdô, ere, -cessî, -cessum, approach, draw near, come up, go to; be added.

acceptus, a, um, adj. (*really perf. part. pass. of accipiô*), welcome, acceptable.

ac-cidô, ere, -cidî, befall, happen, occur; turn out.

ac-cipîô, ere, -cêpi, -ceptum, receive, take; suffer, meet with; accept; hear.

accubô, âre, âvi, âtum, recline at table.

ac-currô, ere, -curri (-e-curri), run up.

accusô, âre, âvi, âtum, charge, accuse.

âcer, cris, ere, sharp, shrewd, eager.

acerbus, a, um, sour.

âcerrimê, from âcriter.

Achillâs, ae, M., Achilles, an Egyptian officer.

ac-lês, êl, F., edge, line, line of battle; pitched battle, battle, the field.

ac-quiêscô, ere, -quiêvi, -qui-êtum, die, lit. 'come to rest'; cf. our expressions, 'rest from his labors,' 'pass to his rest.'

âcriter, adv. (*âcrius, âcerrimê*), fiercely, hotly, desperately; eagerly; actively; rigorously.

âctuârius, a, um, light, swift.

âctus, a, um, from agô.

acûtus, a, um, sharp, pointed. **ad, prep. with acc., to, towards,**

- against ; with a view to, for ; according to ; near, by, in, among ; before ; until.
- adaequō, āre, āvi, ātum,** equal.
- ad-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum,** add.
- ad-dūcō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum,** lead, bring ; bring in, conduct ; induce, influence, prompt, force.
- adēptus, a, um,** *from* adimō.
- adeō, adv.,** to such a degree, so, so much, so very, such a, so . . . a, so much as.
- ad-eō, ire, -ii (-ivi), -itum,** go to, advance ; attack ; visit ; approach.
- adeptus, a, um,** *from* adipiscor.
- adequō, āre, āvi, ātum,** ride up.
- adhibeō, ēre, ui, itum,** call in, bring along, bring in ; use, employ.
- adhortor, āri, ātus sum,** encourage, cheer.
- ad-igō, ere, -ēgi, -āctum,** hurl, cast.
- ad-imō, ere, -ēmi, -ēptum,** take away, destroy.
- ad-ipiscor, i, -eptus sum,** obtain, gain, acquire.
- aditus, ūs, M.,** approach, advance, access, means of approach, right of approaching, admittance.
- ad-iciō, ere, -jēci, -jectum,** throw up.
- ad-jungō, ere, -jūnxi, -jūntum,** join to, unite, add.
- ad-juvō, āre, -jūvi, -jūtum,** assist, help ; aid ; be of assistance to, further.
- Admētus, i, M.,** Admetus, a king of the Molossians in Epirus.
- administrō, āre, āvi, ātum,** carry out, execute, attend to, manage.
- admīror, āri, ātus sum,** wonder, wonder at, admire, be astonished, be surprised.
- ad-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum,** allow, incur ; commit ; let go.
- admodum, adv.,** very, very much, exceedingly, in a high degree.
- admoneō, ēre, ui, itum,** advise, warn.
- ad-orior, iri, -ortus sum,** attack, assault.
- ad-sum, -esse, -fui,** be near at hand, be present.
- ad-sūmō, ere, -sūmpsī, -sūptum,** take with (*one's self*).
- adulēscēns, -entis, M.,** young man ; the younger.
- adulēscēntia, ae, F.,** youth.
- adventus, ūs, M.,** arrival, approach, coming.
- adversārius, i, M.,** opponent, enemy.
- adversum or adversus, prep.** with acc., against.
- adversus, a, um,** opposite, facing, in front ; unsuccessful ; **proellum adversum,** defeat, repulse.
- ad-vertō, ere, -verti, -versum,** turn towards ; **animus ad-vertō,** observe, notice.
- advocō, āre, āvi, ātum,** call to, summon to.
- advolō, āre, āvi, ātum,** fly to, fly up ; rush upon, fall upon.
- aedēs, is, F. (sing.),** temple ; (*plur.*), house.
- aedificium, i, N.,** building.
- aedificō, āre, āvi, ātum,** build, construct, arrange.
- Aeduis, i, M.,** an Aeduan ; in *plur.*, the Aedui, a tribe in the centre of Gaul.
- aegrē, adv. (aegrus, aeger-rimē),** scarcely, with difficulty.
- Aegyptus, i, F.,** Egypt.
- Aemilius, i, l. Marcus Aemi-lius Paulus,** consul in 255 B.C.;

2. Lucius Æmilius Paulus, consul in 216 B.C.; 3. Lucius Æmilius Paulus, consul in 182 B.C.
- æneus**, a, um, bronze, of bronze, copper.
- æquâlis**, e, of the same age, contemporary; *as noun*, æquâlis, is, M., contemporary, coeval.
- æquē**, *adv.*, equally.
- æquinoctium**, I, N., equinox.
- æquiparō**, âre, âvi, âtum, equal, rival.
- æquitās**, -tâtis, F., fairness, justice, sense of justice.
- æquus**, a, um, fair, just, right, reasonable, proper; level, favorable.
- aerarium**, I, N., treasury.
- aes**, aeris, N., bronze, copper; money.
- aestās**, -tâtis, F., summer.
- aestimō**, âre, âvi, âtum, estimate, assess; reckon, regard.
- aestus**, ūs, M., tide.
- aetās**, -tâtis, F., age, years, time.
- Āfer**, Āfri, M., an African.
- afferō**, afferre, attuli, allatum, bring, cause.
- af-ficō**, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, visit with; affect (*often to be rendered by cause*, inflict, impose); *in pass.*, be troubled, be attacked.
- affirmō**, âre, âvi, âtum, assert, declare.
- afflictō**, âre, âvi, âtum, buffet, toss about; damage, wreck.
- afflictus**, a, um, *from affligō*.
- af-fligō**, ere, -flēxi, -fletum, strike down, shatter, damage, wreck.
- affore**, *fut. inf. of adsum*.
- Afranius**, I, M., Lucius Afranius, a general of Pompey in Spain.
- Āfrica**, ae, F., Africa, usually of the vicinity of Carthage only, Libya.
- Āfricus**, I, M., Africus, the south west wind.
- ager**, agri, M., field, land, country, territory.
- agger**, -eris, M., mound, rampart, earthwork, agger.
- ag-gredior**, I, -gressus sum, attack.
- aggregō**, âre, âvi, âtum, attach, join.
- agilis**, e, active.
- agmen**, -minis, N., army on the march, line of march, column, army; **primum agmen**, the van; **novissimum agmen**, the rear.
- agō**, ere, ēgi, âctum, drive; do, plan, carry on; confer; **grâtias agō**, thank; **id agō**, strive.
- agricola**, ae, M., husbandman, farmer, peasant.
- agricultūra**, ae, F., agriculture, tilling the land, farming.
- aiō**, *defective verb*, say, affirm, declare.
- âla**, ae, F., wing.
- alacritās**, -tâtis, F., eagerness, ardor.
- albus**, a, um, white.
- Alexander**, dxi, M., Alexander the Great, king of Macedonia.
- Alexandria**, ae, F., Alexandria, a city on the north coast of Egypt.
- aliās**, *adv.*, on other occasions.
- aliēnus**, a, um, of another, of others, another's; unfavorable, unsuitable, disadvantageous.
- aliō**, *adv.*, in a different direction, to a different object.
- aliquamdiū**, *adv.*, for some time.
- aliquandō**, *adv.*, at some time; at last, at length.

aliquantus, a, um, some; *neut. as subst.*, some portion, a considerable part.

aliqui, *qua*, *quod*, some.

aliquis, *quid*, some one, something.

allquot, *adj. indeclinable*, several, some, a few.

alter, *adv.*, otherwise.

alius, a, ud, other, another; different; **alius** . . . **alius**, one . . . another; **alii** . . . **alii**, some . . . others.

allātus, a, um, *from afferō*.

Allia, ae, F., the Allia, a river north of Rome.

Allobrogēs, um, M. *plur.*, the Allobroges, a tribe near the Rhone.

alō, ere, alui, altum (*alitur*), nourish, support, feed; maintain, keep; strengthen, increase, foster.

Alpēs, ium, F. *plur.*, the Alps.

Alpici, ōrum, M. *plur.*, dwellers in the Alps, Alpine tribes.

alter, era, erum, the other; the one, another (*of two*); second; **alter** . . . **alter**, the one . . . the other.

altitūdō, -dinis, F., depth; height.

altus, a, um, high, lofty; deep; *neut. as subst.*, altum, I, the deep, deep water, the sea.

alveus, I, M., channel, bed (*of river*).

amābilis, e, lovable.

amanter, *adv.*, lovingly, affectionately.

Ambivariti, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Ambivariti, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

ambulō, āre, āvi, ātum, walk.

āmentia, ae, F., madness, folly.

amicē, *adv.*, in a friendly manner.

amicitia, ae, F., friendship, alliance.

amicus, a, um, friendly.

amicus, I, M., friend, ally.

āmissus, a, um, from *āmittō*.

ā-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum, lose.

amō, āre, āvi, ātum, love.

amphora, ae, F., wine-jar, two-handled jar, amphora.

am-plector, I, -plexus sum, embrace, grasp.

amplitūdō, -dinis, F., size, extent, greatness.

amplius, *adv.*, comparative of **amplē**, more, further; more than.

amplus, a, um, large, great, numerous; illustrious, noble.

an, *conj.*, or, *introducing the second part of a double question*; whether.

Ancalitēs, um, M. *plur.*, the Aencalites, a tribe in Britain.

an-ceps, -cipitis, double, two-fold; doubtful.

ancilla, ae, F., maidservant.

ancora, ae, F., anchor.

angulus, I, M., corner, angle.

angustē, *adv.*, closely.

angustiae, ārum, F. *plur.*, narrows, straits; narrow defile.

angustus, a, um, narrow, small, confined, contracted, steep.

anima, ae, F., life.

animadver-tō, ere, -ti, -sum, notice, observe, perceive.

animal, -ālis, N., animal.

animus, I, M., soul, mind, heart, spirit, will, feelings, courage, character, ability, disposition; consciousness; pride, ambition; pleasure, amusement.

annālis, is, M., *sc. liber*, historical work, chronicles.

annōtinus, a, um, of the year before.

annus, I, M., year.

annuus, a, um, a year's ; for a year.

anser, -eris, M., goose.

ante, 1. adv., before, formerly, previously ; above. 2. prep. with acc., before.

antea, adv., before, previously.

ante-cédō, ere, -cessi, -cessum, go before, go in advance, precede ; surpass, excel.

ante-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, place before, consider superior.

ante-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum, place before, regard of more importance than.

ante-stō, -stāre, -steti, stand before, surpass, be superior to, excel.

Antiochus, I, M., Antiochus, king of Syria, 223-187 B.C.

antiquus, a, um, old, ancient.

Ap., an abbreviation for Appius.

aper-iō, Ire, -ui, -tum, open ; disclose, reveal.

apertus, a, um, adj. (really perf. part. pass. of aper-iō), open, unprotected, uncovered, exposed ; clear, unobstructed.

Apoll-ō, -inis, M., Apollo, the god of the sun, prophecy, healing and music ; his chief shrine was at Delphi.

appareō, ēre, ui, itum, come in sight, appear.

apparō, āre, āvi, ātum, make ready, prepare.

appellō, āre, āvi, ātum, call, name ; accost, address.

ap-pellō, ere, -pulli, -pulsum, bring to land ; pass., land, put in.

Appenninus, I, M., the Appennines, a range of mountains in Italy.

appet-ō, ere, -ivi, -itum, strive after, seek, try to get.

Appius, I, M., Appia, a Roman prænomen.

applicō, āre, āvi, ātum, attach.

ap-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum, set before one, serve.

apportō, āre, āvi, ātum, bring.

approbō, āre, āvi, ātum, approve.

appropinquō, āre, āvi, ātum, approach, draw near, be near (with dat.).

aptus, a, um, suited, suitable, fitted.

apud, prep. with acc., at, with, among, near, before, in the presence of ; at the house of ; in the writings of ; on.

Āpŭlia, ae, F., Apulia, a district in south-eastern Italy.

Āpulus, I, M., an Apulian.

aqua, ae, F., water.

aquāt-iō, -ōnis, F., getting or fetching water.

aquila, ae, F., eagle, the ensign or standard of a Roman legion.

Aquiltānia, ae, F., Aquitania, the south-western part of Gaul.

Aquiltānus, I, M., an Aquitanian ; in plur. the Aquitani.

āra, ae, F., altar.

Ar-ar, -aria, M., the Arar, a river in Gaul.

arbiter, tri, M., arbitrator.

arbitrium, I, N., pleasure, will, judgment.

arbitror, āri, ātus sum, think, consider, judge.

arbor, -oris, F., tree.

arcess-ō, ere, -ivi, -itum, summon, send for.

Arduenna, ae, F., Ardennes, a forest in the north-east of Gaul.

arduus, a, um, steep, difficult.

argentum, I, N., silver.

Argi, ōrum, M. plur., see Argos.

Argos, N. (only nom. and acc.), usually in the form Argi,

- ōrum**, *M. plur.*, Argos, a city in the north-eastern Peloponnesus.
- āridus**, *a, um*, dry; *neut.*, **āridum**, *I, as subst.*, dry land, solid ground.
- Arlovistus**, *I, M.*, Arlovistus, a chief of the Germans.
- Aristidēs**, *is, M.*, Aristides, a famous Athenian.
- arma**, **ōrum**, *N. plur.*, arms; force of arms; war.
- armāmenta**, **ōrum**, *N. plur.*, tackling, tackle, rigging.
- armātī**, **ōrum**, *M. plur. of perf. part. pass. of armō*, armed men.
- Arminius**, *I, M.*, Arminius, a German prince.
- armō**, **āro**, **āvī**, **ātum**, arm, equip; rouse, incite; *perf. part. pass.*, armed, in arms, with one's arms.
- ar-ripiō**, *ere*, **-ripui**, **-reptum**, seize, catch up.
- ars**, *artis, F.*, art, skill.
- Artaxerxēs**, *is, M.*, Artaxerxes, surnamed Longimanus ('Long-hand'), king of Persia 465-425 B.C.
- Artemisium**, *I, N.*, Artemisium, a promontory at the northern end of the island of Eubœa.
- ars**, *arcis, F.*, citadel; in Athens, the Acropolis; in Rome, the Capitol.
- a-scendō**, *ere*, **-scendi**, **-scēsum**, mount, climb, ascend; embark upon, go on board; (of a carriage) get into.
- ascēsus**, *ūs, M.*, ascent.
- Asia**, *ae, F.*, Asia, Asia Minor.
- aspectus**, *ūs, M.*, appearance.
- asper**, *era, erum*, rugged, rough.
- a-spiciō**, *ere*, **-spexi**, **-spectum**, see.
- assuē-faciō**, *ere*, **-feci**, **-factum**, accustom, train.
- astu**, *N.*, indeclinable, city; usually Athens.
- at**, *conj.*, but, but yet.
- Athēnæ**, **ārum**, *F. plur.*, Athens, the capital of Attica and chief city of Greece.
- Athēniēnsis**, *e, adj.*, Athenian; *masc. as subst.*, an Athenian.
- atque**, *conj.*, and, and further, and I may say; in comparisons, than, as.
- Atre-bas**, **-batis**, *M.*, an Atrebatian; in *plur.*, the Atrebates, a tribe in the northern part of Gaul.
- Atrius**, *I, M.*, Quintus Atrius, an officer of Caesar's.
- Attica**, *ae, F.*, Attica, the district of Greece of which Athens was the capital.
- Atticus**, *I, M.*, Titus Pomponius Atticus, a Roman historian, a great friend of Cicero and Nepos.
- at-tingō**, *ere*, **-tigi**, **-tactum**, touch; border on; reach.
- attrib-uō**, *ere*, **-ui**, **-ūtum**, assign, give.
- auctor**, **-ōris**, *M.*, leader, adviser; an authority, author, historian.
- auctoritās**, **-tātis**, *F.*, influence, weight, prestige; power.
- audācia**, *ae, F.*, daring.
- audācter**, *adv.*, boldly, fearlessly.
- audeō**, **ēre**, **ausus sum**, dare, venture, attempt.
- audiō**, **ire**, **ivī**, **itum**, hear, listen to; hear of.
- auditiō**, **-ōnis**, *F.*, hearsay, rumor.
- auferō**, **auferre**, **abstuli**, **ablātum**, take away, carry off.
- augeō**, **ēre**, **auxī**, **auctum**, increase, strengthen.
- Augustus**, *I, M.*, Augustus, the first emperor of Rome.
- Aulus**, *I, M.*, Aulus, a Roman praenomen.

Aurélius, I, M., C. Aurelius Cotta, consul in 200 B.C.

aureus, a, um, of gold, golden.

auriga, ae, M., charioteer.

auris, is, F., ear.

aurum, I, N., gold, money.

Aurunculeius, I, M., Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

ausus, a, um, from audeō.

aut, conj., or, or else; aut . . .

aut, either . . . or.

autem, conj., but, whereas, while; moreover, now, however, furthermore, again.

autumnus, I, M., autumn.

auxilior, āri, ātus sum, give aid, help, assist.

auxilium, I, N., aid, help, assistance; in plur., auxiliaries, reinforcements.

Avaricum, I, N., Avaricum, a town in Gaul.

avaritia, ae, F., avarice, greed, covetousness.

āver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, turn aside.

avidē, adv., eagerly.

aviditās, -tātis, F., eagerness, greed.

avis, is, F., bird.

avus, I, M., grandfather.

Axona, ae, F., Axona, a river in Gaul.

B

Babylōn, -ōnis, F., Babylon, a city on the Euphrates.

Babylōnius, I, M., a Babylonian.

Bæbius, I, M., Cn. Bæbius Tamphilus and M. Bæbius Tamphilus, consuls in 182 and 181 B.C. respectively.

balneum, I, N., bath.

barbarus, a, um, foreign; uncivilized, rude, barbarian.

barbarus, I, M., a barbarian, a

native; in Them., 4, 5, the Persian.

barbatus, a, um, bearded; masc. as subst., Long-beard (of a goat).

Batāvi, ōrum, M. plur., the Batavians, a tribe at the mouth of the Rhine.

beātus, a, um, fortunate, happy.

Belgae, ārum, M. plur., the Belgians, a people occupying the north-east of Gaul.

Belgium, I, N., Belgium, the country of the Belgæ.

bellicōsus, a, um, warlike.

bellō, āre, āvi, ātum, make war, carry on war, fight.

Bellovaei, ōrum, M. plur., the Bellovaci, a tribe in Gaul.

bellum, I, N., war.

bellus, a, um, pretty, lovely.

bene, adv. of bonus (melius, optimē), well.

Bibroci, ōrum, M. plur., the Bibroci, a tribe of Britain.

Bibulus, I, M., Lucius Bibulus, consul in 59 B.C.

biduum, I, N., the space of two days, two days' time.

binī, ae, a, two by two, two at a time, two each.

bis, adv., twice.

Bithynia, ae, F., Bithynia, a country on the north-west coast of Asia Minor.

Bithynii, ōrum, M. plur., the Bithynians.

Blithō, -ōnis, M., Publius Sulpicius Blitho, a Roman historian.

Boii, ōrum, M. plur., the Boii, a tribe of German origin.

bonitās, -tātis, F., goodness, excellence.

bonus, a, um (melior, optimus), good; safe; N. plur. as subst., bona, ōrum, goods, property; services.

bōs, bovis, M. and F., ox, cow.
Brennus, I, M., Brennus, a leader of the Gauls.
brevīs, e, short; as adv. brevī (for brevī tempore), in a short time, shortly, presently, quickly.
Britannia, ae, F., Britain.
Britannicus, a, um, of Britain, of or with the Britons.
Britannus, I, M., a Briton.
brūma, ae, F., the winter solstice; winter.
Bruttii, ōrum, M. plur., the Bruttii, a people in the south of Italy.
Bucephala, ae, F., Bucephala, a town in India.
Bucephalus, I, M., Bucephalus, Alexander the Great's war-horse.

C

C., an abbreviation for Cāius.
cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsum, fall, be slain.
cādūceus, I, M., a herald's staff.
caedēs, is, F., slaughter.
caedō, ere, cecidi, caesum, slay, kill.
caelum, I, N., heaven.
cuermōnia, ae, F., religious observance, reverence.
caeruleus, a, um, blue, dark blue.
Caesar, aris, M., 1. Caius Julius Caesar, a Roman general. 2. Lucius Caesar, a lieutenant with Caesar.
Cāius, I, M., Caius, a Roman prænomen.
calamitās, -tātis, F., disaster, reverse.
calceus, I, M., shoe.
callidē, adv., skilfully, cleverly, shrewdly.
calliditās, -tātis, F., cunning, trickery.
callidus, a, um, skilful, shrewd, cunning, sagacious.
Campania, ae, F., Campania, a district in Italy, south of Rome.
campus, I, M., field, plain; the open.
candidus, a, um, bright, shining, white.
canis, is, M. and F., dog.
Cannae, ārum, F. plur., Cannae, a town of Apulia.
Cannēnsis, e, of Cannae.
Cantium, I, N., Kent, in the south-east of England.
caper, pri, M., goat.
capess-ō, ere, -ivī, -itum, take part in, undertake.
capillus, I, M., hair.
capō, ere, cēpt, captum, take, catch, seize, capture, take prisoner; get, occupy, reach; move, affect; form, adopt; select.
Capitōlium, I, N., the Capitol, the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline hill at Rome.
captivus, I, M., captive, prisoner.
captus, ūs, M., capacity, nature, standard, notions.
Capua, ae, F., Capua, the chief city of Campania in Italy.
cap-ut, -itis, N., head; person; capital, chief city; of a river, mouth.
careō, ēre, ul, itum, be without, be free from, with abl.
carō, carnis, F., flesh, meat.
carrus, I, M., cart, wagon.
Carthāginiēnsis, is, M., a Carthaginian.
Carthāgō, -inis, F., Carthage, a city in northern Africa, on the Mediterranean.
cārus, a, um, dear; valuable.
Carvilius, I, M., Carvilius, a king ruling in Kent.
casa, ae, F., hut.

Cassī, ōrum, M. plur., the Cassi, a tribe in Britain.

Cassivellaunus, I, M., Cassivellaunus (also written Cassive-launus), a British chief.

castellum, I, N., fortress, fort, stronghold; fortified dwelling.

Casticus, I, M., Casticus, a chief of the Segvani.

castra, ōrum, N. plur., camp, encampment.

cāsus, ūs, M., fall; accident, chance; emergency; misfortune, disaster.

catēna, ae, F., chain.

causa, ae, F., cause, reason; pretext, excuse; position, situation; in the abl. sing. with a gen. preceding, for the sake of, for the purpose of.

caveō, ēre, cāvī, cautum, be on one's guard against, beware of.

cecidi, from cadō.

cēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, retreat, give way, retire; yield.

celer, eris, ere, swift, speedy, rapid, sudden.

celeritās, -tātis, F., swiftness, speed, rapidity, quickness.

celeriter, adv. (celerius, celerimē), swiftly, quickly, rapidly.

cēlō, āre, āvī, ātum, hide, conceal.

celsus, a, um, tall.

cēna, ae, F., dinner.

Cenimāgnī, ōrum, M. plur., the Cenimagni, a tribe of Britain.

cēnō, āre, āvī, ātum, dine.

Centēnius, I, M., Caius Centenius, a Roman general.

centum, a hundred.

centuriō, -ōnis, M., centurion, an officer in the Roman army.

cēpl, from capiō.

cernō, ere, crēvī, crētum, perceive, behold, see.

certāmen, -minis, N., contest, struggle, battle.

certē, adv., certainly; at least.

certus, a, um, certain, sure, fixed, specified, exact; **certiōrem facere,** inform.

cervix, -leis, F., neck.

cessī, from cēdō.

cēteri, ae, a, the other, the others, the rest of.

Cethēgus, I, M., P. Cornelius Cethegus, consul in 181 B.C.

cibus, I, M., food, provisions; meal.

Cicerō, -ōnis, M., Cicero, a Roman name.

Cingetorix, -igis, M., Cingetorix, 1. a chief of the Treveri; 2. a king of Kent.

cingō, ere, cinxī, cinctum, surround.

circā, prep. with acc., around, near.

circiter, adv., about, nearly.

circuitus, a, um, perf. part. pass. of circumeō.

circuitus, ūs, M., circumference.

circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, surround, invest.

circum-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead around.

circum-eō, -Irē, -II (-Ivī), -itum, or circuitum, go around, surround; make a tour of, visit, make the round of.

circum-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, cast around.

circum-sedeō, ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, encamp about.

circumsiliō, Ire, hop about.

circum-sistō, ere, -stetī, sur-round, crowd around.

circum-stō, stāre, -stetī, stand around, surround.

circum-veniō, Ire, -vēnī, -ventum, surround, outflank.

eis, prep. w. acc., on this side of.

ceterior, ius, adj. (*comparative*),
hither, nearer.

citō, adv. (*citius, citissimē*),
quickly, swiftly, rapidly.

citō, āre, āvi, ātum, hasten; sum-
mon; perf. part. pass., citātus,
as adj., swift, at full speed.

citrā, prep. w. acc., on this side of.

civis, is, M. or F., citizen, fellow-
citizen.

civitās, -tātis, F., state, country.

clādēs, is, F., defeat, disaster.

clam, adv., secretly.

clāmītō, āre, āvi, ātum, cry
out, keep shouting.

clāmō, āre, āvi, ātum, cry,
call out.

clāmor, -ōris, M., shouting, out-
cry.

clandestinus, a, um, secret.

clārus, a, um, celebrated.

classārīi, ōrum, M. plur., sea-
men; sailors, naval forces.

classicum, I, N., trumpet-call
(*for battle*).

classis, is, F., fleet.

Clastidium, I, N., Clastidium, a
town of Cisalpine Gaul.

Claudius, I, M., 1. Marcus Clau-
dus Marcellus, consul in 208
B. C. 2. Marcus Claudius
Marcellus, son of the preceding,
consul in 196 B. C. 3. Appius
Claudius, consul in 54 B. C.

claudō, ere, clausi, clausum,
close; surround, hem in, en-
close; shut in, imprison.

clāva, ae, F., club.

cliēns, -entis, M., vassal, de-
pendant, retainer.

clivus, I, M., hill, slope.

Clūsīnus, a, um, of Clusium, a
city in Etruria.

Cn., an abbreviation for Cnaeus.

Cnaeus, I, M., Cnaeus, a Roman
prænomen.

coacervō, āre, āvi, ātum, heap
up, collect.

coāctus, a, um, from cōgō.

Cocles, -itis, M., Cocles, Hora-
tius Cocles, a famous Roman
hero.

coēgi, from cōgō.

coepl, isse, coeptus sum, be-
gan, have begun.

coerceō, ēre, ul, itum, restrain,
check.

cōgītō, āre, āvi, ātum, con-
sider, think.

cōgnātīō, -ōnis, F., relation-
ship, connections.

cōgnōmen, -minis, N., sur-
name, family name.

cō-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvi, -gni-
tum, perceive, learn, find out,
discover, ascertain, become
acquainted with; inquire in-
to; in perf. tenses, know, be
aware.

cōgō, ere, coēgi, coāctum, col-
lect, gather, get together; com-
pel, force, constrain.

co-hors, -hortis, F., cohort,
company, *one-tenth of a legion.*

cohortātīō, -ōnis, F., encourage-
ment; speech, harangue.

cohortor, āri, ātus sum, en-
courage, urge.

collabe-flō, -fierī, -factus sum,
be ruined, be overthrown.

collātus, a, um, from cōferō.

collaudō, āre, āvi, ātum,
praise, commend highly.

collēga, ae, M., associate, col-
league.

col-ligō, ere, -lēgi, -lēctum,
collect; sē colligere, rally.

collis, is, M., hill.

collocō, āre, āvi, ātum, place,
station; arrange, stow; give
in marriage.

colloquium, I, N., conference,
interview.

col-loquor, I, -locūtus sum,
converse, confer, discuss.

collum, I, N., neck.

- colō** *ere, colui, cultum, till, cultivate; cherish, regard, venerate, reverence, esteem.*
- color**, -ōris, *M.*, color.
- columba**, *ae, F.*, dove.
- coma**, *ae, F.*, hair; foliage, leaves.
- com-edō**, *ere, -ēdi, -ēsum, eat.*
- comitor**, *āri, ātus sum, accompany, follow.*
- commeātus**, *ūs, M.*, supplies, provisions; passage, trip.
- commemorō**, *āre, āvi, ātum, mention, relate, state, tell.*
- commendō**, *āre, āvi, ātum, commend, commit, entrust.*
- com-mittō**, *ere, -misi, -missum, join; do; trust, entrust, put trust in; with proclium, begin, engage.*
- Commius**, *I, M.*, Commius, a king of the *Atrebates*.
- commodē**, *adv.*, satisfactorily, easily, to advantage; well, fluently, effectively.
- commodus**, *a, um, suitable, favorable; neut. as subst., commodum, I, advantage, convenience.*
- commoror**, *āri, ātus sum, stay, delay, wait.*
- com-moveō**, *ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, disturb, alarm, agitate, stir, affect, arouse.*
- communicō**, *āre, āvi, ātum, communicate, share; announce.*
- communiō**, *Ire, Ivi, Itum, fortify.*
- commūnis**, *e, common, general, concerted; joint, united, of all.*
- commūtatiō**, -ōnis, *F.*, change, turn.
- comparō**, *āre, āvi, ātum, prepare, provide, procure, get, make ready; raise, collect; compare.*
- com-pellō**, *ere, -pull, -pulsum, drive, gather.*
- com-periō**, *Ire, -peri, -pertum, learn, find out, discover, hear of.*
- com-plector**, *I, -plexus sum, embrace.*
- compl-eō**, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, fill, fill up; man.
- complexus**, *ūs, M.*, embrace.
- complūrēa**, *a (gen. -ium), several, many, a great many.*
- com-pōnō**, *ere, -posui, positum, settle, conclude; bellum componere, end a war by treaty, make peace.*
- comportō**, *āre, āvi, ātum, bring in, collect.*
- compre-hendō**, *ere, -hendi, -hēsum, seize, catch, capture.*
- comprobō**, *āre, āvi, ātum, ratify, sanction, approve.*
- compulsi, compulsus**, *from compellō.*
- cōnātum**, *I, N.*, attempt, undertaking.
- con-cēdō**, *ere, -cessi, -cessum, grant, allow, permit; yield; depart, withdraw.*
- con-cidō**, *ere, -cidi, fall; fall dead, be slain.*
- con-cidō**, *ere, -cidi, -cisum, cut down, cut to pieces, kill, slay.*
- con-ciliō**, *āre, āvi, ātum, win over, make friendly, join; gain.*
- concilium**, *I, N.*, meeting, assembly, council.
- con-ciō**, *āre, āvi, ātum, rouse, excite; spur on, urge on.*
- concordia**, *ae, F.*, harmony, union, concord.
- con-currō**, *ere, -curri (-eucurri), -cursum, hurry, flock; meet, join battle; make a common attack.*

- concursus, ūs, M.**, running together; collision; charge, attack; conflict.
- condiciō, -ōnis, F.**, terms, proposal, agreement, condition.
- condō, ere, -didī, -ditum**, found.
- condōnō, āre, āvi, ātum**, overlook.
- Condrūsī, ōrum, M. plur.**, the Condrusi, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.
- cōn-ferciō, ire, -fersī, -fertum**, pack closely; *perf. part. pass.*, cōnfertus, a, um, crowded, in close array, in close order.
- cōnferō, cōnferre, contuli, collātum**, collect, gather, convey; compare; sē cōnferre, betake one's self, go; with culpam, lay, put.
- cōnfertus, a, u, i, from cōn-ferciō.**
- cōnfestim, adv.**, immediately, at once.
- cōn-ficiō, ere, -fici, -fectum**, finish, carry out, complete, accomplish, perform; exhaust, spend; write, compose.
- cōn-fidō, ere, -fideus sum**, trust, rely on, have confidence in; be confident.
- cōnfirmō, āre, āvi, ātum**, arouse; establish; declare, give pledge; encourage, reassure.
- cōnflans, a, um, from cōnfidō.**
- cōn-filgō, ere, -filxi, -fletum**, contend, engage, fight.
- cōnfluēns, -entis, M.**, confluence, junction.
- cōn-fugiō, ere, -fūgi, flee**, flee for refuge, take refuge.
- con-gerō, ere, -gessi, gestum**, collect.
- con-gredior, I, -gressus sum**, meet; fight, engage battle.
- congregō, āre, āvi, ātum**, bring together; in *pass.*, come together, assemble.
- con-jiciō, ere, -jēci, -jectum**, hurl, cast, throw, throw together; infer, conjecture; with in fugam, drive, put; sē con-jicere, throw or betake one's self.
- con-jungō, ere, -jūnxi, -jūnetum**, join, connect, unite; sē conjugere, join.
- con-junx, -jugis, F.**, wife.
- con-jurātiō, -ōnis, F.**, conspiracy, league.
- cōnor, āri, ātus sum**, try, attempt, endeavor, undertake.
- cōn-scendō, ere, -scendi, -scensum**, mount; embark on, go on board.
- cōn-scribō, ere, -scripsi, -scriptum**, enlist, levy, enroll; patres cōnscripti, senators.
- cōnsector, āri, ātus sum**, follow up, pursue, hunt down.
- cōnsecutus, a, um, from cōn-sequor.**
- cōnsēdi, from cōnsidō.**
- cōnsēnsus, ūs, M.**, consent.
- cōn-sequor, I, -secutus sum**, follow; arrive; overtake; obtain, gain, secure; succeed; accomplish.
- cōn-serō, ere, -serui, -sertum**, join; manum cōnserere, join battle.
- cōnservō, āre, āvi, ātum**, keep, save; preserve, keep alive.
- cōnsiderō, āre, āvi, ātum**, consider, reflect.
- cōn-sidō, ere, -sēdi, -sessum**, sit down; encamp, take up a position; settle.
- cōnsilium, I, N.**, plan, design, intention, resolve, purpose; prudence, discretion; counsel, advice, strategy; intrigue; council; cōnsilium capere,

form (adopt) a plan ; commun-
ni cōnsiliō, by common con-
sent, according to a common
course of action.

cōnsimilis, e, very similar, like.

cōn-sistō, ere, -stiti, take up
position ; get a footing ; halt,
stop, make a stand.

cōnsōlor, āri, ātus sum, con-
sole.

cōnspectus, ūs, M., sight, view.

cōn-spicitō, ere, -spexi, -spec-
tum, catch sight of, see, ob-
serve, behold.

cōnspleor, āri, ātus sum, come
in sight of, catch sight of, ob-
serve, see.

cōnspirō, āre, āvi, ātum, com-
bine, conspire.

cōnstanter (cōnstantius, cōn-
stantissimē), adv., steadfast-
ly, uniformly.

cōnstantia, ae, F., firmness,
heroism.

cōnstipō, āre, āvi, ātum,
crowd, press.

cōnstiti, from cōnsistō.

cōnstit-uō, ere, -ui, -ūtum, es-
tablish, arrange, make, ap-
point, fix, settle ; decide, re-
solve, determine ; place, sta-
tion, draw up.

cōn-stō, āre, -stiti, -stātum,
consist ; stand firm ; cōnstat,
impersonal, it is agreed, it is
understood.

cōn-suēscō, ere, -suēvi, -suē-
tum, become accustomed ; in
perf. tenses, am accustomed,
am wont.

cōnsuētūdō, -dinis, F., cus-
tom, habit.

cōnsul, -ulis, M., consul, one
of two chief magistrates at
Rome, elected annually.

cōnsulāris, e, of consular rank ;
M. *as subst.*, one who has been
consul.

cōnsul-ō, ere, -ui, -tum, con-
sult, ask advice, enquire ; pro-
vide for, take thought for, with
dat.

cōnsultō, āre, āvi, ātum, de-
liberate, take counsel.

cōnsultō, adv., purposely.

cōnsultum, I, N., resolution,
decree.

cōn-sūmō, ere, -sūmpsi, -sūmp-
tum, spend ; expend ; exhaust.

con-temnō, ere, -tempsi, -temp-
tum, despise.

con-ten-dō, ere, -di, -tum, has-
ten, make one's way, push on ;
strive, exert one's self ; have a
contest, struggle, fight, con-
tend ; assert, affirm, maintain.

contentiō, -ōnis, F., contest.

con-terō, ere, -trivi, -tritum,
exhaust, harass.

contestor, āri, ātus sum, call
upon, invoke.

continēns, -entis, F., mainland,
continent.

con-tineō, ēre, -tinui, -ten-
tum, restrain, hem in, keep,
hold ; border, bound ; *pres. part.*
as adj., continēns, -entis, con-
tinual, incessant, continuous ;
continēns terra, mainland,
continent.

continuus, a, um, successive.

cōntiō, -ōnis, F., assembly.

contrā, 1. *adv.*, otherwise ; on
the contrary ; contrā atque,
contrary to what, otherwise
than. 2. *prep. with acc.*, op-
posite, over against ; against.

con-trahō, ere, -trāxi, -trāc-
tum, collect, gather together,
assemble ; reduce, contract.

contuli, from cōnferō.

contumēlia, ae, F., reproach,
disgrace.

con-veniō, ire, -vēni, -ven-
tum, come together, meet, as-
semble together ; be agreed on ;

- convenit, *impersonal*, it is agreed.
- conventus, ūs, M., meeting; assizes, court.
- conver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, turn, change.
- Convictolitāvis, is, M., Convictolitavis, a Gaul's name.
- convocō, āre, āvi, ātum, call together, call, summon, assemble.
- co-orior, iri, -ortus sum, arise.
- cōpla, ae, F., supply, abundance, plenty, amount, quantity; in *plur.*, resources, stores; forces, troops.
- cōplōsus, a, um, well supplied, rich; abundant.
- cōram, *adv.*, in person, face to face, with one's own eyes.
- Coreyra, ae, F., Corcyra, an island west of northern Greece.
- Coreyraeus, a, um, Corcyrean, of Corcyra; M. *plur.* as *subst.*, Coreyraei, ōrum, the Corcyreans.
- Cornēlius, I, M., 1. P. Cornelius Scipio, consul in 218 B.C. 2. C. Cornelius Cethegus, consul in 197 B.C. 3. Lucius Cornelius Merula, consul in 193 B.C.
- cornū, ūs, N., horn; wing (of an army).
- corōna, ae, F., garland, wreath, crown.
- corpus, -oris, N., body, person.
- cor-rumpō, ere, -rūpi, -ruptum, bribe, win over.
- Cōrus, I, M. (*with ventus*), the north-west wind.
- Corvinus, I, M., Corvinus, a famous Roman.
- corvus, I, M., raven.
- cotidianus, a, um, daily; regular.
- cotidiē, *adv.*, daily, every day.
- Cotta, ae, M., Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
- Cotus, I, M., Cotus, a Gaul's name.
- Crassus, I, M., Marcus Licinius Crassus, a Roman general, consul 55 B.C.
- crēber, bra, brum, frequent, numerous, many.
- crē-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, entrust; believe, trust (*with dat.*); think.
- cremō, āre, āvi, ātum, burn.
- ereō, āre, āvi, ātum, choose, elect.
- creptus, ūs, M., noise, flapping.
- Crēta, ae, F., Crete, a large island, south of the Aegean.
- Crētēnsēs, tum, M. *plur.*, the Cretans, inhabitants of Crete.
- crimen, -minis, N., charge, accusation.
- Croesus, I, M., Croesus, king of Lydia from 560 to 546 B.C.
- cruciātus, ūs, M., torture, cruelty.
- crūdēllis, e, cruel, barbarous.
- cubiculum, I, N., (bed) chamber.
- culmen, -minis, N., summit.
- culpa, ae, F., blame, fault.
- cultus, ūs, M., civilization.
- cum, *prep.* with *abl.*, with, together with; against.
- cum, *conj.*, when, whenever; while; as, since; although;
- cum primum, as soon as;
- cum . . . tum, both . . . and, not only . . . but also.
- cunctor, āri, ātus sum, hesitate, hold back.
- cūctus, a, um, all, all together.
- cupidē, *adv.*, eagerly.
- cupiditās, -tātis, F., eagerness, fondness.
- Cupīdō, -dīnis, M., Cupid, Love (*personified*).

cupīdus, a, um, eager, desirous, fond, ambitious.

cup-iō, erē, -ivī, -itum, be eager, desire, desire earnestly.

cūr, adv., why; freely, that.

cūra, ae, F., care, concern, diligence.

cūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, attend to, take care; with *gerundive*, cause to be (*done*), have (*done*),

carrus, ūs, M., chariot.

cursus, ūs, M., running, running powers, speed, pace; course, passage.

custōdia, ae, F., guard, picket.

custōdiō, ire, ivī (ii), itum, guard, watch.

custōs, -tōdis, M., guard, sentry.

Cyrēnaei, ōrum, M. plur., the Cyreneans, inhabitants of Cyrene, a town in the north of Africa.

Cyrus, I, M., Cyrus (*the elder*), founder of the Persian empire; reigned from 559 to 529 B.C.

D

D., an abbreviation for Decimus.

damnō, āre, āvī, ātum, condemn.

Darius, I, M., Darius, king of Persia from 521 to 485 B.C.

dē, prep. with *abl.*, from, down from; of, out of; about, concerning, of, in regard to; with *pāx*, *dēditō*, to treat of; with *nox*, *vigilia*, in; with *causa*, for.

dēbeō, ēre, uī, itum, owe; with *infin.*, ought, should, cannot help; in *pass.*, be due.

dēbilitō, āre, āvī, ātum, weaken.

dē-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, die.

decem, ten.

dē-cernō, ere, -crēvī, -crētum,

decide, determine, decree, order, assign; fight, do battle.

dē-certō, āre, āvī, ātum, decide the issue, fight.

dē-cidō, ere, -cidī, fall down.

decimus, a, um, tenth.

Decimus, I, M., Decimus, a Roman *prænomen*.

dē-cipiō, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, disappoint, balk, defeat.

dē-clārō, āre, āvī, ātum, show, make clear.

dē-collis, e, sloping.

dē-corō, āre, āvī, ātum, adorn.

dē-crētus, a, um, and *dē-crētūrus*, from *dē-cernō*.

dē-crēvī, from *dē-cernō*.

decumanus, a, um, with *porta*, rear.

dē-curro, ere, -curri (-cucurri), -cursum, run down.

dē-decus, -oris, N., disgrace, reproach.

dēdī, from *dō*.

dēdīdī, from *dēdō*.

dē-ditiō, -ōnis, F., surrender.

dē-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, surrender, give up; devote.

dē-dūcō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum, lead off, withdraw; launch, lead out; lead (home), wed, marry; conduct.

deeram, deesse, from *dēsum*.

dē-fatigō, āre, āvī, ātum, weary, exhaust.

dē-fectiō, -ōnis, F., revolt.

dē-fendō, ere, -fendi, -fēsum, defend, protect.

dē-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, carry, bring, convey; report; confer upon (*ad*).

dē-fessus, a, um, *perf. part. of dē-fetiscor*, exhausted.

dē-fetiscor, I, -fessus sum, become exhausted.

dē-ficiō, ere, -feci, -fectum, fail, be wanting; revolt, forsake.

- dē-fligō, ere, -fixi, -fixum, fix, set.**
dē-fluō, ere, -fluxi, -fluxum, flow off, divide.
dēfōrmis, e, ill-shaped, unshapely.
dēful, from dēsum.
dē-fungor, I, -fūctus sum, have done, comp etc; die.
deinceps, adv., in turn.
deinde, adv., then, thereupon, thereafter, next.
dē-jiciō, ere, -jēci, -jectum, throw down, haul down; carry down, drive ashore; dismount, unhorse.
dēlātus, a, um, from dēferō.
dēlectō, āre, āvi, ātum, delight; in pass., take pleasure.
dēlēctus, ūs, M., levy.
dēlēctus, a, um, from dēligō, ere; as adj., picked, chosen.
dēl-eō, ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, destroy, annihilate.
dēliberō, āre, āvi, ātum, discuss, consider; question, consult oracle.
dēliciae, ārum, F. plur., delight; darling, beloved.
dēligō, āre, āvi, ātum, bind fast, fasten; moor.
dē-ligō, ere, -lēgi, -lēctum, pick out, choose, select, levy.
dēlit-ēscō, ere, -ui, conceal one's self.
Dēlos, I, F., Delos, an island in the Aegean.
Delphi, ōrum, M., Delphi, a city in northern Greece, famous for its oracle of Apollo.
Delphicus, a, um, Delphic, of Delphi.
dēmentia, ae, F., madness, folly.
dēmer-gō, ere, -si, -sum, sink.
dē-metō, ere, -messui, -messum, cut down, reap.
dēmigrō, āre, āvi, ātum, remove, withdraw.
dēmōnstrō, āre, āvi, ātum, point out, explain, state, mention.
dēni, ae, a, ten each, in groups of ten, by tens.
dēnsus, a, um, dense, thick.
dē-pellō, ere, -pull, -pulsum, drive out, drive from, force from.
dēper-eō, -ire, -ii, perish, be lost.
dē-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum, lay down, lay aside; store away, deposit, place; give up.
dēportō, āre, āvi, ātum, remove, carry, convey.
dēpositus, a, um, from dēpōnō.
dēprecor, āri, ātus sum, petition against; ask mercy, ask quarter.
dēpūgnō, āre, āvi, ātum, fight it out, fight to the end.
dēpulsus, a, um, from dēpelliō.
dē-scendō, ere, -scendi, -scēsum, come down, descend.
dēsēr-ō, ere, -ui, -tum, desert, abandon.
dēsiderium, I, N., longing, regret.
dēsiderō, āre, āvi, ātum, desire, wish for; lose, miss.
dēsil, from dēsinnō.
dē-siliō, ire, -silui, -sultum, leap down.
dē-sinō, ere, -sil (sivi), -situm, cease, desist.
dē-sistō, ere, -stiti, -stitum, cease, leave off; give up, desist from.
dēsperō, āre, āvi, ātum, give up hope; despair of, be in despair.
dēstinō, āre, āvi, ātum, choose, betroth.
dēstiti, from dēsistō.
dē-stringō, ere, -strinxī, stris-tum, unsheathe, draw.

dēsum, deesse, dēful, be wanting, be lacking.

dēterreō, ēre, ul, itum, deter, discourage, prevent.

dētineō. ēre, ul, dētentum, detain.

dē-trahō, ere, -trāxi, -trāctum, take off, remove.

dētrectō, āre, āvi, ātum, decline, refuse.

dētrimentōsus, a, um, hurtful.

dētrimentum, l, N., loss, defeat.

dētrū-dō, ere, -si, -sum, dislodge.

dētull, from dēferō.

dētrubō, āre, āvi, ātum, haul down.

deus, l, M., god.

dē-venīō, ire, -vēni, -ventum, come, come down.

dēvincō, ere, -vici, -victum, conquer thoroughly, overcome.

dēvorō, āre, āvi, ātum, devour, destroy.

dexter, tra, trum, right, on the right; fem. dextra, as subst. (sc. manus), right hand; pledge.

di or dii, from deus.

Diāna, ae, F., Diana, the goddess of hunting.

diciō, -ōnis, F., rule, sway.

dico, ere, dixi, dictum, say, state, mention; call.

dictātor, -ōris, M., dictator, an officer appointed at Rome with absolute power, when great danger threatened the state.

diēs, ēi, M. (rarely F.), day, time, period.

differō, differre, distull, dllātum, defer, postpone; differ, be different.

difficilis, e, difficult.

difficultās, -tātis, F., difficulty.

difficulter, adv. (difficilis, difficillimē), with difficulty.

dis-fidō, ere, -fideus sum, distrust, w. dat.

dis-fuglō, ere, fugi, flee, vanish, disappear.

dignitās, -tātis, F., esteem, respect; reputation; rank, dignity; splendor, magnificence; dignitātem tribuere, have respect for.

dignus, a, um, worthy, deserving, with abl.

di-lābor, l, -lāpus sum, scatter, dispense.

diligenter, adv., carefully.

diligentia, ae, F., care, watchfulness; diligence, earnestness.

di-ligō, ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, love, esteem.

dimicō, āre, āvi, ātum, fight, struggle, contend, engage.

dimidium, l, N., half.

di-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum, send out, despatch; dismiss, send away, send in different directions; lose; let go away; abandon.

dis-cēdō, ere, -cessi, -cessum, go away, withdraw, depart; retire, come off; scatter; dis-cēdere ab, leave.

discessus, ūs, M., departure, withdrawal.

disciplina, ae, F., training, discipline.

discō, ere, didici, learn.

discordia, ae, F., dissension, disunion.

discordō, āre, āvi, ātum, quarrel.

dis-jiciō, ere, -jēci, -jectum, break, scatter; raze.

dispālātus, a, um, part. of dispālōr, as adj., straggling, scattered.

dis-pār, -paris, unequal.

di-spērgō, ere, -spersi, -persum, scatter, separate.

dis-pliceō, ēre, -plicui, -plicui-

- tum**, find no favor with, be distasteful to, displease, *with dat.*
- dis-pōnō, ēre, -posui, -positum**, place at intervals, post, station.
- dis-sidēō, ēre, -sēdi, with ab**, have a quarrel with, be at variance with.
- dissimulō, āre, āvi, ātum**, conceal.
- dis-solvō, ēre, -solvi, -solutum**, destroy, break up.
- dis-tineō, ēre, -tinuei, -tentum**, keep apart; keep at a distance.
- distrib-uō, ere, -ui, -ūtum**, assign, distribute.
- di-stringō, ere, -strinxī, -strictum**, busy, occupy.
- dītō, āre, āvi, enrich.**
- diū, adv.**, (*diūtius, diūtissimē*), long, for a long time.
- di-vidō, ere, -visei, -visum**, divide, separate.
- divinus, a, um**, divine, sacred.
- divitiæ, ārum, F. plur.**, riches, wealth.
- dō, dare, dedi, datum**, give, grant, allow, afford, bestow, furnish; appoint; *with finem, or in iugam*, put; *operam dare*, take pains, see to it, give attention to, put forth efforts; *verba dare*, cheat, deceive; *terga dare*, flee.
- doc-eō, ēre, -ui, -tum**, teach, tell, inform, explain.
- doctē, adv.**, skilfully, well.
- doctor, -ōris, M.**, teacher, instructor.
- dolor, -ōris, M.**, pain, grief, sorrow, distress; indignation, resentment; grievance.
- dolus, I, M**, deceit, deception; craft, cunning; artifice, trick, strategy.
- domesticus, a, um**, at home, personal, private; *with bellum*, intestine, civil.
- domi, adv.** (*really locative of domus*), at home.
- domicellium, I, N.**, home, residence, dwelling.
- domina, ae, F.**, mistress.
- dominātiō, ōnis, F.**, -sway, supremacy, rule.
- dominus, I**, master, ruler, captain.
- Domitius, I, M.**, Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus, *consul 54 B.C.*
- dom-ō, āre, -ui, -itum**, subdue, conquer.
- domus, ūs, F.**, house, home, dwelling place; household, family, house; **domi, locative**, at home.
- dōnec, conj.**, so long as, while.
- dōnō, āre, āvi, ātum**, present, give, grant, bestow.
- dōnum, I, N.**, gift.
- dōs, dōtis, F.**, dowry, marriage portion.
- Druidēs, um, M. plur.**, the Druids, *priests of the Gauls.*
- dubitō, āre, āvi, ātum**, doubt, hesitate; have doubts.
- dubium, I, N.**, doubt; *sine dubiō*, undoubtedly.
- dubius, a, um**, doubtful.
- ducenti, ae, a**, two hundred.
- dūcō, ere, dūxi, ductum**, lead, bring; take; carry off; run, make, prolong, spin out; consider; marry.
- dulcis, e**, pleasant, agreeable.
- dum, conj.**, while, until.
- Dumnorix, -igis, M.**, Dumnorix, *a leader of the Ædui.*
- duo, -ae, -o**, two.
- duodecim**, twelve.
- duodēni, ae, a**, twelve each; in groups of twelve, by twelves.
- duodēviginti, indecl.**, eighteen.

du-plex, -plicis, twofold,
double.

duplicō, āre, āvi, ātum,
double.

dūrō, āre, āvi, ātum, endure,
remain.

Dūrus, I, M., Quintus Laberius
Durus, *a military tribune with
Cæsar.*

dux, ducis, M., leader, general;
guide.

E

ē, prep. with *abl.*, see **ex**.

ēā, adv. (*abl. fem. of is; sc. viā*),
by that way; there.

Eburōnēs, um, M. plur., the
Eburones, *a tribe in the ex-
treme north-east of Gaul.*

ecce, interjection, look! see! be-
hold!

ē-dūcō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum,
lead out, lead forth.

effeminō, āre, āvi, ātum, ener-
vate, make effeminate; *in
pass.*, become effeminate.

efferrō, ferre, extuli, elātum,
bear out, carry away, bury.

ef-ficiō, ere, -feci, -fectum,
make, cause, produce, form,
construct; bring about, ac-
complish, bring to pass; make
up, complete.

ef-fugiō, ere, -fūgi, -fugitum,
escape.

ef-fundō, ere, -fūdī, -fūsum,
pour out, bring forth.

ēgi, from agō.

ego, mei, I.

ē-gredior, I, -gressus sum, de-
part, go forth, leave; land,
disembark; come, set out.

ēgreγιē, adv., excellently, ex-
tremely well, admirably.

ēgregius, a, um, exceptional,
marked, remarkable, eminent,
excellent.

ēgressus, a, um, from ēgredior.

ēgressus, ūs, M., landing.

ē-jiciō, ere, -jeci, -jectum,
fling out, cast out; banish;
with sē, rush, dash, rush out.

ē-llgō, ere, -lēgi, -lēctum,
choose, pick.

elephantus, I, M., elephant.

eloquentia, æ, F., eloquence,
ability to speak.

ēmendō, āre, āvi, ātum, cor-
rect, amend, make good.

ē-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum,
send out.

enim, conj., for, now, in fact,
indeed.

Ennius, I, M., Ennius, *a Roman
poet.*

ēnumerō, āre, āvi, ātum, re-
count, relate, tell of.

ēnūntiō, āre, āvi, ātum, dis-
close.

eō, Ire, II (Ivi), itum, go,
march, proceed, advance.

eō, adv., thither, there, to that
place, to them (*it, etc.*).

eō, adv., *with comparatives or
before quod clause*, the, all
the; on this account.

eōdem, adv., to the same place,
to the same thing, in the same
direction.

Epaminōndās, æ, M., Epami-
nondas, *a famous Theban gen-
eral.*

Ephesus, I, F., Ephesus, *a city
of Ionia in Asia Minor.*

Ephialtēs, æ, M., Ephialtes, *a
Greek.*

ephippiātus, a, um, using sad-
dles.

ephippium, I, N., horse-cloth;
(*freely*) saddle.

ephorus, I, M., ephor, *a Spar-
tan magistrate.*

Ēpirus, I, M., Epirus, *a district
of northern Greece, on the Adri-
atic.*

epistula, æ, F., letter, epistle.

equ-es, -itis, M., horseman, horse-soldier, cavalryman; *in plur.*, cavalry.

equester, tris, tre, of cavalry, cavalry.

equitātus, ūs, M., cavalry.

equus, I, M., horse.

ergā, prep. with acc., towards.

ergō, adv., therefore, accordingly.

ē-rigō, ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, arouse, raise up.

ē-ripiō, ere, -ripi, -reptum, seize, snatch away; rescue.

ērogō, āre, āvī, ātum, expend, pay out.

error, -ōris, M., mistake, delusion, blunder.

ērudīō, Ire, Ivī (II), Itum, train, educate, teach.

ē-rumpō, ere, -rūpi, -ruptum, make a sally.

ēruptiō, -ōnis, F., sally, sortie.

ē-scendō, ere, -scendi, -scēsum, embark.

essedārius, I, M., charioteer, chariot-fighter.

essedum, I, N., chariot, war-chariot.

et, conj., and, but; **et . . . et,** both . . . and.

etiam, conj. and adv., also, further; even, still, besides; **nōn solum . . . sed etiam,** not only . . . but also.

etiamnunc, even then.

etiamtum, adv., even then, still.

Etrūria, ae, F., Etruria, a district in Italy, north of Rome.

Etrūscus, I, M., an Etrurian.

etsi, conj., even if, although.

Euboea, ae, F., Eubœa, an island lying east of Greece.

Eumenēs, is, M., Eumenes, king of Pergamum, 198-158 B.C.

Euphrātēs, is, M., Euphrates, a river in Persia.

Eurōpa, ae, F., Europe.

Eurybiadēs, is, M., Eurybiades, a Spartan admiral.

Eurystheus, ei, M., Eurystheus, the king who imposed upon Hercules his twelve labors.

ēvā-dō, ere, -ei, -sum, make one's way, climb; escape.

ē-veniō, Ire, -veni, -ventum, turn out, result.

ēventus, ūs, M., outcome, experience, fate.

ēvocō, āre, āvī, ātum, call out, summon, challenge.

ēvolō, āre, āvī, ātum, fly away; rush out.

ex (sometimes **ē** before consonants), *prep. with abl.*, from, out of; of, belonging to; after, upon; in accordance with; of direction, in, on.

exāctus, a, um, from exigō.

exadversum, prep. with acc., over against, opposite.

exagitō, āre, āvī, ātum, harass, drive out, expel.

exāminō, āre, āvī, ātum, weigh, test.

exanimō, āre, āvī, ātum, kill; *in pass.*, be killed, die.

ex-ārdescō, ere, -ārsī, -ārsūm, blaze forth; become enraged, become incensed.

ex-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessūm, go out, go away, withdraw, depart, leave, quit.

excellō, ere, excellui, excel, surpass.

exciō, Ire, Ivī, Itum or Itum, summon; arouse.

ex-cipiō, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, follow, succeed, relieve.

excitō, āre, āvī, ātum, awake, rouse; stimulate, arouse.

excitus, a, um, from exciō.

exclāmō, āre, āvī, ātum, call out, cry out.

ex-clūdō, ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, shut off, cut off, hinder.

exoōgltō, āre, āvl, ātum, devise, plan.
excubō, āre, āvl, ātum, sleep out ; keep watch.
excursiō, -ōnis, F., invasion, raid.
excūsō, āre, āvl, ātum, excuse ; sē excūsāre, apologize.
exemplum, I, N., example.
ex-eō, -ire, -il, (-ivl), -itum, go out ; set out ; start ; leave, disembark ; *of a report*, spread, go abroad.
exerceō, ēre, ul, itum, exercise ; work, till ; arouse to action ; exasperate.
exercitātiō, -ōnis, F., training, exercise, practice.
exercitus, ūs, M., army, forces.
ex-hauriō, ire, -hausl, -haustum, exhaust.
exhērēdō, āre, āvl, ātum, disinherit.
ex-igō, ere, -ēgl, -āctum, drive out, expel.
exiguitās, tātis, F., scantiness, smallness, shortness, small size, small extent.
exiguus, a, um, small, scanty, limited, meagre.
existimō, āre, āvl, ātum, think, believe, consider ; estimate.
exitus, ūs, M., way out, exit ; conclusion ; issue, result.
expediō, ire, ivl, itum, free, extricate ; *perf. part. pass.*, **expeditus**, a, um, *as adj.*, unincumbered, free ; easy ; in light marching order.
expeditiō, -ōnis, F., expedition.
ex-pellō, ere, -pull, -pulsum, drive out ; banish.
exper-ior, iri, -tus sum, try, prove, make an attempt ; experience, find by experience.
explicō, āre, āvl, ātum, set forth, state ; unfold, carry on ; extend, deploy, move freely.

explōrātor, -ōris, M., scout.
explōrō, āre, āvl, ātum, examine, investigate, reconnoitre ; endeavor to learn.
ex-pōnō, ere, -posul, -positum, display ; array, land, disembark ; set forth, relate.
exportō, āre, āvl, ātum, carry off, remove.
ex-posed, ere, -poposcl, demand, ask earnestly from, require the surrender of.
ex-primō, ere, -pressl, pressum, describe, express.
expūgnō, āre, āvl, ātum, take by storm, carry.
expulsus, a, um, *from expellō*.
exquisitus, a, um, carefully chosen ; excruciating.
ex-sequor, I, -secūtus sum, enforce.
exsiliū, I, N., exile.
expectō, āre, āvl, ātum, await, wait for ; wait.
ex-stinguō, ere, -stinxl, -stinotum, blot out, extinguish.
extō, āre, stand out, be above.
ex-struō, ere, -strūxl, -strūctum, raise, erect, build.
exsul, -sulis, M., exile.
extemplō, *adv.*, at once, immediately.
extrā, *prep. with acc.*, outside of, beyond ; out of reach of.
ex-trahō, ere, -trāxl, -trāctum, draw out, extract ; waste by delay, fritter away.
extrēmus, a, um (*superlative of exterus, exterior*), farthest, last, outermost ; *ad extrēmum*, at last ; to the last.
extuli, *from efferō*.
ex-ūrō, ere, -ussl, -ūstum, burn up.

F

faber, brl, M., artisan, workman, engineer.

Fabius, I, M., 1. Quintus Fabius Maximus, consul and dictator in the second Punic war. **2.** Quintus Fabius Labeo, consul in 183 B.C.

Fabrilus, I, M., Caius Fabricius Luscinus, consul in 278 B.C.

facile, adv., easily, readily.

facilis, e, easy.

faciō, ere, fēci, factum, pass.

fiō, fieri, factus sum, make; do, act; form, build, construct; render; bring about; with **proellum**, fight; with **vim**, offer, use; with **potestatem**, give; with **praedam**, obtain; **verba facere**, speak, plead; **certiorem aliquem facere**, inform one; *in pass. often*, become; take place, come to pass, happen, result; **quō factum est**, the result was.

factiō, -ōnis, F., party, faction.

factum, I, N., deed, act, action; occurrence.

facultās, -tātis, F., opportunity, chance, power; *in plur.*, wealth, means, resources.

faenus, -oris, N., interest, usury.

fāgus, I, F., beech.

Falernus, a, um, Falernian, of Falernus, a district in Campania.

fallō, ere, fefelli, falsum, deceive; elude, escape discovery by.

falsus, a, um, false, untrue.

fāma, ae, F., rumor, report, news; fame, reputation.

famēs, is, F. (abl., famē), hunger, famine.

familia, ae, F., household, family.

familiāris, e, private; **rēs familiāris**, property, estate.

familiāritās, -tātis, F., intimacy, friendship.

fās, N., indeclinable, right (by divine law).

fascis, is, M., bundle.

faveō, ēre, fāvī, fautum, favor (with dat.).

fefelli, from fallō.

fēliciter, adv., happily, prosperously, successfully.

fēlix, -icis, happy; prosperous.

ferē, adv., almost, nearly; about; for the most part.

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, bear, carry, bring; endure; withstand; *in pass.*, rush, go, flow; *with auxillium*, lend; *with condiciōnem*, offer; *with sententiam*, give; **graviter ferre**, be annoyed at, feel keenly; **opiniō fert**, opinion goes; **cōsuētūdō fert**, it is customary.

ferōx, -ōcis, warlike, fierce.

ferreus, a, um, of iron, iron.

ferrum, I, N., iron; sword; **ferrō atque igni**, with fire and sword.

fertilis, e, fertile.

ferus, a, um, fierce, savage.

festivus, a, um, joyous, charming.

fictilis, e, made of clay, earthen.

fictus, a, um, from fingō.

fidēlis, e, faithful, loyal, trusty.

fidēs, ei, F., trust, faith, confidence, belief; pledge, word, oath, promise, honor; loyalty, fidelity; protection, dependence, allegiance, alliance; **fidem facere**, give a pledge; **fidem interpōnere**, pledge one's honor; **fidem prae-stāre**, keep faith; **fidem sequi**, embrace alliance, attach one's self to.

fidūcia, ae, F., confidence.

figūra, ae, shape.

filia, ae, F., daughter.

filius, I, M., son.

angō, ere, finxi, fletum, make up, invent.
finiō, ire, ivi, itum, limit, bound.
finis, is, M., end, limit ; *in plur.*, borders, territory, land, district.
finitimus, a, um, neighboring, adjoining, adjacent ; *M. plur.*, as *substantive*, neighbors.
fiō, fieri, factus sum, pass. of faciō, be made, be done ; become ; be brought about, be effected, take place, come to pass, happen, result ; **quō factum est**, the result was.
firmiter, adv., firmly, steadily.
firmō, āre, āvi, ātum, strengthen.
firmus, a, um, strong, powerful.
Flāminius, I, M., T. Quintius Flaminius, *consul in 198 B.C.*
Flāminius, I, M., Caius Flaminius, *consul in 217 B.C.*
flamma, ae, F., blaze, flame, burning.
flectō, ere, flexi, flexum, turn, guide, direct.
fleō, ēre, flēvi, flētum, weep, be in tears.
flō, āre, āvi, ātum, blow.
flōreō, ēre, ul, bloom ; prosper ; *pres. part.*, **flōrēns, -entis**, as *adj.*, flourishing, prosperous, influential.
fluctus, ūs, M., wave.
flūmen, -minis, N., river.
fluō, ere, fluxi, fluxum, flow.
foederātus, a, um, in league with, allied.
foedus, -eris, N., treaty, league.
fore, fut. infin. of sum.
forem, = essem.
foris, is, F., door.
fōrma, ae, F., shape, form.
formica, ae, F., ant.
forte, adv., by chance ; as it happened.

fortis, e, brave, courageous.
fortiter, adv., bravely, gallantly, stoutly.
fortitūdō, -dinis, F., bravery, courage, valor.
fortuitō, adv., by chance, accidentally.
fortūna, ae, F., chance, fortune, luck ; good fortune, success ; lot ; *in plur.*, property, possessions, fortunes.
forum, I, N., market-place, forum.
fossa, ae, F., trench, ditch, moat.
fragor, -ōris, M., crash.
frangō, ere, frēgi, frāctum, break, shatter, wreck ; crush.
frāter, -tris, M., brother.
fraus, fraudis, F., trick, evasion.
Fregellae, ārum, F. plur., Fregellae, *a city in Latium.*
frēgi, from frangō.
fremitus, ūs, M., din, confused noise.
frequēns, -entis, in large numbers.
frigidus, a, um, cold.
frigus, -oris, cold ; frost ; cold season.
frūgēs, um, F. plur., fruits.
frūgi, adj. indecl., temperate, frugal, moderate.
frūmentārius, a, um, of grain, pertaining to grain ; **rēs frūmentāria**, supply of corn, grain, provisions ; **nāvis frūmentāria**, corn-ship.
frūmentor, āri, ātus sum, get grain, get provisions, forage.
frumentum, I, N., grain, corn, provisions ; *in plur.*, crops.
frustrā, adv., in vain.
frustror, āri, ātus sum, deceive, disappoint.
frustum, I, N., piece, bit.
fūdī, from fundō.

fuga, ae, F., flight, rout; in **fugam conficere** or **dare**, put to flight.

fuglō, ere, **fūgl**, **fugitum**, flee, escape.

fugō, āre, **āvī**, **ātum**, put to flight, rout.

ful, from **sum**.

Fulvius, I, M., Servius Fulvius Nobilior, consul in 255 B.C.

funda, ae, F., sling.

fundāmentum, I, N., foundation.

Fundānius, I, M., Fundanius, a friend of Pliny.

fundō, ere, **fūdī**, **fūsum**, rout, overthrow.

fungor, I, **fūctus sum**, hold, fill, with *abl.*

fūnis, is, M., rope, cable.

fūnus, -eris, N., death.

Fūrius, I, M., Lucius Furius Purpureo, consul in 196 B.C.

fūsus, from **fundō**.

futūrus, a, um, from **sum**; N. plur. as *subst.*, **futūra**, **ōrum**, the future.

G

Galba, ae, M., Galba, a Roman's name.

galea, ae, F., helmet.

Gallia, ae, F. Gaul.

1. The Roman provinces of Gaul. Gallia Cisalpina or Citerior, the northern part of Italy; and Gallia Transalpina or Ulterior, the south-eastern part of France.

2. The country west of the Rhine and the Alps and north of the Pyrenees, thus including France, Switzerland, Belgium and part of Holland and Germany.

3. The central and largest of the three parts into which Gaul in the previous sense is divided,

the Belgæ and the Aquitani holding the other two.

Gallicus, a, um, of Gaul, of the Gauls, Gallic.

gallinā, ae, F., hen.

gallus, I, M., cock.

Gallus, I, M., a Gaul.

gaudeō, ēre, **gāvissus sum**, rejoice.

gaudium, I, N., joy, rejoicing.

Geminus, I, M., Cn. Servilius Geminus, consul in 217 B.C.

gemma, ae, F., precious stone, jewel.

gener, eri, M., son-in-law.

generōsus, a, um, of noble birth.

gens, gentis, F., tribe, race, nation.

genus, -eris, N., race; family; kind, sort, class.

Germānia, ae, F., Germany, the region east of the Rhine.

Germānicus, a, um, German, of or with the Germans.

Germānus, I, M., a German.

gerō, ere, **gessi**, **gestum**, carry on, wage; do, perform, conduct; in *pass.*, be done, go on, happen; **rem** or **rēs gerere**, carry on operations; **rēs gesta**, exploit, deed; **mōrem gerere**, humor, comply with (one's) wish; **magistrātum gerere**, hold office.

gesta, **ōrum**, N. plur. (*perf. part. pass. of gerō, used substantively*), events, operations.

gladius, I, M., sword.

glōria, ae, F., glory, fame.

Gōbryās, ae, M., Gobryas, a noble Persian.

Gortȳnīl, **ōrum**, M. plur., the Gortynians, citizens of Gortyna, a city in Crete.

Gracchus, I, M., Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus, consul 215 and 213 B.C.

Græcia, æ, F., Greece.
Græcus, a, um, Greek.
Græcus, I, M., a Greek.
gradus, ūs, M., step; position.
Grælus, a, um, Greek, Grecian;
 Graian; M. plur. as subst.,
Græll, ōrum, the Greeks.
grāmen, -minis, N., grass.
grātia, æ, F., favor, good-will;
 influence; favor, service, kind-
 ness; **grātiās agere**, thank;
 in abl. preceded by gen., **grā-
 tiā**, for the sake of.
grātulātō, -ōnis, F., rejoicing;
 thanksgiving.
grātulor, ārī, ātus sum,
 thank, give thanks to.
grātus, a, um, agreeable, pleas-
 ing; welcome, acceptable.
gravis, e, heavy, severe, seri-
 ous; hard, bitter, difficult;
 weighty, strong.
gravitās, -tātis, F., weight;
 strength, power, importance;
 dignity.
graviter, adv., severely, bitter-
 ly, seriously; **graviter ferre**,
 be annoyed, feel keenly.
gremium, I, N., lap, bosom.
gubernātor, -ōris, M., pilot,
 helmsman.
gustō, āre, āvī, ātum, taste,
 eat.

H

habeō, ēre, uī, itum, have,
 possess, occupy; keep; hold;
 find; treat, regard, consider;
 with **orātō**, deliver, make;
 with perf. part. pass., have.
habitō, āre, āvī, ātum, dwell,
 live, reside.
Hadrūmētum, I, N., Hadrumē-
 tum, a town on the coast of
 Africa.
haerēō, ēre, haesī, haesum,
 stick fast, am imprisoned.
Halicarnassius, a, um, Hali-

carnassian, of Halicarnassus,
 a city of Asia Minor.
Hamilcar, -aris, M., Hamilcar,
 the father of Hannibal.
Hannibal, -alis, M., Hannibal,
 the famous Carthaginian gen-
 eral, son of Hamilcar.
Hasdrubal, -alis, M., Hasdru-
 bal, the name of the brother-in-
 law and also of the brother of
 Hannibal.
haud, adv., not.
Hellēspontus, I, M., the Helles-
 pont (now the Dardanelles).
Helvētius, a, um, Helvetian,
 of the Helvetii; in plur., **Hel-
 vētī**, -ōrum, M., the Helve-
 tians, a tribe of Gaul, dwelling
 in the modern Switzerland.
Hērclēs, is, M., Hercules, son
 of Jupiter; a Greek national
 hero, who, after his death,
 was worshipped as the god of
 strength.
hērēditās, -tātis, F., inheri-
 tance.
Herminius, I, M., Herminius, a
 Roman.
hiberna, ōrum, N. plur., win-
 ter camp, winter-quarters.
Hibernia, æ, F., Ireland.
hic, haec, hōc, pron., this; he;
 the following; the present;
 often loosely, that; hōc, N. abl.
 as adv., in this way, on this
 account, and with compara-
 tives, the.
hic, adv., here, herein; upon
 this, hereupon, now.
hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum, win-
 ter, pass the winter.
hiems, hiemis, F., winter,
 stormy weather.
hinc, adv., hence, from this place.
hircus, I, M., goat.
Hispania, æ, F., Spain, includ-
 ing Portugal.
historia, æ, F., history.

hodiē, adv., to-day.

hodiernus, a, um, to-day's, of this day.

hom-ō, -inis, M. and F., man, person; *in plur.*, man, man-kind, people.

honestās, -tātis, F., honor, integrity.

honestus, a, um, upright, honorable, worthy; becoming, refined.

honor (or honōs), -ōris, M., honor, repute; office, official position.

hōra, ae, F., hour.

Horātius, I, M., Horatius, a Roman hero.

horreō, ēre, ul, tremble at, dread.

horreum, I, N., storehouse, granary, barn.

horridus, a, um, terrible, frightful, horrible.

hortor, āri, ātus sum, urge, encourage, exhort, cheer on.

hosp-es, -itis, M, guest, friend.

hospitium, I, N., guest-friendship, hospitality.

hostia, ae, F., animal for sacrifice, victim.

hostis, is, M., enemy, public foe.

hūc, adv., to this, to this point, to this place, hither, here.

hūmānitās, -tātis, F., refinement, culture.

hūmānus, a, um, of a man, human; civilized, refined.

humī, adv. (really locative of *humus*), on the ground.

humilis, e, low, lowly, of little importance, obscure.

humilitās, -tātis, F., lowness.

I

Ibam, Ibō, from eō.

ibi, adv., there, in that place.

ideirō, adv., for this reason.

Idem, eadem, idem, the same; also, likewise.

idōneus, a, um, suitable, fit.

ieram, from eō.

igitur, conj. accordingly, therefore; to resume, then.

ignis, is, M., fire.

ignōrō, āre, āvi, ātum, not know, be unacquainted with, be ignorant.

ignōscō, ere, ignōvi, ignōtum, forgive, pardon, *with dative*.

ignōtus, a, um, unknown.

Ilerda, ae, F., Ilerda, a city in Spain.

illātus, a, um, from *Inferō*.

ille, illa, illud, that, he, she, it, the other, the former.

illō, adv., to that point, thither, there.

illūc, adv., to that place, thither.

il-lūdō, ere, -lūsī, -lūsum, deceive, mock at, make sport of.

illūstris, e, distinguished.

illūstrō, āre, āvi, ātum, make famous; *pass.* become famous.

Illyricum, I, N., Illyricum, a district along the eastern coast of the Adriatic.

imbēcillis, e, weak, feeble.

immānis, e, huge, enormous.

im-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum, let loose; *sē* immittere, to leap in.

immolō, āre, āvi, ātum, offer, sacrifice, immolate.

immortālis, e, immortal.

immōtus, a, um, undisturbed, untouched.

impedimentum, I, N., hindrance, obstacle; *in plur.*, baggage, baggage-train.

impediō, ire, ivi, itum, hinder, hamper, obstruct, check, prevent, interfere with; *perf. part. pass. as adj.*, **impeditus, a, um**, hampered, occupied; difficult, impassable.

im-pellō, ere, -pull, pulsum,
push ; instigate, incite.

**im-pendō, ere, -pendi, -pēn-
sum,** expend, devote, apply.

impēnsus, a, um, expensive,
high.

imperātor, -ōris, M., comman-
der, leader, general.

imperātum, I, N., order, com-
mand, bidding.

imperitus, a, um, inexperi-
enced, unacquainted, *with gen.*

imperium, I, N., command,
order ; power, supreme power,
control, rule, supremacy, sway,
authority ; *generally with the
notion of military power.*

imperō, āre, āvi, ātum, de-
mand, require, order to fur-
nish, levy, requisition ; order,
command.

impetrō, āre, āvi, ātum, ob-
tain, obtain one's request, ac-
complish, prevail on.

impetus, ūs, M., attack, charge,
rush, onset ; fury, impetuosity.

impl-eō, ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, fill
up, complete.

implorō, āre, āvi, ātum, beg,
beseech, entreat.

**im-pōnō, ere, -posui, -posi-
tum,** place on.

importō, āre, āvi, ātum, bring
in, introduce, import.

**impraesentiarum, a rare collo-
quial adv. (=in praesentia
rērum),** for the present, for
the time being, under the
(present) circumstances.

imprōvisus, a, um, unfore-
seen ; **imprōvisō or dē imprō-
visō,** unexpectedly, unaware.

imprūdēns, -entis, unsuspect-
ing, off one's guard.

imprūdentē, adv., unwisely,
imprudently.

imprūdentia, ae, F., thought-

lessness, indiscretion ; igno-
rance, inadvertence.

impudēns, -entis, shameless.

impulsus, from impellō.

in, prep., 1. *with acc.,* into, to ;
at, towards, against, upon, on ;
until ; for, with a view to, ac-
cording to ; in (*where there is
the notion of rest, as well as of
motion*). 2. *with abl.,* in, at,
within, on ; among, in the
country of ; over ; considering,
in view of ; in the case of, in
regard to.

inānis, e, empty.

incendium, I, N., fire, burning.

**in-cendō, ere, -cendi, -cēn-
sum,** set on fire, set fire to,
burn ; inflame, arouse.

incertus, a, um, uncertain, un-
trustworthy, groundless ; con-
fused, in disorder.

in-cidō, ere, -cidi, -cāsum,
fall ; fall in with, come upon.

in-cidō, ere, -cidi, -cisum, cut
into, cut through.

incitō, āre, āvi, ātum, urge
on, impel, excite, spur on ;
irritate ; *in pass.,* go at full
speed.

incōgnitus, a, um, unknown ;
strange.

incola, ae, M. and F., inhabitant.

incol-ō, ere, -ui, inhabit ; dwell,
live.

incolumis, e, safe, unharmed ;
in safety, without loss.

incommodē, adv., disastrously,
unfortunately, badly.

incommodum, I, N., misfor-
tune, loss.

incrēdibilis, e, incredible.

increp-ō, āre, -ui, -itum, up-
braid, taunt.

incursiō, -ōnis, F., raid, inroad.

inde, adv., from that place,
thence ; then, next.

- Indicium**, *I*, *N.*, mark, sign, indication, proof.
- In-dicō**, *ere*, -*dxī*, -*dietum*, declare, proclaim, declare publicly.
- Indicus**, *a*, *um*, of or with India.
- Indigeō**, *ēre*, *ul*, be dependent upon, *with gen.*
- Indignor**, *ārī*, *ātus sum*, be indignant, be angry.
- In-dūcō**, *ere*, -*dūxī*, -*ductum*, lead into, draw into, lure.
- Indul-gēō**, *ēre*, -*sl*, -*tum*, favor, *with dat.*
- Ind-nō**, *ere*, -*ul*, -*ūtum*, put on.
- Industria**, *ae*, *F.*, diligence, industry, activity.
- Industriē**, *adv.*, strenuously, vigorously.
- Indūtilae**, *ārūm*, *F. plur.*, truce.
- Indutiomarus**, *I. M.*, Indutiomarus, a chief of the Treveri.
- In-eō**, *ire*, -*ī* (-*ivī*), -*itum*, enter upon, adopt, form, devise; begin (*trans. or intrans.*).
- Inermis**, *e*, unarmed.
- In-ers**, -*ertis*, dull, lifeless; lazy, unmanly.
- Infectus**, *a*, *um*, not done, unaccomplished; **Infecta pāce**, without having effected peace; **Infectā rē**, without accomplishing his purpose.
- Inferior**, *ius*, comparative of **Inferus**, *a*, *um*, lower.
- Inferō**, *inferre*, *intulī*, *illātum*, bring; bring upon; cause; **bellum inferre**, *with dat.*, make or wage war on.
- In-ficiō**, *ere*, -*fēcī*, -*fectum*, stain.
- Infinitus**, *a*, *um*, endless, countless, boundless, vast.
- Infirmitās**, -*tātis*, *F.*, fickleness, inconstancy.
- Infirmus**, *a*, *um*, weak, powerless.
- Institior**, *ārī*, *ātus sum*, deny.
- In-fluō**, *ere*, -*fluxī*, -*fluxum*, flow (into), empty (into).
- Infrā**, *adv.*, below, farther down.
- In-fringō**, *ere*, -*frēgī*, -*frāctum*, break, crush, weaken.
- Ingēns**, -*entis*, large, huge, great, vast, enormous.
- Ingrātīlis**, *adv.*, against one's will.
- Ingrātus**, *a*, *um*, ungrateful.
- In-gredior**, *I*, -*gressus sum*, enter; enter upon, begin.
- In-haereō**, *ēre*, -*haesī*, -*haesum*, cling to, hang upon.
- Inimicus**, *a*, *um*, unfriendly, hostile; *as subst.*, **inimicus**, *I*, *M.*, enemy, personal enemy; *superl.*, **inimicissimus**, *I*, *M.*, bitterest enemy.
- Initium**, *I*, *N.*, beginning; edge, frontier, borders; *abl.*, **initio**, at first.
- Initus**, *a*, *um*, from **ineō**.
- In-iciō**, *ere*, -*jēcī*, -*jectum*, cast, put into; inspire, strike into.
- Injūria**, *ae*, *F.*, wrong, injury, injustice, wrong-doing, violence.
- Injūstē**, *adv.*, unjustly.
- Innocentia**, *ae*, *F.*, innocence, integrity.
- Inopia**, *ae*, *F.*, want, scarcity, lack, dearth.
- Inopināns**, -*antis*, not expecting, contrary to expectation, unawares.
- Inopinātus**, *a*, *um*, unexpected.
- Inquam**, **inquit**, *defective*, say.
- Insciēns**, -*entis*, not knowing, (being) unaware.
- Inscius**, *a*, *um*, ignorant, unawares.
- In-sequor**, *I*, -*secūtus sum*, follow up, pursue.
- In-sideō**, *ēre*, -*sēdī*, -*sessum*, take possession of, seize, occupy.

Insidiae, ārum, *F. plur.*, ambush, plot, stratagem, treachery.

Insidior, āri, ātus sum, lie in wait for ; plot against ; strive to entrap, *with dat.*

Insil-iō, Ire, -ui, leap into.

Insinuō, āre, āvi, ātum, wind in ; *with sē*, work one's way in.

In-sistō, ere, -stiti, stand on, perch on ; keep one's footing.

Inspectō, āre, āvi, ātum, look on.

Instābilis, e, unsteady, changeable.

Instantia, iam, *N. plur. of pres. part. as subst.*, the present.

Instit-uō, ere, -ui, -ūtum, undertake, begin, set about ; adopt ; get ready, build ; train ; levy.

Institūtum, I, *N.*, custom, practice.

Instō, āre, -stiti, -stātum, press forward.

In-struō, ere, -strūxi, -strūctum, draw up, arrange ; build, equip.

Insuē-faciō, ere, -fēci, -factum, train, accustom.

Insuētus, a, um, unaccustomed.

Insula, ae, *F.*, island.

Integer, gra, grum, unimpaired ; fresh, unwearied.

Intel-legō, ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, understand, be aware, perceive, see, know, learn, feel.

Intemperantia, ae, *F.*, excess, arrogance, haughtiness.

Inter, *prep. with acc.*, between, among, during ; **inter sē**, one another, each other, to or with one another.

Inter-cēdō, ere, -cessi, -cessum, come, exist, or arise between.

Inter-clūdō, ere, -clūsi, -clūsum, cut off, intercept.

Inter-dicō, ere, -dixi, -dictum, forbid, warn.

Interdum, sometimes.

Interea, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime.

Inter-eō, -ire, -ii (-ivi), -itum, perish, die ; be lost, be squandered.

Interest, *from intersum*.

Inter-ficiō, ere, -fēci, -fectum, slay, put to death, kill, destroy.

Interim, *adv.*, meanwhile.

Interior, ius, *comparative adj.*, inner, interior, more secret ; *M. plur. as subst.*, **interiōrēs**, um, those living in the interior.

Interitus, ūs, *M.*, death.

Inter-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum, leave off, stop, interrupt, discontinue ; delay, postpone ; let pass, leave between ; *in pass.* be left, intervene, elapse, cease.

Inter-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum, interpose ; pledge ; put forward, allege ; *in pass.* intervene, arise (to prevent).

Inter-pres, -pretis, *M.*, interpreter.

Interrogō, āre, āvi, ātum, ask, question.

Inter-rumpō, ere, -rūpi, -ruptum, break down, destroy.

Inter-sum, -esse, -fui, be between ; be engaged in, take part in ; *as impersonal verb*, interest, it is of importance, it concerns.

Intervallum, I, *N.*, interval, distance.

Intrā, *prep. with acc.*, within, inside of.

Intrō, āre, āvi, ātum, enter.

Intrō-ducō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum, lead in.

Introitus, ūs, *M.*, entrance, approach.

in-tueor, êrl, -tultus sum, look upon, regard, consider.

intull, from Inferô.

intus, adv., within, in the house.

inûsitâtus, a, um, unusual, strange, novel, unfamiliar.

inûtilis, e, useless, unserviceable, harmful.

invâ-dô, ere, -âi, -sum, enter ; **invâdô in,** invade, attack.

in-veniô, Ire, -vênî, -ventum, come upon, find.

invicem, adv., in turn.

invictus, a, um, unconquered.

invidia, ae, F., envy, jealousy, hatred.

invitô, âre, âvi, âtum, in- vite.

invitus, a, um, unwilling, against one's will.

îô, interj., ah ! oh !

ipse, a, um, himself, he himself, itself, *etc.* ; in person ; very.

irâtus, a, um, angry, raging.

Ire, from eô.

ir-rideô, êre, -risi, -risum, make sport of, jeer at.

ir-rumpô, ere, -rûpi, -ruptum, break into, storm, rush into.

is, ea, id, that, this ; he, she, it, they ; the ; such ; *abl. eô as adv.,* so much, the, on that account.

ita, adv., so, thus, in this way, in such a way, as follows.

Italia, ae, F., Italy.

itaque, adv., and so, therefore, so, accordingly, then.

item, adv., likewise, also, in like manner.

iter, itineris, N., route, march, road, journey, line of march ; passage, admission ; right of passing, right of way. **iter facere,** march.

iterum, adv., again, a second time.

Itius, adj., portus Itius, Portus Itius, a harbor on the coast of Gaul, near the modern Calais.

J

jaceô, êre, ul, itum, lie.

jacîô, ere, jêei, jactum, throw, cast, hurl.

jam, adv., now, at length, by this time ; already ; *with negatives,* any more, longer.

Jâniculum, I, N., the Janiculum, a fortress across the Tiber from Rome.

Jânuâ, ae, F., door, entrance.

Jovis, from Juppiter.

jubeô, êre, jussi, jussum, order, bid, command.

Jûdaeus, I, M., a Jew.

jûdicium, I, N., trial, lawsuit ; judgment, opinion.

jûdicô, âre, âvi, âtum, judge, decide, consider, think ; declare, proclaim, adjudge ; pass judgment.

jugum, I, N., yoke.

Jûlius, I, M., Julius, a Roman *prænomen.*

jumentum, I, N., beast of burden, ox, horse, etc.

jungô, ere, jûnxi, jûnetum, join, unite.

Jûnô, -ônîs, F., Juno, a Roman goddess.

Juppiter, Jovis, M., Jupiter, Jove, the chief god among the Romans.

Jûra, ae, M., Jura, a range of mountains in Gaul.

jûrô, âre, âvi, âtum, or jûror, âri, âtus sum, swear, take an oath.

jûs, jûris, N., right, law ; privilege.

jûsajurandum, jûrisjûrandi, N., oath.

jussI and jussus, a, um, *from jubeō*.

jussū, *abl. used as adv.*, by order.

jūstitia, ae, f., justice, fair dealing, uprightness.

jūstus, a, um, just, rightful, fair; **Jūstus**, i, m., the Just.

juvencus, i, m., bullock, young ox.

juvenis, is, m., a youth, young man.

juvō, āre, **jūvi**, **jūtum**, aid, keep, assist.

L

L., an abbreviation for **Lūcius**.

Labeō, -ōnis, m., Quintus Fabius Labeo, *consul in 183 B.C.*

Laberius, i, m., Quintus Laberius Durus, *a military tribune with Cæsar*.

Lablēnus, i, m., Titus Labienus, *one of Cæsar's lieutenants*.

labor, -ōris, m., toil, hardship, labor, exertion, occupation; endurance, hardihood; difficulty.

lābor, i, **lāpsus sum**, slip; do wrong, fall away.

labōrō, āre, **āvi**, **ātum**, toil, strive; be in difficulty, be hard pressed, be in distress.

labrum, i, n., lip.

lāc, **lactis**, n., milk.

Lacedaemōn, -onis, f., Sparta, *the chief city of the Peloponnesus*.

Lacedaemonius, i, m., a Spartan.

laccess-ō, ere, -**ivi**, -**itum**, provoke, harass, attack, assail.

lacrima, ae, f., tear.

lacus, ūs, m., lake.

laetitia, ae, f., joyfulness, rejoicing.

Laevinus, i, m., Publius Valerius Laevinus, *consul in 280 B.C.*

lāmentum, i, n., wailing, lamentation.

Lampsacus, i, f. (or um, i, n.), Lampsacus, *a town in Asia Minor, on the Hellespont*.

laniō, āre, **āvi**, **ātum**, tear, lacerate.

largitiō, -ōnis, f., distribution, bribery.

Lārisa, ae, f., Larissa, *a city in Thessaly*.

Lārs, **Lārtis**, m., Lars, *an Etruscan prænomen*.

Lārtius, i, m., Lartius, *a Roman*.

lassitūdō, -dinis, f., fatigue, exhaustion.

lātē, *adv.*, widely, extensively.

lātitudō, -dinis, f., width, breadth, extent.

lātus, a, um, broad, wide, extensive.

latus, -eris, n., side, flank.

laudandus, a, um, *really gerundive of laudō*, praiseworthy.

laudō, āre, **āvi**, **ātum**, praise, commend.

laus, **laudis**, f., praise, glory, credit.

lavō, āre, **āvi**, **ātum**, or **lāvi**, **lautum** or **lōtum**, wash; in pass., bathe.

lectica, ae, f., litter, sedan.

lectulus, i, m., couch.

lēgātiō, -ōnis, f., embassy.

lēgātus, i, m., ambassador, envoy; lieutenant, *a staff officer next in rank to the commander-in-chief*.

legiō, -ōnis, f., legion, *a body of soldiers of the nominal strength of six thousand, divided into ten cohorts*.

legiōnārius, a, um, of a legion, legionary.

lēgitimus, a, um, legal.

legō, ere, **lēgi**, **lēctum**, choose; read.

- Lemannus, I, M.,** Lemannus, *a lake now called Geneva.*
- lēnis, e,** gentle, light.
- lēniter, adv.,** gently, with little vigor.
- leō, -ōnis, M.,** lion.
- Leōnidās, ae, M.,** Leonidas, *a Spartan king, slain at Thermopylae, 480 B.C.*
- Lepontii, ōrum, M. plur.,** the Lepontii, *an Alpine tribe.*
- lepus, -oris, M.,** hare.
- levis, e,** light, slight, trifling.
- lēx, lēgis, F.,** law.
- libenter, adv.,** gladly, with pleasure.
- liber, bri, M.,** book.
- liber, era, erum,** free, independent.
- liberāliter, adv.,** generously, graciously, kindly, courteously.
- liberē, adv.,** freely, unrestrainedly, frankly.
- liberi, -ōrum, M. plur.,** children.
- liberō, āre, avi, ātum,** free, set free, release.
- libertās, -tātis, F.,** liberty, freedom, independence.
- licet, ēre, licuit,** it is permitted, it is allowable; *freely may, might.*
- lignus, a, um,** of wood, wooden.
- lignum, I, N.,** log; *in plur., firewood.*
- Ligurēs, um, M. plur.,** the Ligurians, *a people living on the west coast of northern Italy.*
- limen, -inis, N.,** threshold, door.
- Lingonēs, um, M. plur.,** the Lingones, *a tribe in the eastern part of central Gaul.*
- lingua, ae, F.,** tongue, language.
- linquō, ere, liqui, licitum,** leave.
- linteum, I, N.,** linen cloth, curtain.
- liquor, -oris, M.,** fluid, water
- lis, litis, F.,** law suit; damages, penalty.
- Litaviccus, I, M.,** Litaviccus, *a leading man of the Aedui.*
- littera, ae, F.,** letter (of the alphabet), character; *in plur., letter, despatch; literature, literary pursuits.*
- litus, -oris, N.,** shore.
- locus, I, M. (plur., loca, ōrum, N.),** place, spot, point, position, ground, situation, destination, country; *in plur., space, ground, district, region, country, place.*
- longē, adv.,** far, long, by far.
- longinquus, a, um,** distant, remote; long, protracted.
- longitūdō, -dinis, F.,** length.
- longus, a, um,** long; tedious.
- navis longa, war-ship, war galley.**
- Longus, I, M.,** Ti. Sempronius Longus, *consul in 218 B.C.*
- loquor, I, locutus sum,** speak, say.
- lōtus, a, um, from lavō.**
- Lucāni, ōrum, M. plur.,** the Lucanians, *a people dwelling in southern Italy.*
- Lūcius, I, M.,** Lucius, *a Roman prænomen.*
- lūgēō, ēre, lūxi, lūctum,** lament, mourn, weep.
- Lugotorix, -igis, M.,** Lugotorix, *a Briton of rank.*
- lūna, ae, F.,** moon.
- Lutētia, ae, F.,** Lutetia, *a town in Gaul.*
- lūx, lūcis, F.,** light, dawn; *primā lūce or ortā lūci, at daybreak, at dawn.*

Lýdl, ōrum, M. plur., the Lydians, a people living in Asia Minor.

lymp̄ha, æ, F., water.

Lýsimachus, I, M., Lysimachus, father of Aristides.

M

M., an abbreviation for **Mārcus.**

maeror, -ōris, M., grief, sorrow.

magis, comparative adv. (see māgnopere), more, rather.

magister, trī, M., master, commander; **magister equitum,** master of the horse, chief subordinate of the Dictator.

magistrātus, ūs, M., magistrate; office, magistracy; in plur., authorities, chief officials.

Māgnēsia, æ, F., Magnesia, a city of south-western Asia Minor.

māgnitūdō, -dinis, F., greatness, great size; size, extent; stature.

māgnopere, adv. (magis, mǎximē), greatly, exceedingly, very much, earnestly, urgently.

māgnus, a, um (māior, mǎximus, great, large, important; eminent; loud, extensive; māgnas adv., highly, greatly.

Māgō, -ōnis, M., Mago, brother of Hannibal.

māior, us, comparative of māgnus; māior nātū, elder; in M. plur. as subst., elders, ancestors.

male, adv., ill, badly, wrongly, unsuccessfully, cruelly; vōbīs male sit, curses upon you.

maleficiū, I, N., mischief, outrage.

mālō, mǎlle, mǎluī, prefer, had rather, be more willing.

malum, I, N., evil, ill, harmful deed; calamity.

malus, a, um, evil, accursed.

mandātum, I, N., order, instruction, message.

mandō, āre, āvī, ātum, instruct, order; give up, betake.

Mandubracius, I, M., Mandubracius, a Briton of rank.

māne, adv., in the morning.

maneō, ēre, mānēī, mānsum, stay, remain; abide.

Mānlius, I, M., 1. Titus Manlius Torquatus, a famous Roman. 2. Marcus Manlius, consul in 392 B.C. 3. Cn. Manlius Volso, consul in 189 B.C.

manus, ūs, F., hand; band, force; **manū, by force, or, with mūnitus, by art; manum cōnserere, join battle.**

Marathōnius, a, um, of or at Marathon.

Mārcellus, I, M., Marcus Claudius Marcellus, 1. a famous Roman general; 2. consul in 183 B.C.

Mārcus, I, M., Marcus, a Roman prænomen.

Mardonius, I, M., Mardonius, a Persian general.

mare, is, N., sea.

margaritum, I, N. (or a, æ, F.), pearl.

margō, -inis, M., edge, margin, side.

maritimus, a, um, on or of the sea, at sea, on the coast, maritime, naval.

māter, -tris, F., mother.

māteria, æ, F., timber, wood.

mātrōnālis, e, of a matron, womanly.

mātūrē, adv. (mātūrius, mātūrrimē), early, soon.

mātūrus, a, um, early, ripe.

mǎximē, superlative adv. (see māgnopere), very greatly, very much, most, especially; in the highest degree.

Māximus, I, M., Quintus Fabius
Maximus (*see Fabius*).
māximus, a, um, *superlative of*
māgnus.
Mēdi, ōrum, M. plur., the
 Medes, *a people of western*
Asia.
medicus, I, M., physician.
Mediomatricēs, um, M. plur.,
 the Mediomatrices, *a tribe in*
the north-east of Gaul.
mediterrāneus, a, um, inland.
medius, a, um, middle, cen-
 tral; *generally rendered by*
middle or midst of.
Meldi, -ōrum, M. plur., the
 Meldi, *a tribe in northern*
Gaul.
mellor, us, *comparative of bo-*
nus.
mellitus, a, um, honey-sweet.
membrum, I, N., limb.
memor, -oris, mindful, remem-
 bering, *with gen.*
memoria, ae, F., memory, re-
 collection, tradition, account;
 time; **memoriae prōdere,** re-
 cord, recount, describe.
Menapii, ōrum, M. plur., the
 Menapii, *a tribe in the extreme*
north-east of Gaul.
mēns, mentis, F., mind, intel-
 lect, feeling, way of think-
 ing.
mēnsis, is, M., month.
mēnsūra, ae, F., measurement.
mentiō, -ōnis, F., mention.
mercātor, -ōris, M., trader,
 merchant.
mereō, ēre, ul, itum, deserve,
 earn.
meridiānus, a, um, of mid-day;
meridiānum tempus, noon.
meridiēs, ēi, M., mid-day, noon;
 the south.
meritum, I, N., service; desert,
 merit.
metallum, I, N., mine.

metō, ere, messul, messum,
 reap, cut grain.
metus, ūs, M., fear.
meus, a, um, my, mine.
mil-es, -itis, M., soldier, man.
militāris, e, military, of war.
 mille, indeclinable adj., a thou-
 sand; *subst. in plur., millia,*
ium, N., thousand, thousands.
Miltiadēs, is, M., Miltiades, *a*
famous Athenian general.
minimē, adv., *superlative of pa-*
rum, by no means, very little,
 least.
minor, us, *comparative of par-*
vus, less, smaller; younger;
 less great, less eminent.
Minucius, I, M., I. M. Minucius
 Rufus, *master of the horse in*
217 B.C. 2. Quintus Minu-
cius, consul in 193 B.C.
min-uō, ere, -ui, -ūtum, lessen,
 diminish, decrease.
minus, adv., *comparative of pa-*
rum, less, not . . . enough;
sometimes nearly = nōn, scarce-
 ly, not.
mīror, āri, ātus sum, wonder,
 wonder at, be surprised at.
mīrus, a, um, wonderful.
misellus, a, um, *diminutive of*
miser, poor, hapless.
miser, era, erum, wretched,
 unhappy, pitiable.
miserīcordia, ae, F., compas-
 sion, pity.
mītesco, ere, grow mild, relax.
mittō, ere, mīsi, missum, send,
 despatch.
mōbilis, e, fickle, changeable,
 capricious, uncertain.
mōbilitās, -tātis, F., activity,
 mobility.
moderor, āri, ātus sum, man-
 age, check, control.
modestē, adv., modestly.
modicus, a, um, moderate;
 small.

- modo**, *adv.*, only, but, merely ;
modo . . . modo, now . . . now.
- modus**, **I**, **M.**, measure, fashion, style, way, manner, kind, sort ;
abl., **modō**, in the manner or character (of), like, as.
- moenia**, **ium**, **N.** *plur.*, walls.
- mōllor**, **Irl**, **Itus sum**, meditate, plan.
- mollis**, **e**, easy ; gently sloping ; favorable.
- Molossi**, **ūm**, **M.** *plur.*, the Molossians, a people in the eastern part of Epirus.
- mōmentum**, **I**, **N.**, movement, impulse.
- Mona**, **ae**, **F.**, Mona, an island in the Irish Sea.
- moneō**, **ēre**, **ul**, **itum**, warn, advise, remind, admonish.
- mōns**, **montis**, **M.**, mountain, hill, cliff ; mountain range.
- monumentum**, **I**, **N.**, monument ; memorial.
- mora**, **ae**, **F.**, delay.
- morbus**, **I**, **M.**, illness, disease, sickness.
- moribundus**, **a**, **um**, dying, at the point of death.
- Morini**, **ōrum**, **M.** *plur.*, the Morini, a tribe in the north of Gaul.
- morior**, **morī**, **mortuus sum**, die ; *perf. part. as adj.*, **mortuus**, **a**, **um**, dead.
- mōror**, **ārī**, **ātus sum**, delay, wait, stay, linger.
- mors**, **mortis**, **F.**, death.
- mortalis**, **e**, mortal ; **M.** *as subst.*, man.
- mortuus**, **a**, **um**, from morior.
- mōs**, **mōris**, **M.**, manner, custom, habit, usage ; *in plur.* often, character ; will, humor ;
mōrem gerere, with *dat.*, do a person's will, humor, obey.
- Mosa**, **ae**, **M.**, the Meuse, a river in north-eastern Gaul.
- mōtus**, **ūs**, **M.**, movement, motion, change ; uprising, disturbance, revolt.
- moveō**, **ēre**, **mōvi**, **mōtum**, move, set in motion ; influence ; **sē movēre**, stir ; with **castra**, move, break up.
- mox**, *adv.*, soon, presently ; soon afterwards, then, next.
- mulier**, **-eris**, **F.**, woman.
- multitūdō**, **-dinis**, **F.**, great number, great numbers, large body, multitude, host, number ; the crowd, the multitude, the common people.
- multō**, **āre**, **āvi**, **ātum**, punish, fine.
- multō**, *adv.*, by far, by much, much, far, long.
- multum**, *adv.* (**plūs**, **plūrium**), much, often, frequently, very.
- multus**, **a**, **um** (**plūs**, **plūrium**), much ; **N.** *plur.* *as subst.*, **multa**, **ōrum**, many things.
- mūniō**, **Ire**, **Ivi**, **Itum**, fortify, protect, defend, secure ; build, construct.
- mūnitiō**, **-ōnis**, **F.**, work of fortification, fortifying, construction ; fortification, line of defence ; fortified works, defences.
- mūnitus**, **a**, **um**, *perf. part. pass. of mūniō*, *as adj.*, fortified.
- mūnus**, **-eris**, **N.**, present, gift.
- mūrus**, **I**, **M.**, wall.
- mūs**, **mūris**, **M.**, mouse.
- mūtō**, **āre**, **āvi**, **ātum**, change, exchange.
- Myūs**, **untis** (*acc.* **Myunta**), **F.**, Myus, a city of Caria, in Asia Minor.

N

- nactus, a, um, from nanciscor.**
Naevius, I, M., Marcus Naevius, a Roman.
nam, conj., for.
namque, conj., for indeed, for.
nanciscor, I, nactus or nactus sum, find, get, meet with, obtain.
Nantuâtēs, ium, M. plur., the Nantuates, a tribe in the Alps.
narrō, âre, âvi, âtum, tell, relate.
nâscor, I, nâtus sum, be born, be sprung from, derive origin; of metals, be found.
Nâsica, ae, M., Scipio Nasica, an eminent Roman.
nâtiō, -ōnis, F., race, tribe, nation.
nâtūra, ae, F., nature, character; shape.
nâtus, a, um, from nâscor.
nâtus, ūs, M., birth.
naufragium, I, N., shipwreck, literal and figurative.
nauta, ae, M., sailor, mariner, seaman.
nauticus, a, um, naval, nautical, pertaining to the sea; **rēs nauticae,** seamanship.
nâvâlis, e, naval.
nâvicula, ae, F., boat.
nâvigâtiō, -ōnis, F., sailing, voyage.
nâvigium, I, N., ship, vessel, boat.
nâvigō, âre, âvi, âtum, sail.
nâvis, is, F., ship, boat, vessel; **nâvis longa,** warship, man-of-war; **nâvis onerâria,** transport; **nâvis frumentâria,** corn-ship.
Naxos, I, F., Naxos, an island in the Aegean.
nē, conj., that not, lest, in order that not; often best rendered not to; with verbs of fearing, that, lest.
nē, adv., not; **nē . . . quidem,** not even.
-ne, enclitic interrogative particle, in direct questions untranslated; in indirect questions, whether.
nebulō, -ōnis, M., worthless fellow, wretch.
nec, see neque.
necessâriō, adv., of necessity, unavoidably.
necessârius, a, um, critical.
necesse, indeclinable adj., necessary, inevitable; **necesse est,** often to be rendered by must, inevitably.
necessitās, -tâtis, F., necessity.
necō, âre, âvi, âtum, kill, put to death.
neg-legō, ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, neglect, slight, disregard, be indifferent to.
negō, âre, âvi, âtum, deny, say . . . not; refuse, say "no."
negōtium, I, N., business affair, matter; trouble, difficulty.
Nemea, ae, F., Nemea, a city in the Peloponnesus.
nēmō (nēmīnis), M., gen. and abl. not in use, nūllus and nūllō being used instead, no one, nobody.
Neoclēs, is and I, M., Neocles, the father of Themistocles.
nēquâquam, adv., by no means.
neque, or sometimes nec before consonants, **adv. and conj.,** and not, nor; when repeated, neither . . . nor, not . . . nor.
Nervil, ōrum, M. plur., the Nervii, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.
neu, conj. and not, nor.
neuter, tra, trum, neither; in plur., neither side.

nihil, *N. indecl.*, nothing ; with *gen.*, no ; *acc. as adv.*, not at all.

nihilōminus, *adv.*, none the less.

nihilum, *I, N.*, nothing ; **nihilō**, *abl. as adv. with comparatives*, none, no ; **nihilō minus**, **nihilō sēcius**, nevertheless, none the less, all the same.

nisi, *conj.*, if not, unless, except.

nitidus, *a, um*, neat, elegant.

nitōr, *I, nixus and nixus sum*, rest upon, mount ; strive ; depend upon, rely upon.

nix, **nivis**, *F.*, snow.

Nōbīlior, **-ōris**, *M.*, Servius Fulvius Nobilior, *consul in 255 B.C.*

nōbīlis, *e*, noble, of high birth ; well-known, famous, prominent.

nōbilitās, **-tātis**, *F.*, high birth ; the nobility, the nobles.

noceō, **ēre**, **ui**, **itum**, do harm to, molest, injure, *with dat.*

noctū, *abl. as adv.*, by night.

nocturnus, *a, um*, of the night, by night.

Nōla, **ae**, *F.*, Nola, a city in Campania, south of Rome.

Nōlānus, *a, um*, of Nola.

nōlō, **nōlle**, **nōlui**, am unwilling, do not wish, do not want, refuse.

nōmen, **-minis**, *N.*, name ; reputation, prestige ; people.

nōminātim, *adv.*, by name.

nōn, *adv.*, not, no.

nōndum, *adv.*, not yet.

nōnne, *interrogative particle*, not ; whether not.

nōnnihil, *N., indecl.*, somewhat, something ; *with gen.*, some, considerable.

nōnnūllus, *a, um*, some.

nōnus, *a, um*, ninth.

nōs, *plur. of ego*.

nōscō, **ere**, **nōvi**, **nōtum**, become acquainted with ; *in perf.*, know ; *perf. part. pass.* **nōtus**, *a, um, as adj.*, known, well-known, familiar.

noster, **tra**, **trum**, our ; *M. plur. as subst.*, our men, our forces.

notō, **āre**, **āvi**, **ātum**, observe.

nōtus, *from nōscō*.

novem, nine.

nōvi, *from nōscō*.

novitās, **-tātis**, *F.*, novelty, unfamiliar character.

novus, *a, um*, new, fresh ; strange ; **novissimus**, latest, last, rear ; **novae rēs**, change of government, revolution.

nox, **noctis**, *F.*, night.

nūbilus, *a, um*, cloudy, gloomy.

nūdus, *a, um*, naked, without clothing, unprotected, bare.

nūllus, *a, um, no, none ; in gen. and abl. sing. supplies cases of nēmō*, no one.

num, *an interrogative particle, expecting (in direct questions) a negative answer ; in indirect questions, whether*.

numerō, **āre**, **āvi**, **ātum**, count, reckon ; consider ; possess.

numerus, *I, M.*, number ; amount.

Numidae, **ārum**, *M. plur.*, the Numidians, a people of northern Africa.

nummus, *I, M.*, coin, money.

numquam or **nunquam**, *adv.*, never.

nunc, *adv.*, now, at this time, at that time ; **nunc . . . nunc**, now . . . now, at one time . . . at another.

nūntiō, **āre**, **āvi**, **ātum**, announce, report, bring word, tell.

nūntius, *I, M.*, messenger ; news, report, message, tidings.

nūptiae, ārum, *F. plur.*, marriage, wedding.

nūtrix, -icis, *F.*, nurse.

nūtus, ūs, *M.*, nod, beck, sign.

O

ō, *interjection*, oh!

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, because of, for; **ob eam causam**, on that account, therefore.

ob-dūcō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum, bring over, draw over, over-spread.

ob-eō, -ire, -ii (-ivi), -itum, meet; discharge, perform.

obitus, ūs, *M.*, death.

ob-iciō, ere, -jēci, -jectum, place in the way of, throw in the way of, present, cause to appear; *pass.* lie opposite.

oblātus, a, um, *from offerō*.

ob-olviscor, I, -litus sum, forget, *with gen.*

ob-ruō, ere, -rui, -rutum, overwhelm, bury.

obscūrō, āre, āvi, ātum, darken, hide.

obsecrō, āre, āvi, ātum, beseech, implore.

ob-sequor, I, -secūtus sum, obey, submit to, *with dat.*

ob-ses, -sidis, *M.*, hostage.

ob-sideō, ēre, -sēdi, -sessum, blockade, besiege, beset; occupy.

obsidiō, -ōnis, *F.*, siege, blockade, pressure, besetment.

obsōnium, I, *N.*, that which is eaten with bread, relish, viands, meat, fish.

obstinātē, *adv.*, steadily, firmly.

obstinātus, a, um, resolute, steadfast.

ob-stringō, ere, -strinxī, -strictum, bind.

obtemperō, āre, āvi, ātum, obey, submit to, *with dat.*

ob-tineō, ēre, -tinui, -tentum, hold, possess, occupy, keep, maintain.

obtrectātiō, -ōnis, *F.*, jealousy, detraction.

obtrectō, āre, āvi, ātum, be opposed, thwart.

obtuli, *from offerō*.

obviam, *adv.*, in the way of, **obviam ire or venire** (*with dat.*), go (*or come*) to meet, meet.

occāsiō, -ōnis, *F.*, opportunity. **occāsus**, ūs, *M.*, setting; **sōlis occāsus**, sunset, the west.

oc-cidō, ere, -cidi, -cāsum, set; fall, be slain.

oc-cidō, ere, -cidi, -cīsum, slay, kill; *M. plur. as subst.*, occisi, the slain.

occultō, āre, āvi, ātum, hide, conceal.

oc-cumbō, ere, -cubi, -cubitum, fall, be slain.

occupātiō, -ōnis, *F.*, engagement, occupation.

occupō, āre, āvi, ātum, seize, get possession of; *perf. part. pass. occupātus*, a, um, *as adj.*, busy, occupied, engaged.

oc-currō, ere, -curri (-eucurri), -cūsum, meet, fall in with, come upon, find; oppose, check, *with dat.*

Oceanus, I, *M.*, the ocean.

ocellus, I, *M.*, diminutive of **oculus**, (poor) eye.

Ocelum, I, *N.*, Ocelum, a town near the Alps.

octāvus, a, um, eighth.

octingenti, ae, a, eight hundred.

octō, eight.

octōdecim, eighteen.

octōgintā, eighty.

oculus, I, *M.*, eye.

odium, I, *N.*, hatred, enmity.

odor, -ōris, *M.*, perfume; spices.

- offerō, offerre, obtuli, oblātum**, present; *sē offerre*, come forward, confront, throw one's self upon; *in pass.* fall into one's hands.
- officium**, I, N., service (*especially public or official*), duty; allegiance, obligation.
- olim**, *adv.*, once, once upon a time.
- ō-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum**, let fall, drop; *pass over*, omit, say nothing of.
- omniñō, adv.**, altogether, entirely, in all, only; *with negatives*, at all, whatever.
- omnis**, e, all, every, whole; *neut. plur.*, omnia, everything.
- onerārius**, a, um, for burdens; *nāvis onerāria*, a transport.
- onerō, āre, āvi, ātum**, load.
- onus, -eris**, N., burden, weight; load, cargo, freight.
- opera, ae**, F., effort, exertion; services, assistance agency; *tuā operā*, through your fault, thanks to you; *operam dare*, take pains, take measures, see to it, bestow care on, give attention to.
- oper-iō, ire, -ui, -tum**, cover, cover over.
- opēs**, *from ops*.
- opiniō, -ōnis**, F., opinion, belief; reputation, prestige.
- oportet, ēre, oportuit, impersonal verb**, it behoves, it is necessary; *render freely* by ought, should, must.
- oppidum**, I, N., town.
- op-pleō, ēre, -plēvi, -ētum**, fill; *perf. part. pass.* *opplētus*, a, um, filled, swarming.
- op-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum**, set against, oppose, put in the way of.
- opportūnē, adv.**, opportunely, conveniently.
- opportūnus, a, um**, opportune, fortunate; fitting, suitable, advantageous.
- op-primō, ere, -pressi, -pressum**, overwhelm, crush, overpower, surprise; burden, weigh down, bear down.
- oppugnō, āre, āvi, ātum**, attack, assault, storm.
- (ops), opis**, F., power, aid; *generally in plur.*, opēs, opum, riches, resources; power, forces; support, assistance.
- optimus, a, um**, *superlative of bonus*, best.
- opulentus, a, um**, rich, wealthy.
- opus, -eris**, N., work; fortification, structure; *opere*, with munitus, by art.
- opus**, N., *found only in nom. and acc. sing.*, need; *with esse*, a necessity, *freely*, necessary.
- ōra, ae**, F., edge, border; shore, coast.
- ōrāculum**, I, N., oracle.
- ōrātiō, -ōnis**, F., speech, address, words, statement.
- ōrātor, -ōris**, M., ambassador.
- orbis, is**, F., circle; *with or without terrārum*, the world.
- Orcus, I, M.**, Orcus, *the abode of the dead*.
- ordior, iri, ōrsus sum**, begin, make a start.
- ordō, -dinis**, M., rank, line; arrangement, order.
- orior, iri, ortus sum**, rise, arise, begin; spring, be born; *oriēns sōl*, sunrise, the east.
- ornō, āre, āvi, ātum**, supply, furnish, equip, prepare; *ornātus*, a, um, *perf. part. pass. as adj.*, with all (its) trappings.
- orō, āre, āvi, ātum**, pray, beg, entreat.
- ortus, a, um**, *from orior*.

ōs, ōris, N., mouth ; face.

os, ossis, N., bone.

osten-dō, ere, -di, -tum, or ostēnsūm, show, display ; point out, declare, state ; disclose, unmask.

ostium, I, N., door.

otium, I, N., leisure, rest.

ovum, I, N., egg.

P

P., an abbreviation for **Pūblius**.

pābulātor, -ōris, M., forager.

pābulor, āri, ātus sum, forage.

pācō, āre, āvi, ātum, subdue ;

perf. part. pass. pācātus, a, um, as adj., peaceable, quiet.

Padus, I, M., the Po, a river in Cisalpine Gaul (northern Italy).

paene, adv., almost, nearly.

paenitet, ēre, paenituit, impersonal verb, it repents, it causes to repent ; *render freely by be sorry, regret.*

pāgūs, I, M., district, canton.

palam, adv., openly, publicly ; *with force of pred. adj. in palam facere*, make clear, disclose, make known.

pal-ūs, -ūdis, F., marsh, swamp, fen.

Pamphylus, a, um, Pamphylian, of Pamphylia, a district in Asia Minor.

pānis, is, M., bread.

pār, paris, equal, similar, like, the same ; *of battles*, drawn, indecisive ; a match.

parcō, ere, peperci (parci), parsum (or parcitum), spare, *with dat.*

parēs, -entis, M. and F., parent.

pāreō, ēre, -ui, itum, be obedient, obey, submit ; listen to, follow, comply with ; *with dat.*

pariō, ere, peperci, partum, produce ; win, gain, secure.

parō, āre, āvi, ātum, prepare, get ready, have in view ; procure, get, acquire ; *perf. part. pass. parātus, a, um, as adj.*, ready, prepared.

Parrhasius, I, M., Parrhasius, a famous Greek painter.

pars, partis, F., part, portion, number, share, some ; quarter, direction, side.

partim, adv., partly ; *when repeated, often rendered by some . . . others.*

partus, from pariō.

parumper, adv., for a short time, for a while.

parvulus, a, um, little, small, tiny.

parvus, a, um, (minor, minimus), small, trifling.

passer, -eris, M., sparrow.

passim, adv., in all directions.

passus, a, um, from patior.

passus, ūs, M., pace (about five feet) ; *one thousand paces made one Roman mile.*

pate-faciō, ere, -feci, -factum, open, throw open, keep open, open up.

pate-flō, -fieri, -factus sum, pass. of patefaciō.

pateō, ēre, ui, extend.

pater, -tris, M., father ; **patrēs cōscripti**, senators.

paternus, a, um, of a father, father's, paternal.

patientia, ae, F., patience, endurance.

patior, I, passus sum, suffer, allow, permit, endure, withstand.

patria, ae, F., native country, native land, (one's) country.

patrius, a, um, ancestral, of one's fathers ; of one's coun-

- try ; in *Them.* 7, 4, *dei patrīl*, the gods of the state (i.e., of *Attica*).
- pauci**, *ae*, *a* (*sing.* very rare), few, but few.
- paucitās**, *-tātis*, *F.*, small number, fewness.
- paulatim**, *adv.*, gradually, by degrees.
- paulisper**, *adv.*, for a short time, for a while.
- paulō**, *adv.*, a little ; slightly, somewhat.
- paulum**, *adv.*, a little ; a short distance.
- Paulus**, *I.*, *M.*, see *Aemilius*.
- paupertās**, *-tātis*, *F.*, poverty.
- Pausaniās**, *ae*, *M.*, *Pausanias*, a *Spartan general*.
- pavor**, *-ōris*, *M.*, fear, panic, alarm.
- pāx**, *pācis*, *F.*, peace.
- pecūnia**, *ae*, *F.*, money, sum of money.
- pecus**, *-oris*, *N.*, cattle, herd ; flesh, meat.
- ped-es**, *-itis*, *M.*, foot-soldier, infantry-man ; in *plur.*, infantry.
- pedester**, *tris*, *tre*, on or by land ; of infantry ; *cōpiaē pedestrēs*, land forces ; infantry.
- peditātus**, *ūs*, *M.*, infantry.
- pellis**, *is*, *F.*, skin, hide.
- pellō**, *ere*, **pepull**, **pulsum**, defeat, rout, drive back ; banish, drive out.
- Peloponnēsus**, *I.*, *F.*, the *Peloponnesus*, that part of *Greece* lying south of the *isthmus* and *gulf* of *Corinth*.
- penātēs**, *ium*, *M.* *plur.*, household gods, *Penates*.
- pendō**, *ere*, **pependi**, **pēnsu**m, weigh, pay.
- penes**, *prep.* with *acc.*, with, in the hands of.
- peperi**, from **pariō**.
- pepull**, from **pellō**.
- per**, *prep.* with *acc.*, through ; during ; by means of, by ; by way of, over, along ; by reason of.
- per-agō**, *ere*, *-ēgi*, *-actum*, finish, complete.
- per-clipō**, *ere*, *-cēpi*, *-ceptum*, hear.
- percontātiō**, *-ōnis*, *F.*, inquiry.
- percontor**, *āri*, *ātus sum*, ask.
- per-currō**, *ere*, *-curri* (*-eucurri*), *-cursum*, run along.
- per-dūcō**, *ere*, *-dūxi*, *-ductum*, bring over, bring ; carry, carry along ; lead safely.
- per-eō**, *-ire*, *-ii* (*-ivi*), *-itum*, perish, be killed.
- perequitiō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, ride about.
- perexiguus**, *a*, *um*, very small.
- perfacilis**, *e*, very easy.
- per-ferō**, *-ferre*, *-tuli*, *-lātum*, carry, report, bring ; bear to the end, endure, submit to.
- per-ficiō**, *ere*, *-fēci*, *-fectum*, finish, carry out.
- perfidia**, *ae*, *F.*, faithlessness, treachery.
- per-fodiō**, *ere*, *-fōdi*, *-fossu*m, pierce.
- perfuga**, *ae*, *M.*, deserter.
- per-fugiō**, *ere*, *-fūgi*, flee for refuge, flee.
- perfugium**, *I.*, *N.*, refuge, place of refuge.
- per-fungor**, *I.*, *-fūctus sum*, perform, endure, undergo, finish.
- Pergamēni**, *-ōrum*, *M.* *plur.*, the *Pergamenians*, inhabitants of *Pergamum* in *Asia Minor*.
- Pergamēnus**, *a*, *um*, of or belonging to *Pergamum*, *Pergamenian*.
- periculōsus**, *a*, *um*, dangerous.
- periculum**, *I.*, *N.*, danger, peril, risk ; attempt, experiment.

- peritus**, a, um, skilled, expert.
periātus, a, um, *from perferō*.
per-maneō, ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, continue, remain, abide, persist.
per-mittō, ere, -misī, -misum, give up, entrust; allow, permit.
per-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, move, influence; alarm, excite, dismay.
per-mulceō, ēre, -mulsī, -mulsum and -muletum, soothe, calm.
permultī, ae, a, very many.
permūtatiō, -ōnis, f., exchange.
perpauci, ae, a, very few.
perpetuus, a, um, continuous, lasting; *in* perpetuum, for ever.
per-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, break through, force one's way through.
Persae, ārum, M. plur., the Persians.
per-sequor, I, -secutus sum, pursue, follow up; attack; punish.
Persēs, ae (*abl.* Persē), M., a Persian; *as adj.*, Persian.
persevērō, āre, āvī, ātum, persist, persevere.
Persicus, a, um, Persian.
Persis, -idis, f., Persia.
per-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, see, observe, examine, reconnoitre; ascertain, find out, become acquainted with.
per-suādeō, ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, persuade, convince; prevail upon, induce; *with dat.*
perterreō, ēre, uī, itum, terrify, frighten, alarm; disconcert, dismay; *in pass.*, be panic-stricken.
per-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, extend, reach, stretch; tend, serve.
- pertallī**, *from perferō*.
perturbātiō, -ōnis, f., alarm, panic, confusion.
perturbō, āre, āvī, ātum, thrown into confusion, disturb, disconcert, alarm.
pervā-dō, ere, -si, -sum, spread through, penetrate.
pervagor, āri, ātus sum, roam about, range, scour the country.
per-venīō, ire, -vēnī, -ventum, come; reach, arrive at.
pēs, pedis, M., foot; **pedibus**, on foot; **pedem referre**, fall back, retire, retreat.
pet-ō, ere, -ivi (-it), -itum, ask, request; seek, ask for, beg, sue for; make for, seek to reach; aim at, attack.
phal-anx, -angis, f., phalanx solid column.
Phalēricus, a, um, Phalerian, of Phalerum.
Philippus, I, M., Philip, king of Macedonia, 220-179 B.C.
pletor, -ōris, M., painter.
pletura, ae, f., picture.
pila, ae, f., ball, game of ball, tennis.
pilum, I, N., javelin, spear.
pingō, ere, pinxi, pectum, paint.
pipilō, āre, peep, chirp.
Piraeus, I, M., Piræus, the chief port of Athens.
Pirustae, ārum, M. plur., the Pirustae, a tribe in Illyricum.
piscis, is, M., fish.
Pisō, -ōnis, M., Piso, an Aquitanian of rank.
placeō, ēre, uī, itum, please.
plānus, a, um, level.
Plataeae, ārum, f. plur., Plataea, a town in Boeotia.
plēbs, plēbis, f., plebs, the common people.
plēnus, a, um, full.

plérîque, plêraque, plêra-
que, the most, most persons.
plêrumque, adv., generally,
for the most part.
plumbum, I, N., lead; **plum-**
bum album, tin.
plûrimum, adv., *superlative of*
multum, most, very much.
plûrimus, a, um, superlative of
multus, most, very much; *in*
plur., very many; *quam plû-*
rimi, as many as possible.
plûs, plûris, comparative of
multus, more; *in plur.,* more,
several, many.
poena, ae, F., penalty, punish-
ment.
poenitet, see poenitet.
Poenus, a, um, Carthaginian.
Poenus, I, M., a Carthaginian,
an inhabitant of Carthage, es-
pecially the Carthaginian, i.e.,
Hannibal.
poëta, ae, M., poet.
polliceor, èri, itus sum, prom-
ise, make a promise.
Polybius, I, M., Polybius, *a*
Greek historian.
pômifer, era, erum, fruit-bear-
ing, fruitful.
Pompêius, I, M., Pompey, *Oneius*
Pompeius, the triumvir, consul
in 55 B.C.
pondus, -eris, N., weight.
pônô, ere, posui, positum,
place, station, post; depend,
rest; *with castra,* pitch; *with*
arma, lay down; *in pass.,* be
situated, lie.
pôns, pontis, M., bridge.
Pontus, I, M., Pontus, *a country*
in Asia Minor, on the southern
shore of the Euxine Sea.
poposci, from poscô.
populor, âri, âtus sum, devas-
tate, ravage.
populus, I, M., people, nation.

Porsena, ae, M., Lars Porsena,
an Etruscan king.
porta, ae, F., gate.
portô, âre, âvi, âtum, carry,
bear.
portus, ûs, M., harbor, port.
poscô, ere, poposci, demand,
ask, request, call for.
pos-aldô, ere, -âdî, -sessum,
seize, occupy, take possession
of.
possum, posse, potui, be able,
can, be possible; be powerful,
be strong, have weight or in-
fluence.
post, 1. adv., afterwards, after.
2. prep. with acc., after, be-
hind.
postea, adv., afterwards, later.
posteaquam, conj., after, when.
posterus, a, um, next, follow-
ing; later, subsequent; *M.*
plur. as subst., posterî, de-
scendants.
post-pônô, ere, -posui, -posi-
tum, set aside, disregard.
postquam (often written post
... quam), conj., after, when,
as soon as.
postridiê, adv., next day, on
the morrow, on the following
day.
postulâtum, I, N., demand.
postulô, âre, âvi, âtum, de-
mand, require, ask.
Postumius, I, M., L. Postumius
Albinus, *consul in 215 B.C.*
potêns, -entis, part. of possum,
powerful, influential.
potentia, ae, F., power, influ-
ence.
potestâs, -tâtis, F., power, con-
trol; opportunity, chance, per-
mission.
potissimum, adv., especially,
chiefly, most, in preference to
all others.

potius, adv., rather, more, in preference.

potui, from possum.

praebeō, ēre, ul, itum, show ; furnish, supply.

prae-cēdō, ere, -cessi, -cessum, surpass.

prae-ceps, -cipitis, headlong ; abrupt, steep.

praeceptor, -ōris, M., teacher.

praeceptum, I, N., direction, instruction, command.

prae-cipiō, ere, -cēpi, -cep-tum, instruct, give instruc-tions, order, direct.

praecipitō, āre, āvi, ātum, fling, throw headlong.

praecipuē, adv., especially, par-ticularly.

praecipuus, a, um, especial, particular.

praeclārus, a, um, glorious, noble, distinguished, famous.

prae-clūdō, ere, -clūsi, -clū-sum, close, barricade.

praeda, ae, F., plunder, booty, spoil.

praedicō, āre, -āvi, -ātum, an-nounce, declare, give out, pub-lish, proclaim, state.

prae-dicō, ere, -dixi, -dictum, instruct, charge.

praedō, -ōnis, M., robber ; ma-ritimus praedō, pirate.

praedor, āri, ātus sum, plun-der, pillage, raid.

praefectus, I, M., officer, com-mander (especially of cavalry).

prae-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, set over, place in command of, give control of, with acc. and dat.

prae-figō, ere, -fixi, -fixum, fix before, plant in front.

prae-gredior, I, -gressus sum, go in advance.

prae-mittō, ere, -misi, -mis-

sum, send in advance, send on, send forward.

praemium, I, N., reward.

praeparō, āre, āvi, ātum, pre-pare or get ready beforehand.

praesēns, -entis, part. of prae-sum, present, on hand.

praesentia, ae, F., the present moment ; in praesentia, for the moment, for the time being.

praesertim, adv., especially, particularly.

praesidium, I, N., guard, garri-son, (protecting) force ; protec-tion, support, escort ; in plur., entrenchments, defences.

prae-stō, āre, -stiti, stātum or -stitum, show, display ; per-form, do ; excel, surpass ; ful-fil, make good ; keep ; prae-stat, impersonal, it is better, it is preferable.

prae-sum, -esse, -ful, be over, be at head of, have command of, be in charge of, rule over, with dat.

praeter, prep. with acc., ex-cept ; beyond.

praetereā, adv., besides, more-over.

praeter-mittō, ere, -misi, -mis-sum, pass over, let pass.

praetor, -ōris, M., general, com-mander ; praetor, a Roman magistrate ranking just below a consul.

precēs, um, F. (sing. defective and very rare), prayers, en-treaties.

precor, āri, ātus sum, pray, entreat.

premō, ere, pressi, pressum, press, press hard, attack fierce-ly, harass, beset, overwhelm ; bear down upon ; in pass., be afflicted, be affected.

pretium, *I, N.*, price.
pridē, *adv.*, the day before, on the previous day.
primō, *adv.*, at first, in the first place, first.
primum, *adv.*, first, in the first place; *cum* or *ubi* **primum**, as soon as; *quam* **primum**, as soon as possible.
primus, *a, um*, *superlative* of **prior**, first, foremost; *in* **primis**, especially, in particular.
princeps, *-cipis*, first, chief; *M.* as *subst.*, leading or chief man, leader, chief.
principatus, *ūs, M.*, leadership, chief position, sovereignty.
prior, *ius*, *comparative*, former, earlier; first (*of two*).
prisus, *a, um*, early, ancient, old-time.
pristinus, *a, um*, former, previous; of former days, old-time.
prius, *comparative adv.*, earlier, sooner, first; *see also* **priusquam**.
priusquam (often written **prius . . . quam**) *conj.*, before; *with negatives*, until.
privatim, *adv.*, privately, as individuals.
privatus, *a, um*, private, individual, personal.
prō, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of; instead of, in place of, as; in defence of, for; in accordance with; for, in return for.
prōbō, *āre, āvi, ātum*, approve; favor; recognize.
prōcēdō, *ere, -cessi, -cessum*, go forward, come forward, advance.
procer, *-eris, M.*, noble, chief.
proceritas, *-tatis, F.*, height.
procul, *adv.*, at a distance, from a distance, far.

prōcurō, *āre, āvi, ātum*, attend to, take care of.
prōcurrō, *ere, -curri (-e-curri), -cursum*, run forward.
prōdeō, *-ire, -ii (-ivi), -itum*, come forward, appear.
prōditio, *-ōnis, F.*, treason.
prōditor, *-ōris M.*, traitor.
prōdō, *ere, -didī, -ditum*, betray, abandon, give up; hand down.
prōducō, *ere, -dūxi, -ductum*, lead forth; prolong, protract; draw out, lure, entice.
proellor, *āvi, ātus sum*, fight.
proellum, *I, N.*, battle; engagement, fighting, fight.
profectio, *-ōnis, F.*, departure.
profectus, *a, um*, *from* **proficiscor**.
profectus, *a, um*, *from* **prōficiō**.
professus, *a, um*, *from* **profiteor**.
prōficiō, *ere, -feci, -fectum*, effect, accomplish.
proficiscor, *I, -fectus sum*, set out, depart, start, go, proceed.
profiteor, *ēvi, -fessus sum*, confess, declare one's self; state.
prōfligō, *āre, āvi, ātum*, rout.
prōfluō, *ere, -fluxi, -fluxum*, flow forth, rise.
profulgō, *ere, -fūgi, flee*, escape.
prōgredior, *I, -gressus sum*, go forward, advance, proceed, go.
prohibeō, *ēre, ui, itum*, restrain, keep, prevent, check, cut off; protect.
prōjiciō, *ere, -jēci, -jectum*, throw down, throw; *sē* **prōjicere**, leap down.
prōmittō, *ere, -misi, -missum*, promise; let grow; *perf. part. pass.* **prōmissus**, *a, um*, *as adj.*, long, flowing.

prōmptus, a, um, ready, quick.
prōnūntiō, āre, āvi, ātum,
 declare, tell.

prōpatulū, m, I, N., open court.
prope, *adv.* (*propius, proximē*),
 near; nearly, almost; *as prep.*
with acc., near.

prō-pellō, ere, -pull, -pulsum,
 dislodge, force back.

properē, *adv.*, quickly, speedily.
properō, āre, āvi, ātum,
 hasten.

propinquitās, -tātis, F., near-
 ness, proximity.

propinquus, a, um, near, close
 at hand, neighboring, at hand;
M. as subst., relative, kinsman.

propior, ius, *comparative*, nearer;
see proximus.

propitius, a, um, gracious, be-
 nign.

propius, *adv.*, *comparative of*
prope, nearer.

prō-pōnō, ere, -posul, -posi-
 tum, set forth; present; dis-
 play.

propter, *prep. with acc.*, on
 account of, because of.

propterea, *adv.*, on this ac-
 count, for this reason; **prop-
 terea quod**, for the reason
 that, because.

prōpugnāculum, I, N., bul-
 work, rampart, defence.

prōpugnō, āre, āvi, ātum,
 rush out (to fight); make sor-
 ries.

prō-sequor, I, -secutus sum,
 attend, accompany; pursue,
 follow.

prōspectus, ūs, M., sight.

prōsperē, *adv.*, successfully.

prō-spiciō, ere, -spexi, -spec-
 tum, look out, watch; take
 precautions, take care, pro-
 vide.

prō-terō, ere, -trivi, -tritum,
 trample upon, supplant.

prōtinus, *adv.*, at once, imme-
 diately, right onward.

prōturbō, āre, āvi, ātum,
 drive back, repel.

prō-vehō, ere, -vexi, -vectum,
 carry forward; *in pass.*, be
 carried, be driven, sail.

prō-vidēō, ēre, -vidi, -visum,
 provide, procure, make pro-
 vision for, arrange for; guard
 against, take precautions.

prōvincia, ae, F., province;
especially 'the Province' of
Gallia Transalpina.

prōvocō, āre, āvi, ātum, call
 out, challenge.

proximus, a, um, nearest, next,
 close by; *superl. of propior.*

prudentia, ae, F., discretion,
 sagacity, shrewdness, cun-
 ning.

Prūsias (or **Prūsia**), ae, M.,
 Prusias, king of Bithynia, to
 whom Hannibal fled for refuge.

Ptolemaeus, I, M., Ptolemy,
 king of Egypt from 51-47 B.C.

pūblicē, *adv.*, officially, in the
 name of the state, as a state,
 at the public expense.

pūblicō, āre, āvi, ātum, con-
 -fiscate.

pūblicus, a, um, official, of the
 state, public; **rēs pūblica**,
 state; public affairs, public
 interests; *in Them.* 7, 4, **dei**
pūblici, the gods of the na-
 tion (*i.e.*, of Greece)

Pūblius, I, M., Pūblius, a Ro-
 man prænomen.

pudor, -ōris, M., sense of shame,
 shame.

puella, ae, F., girl, maiden,
 lass; sweetheart, mistress.

puellāris, e, of a girl, a girl's.

puer, eri, M., boy, child, lad;
 servant, slave; **a pueris**, from
 childhood.

puerulus, I, M., a little boy;

puerulō mē, when I was a mere child.
pūgna, ae, F., fight, fighting, battle.
pūgnō, āre, āvi, ātum, fight, contend.
pulsus, a, um, from pellō.
pulv-is, -eris, M., dust, cloud of dust.
puppis, is, F., stern of a vessel.
pūrgō, āre, āvi, ātum, exculpate, excuse, clear.
pūrus, a, um, plain.
puteus, I, M., well.
putō, āre, āvi, ātum, think, believe, hold, consider.
Pydna, ae, F., Pydna, a town of Macedonia, on the sea-shore.
Pyrēnaeus, a, um, of or over the Pyrenees, the range of mountains between Gaul and Spain.
Pyrrhus, I, M., Pyrrhus, king of Epirus from 295 to 272 B.C.
Pythia, ae, F., Pythia, the priestess of Apollo at Delphi, where was located the chief oracle of that deity.

Q

Q., an abbreviation for **QuIntus**.
quā, adv., where, by which route.
quācumque, adv., wherever.
quadrāgintā, forty.
quadringēni, ae, a, four hundred (each).
quadringenti, ae, a, four hundred.
quaerō, ere, quaesivī (-ī), quaesitum, ask, enquire; seek, look for; **quaerere ab ōstiō** or **ā jānuā**, ask for (one) at the door.
quaestor, -ōris, M., quaestor, paymaster, one in charge of the finances of a province or an army.

quam, adv., as; how; after comparatives, than; with superlatives, as . . . as possible. for **postquam**, after.
quamdiū, rel. adv., as long as.
quamobrem, adv., wherefore.
quamvis, 1. adv., however. 2. conj., although.
quantus, a, um, how great, how much, what; with **tantus**, expressed or understood, (as great) as, (as much) as, such as; neut. as subst., how much; **tantō . . . quantō**, as much . . . as.
quārē, adv., wherefore, for which reason; consequently, therefore.
quārtus, a, um, fourth.
quasi, conj., as if.
quattuor, four.
quattuordecim, fourteen.
-que, enclitic conj., and (to be translated before the word to which it is added).
queror, I, **questus sum**, complain.
qui, quae, quod, rel. pron., who, which, what, that; he who; as coordinating relative, this, he; after **Idem**, as.
qui, quae, quod, interrogative adj., what, which.
qui, qua or quae, quod, indefinite adj. or rarely pron., any; anyone.
quia, conj., because.
quicquam, from **quisquam**.
quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, whoever, whatever, whichever.
quid, N. of **quis**, as adv., why.
quidam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam, a certain, a certain man, a, one.
quidem, adv., certainly, indeed; too; but, however; **nē . . . quidem**, not even.

quān, *conj.*, but that, but, that ;
freely, to, from.

quān, *adv.*, nay, in fact.

quindecim, fifteen.

quingenti, *ae, a*, five hundred.

quinquagēni, *ae, a*, fifty
(each).

quinquagintā, fifty.

quinque, five.

quinquies or **quinq̄iens**, *adv.*,
five times.

Quintilius, *I, M.*, Publius Quinti-
tilius Varus, a Roman general.

Quintius, *I, M.*, Titus Quintius
Flamininus (see **Flāminius**).

quintus, *a, um*, fifth.

Quintus, *I, M.*, Quintus, a Ro-
man prænomen.

Quiris, *-itis, M.*, Roman citizen ;
in voc. plur., fellow-citizens.

quis, *quae*, *quid*, *interrogative*
pron., who, which, what.

quis, *qua*, *quid*, *indefinite pron.*,
anyone, anything ; *with nisi*,
something, someone.

quisnam, **quonam**, **quidnam**,
interrogative pron., (-new
ing emphasis) who pray, what
then, who, which, what.

quisquam, **quidquam** or **quic-
quam**, anyone, anything, any.

quisque, **quaque**, **quidque** or
quodque, each, each one ;
every, everyone.

quivis, **quaevis**, **quidvis** or
quodvis, any, any whatever.

quō, *adv.*, 1. *rel.*, whither,
where, to or into which, to
whom. 2. *interrog.*, where,
whither.

quō, *abl. of qui*, as *conj.*, that,
in order that ; because.

quō, *abl. of qui*, as *adv.*, by
how much, by this, on this
account.

quoad, *conj.*, until, as long as.

quod, *conj.*, because, that, in
that ; the fact that ; *with ad-*

verbial force, wherefore, so
that.

quōminus or **quō minus**, *conj.*,
so that not ; *freely*, to, from.

quondam, *adv.*, once.

quoniam, *conj.*, since, seeing
that.

quoque, *conj.*, also, too, as well.

quot, *indecl. adj.*, how many, as
many as.

quotannis, *adv.*, yearly, every
year, annually.

quotienscumque, *adv.*, as often
as, whenever.

R

rā-dō, *ere, -si, -sum*, shave.

rāmus, *I, M.*, branch.

rāna, *ae, F.*, frog.

rapiditās, *-tātis, F.*, swiftness.

rārus, *a, um*, scattered ; *in
plur.*, in detached groups, in
small parties.

rāsus, *a, um*, from **rādō**.

ratiō, *-ōnis, F.*, method, system,
theory, science ; character ;
manner, way ; plan ; consider-
ation, reason ; calculation,
strategy.

ratis, *is, F.*, raft.

ratus, *a, um*, from **reor**.

rebelliō, *-ōnis, F.*, renewal of
war ; **rebelliōnem facere**, re-
new the war.

recēns, *-entis*, new, recent,
late ; fresh, unexhausted.

receptus, *ūs, M.*, retreat, way of
retreat.

reciperō, *āre, āvi, ātum*, re-
cover.

re-ceptiō, *ere, -cēpi, -ceptum*,
regain, get back, recover ; re-
ceive, admit, welcome ; **se
recipere**, 1. recover one's self,
recover, rally ; 2. return,
retreat, betake one's self.

re-currō, *ere, -curri*, hasten
back, return.

- recūsō, āre, āvi, ātum, refuse,**
object; reject.
- red-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, give**
back, restore, return; make,
render; *sē reddere*, to betake
one's self again, return.
- redēgi, from redigō.**
- red-eō, -ire, -ii (-ivi), -itum,**
come back, return; come in,
be derived.
- red-igō, ere, -ēgi, -āctum, re-**
duce, make, bring.
- reditiō, -ōnis, F., return.**
- reditus, ūs, M., return, return-**
ing.
- re-dūcō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum,**
lead back, bring back.
- referō, referre, rettuli, relā-**
tum, bring back, carry back,
drive back; bring back word,
report; *pedem referre*, re-
treat, fall back; *sē referre*,
betake one's self, retreat, re-
turn; *grātiā referre*, make
a return, reward.
- re-ficiō, ere, -feci, -fectum, re-**
pair, refit; recruit, rest.
- re-fugiō, ere, -fūgi, escape.**
- regiō, -ōnis, F., region, district,**
country, part.
- rēgius, a, um, royal, of the**
king.
- rēgnō, āre, āvi, ātum, be**
king, reign.
- rēgnū, i, N., kingdom; royal**
power, supreme power, the
throne.
- regō, ere, rēxi, rēctum, rule,**
govern.
- re-gredior, i, -gressus sum, re-**
turn, go back.
- rēgula, ae, F., rule.**
- Rēgulus, i, M., Marcus Atilius**
Regulus, a famous Roman, con-
sul in 156 B.C.
- rē-jiciō, ere, -jēci, -jectum,**
drive back.
- relātus, a, um, from referō.**
- relletus, a, um, from relinquo.**
- religiō, -ōnis, F., religious scru-**
ple, reverence, conscientious-
ness, obligation of an oath.
- reliquiae, ārum, F. plur., re-**
mainder, remnant.
- re-linquo, ere, -liqui, -llictum,**
leave, leave behind; abandon;
neglect; *impersonal in pass.*,
it remains.
- reliqua, a, um, remaining,**
other, left, else; future, sub-
sequent; *generally to be ren-*
dered by the rest of: M. plur.,
reliqui, ōrum, as subst., the
rest, the others; reliquum
tempus, the future.
- re-maneō, ēre, -mānsi, -mān-**
sum, remain, remain behind,
stay.
- rēm-ex, -igis, M., rower, oars-**
man.
- Rēmi, ōrum, M. plur., the Remi,**
a tribe in northern Gaul.
- rēmigō, āre, āvi, ātum, row.**
- remigrō, āre, āvi, ātum, move**
back, return.
- re-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum,**
send back, release, give up;
relax; *perf. part. pass., re-*
missus, a, um, as adj., mild;
light, cheerful.
- remollēscō, ere, become soft or**
enervated.
- re-moveō, ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum,**
move back, withdraw, draw
back, draw away; put aside,
put away; remove, destroy,
put out of the way.
- rēmus, i, M., oar.**
- renovō, āre, āvi, ātum, renew.**
- renūntiō, āre, āvi, ātum, re-**
port, bring back word; *re-*
nūntiātur, word is brought
(back).
- reor, rēri, ratus sum, think.**
- reparō, āre, āvi, ātum, build**
again.

- re-pellō, ere, reppulī (or re-pull), -pulsum, drive back, defeat.**
- repente, adv., suddenly.**
- repentīnus, a, um, sudden, hasty, unexpected.**
- re-periō, ire, repperī (or re-perī), -pertum, find, find out, discover, ascertain.**
- re-petō, ere, -petivī, -petitum, demand back; bring back, renew; repetere memoriā, call to mind, recollect.**
- rēpō, ere, rēpsī, rēptum, creep, crawl along.**
- re-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, store up.**
- reportō, āre, āvī, ātum, carry back, take back.**
- repperī, from reperiō.**
- re-primō, ere, -pressī, -pressum, restrain, check.**
- repulsus, a, um, from repellō.**
- rēs, rei, F., thing, matter, affair, circumstance, means, fact, act, object, interest, situation, deed, proposal, property; rēs publica, rei publicae, F., state, public affairs, public interests; rēs gestae, F. plur., deeds, exploits.**
- re-scindō, ere, -scidī, -scissum, break down, tear down, destroy.**
- re-sciscō, ere, -scivī, -scitum, ascertain, learn, find out.**
- re-sidō, ere, -sēdī, sit down.**
- re-sistō, ere, -stitī, hold one's ground, halt; resist, withstand, oppose, make resistance, with dat.**
- re-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spec-tum, regard.**
- re-spondeō, ere, -spondī, -spōn-ser, answer, make answer, reply.**
- respōnsum, I, N., answer, reply.**
- rēs publica (see under rēs).**
- restitī, from resistō.**
- restit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, restore; rebuild.**
- re-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, detain, keep; preserve, maintain.**
- re-trahō, ere, -trāxī, -trāc-tum, bring back (by force).**
- rettulī, from referō.**
- re-vellō, ere, -vellī, -vulsum, tear or wrest away, pull up.**
- re-vertō, ere, -vertī, -versum (chiefly in perf. tenses), return, come back, go back.**
- re-vertor, I, -versus sum (chiefly in pres. imperf. and fut. tenses), return, come back, go back.**
- revocō, āre, āvī, ātum, recall.**
- revolō, āre, fly back.**
- rēx, rēgis, M., king; commander, admiral.**
- Rhēnus, I, M., the Rhine.**
- Rhodanus, I, M., the Rhone.**
- Rhodī, ōrum, M. plur., the Rhodians, the people of Rhodes, an island near Asia Minor.**
- rideō, ēre, risī, risum, laugh.**
- ripa, ae, F., bank.**
- risus, ūs, M., laughter, laugh.**
- rōbustus, a, um, strong, powerful.**
- rogō, āre, āvī, ātum, ask, request, entreat.**
- rogus, I, M., funeral pile.**
- Rōma, ae, F., Rome.**
- Rōmānus, a, um, Roman; M. as subst., a Roman.**
- Rōmulus, I, M., Romulus, the founder and first king of Rome.**
- rota, ae, F., wheel.**
- rubeō, ēre, be red.**
- ruber, bra, brum, red.**
- Rūfus, I, M., 1. Marcus Minucius Rufus, master of the horse, 217 B.C. 2. Publius Sulpicius Rufus, one of Cæsar's lieutenants.**
- rūmor, -ōris, M., rumor, report.**

rumpō, ere, rūpl, ruptum,
break.
rūrsus, adv., again, back again,
in turn.
rūs, rūris, N., the country;
field, land.

S

Sabinus, I, M., Quintus Titurius
Sabinus, *one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

sacellum, I, N., chapel, shrine.

sacer, era, erum, sacred ; N.
plur. sacra, ōrum, as subst.,
religious worship, sacred rites.

sacer-dōs, -dōtis, M., priest.

sacrārium, I, N., sanctuary,
shrine.

sacrificō, āre, āvi, ātum, sac-
rifice.

saepe, adv. (saepius, saepis-
simē), often, frequently.

saepiō, Ire, saepsi, saeptum,
hedge in, surround, enclose.

sagācītās, -tātis, F., shrewd-
ness.

sagitta, ae, F., arrow.

Saguntum, I, N., Saguntum, *a*
town of eastern Spain, near the
Mediterranean.

Salaminius, a, um, of Salamis.

Salamis, -inis (acc. Salamīna),
F., Salamis, an island off the
west coast of Attica.

sal-iō, Ire, -ui, -tum, leap.

saltus, ūs, M., pass, mountain
pass ; woodland.

salum, I, N., open sea, high sea.

salūs, -ūtis, F., safety, welfare,
protection ; source of safety,
benefit.

salvus, a, um, safe.

Samnitēs, ium, M. plur., the
Samnites, *a people living in*
central Italy.

Santonēs, um, M. plur., the
Santones, *a tribe on the west*
coast of Gaul.

sānus, a, um, sound, sane ; **prō**
sānō, like a discreet man, pru-
dently.

saplēns, -entis, wise ; M. as subst.
wise man, sage.

sarmentum, I, N., twig, fagot,
brushwood.

satiō, āre, āvi, ātum, satisfy,
sate.

satis, adv., enough, sufficiently ;
tolerably, quite, considerably ;
often as subst., enough, suffi-
cient ; *also as adj.,* enough,
sufficient, satisfactory.

satis-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum,
do enough ; make amends ;
apologize.

saucius, a, um, wounded.

saxum, I, N., stone, rock.

scāla, ae, F., ladder.

scandō, ere, climb, mount, as-
cend.

scapha, ae, F., skiff, small boat.

scientia, ae, F., knowledge.

scilicet, adv., evidently.

scindō, ere, scidi, scissum, tear
down.

sciō, Ire, ivi, itum, know.

Scipiō, -ōnis, M., 1. Publius
Cornelius Scipio, *consul in 218*
B.C. 2. *His son,* Publius Cor-
nelius Africanus Major, *the*
conqueror of Hannibal. 3.
Publius Cornelius Scipio Nas-
ica, *consul in 191 B.C.*

scitum, I, N., decree.

scribō, ere, scripsi, scriptum,
write, state.

scūtum, I, N., shield.

Scythae, ārum, M. plur., the
Scythians, *a people dwelling*
north of the Euxine Sea.

sē, from sui.

sēcūs, from secus.

secundus, a, um, second ; fa-
vorable.

secus, adv. (comparative sēcūs),

- otherwise; *nihilō sēclūs*, none the less, nevertheless.
- secūtus*, a, um, *from sequor*.
- sed*, conj., but, however.
- sēdecim*, sixteen.
- sēdēs*, is, F., seat; abode, home, settlement.
- Segontiaci*, ōrum, M. plur., the Segontiaci, a tribe in Britain.
- Segov-ax*, -actis, M., Segovax, a king ruling in Kent.
- sēgregō*, āre, āvi, ātum, shut out, exclude.
- sē-jungō*, ere, -jūxi, -jūctum, separate, divide.
- sēmīta*, ae, F., path, by-path.
- semper*, adv., always, at all times, ever.
- Semprōnius*, I, M., Sempronius, see Gracchus.
- senātus*, ūs, M., senate; audience of the Senate.
- senectūs*, -tūtis, F., old age.
- senex*, senis, M., old man; as adj., old, aged.
- sententia*, ae, F., opinion, way of thinking; decision; *sententiam ferre dē*, to pass judgment on.
- sentiō*, Ire, sēnsi, sēnsus, feel, be aware, perceive, learn, discover; hold views, have opinions.
- sēparō*, āre, āvi, ātum, separate; *perf. part. pass. sēparātus*, a, um, as adj., separate.
- sepeliō*, Ire, Ivi (II), sepultum, bury, inter.
- septem*, seven.
- septentrīō*, -ōnis, M. (chiefly in plur.), the seven stars of the constellation of the Great Bear; hence the north.
- Septimius*, I, M., Lucius Septimius, an officer who slew Pompey.
- septimus*, a, um, seventh.
- septingenti*, ae, a, seven hundred.
- septuāgēsīmus*, a, um, seventieth.
- septuāgintā*, seventy.
- sepplerum*, I, N., tomb.
- sepultus*, a, um, *from sepeliō*.
- Sēquanus*, a, um, Sequanian, of the Sequani; M. as subst., a Sequanian; in plur., the Sequani, a tribe in Gaul north of 'the Province.'
- sequor*, I, secūtus sum, follow, pursue, attend.
- sermō*, -ōnis, M., conversation; language.
- serō*, ere, sēvi, satum, sow, plant.
- serpens*, -entis, M. or F., serpent, snake.
- Servilius*, I, M., Servilius, a Roman family name.
- serviō*, Ire, Ivi, Itum, be subject; be a slave to; follow blindly; devote one's self to; with dat.
- servitūs*, -tūtis, F., bondage, slavery, subjection.
- Servius*, I, M., Servius, a Roman prenomēn.
- servō*, āre, āvi, ātum, save; keep, maintain, observe, watch.
- servulus*, I, M., diminutive of servus, young slave, slave.
- servus*, I, M., slave.
- sescenti*, ae, a, six hundred.
- sēsē*, *from sul*.
- seu*, see sive.
- sēvocō*, āre, āvi, ātum, call aside.
- sex*, six.
- sexāgēni*, ae, a, sixty (each).
- sexāgintā*, sixty.
- sextus*, a, um, sixth.
- sī*, conj., if, even if; in case, to see whether.
- sibi*, *from sul*.

sic, adv., thus, in this way ; so, in such a way.

siccitās, -tātis, F., drying up.

Sicilia, ae, F., Sicily.

significātiō, -ōnis, F., intimation, announcement, signal.

significō, āre, āvi, ātum, indicate, show ; mean, signify.

signum, I, N., signal ; standard.

silentium, I, N., quiet, silence.

Silēnus, I, M., Silenus, a Greek historian.

silva, ae, F., wood, forest.

silvestris, e, wooded.

similis, e, like, similar.

simul, adv., at the same time ; also ; along with, in one's company or society ; **simul . . .**

simul, both . . . and ; **simul**

atque, or sometimes **simul**

alone, as soon as.

simulācrum, I, N., image, shadow, reflection.

simulātiō, -ōnis, F., pretence, deceit.

simulō, āre, āvi, ātum, pretend.

sine, prep. with *abl.*, without, free from.

singillatim, adv., singly, one by one.

singularis, e, extraordinary, unparalleled, remarkable ; in *plur.*, one by one, in small detachments, in scattered groups.

singuli, ae, a, one each, one at a time, one by one ; often freely severally, singly, individually.

sinister, tra, trum, left ; *fem.*

sinistra, as subst., left hand

(*sc. manus*).

sinō, ere, sivi, situm, allow, permit.

sitiō, ire, ivi, thirst, be thirsty.

situs, a, um, situated, lying.

sive or seu, conj., or if ; **sive . . . sive**, whether . . . or, either . . . or.

socer, eri, M., father-in-law.

societās, -tātis, F., alliance, league.

socius, I, M., ally.

sōl, sōlis, M., sun ; **oriēns sōl**, the east ; **occidēns sōl**, the west.

sōlācium, I, N., comfort, consolation.

soleō, ēre, solitus sum, be accustomed.

sōlitudō, -dinis, F., solitude, wilderness.

solllicitō, āre, āvi, ātum, stir up, tempt, try to influence, tamper with, bribe, try to win over.

Solōn, -ōnis, M., Solon, a famous Athenian law-giver.

solum, adv., only, merely, alone.

solus, a, um, alone, only.

solvō, ere, solvi, solūtum, loose, open ; free, exempt ; with or without **nāvēs**, weigh anchor, set sail.

sordidus, a, um, unclean, mean, humble.

soror, -ōris, F., sister.

Sōsilus, I, M., Sosilus, a Spartan historian.

spatium, I, N., space, extent, distance ; interval (*whether of space or time*) ; time, length, duration.

speciēs, ēi, F., appearance, form.

spectāculum, I, N., sight, spectacle.

spectō, āre, āvi, ātum, look, face, slope, lie ; have an aim or object.

speculātōrius, a, um, of a spy, for spying, reconnoitring.

speculum, I, N., mirror.

spērō, āre, āvi, ātum, hope ; hope for, expect.

spēs, ei, F., hope.

spoliō, āre, āvi, ātum, strip, deprive, despoil.

- spontis** (*gen.*), **sponte** (*abl.*), *defective noun, F.*; in *abl.*, of one's own accord, voluntarily.
- Spūrinna**, *ae, M.*, **Spurinna**, a Roman general.
- Spurius**, *I, M.*, **Spurius**, a Roman *praenomen*.
- stabiļlō**, *ire, Ivi, Itum*, make steady or firm.
- stabilitās**, *-tātis, F.*, steadiness, firmness.
- statim**, *adv.*, at once, immediately, straightway.
- statiō**, *-ōnis, F.*, post, guard, outpost.
- statua**, *ae, F.*, statue.
- stat-uō**, *ere, -ui, -ūtum*, decide, determine.
- statūra**, *ae, F.*, stature, size.
- ster-uō**, *ere, -sprāvi, strātum*, scatter; knock down, overthrow.
- stilus**, *I, M.*, style, pen.
- stipendiārius**, *a, um*, tributary.
- stō**, *āre, steti, statum*, stand, remain standing.
- strāgēs**, *is, F.*, confusion, confused mass; slaughter, defeat.
- streptus**, *ūs, M.*, noise, rattling.
- strūctūra**, *ae, F.*, gallery, mine.
- struō**, *ere, struxi, strūctum*, build, raise.
- studeō**, *ēre, ui, strive*, be eager for, pay attention.
- studium**, *I, N.*, zeal, eagerness, enthusiasm.
- stultē**, *adv.*, foolishly, stupidly.
- suāvitās**, *-tātis*, sweetness, attractiveness.
- sub**, *prep.* 1. *with abl.*, under, beneath, near to, close to, at the foot of; at. 2. *with acc.*, close to, close up to.
- subāctus**, *a, um*, *from subigō*.
- sub-dūcō**, *ere, -dūxi, -ductum*, draw off; draw up, haul up, beach.
- subductiō**, *-ōnis, F.*, hauling on shore, beaching.
- subēgi**, *from subigō*.
- sub-eō**, *-ire, -ii (Ivi), -itum*, draw near, advance; go under, enter; undergo, encounter.
- suberam**, *subesse, from subsum*.
- sub-fodiō**, *ere, -fōdi, -fossam*, stab from beneath or in the belly.
- sub-igō**, *ere, -ēgi, -actum*, subdue, overcome, subjugate.
- subitō**, *adv.*, suddenly.
- subitus**, *-a, um*, sudden.
- sub-jiciō**, *ere, -jēci, -jectum*, place beneath; place close to; expose; *in pass.*, lie near, lie close by.
- sublātus**, *a, um*, *from tollō*.
- subleuius**, *a, um*, built on piles; **Pōns Subleuius**, a wooden bridge over the Tiber, the oldest of the Roman bridges.
- sublūstris**, *e*, with a faint light, dark.
- subministrō**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, supply, furnish.
- submittō**, *ere, -misi, -missum*, send (to aid), send to one's aid.
- sub-moveō**, *ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum*, drive off or away.
- sub-sequor**, *I, -secutus sum*, follow (closely), follow up.
- subsidiū**, *I, N.*, aid, support, relief; reserves, reinforcements; **subsidia comparāre**, provide resources, make provision.
- sub-sistō**, *ere, -stiti, stay*; hold.
- sub-sum**, *-esse, -fui*, be near, be close at hand; be at the bottom, lie concealed.
- sub-veniō**, *ire, -vēni, -ventum*, come to aid, aid (*with dat.*).

sue-cēdō, ere, -cessi, -cessum,
succeed, take the place of, re-
lieve, *with dat.*; come close
up, approach, advance, come
next, adjoin.

sue-cido, ere, -cidi, -cisum, cut
down, cut through.

sue-cumbō, ere, -cubi, -cubi-
tum, yield, submit.

sue-currā, ere, -curri, -cur-
sum, run to aid, run to the
rescue of (*with dat.*).

sudis, is, F., stake.

Suēbi, ōrum, M. plur., the
Suebi, a German tribe on the
Rhine.

suf-ficiō, ere, -fēci, -fectum,
choose as successor, elect in
one's stead.

suffrāgium, I, N., vote, voice,
suffrage.

Sugambri, ōrum, M. plur., the
Sugambri, a German tribe on
the Rhine.

sui, sibi, sē or sēsē, reflex. pron.,
himself, herself, itself, them-
selves; him, her, it, them;
inter sē, one another, (to,
with, from, *etc.*), one another.

Sulpicius, I, M. 1. Publius Sul-
picius Galba, *consul in 200*
B.C. **2.** Sulpicius Blitho, a
Roman historian. **3.** Pub-
licius Sulpicius Rufus, *one of*
Cæsar's lieutenants.

sum, esse, fui, be, exist, prove;
with gen., belong to, be the
part or mark of.

summa, æ, F., total; chief part;
chief control, chief command,
management, supremacy, *chief-*
ly with imperil.

summum, I, N., top, summit.

summus, a, um, superlative of
superus, highest, greatest,
chief, supreme, very great,
very high, extreme, most im-

portant, perfect, entire, all;
highest part of, top of, top.

sūmō, ere, sūmpsi, sūmptum,
take; get, obtain.

superbus, a, um, proud,
haughty.

superincidēns, -entis, falling
from above, falling on.

superior, ius, comparative of
superus, higher, upper; for-
mer, previous; superior, more
successful, victorious, stronger.

superō, āre, āvi, ātum, con-
quer, defeat, overcome; sur-
pass, excel, overmatch; sail
around, double.

super-stes, -stitis, surviving.

super-sum, -esse, -fui, be over,
remain, be left; survive.

sup-plex, -plicis, M., suppliant.
supplicatō, -ōnis, F., thanks-
giving.

supplicium, I, N., punishment
(usually of death); torture.

sup-primō, ere, -pressi, pres-
sum, check.

suprā, adv. and prep. with acc.,
above, before; upon; over,
more than.

sus-cipiō, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum,
undertake, enter upon.

suspicō, -ōnis, F., suspicion;
in suspiciōnem (alicui) ad-
dūcere, freely, to make (one)
suspicious of.

suspiceor, āri, ātus sum, sus-
pect.

sus-tineō, ēre, -tenui, -tentum,
withstand, meet, endure, hold
out against, bear; hold one's
own, hold one's ground; check,
rein in.

sustuli, from tollō.

suus, a, um, his, her, its, their;
his own *etc.*; **M. plur. as subst.,**

sui, ōrum, his (their) friends,
comrades, men, countrymen;

N. plur. as subst., sua, ōrum, his (their) possessions, property, belongings.

Syria, ae, F., Syria, a country in western Asia.

T

T., an abbreviation for Titus.

tabellārius, I, M., letter-carrier, messenger.

tabula, ae, F., tablet; picture, painting.

talca, ae, F., bar, rod.

talentum, I, N., talent, a Greek standard of value, varying in different states; especially the Attic talent, equal to about \$1080.

tālis, e, of such a kind, such; this, the following; this, the preceding.

tam, adv., so, so much; tam . . . quam, as or so (much) . . . as.

tamen, adv., still, however, yet, nevertheless, for all that, yet at the same time.

Tamesis, is, M., the Thames.

Tamphilus, I, M., Tamphilus, see Baebius.

tamquam, adv., as if, just as if.

tandem, adv., at length, at last.

tangō, ere, tetigi, tāctum, touch; reach; border on.

tantulus, a, um, so small, so trifling.

tantum, adv., only, merely.

tantus, a, um, so great, so large, so vast, so important, so much, such; as great, as much; N. tantum, as adv., so much, so far.

tardē, adv., slowly.

Tarentīni, ōrum, M. plur., the Tarentines, the people of Tarentum, a city on the south coast of Italy.

Tarquinius, I, M., Tarquin, the last king of Rome.

Taximagulus, I, M., Taximagulus, a king ruling in Kent.

tēctum, I, N., roof, abode, home, quarters.

tegō, ere, tēxi, tēctum, cover, hide, conceal; shelter, protect.

Tellus, I, M., Tellus, an Athenian.

tēlum, I, N., weapon, missile, dart, javelin.

temerē, adv., rashly, without cause, without good reason.

tēmō, -ōnis, M., pole, tongue (of a vehicle).

temperantia, ae, F., self-control.

temperō, āre, āvi, ātum, control; refrain; perf. part. pass.

temperātus, a, um, as adj., mild.

tempestās, -tātis, F., weather; storm, tempest.

templum, I, N., temple.

temptō, or tentō, āre, āvi, ātum, try, test, tempt.

tempus, -oris, N., time, season; age, period; occasion, opportunity, circumstances; crisis, emergency; reliquam tempus, the future.

Teneteri (or Tenetēri), ōrum, M. plur., the Teneteri, a German tribe near the mouth of the Rhine.

tendō, ere, tetendi, tēsum or tentum, make one's way, go.

tenebrae, ārum, F. plur., darkness, the shades.

tenebricōsus, a, um, dark, gloomy.

teneō, ere, ui, tentum, hold, grasp, keep, maintain; retain, detain.

tentō, see temptō.

Terentius, I, M., Caius Terentius Varro, consul in 216 B.C.

- tergum**, *I, N.*, back, rear ;
tergum vertere, *or dare*,
 turn and flee, take to flight ;
a tergō, in the rear.
- terra**, *ae, F.*, earth, land ; *in ter-
 ris*, in the world ; on earth ;
orbis terrarum, the world.
- terreō**, *ēre, ul, itum*, alarm.
- terrestria**, *e*, land, of the land.
- terrītō**, *āre, āvi, ātum*,
 frighten, terrify.
- terror**, *-ōris, M.*, terror, alarm,
 panic.
- tertiō**, *adv.*, for the third time.
- tertius**, *a, um*, third.
- testor**, *ārī, ātus sum*, declare,
 assert.
- testūdō**, *-dints, F.*, tortoise,
testudo, shelter of overlapping
 shields.
- testula**, *ae, F.*, small tile or
 potsherd, voting-tablet, ballot.
- Thēbāni**, *ōrum, M. plur.*, the
 Thebans, the people of
 Thebes, a famous city in
 Greece.
- Themistoclēs**, *is or I, M.*, The-
 mistocles, a celebrated Athe-
 nian statesman and general.
- Thermopylae**, *ārum, F. plur.*,
 Thermopylae, a famous pass
 in northern Greece.
- Thespiēnsēs**, *ium, M. plur.*, the
 people of Thespie, a town be-
 tween Athens and Thebes.
- Thūcydidēs**, *is, M.*, Thucydides,
 the great Greek historian of the
 Peloponnesian war.
- Tl.**, an abbreviation for Tiberius.
- Tiberinus**, *a, um*, of the Tiber ;
Tiberinus pater, Father Ti-
 ber, as a river god.
- Tiberis**, *is, M.*, the Tiber, the
 river on which Rome is situ-
 ated.
- Tiberius**, *I, M.*, Tiberius, a
 Roman *prænomen*.
- timeō**, *ēre, ul*, fear, be afraid.
- timor**, *-ōris, M.*, fear, alarm,
 dread, panic.
- Tiryna**, *-ynthia, F.*, Tiryna, a
 city in the Peloponnesus.
- Titurius**, *I, M.*, Quintus Tituri-
 us Sabinus, one of Caesar's
 lieutenants.
- Titus**, *I, M.*, Titus, a Roman
prænomen.
- tollō**, *ere, sustuli, sublatum*,
 raise, lift up ; take on board ;
 take away, remove ; destroy,
 kill, slay.
- tormentum**, *I, N.*, engine, hurl-
 ing-machine (for throwing large
 missiles).
- Torquātus**, *I, M.*, Torquatus,
 the name of a famous Roman
 family.
- torquis**, *is, M. and F.*, necklace,
 collar.
- tot**, *indeclinable*, so many.
- totidem**, *indeclinable*, just as
 many, the same number of.
- tōtus**, *a, um*, whole, entire, all ;
 often rendered freely by en-
 tirely, altogether.
- trā-dō**, *ere, -didī, -ditum*, hand
 over, give up, surrender ; hand
 down.
- trā-ducō**, *ere, -dūxi, -ductum*,
 lead across, bring over ; lead
 through.
- trājectus**, *ūs, M.*, crossing, pass-
 age, route.
- trānō**, *āre, āvi, ātum*, swim
 over, swim across.
- tranquillitās**, *-tātis, F.*, calm.
- trāns**, *prep. with acc.*, across,
 over, beyond, on the other
 side of, to the other side of.
- transāctus**, *a, um*, from *trāns-
 igō*.
- trāns-ducō**, *ere, -dūxi, -duc-
 tum*, lead across.
- trāns-eō**, *ire, -ii (-ivi), -itum*,
 cross, cross over, go or come
 over.

- trans-ferō, ferre, -tull, -lātum,** transfer.
- trans-igō, ere, -ēgi, -āctum,** complete; *in pass.*, be completed, pass, go by.
- transitus, ūs, M.,** passing over, crossing.
- translātus, from transferō.**
- transmarinus, a, um,** from beyond the sea.
- transmissus, ūs, M.,** passage, distance across.
- transportō, āre, āvi, ātum,** carry, lead, bring, or take over; convey across.
- Transrhēnānus, a, um,** living across the Rhine (*from Gaul*); *M. plur. as subst.*, the people across the Rhine.
- Trasumēnus, I, M.,** Trasumenus, *a lake in Etruria.*
- Trebia, ae, M.,** Trebia, *a river in northern Italy.*
- Trebōnius, I, M.,** Caius Trebonius, *one of Caesar's lieutenants.*
- trecenti, ae, a,** three hundred.
- trepidō, āre, āvi, ātum,** be in confusion, be in a panic.
- trepidus, a, um,** alarmed, terrified.
- trēs, tria,** three.
- Trēveri, ōrum, M. plur.,** the Treveri, *a tribe in north-eastern Gaul, on the Rhine.*
- Triboci, ōrum, M. plur.,** the Triboci, *a German tribe on the Rhine.*
- tribūnus, I, M.,** tribune; **tribūnus militum,** an officer in the Roman army; **tribūnus plēbis,** a civil magistrate at Rome.
- trib-uō, ere, -ui, -ūtum,** grant, bestow, devote; ascribe.
- triduum, I, N.,** a space of three days, three days.
- triennium, I, N.,** a space of three years, three years.
- trigintā,** thirty.
- Trinobantēs, um, M. plur.,** the Trinobantes, *a tribe in Britain.*
- tripartitō, adv.,** in three divisions.
- tripl-ex, -leis,** triple, threefold.
- triquetrus, a, um,** triangular.
- trirēmis, is, F.,** trireme, galley, *a vessel with three banks of oars.*
- tristis, e,** sad, sorrowful; **tristissimus,** with the saddest of hearts.
- Troezen, -ēnis, F.,** Troezen, *a city in the Peloponnesus.*
- tropaeum, I, N.,** trophy; victory.
- trucidō, āre, āvi, ātum,** cut down, slaughter, slay.
- truncus, I, M.,** trunk.
- trux, truciis,** fierce, grim, stern.
- tū, tui,** thou, you.
- tuba, ae, F.,** trumpet.
- tueor, ēri, tūtus (or tutus) sum,** protect, guard, keep safe, defend.
- tull, from ferō.**
- tum, adv.,** then, at that time, thereupon; **cum . . . tum,** both . . . and, not only . . . but also.
- tun-ulus, I, M.** hill.
- turgidulus, a, um,** swollen.
- turma, ae, F.,** squadron, troop.
- turpis, e,** disgraceful, unbecoming, base.
- turris, is, F.,** tower; dove-cote.
- tūs, tūris, N.,** incense.
- tūtō, adv.,** safely, without danger.
- tūtum, I, N.,** position of safety, safety.
- tūtus, a, um,** safe, secure.
- tuus, a, um,** thy, your.

U

ubi, adv., when, as soon as ; where.

Ubi, *ŏrum*, *M. plur.*, the Ubii, a tribe in Germany on the Rhine.

ulciscor, *I*, *ultus sum*, punish, avenge.

ullus, *a, um*, any; *as subst.*, anyone.

ulterior, *ius*, *comparative*, farther, more remote; *M. plur. as subst.*, *ulterlŏrēs*, those more remote.

ultimus, *a, um*, *superlative*, farthest, most distant.

ultrŏ, *adv.*, voluntarily, without provocation.

umbra, *ae, F.*, shadow, shade.

umerus, *I, M.*, shoulder.

umquam, *adv.*, ever, at any time.

unā, *adv.*, at the same time, together, along.

unde, *adv.*, whence, from which.

undēviginti, nineteen.

undique, *adv.*, from (or on) all sides, from every quarter.

unguentum, *I, N.*, ointment, perfume.

unguis, *is, M.*, nail; claw, talon.

unicus, *a, um*, sole; unparalleled, unequalled.

universus, *a, um*, all, all together, whole, united, in a body.

unus, *a, um*, one, a single; alone, only; one and the same; *ad unum*, to a man.

urbs, *urbis, F.*, city, town.

urgeŏ, *ĕre, ursi*, press hard; *in pass.*, be hard pressed.

Usipetēs, *um, M. plur.*, the Usipetes, a German tribe near the mouth of the Rhine.

usque, *adv.*, all the way, even, as far as; all the time, always.

usus, *a, um*, from *utor*.

usus, *ūs, M.*, use, experience, practice; advantage, service,

need, necessity; *ūsū venire*, come about, happen; *ex ūsū*, of advantage, advantageous; *ūsul esse*, be of service, be an advantage, be useful.

ut or uti, that in order that, so that; *as*, like; *how*; *when*; *with the relative*, seeing that, since.

uter, utra, utrum, which (of two).

uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two), both; *M. plur.*, both sides; both.

uti, *see ut*.

utilis, *e*, useful, serviceable.

utilitās, -tātis, F., advantage, usefulness, service, utility.

utor, *I, ūsus sum*, use, employ, have, make use of; experience, find; show, display; adopt, follow, avail one's self of; *with abl.*

utpote, *adv.* namely, as being, inasmuch as.

utroque, *adv.*, in both ways, on both sides, on both elements.

ūva, *ae, F.*, grape, bunch of grapes.

uxor, -ŏris, F., wife.

V

Vacalus, *I, M.*, the Vacalus (*now the Waal*), a branch of the Rhine, near its mouth.

vacŏ, *āre, āvi, ātum*, be unoccupied, lie waste.

vacuus, *a, um*, empty.

vādŏ, *ere, go*, advance.

vadum, *I, N.*, ford, shoal, shallow; pool.

vagor, āri, ātus sum, wander, roam about.

valēns, -entis, strong, powerful.

valeŏ, *ĕre, vi, itum*, be strong, be powerful, have influence, have weight; have force, mean.

- Valerius, I, M., Marcus Valerius Corvinus, a famous Roman.**
- valētūdō, -dinis, F.,** state of health ; illness.
- vallēs, is, F.,** valley.
- vallum, I, N.,** rampart, entrenchment, wall.
- varius, a, um,** different, varied, changing.
- Vārus, I, M., Publius Quintilius Varus, a Roman general.**
- vās, vāsīs, N. plur., vāsa, ōrum,** vessel, jar.
- vāstō, āre, āvi, ātum,** lay waste, ravage.
- vāstus, a, um,** immense, vast.
- vectigal, -ālis, N.,** tax, tribute, revenue.
- vectigālis, e,** tributary.
- vectōrius, a, um,** for carrying ; **vectōrium nāvīgium,** a transport ship.
- vehementer, adv.,** vigorously.
- vehiculum, I, N.,** carriage.
- vehō, ere, vexi, vectum,** carry ; *in pass.,* ride, sail.
- Vēll, ōrum, M. plur., Veii, an ancient city of Etruria.**
- vel, conj.,** or ; **vel . . . vel,** either . . . or.
- velle, from volō.**
- vêlōx, -ōcis,** swift, active.
- vêlum, I, N.,** sail.
- velut or veluti, adv.,** just as if, just as though.
- vênātiō, -ōnis, F.,** hunting, hunt, the chase.
- vên-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum,** sell.
- venēnātus, a, um,** poisonous, venomous.
- venenum, I, N.,** poison.
- Venetī, ōrum, M. plur.,** the Veneti, a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.
- Veneticus, a, um,** of or with the Veneti.
- venia, ae, F.,** pardon, favor, indulgence ; **veniam dare,** consent.
- veniō, ire, vēni, ventum,** come, go.
- venitō, āre, āvi, ātum,** come often, resort, visit.
- ventus, I, M.,** wind.
- Venus, Veneris, F.,** the goddess of love and beauty ; *plur.,* Venerēs, Graces.
- Venusia, ae, F.,** Venusia, a town in Apulia, in Italy.
- vēr, vēris, N.,** spring.
- verbum, I, N.,** word ; **verba dare,** cheat, deceive ; **verba facere,** speak.
- Vercingetorix, -igis, Vercingetorix, king of the Arverni.**
- vērē, adv.,** truly, accurately.
- verecundia, ae, F.,** reserve, modesty.
- vereor, ēri, itus sum,** fear, be apprehensive, be afraid of.
- vergō, ere, lie, face, incline.**
- vērō, adv.,** in truth, indeed, in fact ; but, however, moreover ; *often untranslatable.*
- versor, āri, ātus sum,** be engaged in, live.
- ver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum,** turn ; **terga vertere,** turn and flee, take to flight ; **puppēs vertere,** turn the ships, wheel about.
- vērūm, conj.,** however, but.
- vērus, a, um,** true ; real, genuine ; accurate ; right, fair, just, reasonable.
- vester, tra, trum,** your.
- vestigium, I, N.,** footprint ; track ; spot.
- vestiō, ire, ivi, itum,** clothe, dress ; *in pass. freely,* wear.
- vestitus, ūs, M.,** clothing.
- vestis, is, F.,** clothing, clothes ; garment, robe.

vet-ō, āre, -ul, -itum, forbid, bid or order . . . not.
vet-us, -eris, old.
vēxillum, I, N., banner, flag (*a red banner was the signal for battle*).
vexō, āre, āvi, ātum, ravage, overrun.
vi, from vis.
via, ae, F., way, road, route, journey.
viātor, -ōris, M., traveller.
viēsimus, a, um, twentieth.
vicis, gen. (nom. not found) F., change, turn; in vicem, in turn.
viol, from vineō.
violēs, adv., twenty times.
victōria, ae, F., victory.
victrix, -icis, F., victorious.
victus, a, um, from vineō.
victus, ūs, M., life, living, manner of living.
vicus, I, M., village.
videō, ēre, vidī, visum, see, perceive; in pass., be seen, be in sight, appear, seem, seem good or best.
vigil, -ilis, M., watch, sentry.
vigilia, ae, F., watch (*one-fourth of the night time*).
viginti, twenty.
vigor, -ōris, M., strength, activity.
vinclō, Ire, vinxī, vinctum, bind.
vineō, ēre, vici, victum, conquer, defeat.
vinctus, a, um, from vinclō.
vinculum, I, N., chain; often in plur., prison.
vinea, ae, F., vineyard; vine.
vinum, I, N., wine.
vir, viri, M., man.
virēs, ium, from vis.
virga, ae, F., rod, stick.
virgō, -ginis, F., maiden.
virginālis, e, a maiden's, maidenly.

virtūs, -tūtis, F., manliness, valor, bravery, courage; virtue, excellence, good quality; energy, spirit, conduct.
vis, vim, vi, plur. virēs, ium, F., force, strength, power, energy, might; violence, fury, attack, assault; plur., strength, might, powers, bodily vigor, powers of endurance.
visus, a, um, from videō.
visus, ūs, M., sight, appearance, spectacle.
vita, ae, F., life, course of life.
vitium, I, N., fault, failing.
vitō, āre, āvi, ātum, avoid, escape.
vitrum, I, N., woad (*a plant used for dyeing*), dyer's weed.
vividus, a, um, vigorous, full of life or energy.
vivō, ere, vixi, victum, live.
vivus, a, um, alive, live, living.
vix, adv., scarcely, barely
vixi, from vivō.
vocō, āre, āvi, ātum, call, summon, invite.
volō, velle, volui, wish, be willing, desire, want, intend.
Volō, -ōnis, M. (see Mānlius).
voluntās, -tātis, F., wish, inclination; good-will; disposition, attitude.
voluptās, -tātis, F., pleasure, delight.
Volusēnus, I, M., Caius Volusenus, a military tribune with Caesar.
Vorēnus, I, M., Lucius Vorenus, a centurion with Caesar.
vōs, you, plur. of tū.
Vosges, I, M., the Vosges Mountains, in eastern Gaul.
vōx, vōcis, F., voice.
vulgus, I, N., the common people, the crowd, the masses.
vulnerō, āre, āvi, ātum, wound.

vulnus, -eris, N., wound; blow.
vulpēcula, ae, F., little fox, fox.
vulpēs, is, F., fox.
vultus, ūs, M., expression, look;
 countenance, face.

X

Xanthippus, I, M., Xanthippus,
 a Spartan general.

Xerxēs, is, M., Xerxes, king of
 Persia, from 485 to 465 B.C.

Z

Zama, ae, F., Zama, a town of
 Numidia, in northern Africa.
Zephyrus, I, M., the west wind.
Zeuxis, is, M., Zeuxis, a cele-
 brated Greek painter.

II. ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A

abandon, prō-dō, ere, -dici,
 -ditum.

ability, ingenium, I, N.

able, be—, possum, posse, potui.

abound in, abundō, āre, āvi,
 ātum, *w. abl.*

1. **about, (=concerning), dē,**
prep. w. abl.

2. **about, with numerals, circi-**
 ter, *adv.*

3. **about, to be—to, use the fut.**
part. active with sum.

absent, absēns, absentis.

accept, ac-cipiō, ere, -cēpi, -cep-
 tum.

access, aditus, ūs, M.

accomplish, prō-ficiō, ere, -fēcī,
 -fectum; cōn-ficiō, ere, -fēcī,
 -fectum.

accomplishments, hūmānitās,
 -tātis, *F. (in the sing.).*

accordance, in—with, prō, prep.
w. abl., or abl. alone.

account, on—of, propter, prep.
w. acc.

1. **accustomed, be—, cōnsuēvi,**
 isse (*perf. tense of cōnsuēscō*).

2. **accustomed, become—, cōn-**
 suēscō, ere, -suēvi.

acquainted, become—with, cō-
 gnōscō, ere, -gnōvi, -gnitum,
w. acc.

acquit, ab-solvō, ere, -solvī, -so-
 lūtum.

1. **across, trāns, prep. w. acc.**

2. **across, lead—, trāns-dūcō,**
 ere, -dūxi, -ductum.

action, course of—, rēs, rei, F.

added, be—, third sing. active of
 ac-cēdō, ere, -cessī, cessum.

adjacent, finitimus, a, um.

Aduatuci, Aduatuci, ōrum, M.

1. **advance, prō-cēdō, ere, -cessī,**
 -cessum; prō-gredior, ī, -gres-
 sus sum; signa ferō, ferre,
 tuli, lātum.

2. **advance, noun, adventus, ūs,**
 M.

3. **advance, send in—, prae-**
 mittō, ere, -misi, -missum.

4. **advance guard, primum ag-**
 men (agminis, N.).

1. **advantage, ūsus, ūs, M.**

2. **advantage, take—of, ūtor, ī,**
 ūsus sum, *w. abl.*

3. **advantage, to any—, satis**
 commodē, *adv.*

advice, ask—of, cōnsul-ō, ere,
 -ui, -tum, *w. acc.*

advise, admoneō, ēre, uī, itum.

Aedui, Aeduī, ōrum, M.

affair, rēs, rei, F.

1. **after**, *prep.*, post, *w. acc.*

2. **after**, *conj.*, postquam, cum ;
or use perfect participle.

afterwards postea.

afraid, be—of, vereor, ērī, itus sum.

again, rursus.

against, in, *prep. w. acc.*; with
contendō, ad, *w. acc.*; with *bel-*
lum gerō, cum, *w. abl.*

agency, through the—of, per,
prep. w. acc.

ago, abhinc.

agree, cōn-sentiō, ire, -sēnsī,
-sēnsu.

1. **aid**, *verb*, juvō, āre, jūvī,
jūtum, *w. acc.*; suc currō, ere,
-currī, -cursum, *w. dat.*

2. **aid**, *noun*, auxilium, ī, N.;
subsidium, ī, N.

3. **aid**, come to—of, auxiliō ven-
iō, venire, vēnī, ventum, *w. dat.*

4. **aid**, go to—of, auxiliō eō, ire,
iī (ivī), itum, *w. dat.*

5. **aid**, send to—of, auxiliō
mittō, ere, misi, missum, *w.*
dat. and acc.

alarm, per-moveō, ēre, -mōvī,
mōtum; com-moveō, ēre,
-mōvi, -mōtum.

alertness, diligentia, ae, F.

Alesia, Alesia, ae, F.

all, omnis, e.

allegiance, officium, ī, N.

Allobroges, Allobrogēs, um, M.

1. **allow**, patior, ī, passus sum.

2. **allowed**, be—, licet, licēre,
licuit, *impersonal w. dat.*

ally, socius, ī, M.

almost, paene.

alone, sōlus, a, um; ūnus, a,
um.

aloof, hold—, absum, esse, āfuī.

already, jam, *adv.*

although, etsī; quamquam;
quamvis.

always, semper.

ambassador, lēgātus, ī, M.

ambush, insidiae, ārum, F., *pl.*
plural only.

among, inter, *prep. w. acc.*

ancestors, mājōrēs, um, M.

1. **anchor**, weigh—, = set sail.

2. **anchor**, at—, in ancoris.

ancient, vetus, -eris.

and, et, -que, atque, ac.

angry, be—with, irāscor, ī, irātus
sum, *w. dat.*

announce, nūntiō, āre, āvī,
ātum.

annoyed, be—, graviter ferō,
ferre, tulī, lātum.

1. **another**, alius, a, ud.

2. **another**, one—, inter sē.

1. **answer**, *verb*, re-spondeō, ēre,
-spondī, -spōnsu.

2. **answer**, *noun*, respōnsu,
ī, N.

3. **answer**, give (or make)—,
= answer, *verb.*

1. **any**, ūllus, a, um; *after sī*,
quī (quis), qua, quod; = any
amount of, quivīs, quaevis,
quidvis or quodvis.

2. **any one**, quisquam; *with a*
negative use nēmō = no one;
after sī, quis.

3. **anything**, ūlla rēs, quid-
quam; *after sī*, quid.

anxiety, without—, aequō ani-
mō.

apart, keep—, dis-tineō, ēre,
-tinuī, -tentu.

apologize, satis-faciō, ere, -fēcī,
-factu.

appearance, figūra, ae, F.;
speciēs, ēī, F.; aspectus, ūs, M.

apprised, become—of, cō-gnōs-
cō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, *w.*
acc.

1. **approach**, *verb*, ac-cēdō, ere,

-cessi, -cessum ; appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātum, *w. dat.*

2. **approach**, noun, adventus, ūs, M.

approval, cōnsēnsus, ūs, M. (*used of several persons*) ; voluntās, -tātis, F.

Arar, Arar, Araris, M.

Ardennes, Arduenna, ae, F.

ardor, studium, ī, N.

Ariovistus, Ariovistus, I, M.

arise, co-orior, īrī, -ortus sum.

armed, armātus, a, um.

armor, arma, ōrum, N., *in plur. only.*

arms, arma, ōrum, N., *in plur. only.*

army, exercitus, ūs, M.

around, circum, *prep. w. acc.*

arouse, cōfirmō, āre, āvī, ātum.

arrange, cōstit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum.

arrangement, rēs, rei, F.

arrival, adventus, ūs, M.

arrow, sagitta, ae, F.

1. **as**=since, cum.

2. **as**, after *idem*, quī, quāe, quod.

3. **as**=while, dum, cum, or use *present participle*.

4. **as**, sign of apposition, *untranslated* ; use *appositive* or *dative of purpose*.

5. **as soon as**, simul atque.

6. **as—as possible**, quam with *superl.*

7. **as to**, use the *genitive*.

ascend, ascendō, ere, ascendī, ascēsum.

ascertain, cō-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum.

ashamed, be—, pudet, *impersonal*.

1. **aside**, lay—, dē-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum.

2. **aside**, turn—, ā-vertō, ere -vertī, -versum.

1. **ask*** (*of making a request*), petō, ere, petivī, petītum ; rogō, āre, āvī, ātum.

2. **ask*** (*of asking a question*), quaerō, ere, quaesivī, quaesitum ; rogō, āre, āvī, ātum.

3. **ask for**, petō, ere, petivī, petītum, *w. acc.*

4. **ask advice of**, cōnsul-ō, ere -uī, -tum, *w. acc.*

assemble (*intransitive*), conveniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum.

assembly, concilium, ī, N.

assist, sub-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *w. dat.* ; juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtum, *w. acc.*

1. **assistance**, auxilium, ī, N.

2. **assistance**, go to—of, auxiliō eō, īre, īī (ivī), itum, *w. dat.*

3. **assistance**, send to—of, auxiliō mittō, ere, mīsi, missum, *w. dat. and acc.*

1. **at**, of time when, use *abl.*

2. **at**, of place where, use *locative*, or in and *abl.*

3. **at**, after *conjiciō*, in, *w. acc.*

4. **at once**, statim, *adv.*

5. **at**, in phrase throw one's self at feet, ad, *w. acc.*

Athens, Athēnae, ārum, F., *in plur. only.*

1. **attack**, verb, (*of places*), oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātum ; (*of men*), ag-gredior, ī, -gressus sum ; ad-orior, īrī, -ortus sum ; impetum facere in, *w. acc.*

2. **attack**, noun, impetus, ūs, M.

1. **attempt**, verb (=try, *w. infinitive*), cōnor, ārī, ātus sum ; (=make an attempt on), temp-tō, āre, āvī, ātum.

2. **attempt**, make an—, cōnor, ārī, ātus sum.

* The person who is asked is with *rogo* in the acc., with *peto* in the abl. with *ao*, with *quaero* in the abl. with *ex* or *ab*.

1. **avenge**, *ulciscor*, I, *ultus sum*.
2. **avenge one's self on** (*or upon*), *ulciscor*, I, *ultus sum*, *w. acc.*
- await**, *expectō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.
- away, take—**, *tollō*, *ere*, *sustulī*, *sublātum*.

B

- back**, *tergum*, I, N.
- baggage**, *baggage animals*, *impedimenta*, *ōrum*, N. *plur.*
- band**, *manus*, *ūs*, F.
- bank**, *ripa*, *ae*, F.
- bar**, *tālea*, *ae*, F.
- barbarian**, *barbarus*, I, M.
1. **battle**, *proelium*, I, N.; *pūgna*, *ae*, F.
 2. **battle array**, *line of battle*, *aciēs*, *ēī*, F.
- be**, *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*; *to express distance*, *use* *absum*, *abesse*, *āfuī*.
1. **bear**, *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātum*.
 2. **bear on**, *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātum*.
- beat a retreat**, *sē re-cipiō*, *ere*, *-cēpī*, *-ceptum*.
1. **because**, *quod*.
 2. **because of**, *propter*, *prep.*, *w. acc.*
- become**, *fiō*, *fieri*, *factus sum*.
1. **before**, *prep.* (*of time and place*), *ante*, *w. acc.*; (*of place*) *prō*, *w. abl.*; (*=near*) *apud*, *w. acc.*; (*with summon*) *ad*, *w. acc.*
 2. **before**, *conj.*, *antequam*, *priusquam*.
- beg**, *ōrō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.
1. **begin**, *incipiō*, *ere*; *for the perfect tenses*, *use* *coepī*, *isse*, *coeptus sum*.
 2. **begin battle**, *proelium committō*, *ere*, *-misi*, *-misum*.
- beginning**, *initium*, I, N., *or use* *primus*.
- behalf, on—of**, *prō*, *prep w. abl.*
- behold**, *videō*, *ērē*, *vīdī*, *vīsum*.

- Belgians**, *Belgae*, *ārum*, M. *plur.*
- believe**, *cre-*, *e*, *-didī*, *ditum*, *w. dat.*
- bent, become**, *sē in-flectō*, *ere*, *-flexī*, *-flexum*
- beseech**, *ōrō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*; *implōrō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*: *obsecrō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.
- beset, ob-sideō**, *ēre*, *-sēdī*, *-sesum*.
1. **best**, *optimus*, *a um*.
 2. **best armed**, *ornātissimus*, *a, um*.
- bestow upon**, *dōnō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *w. dat.*
1. **betake**, *re-cipiō*, *ere*, *-cēpī*, *-ceptum*.
 2. **betake one's self to flight**, *sē fugae mandāre*, (*mandō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*).
1. **better**, *melior*, *ius*.
 2. **better, it is—**, *praestat*, *āre*, *impersonal*.
- betray**, *prō-dō*, *ere*, *-didī*, *-ditum*.
1. **between**, *inter*, *prep. w. acc.*
 2. **between**, *be—*, *inter-cēdō*, *ere*, *-cessī*, *-cessum*, *w. inter and acc.*
- beyond**, *trāns*, *prep. w. acc.*
- Bibracte**, *Bibracte*, *is*, N.
- blind**, *vin-ciō*, *ire*, *-xī*, *-ctum*.
- bitter**, *gravis*, *e*.
- boast of**, *glōrior*, *ārī*, *ātus sum*, *w. abl.*
- Boii**, *Boii*, *ōrum*, M. *plur.*
- boldly**, *audācter*.
- boldness**, *audācia*, *ae*, F.
- bondage**, *servitūs*, *-tūtis*, F.
1. **border**, *noun*, *initium*, I, N.; *finis*, *is*, M.
 2. **border** (*=hem in*), *con-tineō*, *ēre*, *-tinuī*, *-tentum*.
- born**, *nātus*, *a, um*.
1. **both . . . and**, *et . . . et*.
 2. **both**, *uterque*, *utraque*, *utrumque*, *=each*.
 3. **both, on—sides**, *utrimque*.
- bough**, *rāmus*, I, M.

bow, arcus, ūs, M.; *abl. plur.*, arcubus.

boy, puer, erī, M.

branch, rāmus, ī, M.

brave, fortis, e.

bravely, fortiter.

bravery, virtūs, -tūtis; fortitū-dō, -dinis, F.

1. **break down**, re-scindō, ere, -scidī, -scissum.

2. **break out**, co-orior, irī, -ortus sum.

3. **break up camp**, castra moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum.

bridge, pōns, pontis, M.

1. **bring**, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.

2. **bring** (*followed by across*), trā-dūco, ere, -dūxī, -ductum.

3. **bring back** (= *lead back*), re-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum; (= *carry back*), referō, ferre, rettulī, relātum.

4. **bring word**, nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum.

5. **bring back word**, renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum.

6. **bring in** (= *collect*), comportō, āre, āvī, ātum; (= *import*), importō, āre, āvī, ātum.

7. **bring over**, transportō, āre, āvī, ātum.

8. **bring up the rear**, agmen claudō, ere, clausī, clausum.

9. **bring together**, comportō, āre, āvī, ātum; cōferō, cōferre, contulī, collātum.

Britain, Britannia, ae, F.

Briton, Britannus, ī, M.

broad, lātus, a, um.

bronze, aes, aeris, N.

brother, frāter, -tris, M.

Brutus, Brūtus, ī, M.

buffeting, contumēlia, ae, F.

build, aedificō, āre, āvī, ātum; faciō, ere, fēcī, factum.

building, aedificium, ī, N.

burden, onus, oneris, N.

1. **burn**, in-cendō, ere, -cendī, -cēsum.

2. **burn up**, com-būrō, ere, -bus-sī, -būstum.

burst in, ir-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum.

business, negōtium, ī, N.; rēs, rei, F.

1. **but**, sed.

2. **but**, = *who—not*, quīn.

3. **but, cannot—**, facere nōn posse quīn.

buy up, co-emō, ere, -ēmī, -ēptum.

by, ā, ab, *prep. w. abl.*

C

Cæsar, Caesar, -aris, M.

1. **call** (= *summon*), vocō, āre, āvī, ātum; (= *name*), appellō, āre, āvī, ātum.

2. **call together**, convocō, āre, āvī, ātum.

camp, castra, ōrum, N., *in plur. only.*

camp-follower, cālō, -ōnis, M.

can, possum, posse, potuī.

capable, be—of, possum, posse, potuī.

captive, captīvus, ī, M.

capture, capiō, ere, cēpī, captum.

care (= *carefulness*), diligentia, ae, F.; (= *object of concern*), cūra, ae, F.

carefully, diligenter.

carelessness, indiligentia, ae, F.

1. **carry**, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum (*of carrying a report*), per-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.

2. **carry down**, dē-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum.

3. **carry off**, ab-dūcō, ere, dūxī, -ductum.

4. **carry on**, gerō, ere, gessī, gestum.

5. **carry out**, cōn-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

5. carry over, transportō, āre, āvī, ātum.

case, since (or although) this is the—, quae cum ita sint.

cast, (= throw headlong), praecipitō, āre, āvī, ātum.

Casticus, Casticus, ī, M.

cattle, pecus, -oris, N.

1. cause, noun, causa, ae, F.

2. cause, verb, cūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, with gerundive.

caution, with—, cautē; with the greatest—, use superlative cautissimē.

1. cavalry, noun, equitātus, ūs, M. (in sing.); equitēs, um, M. (in plur.).

2. cavalry, adj., equester, tris, tre.

3. cavalry-man, equ-es, -itis, M.

centre, use adj. medius, a, um.

centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, M.

1. certain (= some), quīdam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam.

2. certain (= fixed), certus, a, um.

chain, vinculum, ī, N.; catēna, ae, F.

challenge, ēvocō, āre, āvī, ātum.

chance, cāsus, ūs, M.

1. change, commūtātiō, -ōnis, F.

2. change, political—, novae rēs, F. plur.

character, of such a—, tālis, e, adj.

charge, place (put) in—of, praeficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, w. acc. and dat.

charloteer, essedārius, ī, M.

1. chief, prīn-ceps, -cipis, M.; rēgulus, ī, M.

2. chief man, prīn-ceps, -cipis, M.

3. chief power, rēgnum, ī, N.; imperium, ī, N.

chiefly, māximē.

children, liberī, ōrum, M.

choose, dē-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum.

chosen, dēlēctus, a, um; ēlēctus, a, um.

circumstance, rēs, rei, F.

citizen, cīvīs, is, M.

citizenship, cīvitās, -tātis, F.

city, urbs, urbis, F.

clemency, clēmētia, ae, F.

cliff, mōns, montis, M.

1. close, verb, claudō, ere, clausī, clausum.

2. close, be—at hand, ad-sum, -esse, -fuī.

closely, angustē.

coast, ōra, ae, F.

cohort, co-hors, -hortis, F.

collect (= get together), cōgō, ere, cōgī, cōactum; col-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum; (= summon together), convocō, āre, āvī, ātum; (= carry to one place), cōferō, cōferre, contulī, collātum.

color, color, -ōris, M.

1. come, veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum.

2. come often, ventitō, āre, āvī, ātum.

3. come together, con-veniō, īrē, -vēnī, -ventum.

4. come up with, cōn-sequor, ī, secūtus sum, w. acc.

5. come upon, oc-currō, ere, -currī, -cursum, w. dat.

1. command (= order), verb, imperō, āre, āvī, ātum, w. dat.

2. command, noun (= military power), imperium, ī, N.; (= order given), imperātum, ī, N.

3. command, have—of, be in—, be at head of—, prae-sum, -esse, -fuī, w. dat.

4. command, chief—, summa (ae, F.) imperiī.

commander, imperātor, -ōris, M.

commit, faciō, ere, fēcī, factum.

Commius, Commius, ī, M.

common, commūnis, e.

communication, hold—, col-lo-
quor, I, -locūtus sum.

compare, comparō, āre, āvī,
ātum.

compel, cōgō, ere, cōēgī, cōlē-
tum.

complain, queror, I, questus
sum.

complaint, make—, queror, I,
questus sum.

complete, verb. cōn-ficiō, ere,
-fēcī, -fectum.

comrade, their comrades, suī,
ōrum, M., *plur.*

conceal, occultō, āre, āvī, ātum;
cēlō, āre, āvī, ātum.

1. **concerns, it—**, interest; rē-
fert.

2. **concern, object of—**, cūra, ae,
F.

3. **concerned, so far as I was—**,
per mē.

4. **concerning, dē**, *prep. w. abl.*

conclude (=make), faciō, ere,
fēcī, factum.

condition, condiciō, ōnis, F.

confer upon, dē-ferō, -ferre, -tu-
lī, -lātum, *w. dat.*

conference, colloquium, I, N.

confidence, fidūcia, ae, F.

confine, con-tineō, ēre, -tinuī,
tentum.

1. **confusion, tumultus**, ūs, M.

2. **confusion, throw into—**, per-
turbō, āre, āvī, ātum; **throw
into great confusion**, māg-
nopere perturbō.

conquer, vincō, ere, vīcī, vic-
tum; **superō**, āre, āvī, ātum.

consider, existimō, āre, āvī,
ātum.

Considius, Cōnsidius, I, M.

conspire, conjūrō, āre, āvī, ātum.

consul, cōnsul, cōnsulis, M.

consulship, in the—of, *use cōn-
sul in the abl. absolute.*

1. **consult, cōnsul-ō**, ere, -uī,
-tum, *w. acc.*

2. **consult (or consult for) in-
terests (welfare) of**, cōnsul-ō,
ere, -uī, -tum, *w. dat.*

consummate, summus, a, um.

contest (=battle), certānen,
-minis, N., pūgna, ae, F.; (= *war*), bellum, I, N.

continent, continēns, -entia, F.

continually, continenter.

continue, maneō, ēre, mānsī,
mānsu.

convenient, idōneus, a, um.

conversation, sermō, -ōnis, M.

1. **converse, loquor**, I, locūtus
sum.

2. **converse, hold—**, loquor, I,
locūtus sum.

1. **corn, frūmentum**, I, N.

2. **corn, supplies of—**, rēs frū-
mentāria, F., (*use the sing.*).

Cotta, Cotta, ae, M.

council, concilium, I, N.

country (=land), ager, agrī, M.;
finēs, ium, M. *plur.*; (= *ground*), locus, I, M.; (= *state*),
rēs pūblica, rei pūblicae; (= *native country*), patria, ae, F.;
(= *rural districts*), rūs, rūris,
N.

courage, virtūs, -tūtis, F.

1. **course, cursus**, ūs, M.

2. **course of action, rēs**, rei, F.

cover (=complete), cōn-ficiō, ere,
-fēcī, -fectum.

coward, ignāvus, I, M.

Crassus, Crassus, I, M.

cross, cross over, verb. trāns-eō,
-īre, -ī (ivī), -itum.

cruelty, crūdēlitas, -tātis, F.

crush, frangō, ere, frēgī, frāc-
tum; **opprimō**, ere, -pressī,
-pressum.

custom, cōnsuētūdō, -dinia, F.;
mōs, mōris, M.

cut off (=intercept or shut off),
inter-clūdō, ere, -clūsī, -clū-
sum; (= *kill*), inter-ficiō, ere,
-fēcī, -fectum.

D

danger, periculum, I, N.

dangerous, periculōsus, a, um.

dare, audeō, ēre, ausus sum.

dark-blue, caeruleus, a, um.

dart, tēlum, I, N.

date, the—of, *use clause with* quandō (= *when*).

daughter, filia, ae, F.

day, diēs, ēi, M.

day before, the—, pridie.

daybreak, prima lux, lūcis, F.

dear, cārus, a, um.

1. **death**, mors, mortis, F.

2. **death**, put to— inter-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

decide (*form a resolve*), cōstit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum ; (= *form an opinion*), iūdicō, āre, āvī, ātum ; (= *adjudicate*) dē-cernō, ere, -crēvī, -crētūm.

declare (= *assert*), cōfirmō, āre, āvī, ātum ; (= *make known*), prōnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum ; (*of declaring war*), in-dicō, ere, -dixī, -dictum.

deed, factum, I, N.

deep, altus, a, um.

1. **defeat**, verb, repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsum.

2. **defeat**, noun, proelium adversum, N. ; calamitās, -tātis, F.

defend, dē-fendō, ere, -fendī, -fēsum.

dejection, tristitia, ae, F.

delay, moror, āri, ātus sum.

delightful, iucundus, a, um.

demand, imp-erō, āre, āvī, ātum ; poscō, ere, poposci.

dense, dēnsus, a, um.

deny, negō, āre, āvī, ātum.

depart, dis-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum.

1. **departure**, discessus, ūs, M. ; profectiō, -ōnis, F.

2. **departure**, take one's—, dis-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum ; proficiscor, I, -fectus sum.

deprive, dēspoliō, āre, āvī, ātum ; (*of, expressed by abl.*).

depth, altitudō, -dinis, F.

desert, dēstit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum.

design, cōnsilium, I, N.

desire, cup-iō, ere, -ivī, -itum.

despair, be in despair, dēspērō, āre, āvī, ātum ; (*of = dē w. abl.*).

destination, reach—, locum capiō, capere, cēpi, captum.

destroy, re-scindō, ere, -scidī, -scissum.

destruction, perniciēs, ēi, F.

detain, re-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.

deter, dēterreō, ēre, uī, itum ; impediō, ire, ivī, itum.

determine, cōstit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum.

devise, capiō, ere, cēpi, captum ; in-eō, ēre, -il, -itum.

die, morior, morī, mortuus sum ; vitā (*or ē vitā*) dē-cēdō, ere, -cessī, cessum.

differ, differō, differre, distulī, dilātum.

different, alius, a, ud ; in different directions, = some in one direction, others in another.

difficult, difficilis, e.

1. **difficulty**, difficultās, -tātis, F.

2. **difficulty**, with—, vix, aegrē, adv.

3. **difficulty**, with the greatest—, aegerrimē, adv.

direct (= *order*), imperō, āre, āvī, ātum, w. dat.

1. **direction**, pars, partis, F.

2. **directions**, from all—, undique, adv. ; or use pars (= *quarter*).

3. **direction**, in what—, quam in partem.

disappointed in, dējectus, a, um, w. abl. ; repulsus, a, um, w. ab and abl.

disaster, calamitās, -tātis, F.

discharge, fungor, I, fūctus sum, *w. abl.*

disclose, osten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum, *or ostēnsam.*

disconcert, com-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.

discover, cō-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum; reperiō, īre, repperī, repertum.

disembark, ē nāvibus ē-gredior, I, -gressus sum.

disgrace, turpitūdō, -dinis, F.; dēdecus, -oris, N.

disgraceful, turpis, e.

dislodge, prō-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum.

dismay, per-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.

dismiss, dī-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum.

dispel, ex-pellō, ere, pulī, -pulsum.

disperse, dis-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum.

display, prae-stō, āre, -stitī, -stitutum *or* stātum.

displease, dis-pliceō, ēre, -plicuī, -plicitum, *w. dat.*

1. **disposition**, animus, I, M.

2. **disposition**, merciful—, clēmentia, ae, F.

dispute, contrōversia, ae, F.

1. **distance**, spatium, I, N.

2. **distance**, at a—, procul, *adv.*

distant, be—, absum, abesse, āfūl.

distress, be in—, labōrō, āre, āvī, ātum.

distribute, distrib-uō, ere, -uī, ūtum; (*among, express by dat.*).

district, regiō, -ōnis, F.

distrust, dif-fidō, ere, -fīsus sum, *w. dat.*

disturb, perturbō, āre, āvī, ātum; com-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, mōtum.

ditch, fossa, ae, F.

divide, dī-vidō, ere, -vīsī, -vīsum.

do, faciō, ere, fēcī, factum;

(= *carry on*), gerō, ere, gessī, gestum.

double, duplex, duplicis.

1. **doubt**, verb, dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum.

2. **doubt**, noun, dubitātiō, -ōnis, F.

3. **doubt**, there is no—, nōn est dubium (= *it is not doubtful*).

draught animal, jūmentum, I, N.

1. **draw** (*of drawing a sword*), dē-stringō, ere, -strinxī, -stric-tum.

2. **draw near**, = *approach*.

3. **draw out**, ē-vellō, ere, -velli, -vulsum.

4. **draw up**, In-struō, ere, -strūxī, -strūctum.

dread, vereor, ērī, itus sum.

1. **drive** (= *urge on*), im-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum; (= *drive back*), repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsum; (*of driving headlong*), agō, ere, ēgī, āctum.

2. **drive back**, repellō, ere, rep-pulī, repulsum; rē-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum.

3. **drive off**, sub-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.

4. **drive out**, ē-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum; ex-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum.

Druids, Druidēs, um, M.

Dumnorix, Dumnorix, -igis, M.

during, *use acc. of time how long.*

duty, mūnus, -eris, N.; **do duty**, officium (I, N.) prae-stō, āre, -stitī, -stitutum *or* -stātum.

dwell, in-colō, ere, -coluī.

E

each (*oftwo*), uterque, utraque, utrumque; (*of more than two*), quisque, quaeque, quidque *or* quodque.

1. **eager**, alacer, cris, ere.

2. **eager**, be most—, studeō, ēre, uī.

eagerly, cupidē.

eagerness, alacritās, -tātis, F.

eagle, aquila, ae, F.

early, mātūrus, a, um.

earnestly, māgnopere.

easily, facile.

easy, facilis, e; very easy, per-facilis, e.

eat, vescor, I (*with abl.*).

edge, the water's—, litus, -oris, N. (= shore).

eight, octō.

eighteen, duodēvīginti; octōde-decim; decem et octō.

eighth, octāvus, a, um.

eighty, octōgintā.

elect, creō, āre, āvī, ātum.

eleventh, ūndecimus, a, um.

else, alius, a, ud.

embark, nāvēs cōn-scendō, ere, -scendī, -scēnsūm.

embassy, lēgatiō, -ōnis, F.

encamp, cōn-sidō, ere, -sēdī, ses-sum.

encourage, cohortor, ārī, ātus sum.

end, finis, is, M.

endure (=tolerate), patior, I, passus sum; (=withstand), per-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.

enemy, hostis, is, M. (*usually in the plur.*).

1. engage, com-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum.

2. engage in, versor, ārī, ātus sum, *w. in and abl.*; engage in (battle), com-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum.

3. engage with, cōn-fligō, ere, -flixi, -flictum, *w. cum and abl.*

4. engaged, occupātus, a, um.

1. engagement, proelium, I, N.

2. engagement, during the—, =while fighting.

engine, tormentum, I, N.

enjoy, fruor, I, fructus sum (*w. abl.*).

enquire, make enquiry, quaerō, ere, quaesivī, quaesitum.

enrol, cōn-scribō, ere, -scripsī, -scriptum.

enterprise, rēs, rei, F.

entirely, use tōtus, a, um, *adj.*

entrust, com-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum.

envoy, lēgātus, I, M.

1. equal, *verb.*, adaequō, āre, āvī, ātum.

2. equal, *adj.*, pār, paris.

equip, armō, āre, āvī, ātum; ōrnō, āre, āvī, ātum.

escape, ē-lābor, I, -lāpsus sum; et-rugiō, ere, -fūgi, -fugitum.

escort, praesidium, I, N.

especial, use praecipuē = *espe-cially*.

establish, cōnfirmō, āre, āvī, ātum; *of establishing a prece-dent*, instit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum.

even, etiam; not even, nē . . . quidem; even if, etiam si.

1. ever (=always), semper.

2. ever, for—, in perpetuum.

1. every, omnis, e; quisque, quaeque, quidque or quodque =each.

2. every one, omnēs, *plur.*; or quisque, *sing.*, =each.

everything, omnia; omnēs rēs.

example, exemplum, I, N.

excel, prae-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum.

excellently, ēgregiē.

exercise (=show), ūtor, I, ūsus sum.

exhibit, ūtor, I, ūsus sum.

exhort, hortor, ārī, ātus sum.

expect, expectō, āre, āvī, ātum.

experience, ūsus, ūs, M.

extend, pertineō, ēre, uī.

extensively, lātē.

extent, māgnitūdō, -dinis, F.

extremely, māmimē (*or use the superl. degree*).

F

fall, dē-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
faithful, fidēlis, e; fidus, a, um.
faithfully, fidēlīter; summā fidē.

1. **fall**, verb, cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsum; con-cidō, ere, -cidī.

2. **fall**, noun, mors, mortis, F. (=death); calamitās, -tātis, F.

fame, fāma, ae, F.

famous, praeclārus, a, um.

far, longē; **too far**, longius.

1. **farther**, adv, longius.

2. **farther**, adj., ulterior, ius.

farthest, ultimus, a, um.

fate, fortūna, ae, F.

father, pater, patris, M.

father-in-law, socer, erī, M.

fatigued, dēfessus, a, um.

favor, probō, āre, āvī, ātum; faveō, ēre, fāvī, fautum (*v. dat.*).

favorable, idōneus, a, um.

1. **fear**, verb, timeō, ēre, -uī; pertim-escō, ere, -uī; vereor, erī, veritus sum.

2. **fear**, noun, timor, -ōris, M.; metus, ūs, M.

feel, intel-legō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.

feelings, animus, ī, M. (*use sing.*).

fellow-citizen, cīvis, is, M.

fertile, fertilis, e; ferāx, -ācis.

few, but **few**, paucī, ae, a; **a few**, nōnnūllī, ae, a; **very few**, per-paucī, ae, a.

1. **field**, ager, agrī, M.

2. **field** (=field of battle), leave the field, proeliō ex-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum.

3. **field, take the—**, arma sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum; ad bellum pro-ficiscor, ī, -fectus sum.

fierce, use ācritēr.

fiercely, ācritēr.

fifteen, quīndecim.

fifth, quīntus, a, um.

fifty, quīnquāgintā.

1. **fight**, pūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum.

2. **fight a battle**, proelium faciō, ere, fēcī, factum.

3. **fighting**, pūgna, ae, F.; *or use gerund of pūgnō.*

fill, fill up, com-pleō, ēre, -plēvī, -plētum.

finally, dēnique.

1. **find**, reperīō, īre, repperī, repertum; in-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum.

2. **find out**, cō-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum; com-periō, īre, -perī, -pertum.

fine, pulcher, chra, chrum.

finish, per-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fec-tum; cōn-ficiō, ere, fēcī, -fec-tum.

1. **fire**, ignis, is, M.

2. **fire, set to—**, in-cendō, ere, -cendī, -cēsum, *v. acc.*

first, primus, a, um; **at first**, primō.

fish, piscis, is, M.

five, quīque; **five hundred**, quīngentī, ae, a.

fix (=appoint), ē-dicō, ere, -dixī, -dictum; (*with diēs*), dicō, ere, -dixī, dictum.

flag, vēxillum, ī, N.

flank, latus, -eris, N.

flee, cōn-fugiō, ere, -fūgī; fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitum.

fleet, classis, is, F.

flesh, carō, carnis, F.

1. **flight**, fuga, ae, F.

2. **flight, take to—**, sē fugae mandāre, (mandō, āre, āvī, ātum).

flow, fluō, ere, fluxī, fluxum.

1. **follow**, sequor, ī, secūtus sum.

2. **follow up**, per-sequor, ī, se-cūtus sum.

3. **following**, adj., posterus, a, um; insequēns, -entis.

- 4. follows, as—**, hīc, haec, hōc.
follower, camp—, cālō, -ōnis, M.
folly, āmentia, ae, F.; **stultitia**, ae, F.
food, cibus, I, M.
1. foot, pēs, pedis, M.; **on foot**, pedibus.
2. foot, at the—of, sub, with abl.
footsoldier, ped-es, -itis, M.
1. for (of motion towards), in, ad, w. acc.; (*with reason*), dē, w. abl.; (*of purpose*), ad and gerund or gerundive; (*of time how long*), acc. only; (*with infinitive clause*) untranslated; (*of arrangements for the future*), in, w. acc.; (=on behalf of), prō, w. abl.
2. for, conj., nam.
forbearance, mānsuētūdō, -dinis, F.
forbid, vetō, āre, vetuī, vetitum.
1. force, verb, com-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum.
2. force, noun (=violence), vīs, F.; **forces (=troops)**, cōpiāe, ārum, F. plur.
3. forced (of a march), māgnus, a, um.
ford, vadum, I, N.
forest, silva, ae, F.
forever, in perpetuum.
forget, ob-liviscor, I, -litus sum, w. gen.
1. form (=make), faciō, ere, fēci, factum; *with cōnsilium*, capiō, ere, cēpī, captum.
2. form (=draw up), in-struō, ere, -struī, -strūctum.
former, prīstinus, a, um.
forsake, dis-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, w. ab and abl.
fort, castellum, I, N.
fortification, mūnitiō, -ōnis, F.; opus, -eris, N.
fortify, mūniō, ire, ivī, itum.
forty, quadrāgintā.
forty each, quadrāgēnī, ae, a.
- forward, send—**, prae-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum.
four, quattuor; four hundred, quādringenti, ae, a.
fourth, quārtus, a, um; three-fourths, =three parts.
1. free, verb, liberō, āre, āvī, ātum.
2. free, adj., liber, era, erum.
freed, liberātus, a, um.
freedom, libertās, -tātis, F.
freely, liberē.
frequent, crēber, bra, brum.
fresh, integer, gra, grum.
friend, amicus, I, M.; often expressed by possessive pronouns.
friendly, amicus, a, um.
friendship, amicitia, ae, F.
frightful, horridus, a, um.
1. from, ā, ab (=away from), ex (:=out of); from which, unde; (with verbs of taking away), use the dat.; (with gerund in -ing), quīn, quōminus, w. subjunctive.
2. from, be—, absum, abesse, āfui.
front, in—of, prō, w. abl.; ante, w. acc.
fugitives, =those fleeing.
full, plēnus, a, um.
furnish, order to—, imperō, āre, āvī, ātum (w. dat. of persons ordered, acc. of that to be furnished).
- G**
- 1. gain, potior, irī, itus sum, w. abl.; ad-ipiscor, I, -eptus sum, w. acc.**
2. gain a request, impetrō, āre, āvī, ātum.
Galba, Galba, ae, M.
gallantly, ācriter.
Gallie, Gallicus, a, um; or use Gallōrum.
garrison, praesidium, I, N.
gate, porta, ae, F.

gather, cōgō, ere, coēgī, co-
āctum.

1. **Gaul**, (*the country*), Gallia,
ae, f.

2. **Gaul** (*a native of Gaul*), Gal-
lus, ī, m.

general, imperātor, -ōris, m.

Geneva, Genāva, ae, f.

gentleness, clēmētia, ae, f.

German, Germānus, ī, m.; *or*
adj., Germānus, a, um.

1. **get**, nanciscor, ī, nactus *or*
nactus sum.

2. **get ready**, expediō, īre, īvī,
itum.

1. **give**, dō, dare, dedī, datum.

2. **give orders**, imperō, āre, āvī,
ātum.

3. **give up** (= *hand over*), trā-dō,
ere, -didī, -ditum; (= *aban-*
don), dē-sistō, ere, -stitī, *w.*
abl.

glorious, pulcher, chra, chrum.

1. **go**, eō, īre, īī (īvī), itum.

2. **go forth**, ex-eō, -īre, -īī,
itum.

3. **go out**, ex-eō, -īre, -īī, -itum.

4. **go outside**, ē-gredior, ī, -gres-
sus sum, *w. extrā and acc.*

5. **going, to be—on**, fiō, fierī,
factus sum; geror, ī, gestus
sum.

6. **going, to be—to, use fut. part.**
in —ūrus and sum.

gone, be—, discessī, isse.

government, rēs publica, rei
publicae, f.

grain, frūmentum, ī, n.

grant, dō, dare, dedī, datum.

great, magnus, a, um;

how great, quantus, a, um;

so great, tantus, a, um;

very great, māximus, a, um.

greatest, māximus, a, um; *or*
use adv., māximē.

greatly, māgnopere, māgnō
opere; *how greatly*, quāto-
pere; quāto opere.

Greek, Graecus, ī, m.

grievance, dolor, -ōris, m.

1. **ground** (= *position*), locus,
ī, m.

2. **ground, stand (hold) one's—**,
cōsistō, ere, -stitī; sus-tineō,
ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.

3. **ground, provisions of—corn**,
molita cibāria, ōrum, n. *plur.*

4. **ground, on the—that**, quod.

1. **guard, verb**, custodiō, īre,
īvī, itum.

2. **guard, noun**, praesidium,
ī, n.

guide, dux, ducis, m.

guilty, find—, condemnō, āre,
āvī, ātum.

H

half a mile = *five hundred paces*.
halt, cōn-sistō, ere, -stitī.

1. **hand**, manus, ūs, f.

2. **hand down**, prō-dō, ere,
-didī, -ditum.

3. **hand, be at—**, ad-sum, -esse,
fuī.

4. **hand over**, trā-dō, ere, -didī,
ditum.

5. **hands, at the—of**, ā, ab, *w.*
abl.

hang out, prō-pōnō, ere, -posuī,
-poritum.

happen, accid-ō, ere, -ī, fiō,
fierī, factus sum.

harass, lacess-ō, ere, -īvī, -itum.

harbor, portus, ūs, m.

1. **hard**, difficilis, e.

2. **hard pressed, to be—**, pre-
mor, ī, pressus sum; urgeor,
ērī.

harm, noceō, ēre, uī, itum, *w.*
dat.; laedō, ere, laesī, laesum,
w. acc.

haste, make—, mātūrō, āre, āvī,
ātum; conten-dō, ere, -dī,
-tum.

hasten, conten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum.

1. **have**, habeō, ēre, uī, itum ; (= *cause*), cūrō, āre, āvī, ātum.
2. **have to** (= *must*), use *gerundive* with *sum*.
he, is ; sē.
1. **head**, cap-ut, -itis, N.
2. **head**, be at the—of, prae-sum, -esse, -fuī, *v. dat.*
- headlong**, prae-ceps, -cipitis.
- health**, be in good—, valeō, ēre, uī, itum.
- hear**, hear of, audiō, īre, īvī, itum, *v. acc.*
- hearing**, without a—, indictā causā.
1. **heart**, animus, I, M.
2. **heart**, lose—, animum dē-mittō, ere, -misi, -misum.
- heavy**, gravis, e.
1. **height** (*of measurement*), altitūdō, -dinis, F.
2. **height** (= *a high place*), superior locus, I, M.; (*in plur.*, superiōra loca, N.).
3. **height of madness**, summa dēmentia, = *extreme madness*.
- help**, auxilium, I, N.
- Helvetian**, Helvētius, I, M.; *adj.*, Helvētius, a, um.
- Helvetii**, Helvētīi, ōrum, M.
- hem in**, con-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
- hesitate**, dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum.
- hesitation**, cunctātiō, -ōnis, F.
- hide**, sē abdere, (ab-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum).
1. **high**, altus, a, um; = *great*, māgnus, a, um.
2. **higher** (*of position*), superior, ius.
3. **highest**, summus, a, um.
- hill**, collis, is, M.; **up the hill**, adversō colle.
- himself**, ipse, a, um; sē.
- hinder**, impediō, īre, īvī, itum; prohibeō, ēre, uī, itum.
- hither**, *adj.*, citerior, ius.
1. **hold**, teneō, ēre, tenuī, tentum.
2. **hold a levy**, dēlectum habeō, ēre, uī, itum.
3. **hold out**, sus-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
4. **hold** (*of holding power*), obtineo, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
5. **hold** (= *regard*), habeō, ēre, uī, itum.
- home**, domus, ūs, F.; domicilium, I, N.; **at home**, domī.
- honor**, ōrnāmentum, I, N.; honor, -ōris, M.
1. **hope**, verb, spērō, āre, ēv, ātum; expectō, āre, āvī, ātum; (*for express by acc.*).
2. **hope**, noun, spēs, speī, F.
- horse**, equus, I, M.; (= *cavalry*), equitātus, ūs, M.
- horseman**, equ-es, -itis, M.
- hostage**, ob-ses, -sidis, M.
- hostile**, inimicus, a, um.
- hour**, hōra, ae, F.
- how** (= *in what manner*), quō-modō; (= *by what route*), quā;
- how great, how large**, quantus, a, um; **how greatly**, quantopere, quantō opere;
- how many**, quot (*indeclinable.*)
- however**, quamvis.
- humanity**, hūmānitās, -tātis, F.
- hundred**, centum.
1. **hurl**, con-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum.
2. **hurl back**, rē-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum.
- hurt**, of-fendō, ere, -fendī, -fēsum.

I

- if** (= *in case that*), si; (= *whether*), num; **as if**, quasi, velut.
- imagine**, putō, āre, āvī, ātum.
- immediately**, statim.
- immense**, ingēns, -entis.
- imminent peril**, obsidiō, -ōnis, F.

impassable, impeditus, a, um.
important, magnus, a, um;
 most important, summus, a, um.

impossible, be, *use* possum.

impress, com-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.

in, in, *prep. w. abl.*

incensed, be...at, exār-dēscō, ere, -sī, -sum, *w. abl.*

inclose, con-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.

increase, augeō, ēre, auxī, auctum.

incredible, incredibilis, e.

incure, ad-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum.

induce, ad-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum.

indulge, indul-geō, ēre, -sī, -tum, *w. dat.*

indulgence, show—, indul-geō, ēre, -sī, -tum, *w. dat.*

inevitably, *use* necesse est.

inexperienced, imperitus, a, um.

infant, in-fāns, -fantis, M.

infantry, peditātus, ūs, M.; pedestrēs cōpiæ, F. *plur.*

inferior, inferior, ius.

1. **inflict** (*of punishment*), sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum; (*upon*, dē, *w. abl.*); (*of injury*), inferō, ferre, intulī, illātum; (*upon, express by dat.*).

2. **inflict death upon oneself**, mortem cōn-sciscō, ere, -scivī, -scitum, *w. dat.*

1. **influence**, verb, ad-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum; per-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum; im-pelliō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum.

2. **influence**, try to—, sollicitō, āre, āvī, ātum.

3. **influence**, noun, auctōritās, -tātis, F.; grātia, ae, F.

influential, be—, valeō, ēre, vī.

inform, certiōrem (certiōrēs) faciō, ere, fēcī, factum; of, = dē, *w. abl.*

inhabit, in-colō, ere, -coluī.

inheritance, hērēditās, -tātis, F.

injure, noceō, ēre, uī, itum, *w. dat.*

injury, injūria, ae, F.

inland, interior, ius.

inquire, quaerō, ere, quaesivī, quaesitum; rogō, āre, āvī, ātum.

inroad, incursiō, -ōnis, F.

instead of, prō, *w. abl.*

instruct, prae-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *w. dat.*; jubeō, ere, jussī, jussum, *w. acc.*

insult, contumēlia, ae, .

insultingly, insolenter.

intend (*use future partic. in -ūrus and sum*).

intercept, inter-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.

interest, be of —, interest; rē-fert.

interpreter, inter-pres, -pretis, M.

into, in, *w. acc.*

invade, in-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *w. intrā and acc.*

invite, arcess-ō, ere, -ivī, -itum.

1. **iron**, ferrum, ī, N.

2. **iron**, of—, ferreus, a, um, *adj.*

island, insula, ae, F.

Italy, Italia, ae, F.

J

javelin, pilum, ī, N.; tēlum, ī, N.

join battle, proelium com-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum.

journey, iter, itineris, N.

judge, jūdicō, āre, āvī, ātum; arbitror, ārī, ātus sum.

judgment, cōnsilium, ī, N.

Jura, Jūra, ae, M.

K

1. **keep**, con-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
2. **keep apart**, dis-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
3. **keep from**, prohibeō, ēre, uī, itum, *w. infin., or w. ab and abl.*
4. **keep off**, prohibeō, ēre, uī, itum.
- kill**, inter-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fec-tum; oc-cidō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum.
- kind, of what—**, quālis, e.
- king**, rēx, rēgis, M.
- know**, sciō, ire, ivī, itum.

L

- Labienus**, Labiēnus, ī, M.
1. **lack**, careō, ēre, uī, *w. abl.*
 2. **lacking, be—**, dēsum, deesse, dēfui.
 - ladder**, scāla, ae, F.
 - lake**, lacus, ūs, M.
 1. **land** (= *country*), ager, agrī, M.; finēs, iuni, M.; (*opposed to water*), terra, ae, F.
 2. **land, native—**, patria, ae, F.
 3. **land, on—**, pedester, tris, tre, *adj.*
 4. **land, verb**, ē-gredior, ī, -gres-sus sum.
 - language**, lingua, ae, F.
 1. **large**, māgnus, a, um; **how large**, quantus, a, um; **very large**, māximus, a, um.
 2. **larger**, māj-or, -us.
 3. **largest**, māximus, a, um.
 - later** (= *after*), post.
 - latter**, ille, a, ud.
 1. **last, verb, the battle lasts**, pūgnātūr, *impersonal passive.*
 2. **last, adv.**, proximē.
 - law**, lēx, lēgis, F.
 1. **lay aside**, dē-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum.
 2. **lay waste**, vāstō, āre, āvī, ātum; populor, āri, ātus sum.

1. **lead**, dūcō, ere, dūxī, duc-tum; (= *influence*), ad-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
2. **lead across**, trāns-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *often w. two accusatives.*
3. **lead back**, re-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
4. **lead out**, ē-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
- leader**, dux, ducis, M.
- leadership**, prīncipātus, ūs, M.
1. **leading man**, prīn-ceps, -cipis, M.
2. **leading place**, prīncipātus, ūs, M.
- leap down**, dē-siliō, ire, -siluī, -sultum.
- learn**, cō-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum.
- lease**, red-imō, ere, -ēmī, -ēmp-tum.
1. **leave** (= *leave behind*), re-linquō, ere, -liquī, -lictum.
2. **leave** (= *go away from*), dis-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *w. ab and abl.*
3. **leave** (= *go out of*), ē-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *w. ex and abl.*
- left**, sinister, tra, trum.
- legion**, legiō, -ōnis, F.
- legionary**, legiōnārius, ī, M.
- lend** (*aid*), ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum (= *bring*).
- less**, minus, *adv.*
- lest**, nē.
- letter**, litterae, ārum, F. *plur.*; epistula, ae, F.
- let slip**, dē-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum.
1. **levy, verb**, cōn-scribō, ere, -scripsī, -scriptum.
2. **levy, noun**, dēlēctus, ūs, M.
- liberality**, liberālītās, -tātis, F.
1. **liberty**, libertās, -tātis, F.
2. **liberty, be at—**, licet, *v. dat., impersonal.*
- lieutenant**, lēgātus, ī, M.

life, *vīta*, *ae*, *F*.

light (= *estimation*), *locus*, *I*, *M*.

like, *similis*, *e*, *w. dat.*

likely, *be-to*, *use future participle in -ūrus with sum*; or *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*.

1. **line**, *line of battle*, *aciēs*, *ēī*, *F*.

2. **line of march**, *agmen*, *-minis*, *N*.

linger, *moror*, *ārī*, *ātus sum*.

1. **little**, *a—*, *paulum*; (*w. ante*), *paulō*, *adv.*

2. **little**, *be within a very - of*, *minimum abesse*, *w. quīn*.

live, *vivō*, *ere*, *vixī*, *victum*; (*on, expressed by abl.*).

load, *onerō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.

lofty, *altus*, *a*, *um*.

1. **long**, *adj.*, *longus*, *a*, *um*.

2. **long**, *adv.*, *diū*; *longer*, *-diūtius*.

3. **long**, *as-as*, *dum*, *conj.*

lose, *ā-mittō*, *ere*, *-misi*, *-missum*; (= *let slip*), *dī-mittō*, *ere*, *-misi*, *-missum*; (*of losing men in battle*), *dēper-dō*, *ere*, *-didi*, *-ditum*, or *āmittō*.

1. **loss**, *dētrimentum*, *I*, *N*.

2. **loss** (= *disaster*), *calamitās*, *-tātis*, *F*; (= *disadvantage*), *dētrimentum*, *I*, *N*; (*of loss in battle*), *use āmittō = lose, or interficiō = slay*.

lot, *fortūna*, *ae*, *F*.

loud, *māgnus*, *a*, *um*.

love, *dī-ligō*, *ere*, *-lēxī*, *-lēctum*; *amō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.

low, *humilis*, *e*.

lower, *inferior*, *ius*.

loyalty, *fidēs*, *eī*, *F*.

Lucius, *Lūcius*, *I*, *M*.

M

made, *be—*, *fiō*, *fieri*, *factus sum*.

madness, *furor*, *-ōris*, *M*.

magistrate, *magistrātus*, *ūs*, *M*.

1. **make**, *faciō*, *ere*, *fēcī*, *factum*.

2. **make a march**, *iter* (*gen. itineris*, *N*.) *faciō*, *ere*, *fēcī*, *factum*.

3. **make ready**, *comparō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.

4. **make use of**, *ūtor*, *I*, *ūsus sum*, *w. abl.*

5. **make war**, *bellum inferō*, *inferre*, *intulī*, *illātum*; (*on, expressed by dat.*).

1. **man**, *vir*, *virī*, *M*; *homō*, *hominis*, *M*; (= *soldier*), *mīles*, *-itis*, *M*, 'or often by the possessive pronoun.

2. **man**, *to a—*, *ad ūnum omuēs*.

manner, *ratio*, *-ōnis*, *F*.

many, *multi*, *ae*, *a*; if followed by another adjective, supply *et* or *-que*, = *and*; *how many*, *quot*, *indeclinable*; *so many*, *tot*, *indeclinable*; *very many*, *permulti*, *ae*, *a*.

1. **march**, *verb*, *iter faciō*, *ere*, *fēcī*, *factum*, = *make a march*; *conten-dō*, *ere*, *-dī*, *-tum*.

2. **march**, *noun*, *iter*, *itineris*, *N*.

3. **march**, *line of—*, *agmen*, *-minis*, *N*.

4. **marching**, *noun*, *iter*, *itineris*, *N*.

Marius, *Marius*, *I*, *M*.

marriage, *give in—*, *nūptum* (*supine*) *dō*, *dare*, *dedī*, *datum*.

marsh, *palūs*, *-ūdis*, *F*.

Massilia, *Massilia*, *ae*, *F*.

master, *become—of*, *potior*, *irī*, *itus sum*, *w. abl.*

material, *māteria*, *ae*, *F*.

1. **matter**, *rēs*, *reī*, *F*.

2. **matter**, *no—how*, *quamvis*.

may, *licet*, *impersonal w. dat.*

mean, *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*, *w. dat.* of reflexive pronoun.

1. **means** (= *measures*), *rēs*, *reī*, *F*.

2. means of approach, *aditus*,
u., M.

3. means, by no, *nēquāquam*,
adv.

4. means, by—of, *per*, *prep. w.*
acc.

meantime, in the—, *intereā*.

measure, *cōnsilium*, I, N.

1. meet, *oc-currō*, *ere*, -*currī*,
-*cursum*.

2. meet with, *nanciscor*, I, *nactus*
or *nactus sum*, *w. acc.*

memory, *memoria*, *ae*, F.

mention, *commemorō*, *āre*, *āvī*,
ātum.

merchant, *mercātor*, -*ōris*, M.

merciful disposition, *clēmētia*
(*ae*, F.) *āc mānsuētūdō* (-*dinis*,
F.).

merit, *virtūs*, -*tūtis*, F.

merited, *meritus*, *a*, *um*.

message, *nūntius*, I, M.

messenger, *nūntius*, I, M.

middle, *use medius*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*

midnight, *media nox* (*noctis*, F.).

midst, *use medius*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*

mille, = *a thousand paces*.

military, *militāris*, *e*.

milk, *lāc*, *lactis*, N.

mischief, *maleficium*, I, N.

missile, *tēlum*, I, N.

mistaken, be —, *errō*, *āre*, *āvī*,
ātum.

mode, *genus*, -*eris*, N.

Mona, *Mona*, *ae*, F.

money, sum of money, *pecūnia*,
ae, F.; (= *coin*), *nummus*, I, M.

month, *mēnsis*, *is*, M.

more, *plūs*, *amplius*.

Morini, *Morinī*, *ōrum*, M.

morning, on the following—,
postridiē ejus diēi māne.

morrow, on the—, *postridiē*, *adv.*

most, *māximē*, or *use superlative*.

mount, *a-scendō*, *ere*, -*scendī*,
-*scēnsūm*.

mountain, *mōns*, *montis*, M.

1. move, *moveō*, *ēre*, *mōvī*,
mōtum.

2. move forward, *prō-moveō*,
ēre, -*mōvī*, -*mōtum*.

much, *adv.*, *multum*; *multū*.

multitude, *multitūdō*, -*dinis*, F.

murder, *caedēs*, *is*, F.

1. must, *use gerundive passive*
with sum.

2. must needs, *necesse est*, *w.*
dat.

my, *meus*, *a*, *um*.

N

name, *nōmen*, -*minis*, N.

nation, *nātiō*, -*ōnis*, F.

native land, *patria*, *ae*, F.

nature, *nātūra*, *ae*, F.

nearer, *propius*, *adv*.

nearest, *proximus*, *a*, *um*.

1. need, *verb*, *use opus est*
(= *there is need*), *impersonal*,
w. abl.

2. need, *noun*, *ūsus*, *ūs*, M.

neglect, *neg-legō*, *ere*, -*lēxī*,
-*lēctum*.

neighbor, *finitimus*, I, M.

neighborhood, in the—of, *ad*,
prep. w. acc.

neighboring, *finitimus*, *a*, *um*.

1. neither, *adj.*, *neuter*, *tra*,
trum.

2. neither . . . nor, *neque* . . .
neque.

Nervii, *Nerviī*, *ōrum*, M. *plur*.

next, *posterus*, *a*, *um*; *proximus*,
a, *um*.

new, *novus*, *a*, *um*.

night, *nox*, *noctis*, F.

nine, *novem*.

ninety, *nōnāgintā*.

ninth, *nēnus*, *a*, *um*.

no, *nullus*, *a*, *um*.

no one, *nēmō*; *gen.*, *nullius*;
acc., *nēminem*; *abl.*, *nullō*;

that no one, *nē quis*.

noble, *nōbilis*, *e*.

noise, strepitus, ūs, M.

none, nūllus, a, um.

nor, neque.

1. **not**, nōn (*in final and imperative clauses*, nē); **and not**, neque (*or in final clauses*, nēve, neu).

2. **not a man**, = no one.

3. **not yet**, nōndum.

nothing, nihil, N., *indeclinable*.

now (= *by this time*), jam; (= *at this present time*), nunc.

1. **number**, numerus, ī, M., *or use clause with quot = how many*.

2. **number, large—**, multitudō, -dinis, F.; magnus numerus, ī, M.

3. **numbers, great—**, = large number (*use sing.*).

numerous, crēber, bra, brum; multī, ae, a.

O

oak, rōb-ur, -oris, N.

1. **oath**, jūsjūrandum, jūrisjūrandī, N.

2. **oath, take an—**, jūrō, āre, āvī, ātum.

obedient, be—, pāreō, ēre, uī.

obey, pāreō, ēre, uī, itum, *w. dat.*; obtemperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *w. dat.*

objections, raise—, recūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, *w. quōminus and subjunctive*.

observe, videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsum.

obtain a request, impetrō, āre, āvī, ātum.

occupy, ob-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.

occur, fiō, fierī, factus sum.

of (= *about*), dē, *w. abl.*

offer, prō-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum.

1. **officer**, lēgātus, ī, M.

2. **officer, cavalry—**, praefectus (ī, M.) equitum.

old, vet-us, -eris; (*so many, yet: s*) old, nātus, a, um.

on (*of place where*), in *w. abl.*; (*of time when*), *use abl. only*; (*of making attack on*), in *w. acc.*; (*of direction*), ab or ex *w. abl.*; (= *concerning*), dē *w. abl.*

on account of, propter, *w. acc.*

1. **once, at—**, statim, *adv.*

2. **once more**, = *again*.

1. **one**, ūnus, a, um; **one hundred**, centum; **no one**, nēmō.

2. **one another**, inter sē.

3. **one at a time**, singulāris, e, *adj.*

4. **one, the one . . . the other**, alter . . . alter.

only, ūnus, a, um, *adj.*

onset, impetus, ūs, M.

open, pate-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum; *passive* pate-fiō, -fierī, -factus sum.

1. **opinion**, sententia, ae, F.

2. **opinion, be of the—**, existimō, āre, āvī, ātum.

opportune, opportūnus, a, um. **opportunately**, opportūnē.

1. **opportunity**, occāsiō, -ōnis, F.; facultās, -tātis, F.; potestās, -tātis, F.

2. **opportunity, give—**, facultātem dare, or potestātem facere.

1. **oppose** (= *resist*), repūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum; re-sistō, ere, -stitī; *w. dat.*

2. **oppose** (= *set in opposition*), op-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum.

or, aut; (*in questions*), an; **or not** (*in questions*), annōn (*direct*), necne (*indirect*).

Orcynia, Orcynia, ae, F.

1. **order**, jubeō, ēre, jussī, jussum *w. acc.*; imperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *w. dat.*

2. **orders, give—**, imperō, āre, āvī, ātum.

3. **orders, receive—**, jubeor, ērī, jussus sum, (= *be ordered*).

4. **order, in—that**, ut, nē.
 5. **order, in—to**, ut, causā, ad.
 6. **orders, without his—**, in-jussū suō.
Orgetorix, Orgetorix, -igis, M.
 1. **other, another**, alius, a, ud.
 2. **other, the—**, (*of two*), alter, era, erum; (= *the remaining*), reliquus, a, um.
 3. **others, the—**, reliquī, ae, a; cēterī, ae, a.
ought, use gerundive passive with sum; or dēbeō, ēre, uī; oportet, ēre, oportuit.
our, noster, tra, trum.
out of, ex, ē, w. abl.
outer, exterior, ius.
outside, go—of, ē-gredior, I, -gressus sum, w. extrā and acc.
over (of bridges over rivers), in, w. abl.
overwhelm, op-primō, ere, -pressī, -pressum.
own, use possessive pronouns with or without ipsius, ipsōrum.

P

1. **pace**, passus, ūs, M.
 2. **pace, slacken—**, dē celeritatē re-mittor, I, -missus sum.
 1. **panic**, timor, -ōris, M.
 2. **panic, throw into a—**, perterreō, ēre, uī, itum.
 1. **pardon, verb**, ī-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, w. dat.
 2. **pardon, noun**, venia, ae, F.
parent, parēns, -entis, M. or F.
 1. **part**, pars, partis, F.
 2. **part, in—**, partim, adv.
 3. **part, for the most—**, mām partem.
 4. **part, take—in**, inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, w. dat.
participate in, inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, w. dat.
party, factiō, -ōnis, F.
 1. **pass (=go)**, eō, ēre, iī (ivī) itum.
 2. **pass beyond**, ē-gredior, I, -gressus sum, with extrā and acc.
 3. **pass the winter**, hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum.
passage, iter, itineris, N.
pay, pendō, ere, pependī, pēnsum.
peace, pāx, pācis, F.
people, populus, I, M.
perceive, cōn-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum; intel-legō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.
perhaps, fortassē.
peril, periculum, I, N.; to the—, cum periculō.
permission, have—, licet, licēre, licuit, impersonal, w. dat.
 1. **permit**, patior, I, passus sum.
 2. **permitted, be—**, licet, impersonal, w. dat.
 1. **person (=a man)**, generally untranslated.
 2. **person, in—**, ipse, a, um, =himself.
persuade, persuādēō, ēre, -sī, -sum, w. dat.
pillage, praedor, āri, ātus sum.
pitch (of a camp), pōnō, ere, posuī, positum.
pity, feel—for, misereor, ēri, itus sum, w. gen.
 1. **place, verb**, pōnō, ere, posuī, positum; collocō, ēre, āvī, ātum.
 2. **place, noun**, locus, I, M. sing.; loca, ōrum, N. plur.
 3. **place, leading—**, principātus, ūs, M.
 4. **place, in that—**, ibi, adv.
 5. **place, to that—**, eō, adv.
plan, cōnsilium, I, N.
please, grātus, a, um.
plenty, cōpia, ae, F.
plunder, praeda, ae, F.
 1. **point out**, doceō, ēre, uī; ostendō, ere, -tendī, -tentum or ostēnsūm.

2. **point, be on the—of, use fut. part. in ūrus with sum.**
3. **point, on that—, = about that.**
- political change, novae rēs, F. plur.**
- Pompey, Pompēius, I, M.**
- popular, acceptus, a, um.**
- port, portus, ūs, M.**
- portion, pars, partis, F.**
1. **position, locus, I, M.; or use clause with ubi or quō in locō.**
2. **position, keep a—, cōn-sistō, ere, -stiti.**
- possess, ob-tineō, ēre, -tinui, -tentum; pos-sideō, ēre, sēdī, -sessum.**
1. **possessions, their—, sua, ōrum, N. plur.**
2. **possession, gain—of, potior, iri, itus sum, w. abl.**
3. **possession, take—of, occupō, āre, āvi, ātum, w. acc.**
- possibility, potestās, -tātis, F.**
- possible, as . . . as—, quam, with superlative.**
- posterity, posterī, ōrum, M. plur.**
1. **power, royal—, chief—, supreme—, rēgnum, I, N.**
2. **power, gain the sovereign—of, potior, iri, itus sum, w. gen.**
1. **powerful, firmus, a, um; potēns, -entis.**
2. **powerful, be most—, plūrimum possum, posse, potui.**
- practice, cōsuētūdō, -dinis, F.**
1. **praise, verb, laudō, āre, āvi, ātum.**
2. **praise, noun, laus, laudis, F.**
- pray for, dēprecor, āri, ātus sum, w. acc.**
- precedent, exemplum, I, N.**
- preceding, superior, ius.**
- prepare (with nouns), ante-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum; (with the infinitive) mālō, mälle, mālui.**
- preparations, make—, comparō, āre, āvi, ātum.**
- prepare, parō, āre, āvi, ātum.**
1. **present, dōnō, āre, āvi, ātum.**
2. **present, be—, ad-sum, -esse, -fui.**
- preserve, re-tineō, ēre, -tinui, -tentum.**
1. **press, press hard, urgeō, ēre, ursi; premō, ere, pressi, pressum.**
2. **press forward, in-stō, āre, -stiti, stātum.**
- prevail, superō, āre, āvi, ātum.**
- prevent, prohibeō, ēre, ui, itum.**
- previous, superior, ius.**
- previously, ante.**
- price, pretium, I, N.**
- priest, sacer-dōs, -dōtis, M.**
- prisoner, captivus, I, M.**
- private, privātus, a, um.**
- proceed, prō-gredior, ī, -gressus sum; prō-cēdō, ere, -cessi, -cessum.**
- proceedings, = things.**
- procure, parō, āre, āvi, ātum; comparō, āre, āvi, ātum.**
- produce, ef-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum.**
- project, form a,—cōnsilium (I, N.) capiō (ere, cēpi, captum) or ineō (īre, iī, itum).**
- promise, make a promise, polliceor, ēri, itus sum.**
- prompt, hortor, āri, ātus sum; im-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum.**
- protect, mūniō, īre, īvi, itum.**
- protection, praesidium, I, N.**
- protract, prō-dūcō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum.**
- provide for, prō-videō, ēre, -vidī, -vīsum, w. dat. or acc.**
- prove, probō, āre, āvi, ātum.**
- provided that, dum.**
- province, prōvincia, ae, F.**
- provisions, commeātus, ūs, M. (use the singular).**

provoke to battle, proeliō (*abl.*)
laccess-ō, ere, -īvi, -itum.

prowess, virtūs, -tūtis, *F.*

punish, ulciscor, ī, ultus sum.

punishment, supplicium, ī, *N.*

pupil, discipulus, ī, *M.*

1. **purpose**, rēs, rei, *F.*

2. **purpose**, for the—of, causā,
w. gen. preceding.

1. **pursue**, prō-sequor, ī, -secū-
tus sum; cōn-sequor, ī, -secū-
tus sum; sequor, ī, secūtus
sum.

2. **pursue a march**, iter faciō
(ere, fēcī, factum).

push forward (or onward), con-
ten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum.

1. **put**, collocō, āre, āvi, ātum;
pōnō, ere, posui, positum.

2. **put (in chains)**, con-jiciō,
ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *with in and
acc.*

3. **put to death**, inter-ficiō, ere,
-fēcī, -fectum.

4. **put spurs to a horse**, equum
ad-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum.

5. **put an end to**, finem faciō,
ere, fēcī, factum, *w. gen.*

Q

1. **quarters**, from all—, un-
dique, *adv.*

2. **quarters**, winter—, hiberna,
ōrum, *N. plur.*

queen, rēgīna, ae, *F.*

question, quaerō, ere, quaesivī,
quaesitum.

quickly, celeriter.

quickness, celeritās, -tātis, *F.*

R

rage, the battle rages, pūgnā-
tur, *impersonal passive.*

raise (=collect), comparō, āre,
āvi, ātum.

rampart, vāllum, ī, *N.*

rank, ōrdō, -dinis, *M.*

rashness, temeritās, -tatis, *F.*

rate, at any—, certē.

1. **rather**, potius, magis.

2. **rather**, had—, mālō, mälle,
māluī.

reach, per-veniō, ire, -vēnī,
-ventum, *with ad or in and
acc.*

readily (=without cause), temerē.

1. **ready**, parātus, a, um; (*for
or to, =ad w. acc.*).

2. **ready**, make—, comparō, āre,
āvi, ātum.

3. **ready**, get—(*of arms*), expe-
diō, ire, īvi, itum; (*of vessels*),
parō, āre, āvi, ātum.

rear, novissimumagmen(-minis),
N.; *in the rear*, ā tergō, *or*
āversus, a, um *in agreement*;
to the rear, ad novissimōs.

reason, causa, ae, *F.*; *or use
clause with cūr or quamobrem.*

rebuild, restit-uō, ere, -ui,
-ūtum.

recall, revocō, āre, āvi, ātum.

1. **receive**, ac-cipiō, ere, -cēpi,
-ceptum.

2. **receive orders** = *be ordered.*

recent, recēns, -entis.

recover (=win back), recipērō,
āre, āvi, ātum; (=regain cour-
age), sē re-cipiō, ere, -cēpi,
-ceptum.

refrain, temperō, āre, āvi,
ātum.

refuse (=object), recūsō, āre,
āvi, ātum.

regain, recipērō, āre, āvi, ātum.

regard, habeo, ēre, ui, itum.

region, regiō, -ōnis, *F.*

regular (of troops), legiōnārius,
a, um.

reinforcements, subsidium, ī, *N.*

relationship, cōgnātiō, -ōnis, *F.*

reliance, place—on, cōn-fidō,
ere, -fusus sum, *w. dat.*

reluctance, with—, invitus, a,
um, *adj. in agreement.*

relying on, frētus, a, um, *w. abl.*
remain, re-maneō, ēre, -mān-
 sī, -mānsum; maneō; per-
 maneō.

remaining, reliquus, a, um.

remember, memoriam re-tineō,
 ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *w. gen.*;
 meminī, isse (*imperative*, me-
 men-tō, -tōte); reminiscor, I.

Remi, Rēmī, ōrum, *M. plur.*

remince, commune-faciō, ere,
 -fēcī, -factum.

remotest, ultimus, a, um.

remove, re-moveō, ēre, -mōvī,
 -mōtum.

renew, renovō, āre, āvī, ātum.

renown, fāma, ae, *F.*; glōria, ae,
F.; laus, laudis, *F.*

repair, reficiō, ere, -fēcī, factum.

reply, re-spondeō, ēre, -spondī,
 -spōnsum.

1. **report**, verb, nūntiō, āre, āvī,
 ātum; renūntiō, āre, āvī,
 ātum; re-ferō, ferre, rettulī,
 relātum.

2. **report**, noun, fāma, ae, *F.*

3. **report, bring—**, fāmam per-
 ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *or*
use nūntiō, = *announce*.

reprove, repre-hendō, ere, -hen-
 dī, hēnsum.

republic, rēs pūblica, rei pūbli-
 cae, *F.*

1. **request**, pet-ō, ere, -īvī,
 -itum, *with ab and abl.*

2. **request, gain—, obtain—**, im-
 petrō, āre, āvī, ātum.

require, imperō, āre, āvī, ātum.

reserve, subsidium, I, *N.*

resist, re-sistō, ere, -stitī, *w. dat.*

resistance, use the verb resistō.

resolution, cōnsilium, I, *N.*;
form a resolution, cōnsilium
 in-eō, ire, -iī, -itum.

resolve, cōstit-uō, ere, -uī,
 -ūtum.

resources, opēs, um, *F. plur.*

respond, re-spondeō, ēre, -spon-
 dī, -spōnsum.

1. **rest**, verb, pōnō, ere, posui,
 positum.

2. **rest**, noun, use reliquus, a,
 um, *adj.*

restore, red-dō, ere, -didī, -di-
 tum.

restrain, con-tineō, ēre, -tinuī,
 -tentum; prohibeō, ēre, uī,
 itum.

1. **result**, be the result, fiō,
 fierī, factus sum.

2. **result in** (= *be attended with*),
 sum, esse, fui, *with cum and*
abl.

retainer, cliēns, -entis, *M.*

retire, sē re-cipio, ere, -cēpī,
 -ceptum; sē cōn-ferō, -ferre,
 contulī, collātum.

1. **retreat**, verb, pedem re-ferō
 (-ferre, rettulī, -lātum); sē re-
 cipio, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.

2. **retreat**, noun, receptus, ūs,
M.; fuga, ae, *F.*

3. **retreat**, beat a—, sē re-cipio,
 ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.

1. **return**, verb, re-vertor, I,
 versus sum; re-vertō, ere,
 vertī; red-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī),
 -itum.

2. **return**, returning, noun, re-
 ditus, ūs, *M.*; *or use clause with*
verb.

revenue, vectigal, -ālis, *N.*

revolt, dē-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -feo-
 tum.

reward, praemium, I, *N.*

Rhine, Rhēnus, I, *M.*

Rhone, Rhodanus, I, *M.*

ride up, adequitō, āre, āvī,
 ātum.

1. **right**, noun, jūs, jūris, *N.*

2. **right**, *adj.*, dexter, tra, trum.

ripe, mātūrus, a, um.

river, flūmen, -inis, *N.*

road, via, ae, *F.*; iter, itineris, *N.*

roam about, vagor, *ārī*, *ātus* sum.

Roman, noun, *Rōmānus*, I, M.; (*adj.*) *Rōmānus*, a, um.

1. Rome (as a place), *Rōma*, ae, F.; at Rome, *Rōmae*.

2. Rome (as a nation), *populus* (I, M.) *Rōmānus* = the Roman people.

3. Rome, of—(= Roman), *Rōmānus*, a, um.

1. rout, noun, *fuga*, ae, F.

2. rout, verb, *fugō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*; *fundō*, ere, *fūdī*, *fūsum*.

route, *iter*, *itineris*, N.

royal power, *rēgnum*, I, N.

rubbish, *aggor*, *aggeris*, M.

rugged, *asper*, era, erum.

rule, *imperium*, I, N.

run down, *dē-currō*, ere, -*currī* or -*cucurrī*, -*cursum*.

1. rush to arms, *con-currō*, ere, -*currī* or -*cucurrī*, -*cursum*.

2. rush out, *sē ē-jiciō*, ere, -*jēcī*, -*jectum*; (of, ex *w. abl.*).

S

Sabis, Sabis, is, M.

sacred, *sacer*, era, erum.

safe, *tūtus*, a, um.

safeguard, *praesidium*, I, N.

safety, *salūs*, -*ūtis*, F.; in safety, use *incolumis*, e, *adj.*, = safe.

sail, *nāvigō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*; (for, in *w. acc.*).

sailor, *nauta*, ae, M.

sake, for the—of, *causā*, *w. gen. preceding*.

sally, *ēruptiō*, -*ōnis*, F.

same, *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*.

satisfaction, give—, *satis-faciō*, ere, -*fēcī*, -*factum*.

save (= rescue), *ē-ripiō*, ere, -*ripuī*, -*reptum*, with *ex* and *abl.*; (= spare), *cōservō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.

say, *dīcō*, ere, *dīxī*, *dictum*; if

followed by negative, use *negō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, = deny.

scarcely, *vix*.

scatter, *dis-pergō*, ere, -*sī*, -sum.

scarcely, *inopia*, ae, F.

scent, *explōrātor*, -*ōris*, M.

1. sea, *mare*, *maris*, N.

2. sea, on the—, *maritimus*, a, um, *adj.*

3. sea coast, *ōra* (ae, F.) *maritima*.

search for, *quaerō*, ere, *quaesī-vī*, *quaesītum*, *w. acc.*

1. second, *secundus*, a, um.

2. second, a—time, *iterum*, *adv.*

secretly, *clam*.

secure, *inūniō*, *īre*, *īvī*, *ītum*.

see, *videō*, *āre*, *vidī*, *vīsum*.

seek, *pet-ō*, ere, -*ivī*, -*itum*; *appet-ō*, ere, -*ivī*, -*itum*.

seem, *videor*, *ērī*, *vīsus* sum, *passive*.

seize (= take possession of), *occupō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*; (= with impedimenta), *potior*, *īri*, *ītus* sum; (= take prisoner), *com-pre-hendo*, ere, -*hendī*, -*hēnsu* sum.

select, *dē-ligō*, ere, -*lēgi*, -*lēctum*.

senate, *senātus*, ūs, M.

1. send, *mittō*, ere, *mīsī*, *misu* sum.

2. send back, *re-mittō*, ere, -*mīsī*, -*misu* sum.

3. send forward, send in advance, *prae-mittō*, ere, -*mīsī*, -*misu* sum.

separate, *dī-vidō*, ere, -*vīsī*, -*vīsum*.

Sequani, *Sēquani*, ōrum, M. plur. seriously, *graviter*.

1. service, *officium*, I, N.

2. service, be of—, *ūsui esse*.

1. set fire to, *in-cendō*, ere, *cen-dī*, -*cēnsu* sum, *w. acc.*

2. set out, *pro-ficiscor*, I, -*fectus* sum.

3. **set sail**, *nāvēs solvō, ere, solvī, solūtum*, = *loose the ships*.
settle (= *take up position*), *cōnsidō, ere, -sēdī, -sessum*; (= *decide*), *cōstit-uō, ere, -uī, ūtum*.

seven, *septem*.

seventh, *septimus, a, um*.

seventy, *septuāgintā*.

several, *complūrēs, -ium*; *ali-quot, indeclinable*.

severe, *gravis, e*.

shameful, *turpis, e*.

shatter, *af-fligō, ere, -flīxī, -flictum*.

1. **ship**, *nāvis, is, f*.

2. **ship of war**, *nāvis longa*.

shore, *litus, -oris, n*.

1. **short**, *brevis, e*.

2. **short, in a—time**, *brevī*.

3. **short, (for) a—time**, *paulisper*.

shortly, *brevī*.

should, = *ought, use gerundive with sum*; *for other values see V. 144*.

shout, *clāmor, -ōris, m*.

show, *osten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum or ostēsum*.

shudder at, *horreō, ēre, uī, w. acc.*

1. **side**, *latus, -eris, n*; *pars, partis, f*.

2. **side, from all sides**, *undique, adv.*

3. **side, on both sides**, *utrimque, adv.*

4. **side, on this—of**, *cis or citrā prep. w. acc.*

5. **side, on the other—of**, *trāns, prep. w. acc.*

sight, *cōspectus, ūs, m*.

signal, *sīgnum, ī, n*.

1. **silent**, *tacitus, a, um*.

2. **silent, be—, keep—, taceō, ere, uī, itum**.

similar, *similis, e*.

since, *cum*.

six, sex; **six hundred**, *sescentī, ae, a*.

sixteenth, *sextus (a, um) decimus (a, um)*.

sixty, *sexāgintā*.

size, *māgnitūdō, -dinis, f*; *or use clause with quantus, a, um*.

skirmish, *proelium (ī, n.) leve or parvulum*, = *slight battle*.

slaughter, *caedēs, is, f*.

slave, *servus, ī, m*.

slavery, *servitūs, -tūtis, f*.

slay, *inter-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fec-tum*; *oc-cidō, ere, -cidi, -cīsum*.

sling, *fundā, ae, f*.

slinger, *funditor, -ōris, m*.

sloping, *dēclivis, e*.

small, *parvus, a, um*.

smaller, *min-or, -us*.

snatch away, *ē-ripiō, ere, -ripuī, -reptum*; (*from, use dat.*).

so, (= *to such an extent*), *tam*; (= *therefore*), *itaque*; **so great**, *tantus, a, um*.

soldier, *mil-es, -itis, m*.

1. **some** (= *some or other*), *aliquis (aliquī), -qua, -quid or -quod*; (= *a few*), *nōnnūllī, ae, a*.

2. **some . . . others**, *aliī . . . aliī*.

3. **some one**, *aliquis*.

4. **some day**, *aliquandō*.

son, *filius, ī, m*.

son-in-law, *gener, erī, m*.

1. **soon**, *mox, brevī*.

2. **sooner**, (= *rather*), *potius, magis*.

soon, as—as, *simul atque*.

sorry, be—, *paenitet, impersonal*.

1. **sort, of what—**, *quālis, e, adj.*

2. **sort, what—of man**, *quālis, e, = of what sort*.

sovereign power, *imperium, ī, n.*; *rēgnum, ī, n*.

space, *spatium, ī, n*.

spare, parcō, ere, pepercī, par-w. dat.

speak, *dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum*.

spear, hasta, ae, F.

specified, certus, a, um.

special, show -indulgence = indulge specially.

specially, praecipuē.

speech, ōrātiō, -ōnis, F.

speed, celeritās, -tātis, F.; cursus, ūs, M.

speedily, celeriter.

spend, cōn-sūmō, ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum.

spirit, animus, I, M., virtūs, -tūtis, F.

spring, vēr, vēris, N.

spy, speculātor, -ōris, M.

squadron, turma, ae, F.

stain, in-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

stand one's ground, cōn-sistō, ere, -stitī.

1. **standard**, sīgnum, I, N.

2. **standard bearer**, = *he who bore the standard*.

start, ē-gredior, I, -gressus sum.

1. **state, noun**, civitās, -tātis, F.; rēs publica, rei publicae, F.

2. **state, verb**, dicō, ere, dixī, dictum.

statement, vōx, vōcis, F.; *or use dicō = say*.

station, collocō, āre, āvī, ātum.

stay, moror, āri, ātus sum.

steep, prae-ceps, -cipitis; arduus, a, um.

stimulate, excitō, āre, āvī, ātum.

stir up, incitō, āre, āvī, ātum.

stone (for building), saxum, I, N.; *(for hurling)*, lap-is, -idis, M.

stop, cōn-sistō, ere, -stitī.

1. **storm, verb**, expūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum.

2. **storm, noun**, tempestās, -tātis, F.

3. **storm, take by—**, = *storm, (verb)*.

stratagem, cōnsilium, I, N.

stream, rīvus, I, M.; flūmen, -minis, N.

strength, firmitūdō, -dinis, F.; *or use clause with quot.*

strengthen, firmō, āre, āvī, ātum; mūniō, ire, ivī, itum.

stretch, pertineō, ēre, uī.

strive, conten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum; nītor, I, nīsus sum.

strong, be—, valeō, ēre, uī.

1. **struggle, verb**, labōrō, āre, āvī, ātum.

2. **struggle, noun**, certāmen, -minis, N.; bellum, I, N.

subjection, servitūs, -tūtis, F.

submit, serviō, ire, ivī, itum.

successfully, bene; feliciter.

successive, continuus, a, um.

1. **such (=so great)**, tantus, a, um.

2. **such, of—a character**, tālis, e.

3. **such . . . as, often quī w. subjunctive**.

1. **sudden**, repentīnus, a, um.

2. **sudden, make a—attack, use** subitō, adv., = *suddenly*.

suddenly, subitō.

sue for, pet-ō, ere, -ivī, -itum, w. acc.

suffer (=receive), ac-cipio, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum; (=allow), patior, I, passus sum.

sufficient, sufficiently, satis.

suggestion, at the—of, use auctor, -ōris, M., = *suggester, in abl. absol.*

suitable, idōneus, a, um.

summer, aestās, -tātis, F.

summon (of several persons), convocō, āre, āvī, ātum; *(of one person)*, vocō, āre, āvī, ātum.

superior, be—, prae-stō, āre, -stitī, -stātum or -stitum.

1. **supplies**, commeātus, ūs, M.

2. **supplies of corn**, rēs frūmentaria.

suppose, arbitror, āri, ātus sum; putō, āre, āvī, ātum; iūdicō, āre, āvī, ātum.

supreme power, *rēgnum*, I, N.
surpass, *prae-stō*, āre, -stiti,
stātum or *stitum*, *w. dat.*; *ante-cēdō*, ere, -cessi, -cessum,
w. acc.

1. **surrender**, *verb*, *transitive*, *dē-dō*, ere, -didī, -ditum; *intransitive*, *sē dēdere*.

2. **surrender**, *verb* (*of giving up arms*), *trā-dō*, ere, -didī, -ditum.

3. **surrender**, *noun*, *dēditio*, -ōnis, F.

surround, *circum-veniō*, īre, -vēnī, -ventum; (= *put round*), *circum-dō*, -dare, -dedī, -datum; (= *overwhelm*), *circum-fundō*, ere, -fūdī, -fūsum.

1. **suspect**, *suspīcor*, āri, ātus sum.

2. **suspected**, *become*—, in *suspiciōnem veniō*, (īre, vēnī, ventum).

swamp, *pal-ūs*, -ūdis, F.

swarm around, *circum-fundor*, ī, -fūsus sum.

sway, *diciō*, -ōnis, F.

swiftness, *celeritās*, -tātis, F.

sword, *gladius*, ī, M.; *with fire and sword*, *ferrō et ignī*.

T

Tarentum, *Tarentum*, I, N.

1. **take**, *capiō*, ere, cēpī, captum; (*of taking a census*), *habēō*, ēre, uī, itum.

2. **take away**, *tollō*, ere, sustulī, sublātum; *ē-ripiō*, ere, -ripuī, -reptum; (*from, express by dat.*).

3. **take up** (= *fill up*), *contineō*, ēre, uī; (*of taking up arms*), *capiō*, ere, cēpī, captum.

4. **take up a position**, *cōn-sidō*, ere, -sēdī, -sessum.

taught, *be*—, *discō*, ere, didicī, = *learn*.

tax, *tribūtum*, I, N.

tear, *lacrima*, ae, F.

tell, *dicō*, ere, dixī, dictum, *w. dat. of person*.

tempest, *tempestās*, -tātis, F.

ten, *decem*.

tenth, *decimus*, a, um.

terms, *condiciō*, -ōnis, F. (*use sing.*).

terrify, *terreō*, ēre, uī, itum.

territory, *ager*, *agri*, M.; *finēs*, -ium, M. *plur.*

terror, *terror*, -ōris, M.; *timor*, -ōris, M.

test, *periclitor*, āri, ātus sum.

Thames, *Tamesis*, is, M.; (*acc. Tamesim*).

than, *quam*.

1. **that**, *pronoun*, is, ea, id; *emphatic*, ille, a, ud.

2. **that**, *conj.*; *with noun clauses untranslated*; *with clauses of purpose*, ut, nē; *with clauses of result*, ut.

their, *suus*, a, um; or *eōrum*.

then (= *next*), *deinde*.

there (= *in that place*), *ibi*; (= *to that place*), *eō*; (*as introductory adverb*), *untranslated*.

thereupon, *tum*.

they, *eī*, *eae*, *ea*.

thing, *rēs*, *rei*, F.; or *in nom. and acc. use neuter of adj. or pronoun*.

think, *existimō*, āre, āvī, ātum; *arbitror*, āri, ātus sum.

third, *tertius*, a, um.

thirty, *trigintā*.

this, *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*.

though, = *although*.

thousand, *mille*; *plur.*, *millia*, -ium, N.

threaten, *minor*, āri, ātus sum.

three, *trēs*, *tria*; **three hundred**, *trecentī*, ae, a.

through, *per*, *w. acc.*

1. **throw** (*of weapons*), ad-igō, ere, -ēgī, -āctum; con-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum.
 2. **throw** (*into chains*), con-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum.
 3. **throw one's self**, sē prō-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum; **throw one's self into**, ir-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *w. in and acc.*; **throw one's self in front of**, sē offerō, ferre, obtulī, oblātum, *w. dat.*
 4. **throw away**, ab-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum.
 5. **throw down**, ab-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum.
- thus**, itaque.
1. **time**, tempus, -oris, N.
 2. **time**, a second—, iterum, *adv.*
 3. **time**, a short—, paulisper, *adv.*
 4. **time**, at that—, tūn, *adv.*; *or literally.*
 5. **time**, one at a—, singulāris, e, *adj.*
- to**, *prep.*, ad, *w. acc.*; *in*, *w. acc.*
- to-day**, hodiē, *adv.*
- to-morrow**, crās, *adv.*
- top**, use summus, a, um, *adj.*
- tortoise**, testūdō, -dinis, F.
- towards**, ad, *w. acc.*
- tower**, turris, is, F.; (*acc.* turrim).
- town**, oppidum, ī, N.
- trader**, mercātor, -ōris, M.
1. **transport**, *verb.* trānsportō, āre, āvī, ātum.
 2. **transport**, *adj.*, onerārius, a, um.
- traveller**, viātor, -ōris, M.
- treachery**, perfidia, ae, F.
- treat**, agō, ere, ēgī, āctum.
- tree**, arbor, -oris, F.
- trench**, fossa, ae, F.
- tribe**, nātiō, -ōnis, F.
- tribune**, tribūnus, ī, M.
- tributary**, vectigālis, e.
- trick**, artificium, ī, N.
- trifling**, levis, e.
- triple**, tri-plex, -plicis.
- troopers**, = *cavalry*.
- troops**, militēs, um, M.; cōpiaē, ārum, F.
- trunk**, truncus, ī, M.
- trust**, cōn-fidō, ere, -fīsus sum.
1. **try**, cōnor, āri, ātus sum; *or use the imperfect tense of the verb.*
 2. **try to influence**, **try to win over**, sollicitō, āre, āvī, ātum.
 3. **try to prevent**, prohibeō, ēre, *in pres., imperf., or fut. tense.*
1. **turn**, ver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum.
 2. **turn aside**, ā-vertō, ere, -vertī, -versum.
- twelve**, duodecim.
- twenty**, vigintī; **twenty-fifth**, vicēsīmus (a, um) quīntus (a, um).
- twice**, bis.
- two**, duo, duae, duo; **two hundred**, ducentī, ae, a.

U

- unable**, be—, nōn possum, posse, potuī.
- uncertain**, incertus, a, um.
- under**, sub, *prep. w. abl.*
- undertake**, sus-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
- undertaking**, cōnātus, ūs, M.
- understand**, intel-legō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.
- unexhausted**, recēns, -entis.
- unfavorable**, aliēnus, a, um; inīquus, a um; incommodus, a, um.
- unfriendly**, inimīcus, a, um.
- unknown**, incōgnitus, a, um.
- unless**, nisi.
- unoccupied**, be—, vacō, āre, āvī, ātum.
- unsuccessful**, adversus, a, um.
1. **until**, *conj.*, dum, dōnec.
 2. **until**, *prep.*, ad *w. acc.*

unwilling, be —, nōlō, nolle, nōlūi.

uphold, cōservō, āre, āvī, ātum.

upon, in *w. acc.*

upper, superior, ius.

uprising, mōtus, ūs, M.

urge, hortor, āri, ātus sum.

1. use, verb, ūtor, ī, ūsus sum, *w. abl.*

2. use, make-of, = use.

3. use to come, ventitō, āre, āvī, ātum.

4. used to, use the imperfect tense.

useful, ūtilis, e.

useless, inūtilis, e; (for, = ad, *w. acc.*)

1. usual, his—, use suus, a, um.

2. usual, than—, express by comparative.

utmost, summus, a, um.

V

Valerius, Valerius, ī, M.

vallantly, fortiter.

valid, perfectly—, justissimus, a, um.

valley, vallēs, is, F.

valor, virtūs, -tūtis, F.

value, of great—, māgnī.

vanish, dis-cēdō, ere, -cessī, cessum.

1. vanquish, vincō, ere, vicī, victum; superō, āre, āvī, ātum.

2. vanquished, victus, a, um.

vehemence, vīs, F.

vengeance, supplicium, ī, N.

venture, audeō, ēre, ausus sum.

very, admodum; often ipse.

Vesontio, Vesontio, ōnis, F.

vessel, nāvis, is, F.

vicinity, express by using ab or ad, with names of towns.

victorious, victor, -ōris, M.

victory, victōria, ae, F.

vigorous, make a-attack, māgnō impetū ag-gredior, ī, -grasus sum; ācriter impetum faciō, ēre, fēcī, factum.

vigorously, ācriter.

village, vicus, ī, M.

violence, vīs, F.

voice, vōx, vōcis, F.

voluntarily, ultrō.

W

wage, gerō, ere, gessi, gestum.

wagon, carrus, ī, M.

1. wait, moror, āri, ātus sum; expectō, āre, āvī, ātum.

2. wait for, expectō, āre, āvī, ātum, *w. acc.*

wall (of town), mūrus, ī, M.; (of camp), vāllum, ī, N.

wander, vagor, āri, ātus sum.

1. want, inopia, ae, F.

2. wanting, be —, dēsum, deesse, dēfui.

1. war, bellum, ī, N.

2. war galley, war ship, nāvis (is, F.) longa.

warn, moneō, ēre, uī, itum.

1. waste, (=lose), di-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum.

2. waste, lay—, vāstō, āre, āvī, ātum; populor, āri, ātus sum.

watch, vigilia, ae, F.

water, aqua, ae, F.

wave, fluctus, ūs, M.

way, in any—, ūllō modō.

wealth, divitiae, ārum, F. plur.

weapon, tēlum, ī, N.

weary, dēfātigō, āre, āvī, ātum.

weather, tempestās, -tātis, F.

1. weep, fleō, ēre, flēvī, flētum.

2. weeping, flētus, ūs, M.

1. weigh, exāminō, āre, āvī, ātum.

2. weigh anchor, nāvēs solvō, ere, solvī, solūtum, = loose the ships.

3. **weigh down**, op-primō, ere, -pressī, -pressum.
weight (= *influence*), auctōritās, -tātis, F.; (= *heaviness*), onus, oneris, N.
welfare, consult-of, cōsul-ō, ere, -uī, -tum, *w. dat.*
well-merited, meritissimus, a, um.
west, sōlis occāsus, ūs, M.
what, quis, quae, quid.
1. **whatever**, (*pron.*), quī, quae, quod.
2. **whatever**, *adv.* (= *at all*), omnīnō.
when (*relative*), ubi, cum; (*interrogative*), quāndō.
whence, unde.
whenever, cum.
whereas, cum.
whether, num; **whether . . . or**, utrum . . . an; **sive . . . sive**.
1. **which** (*of two*), uter, tra, trum;
2. **which**, from—, unde.
while, dum; *or use pres. part.*
who (*relative*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrogative*), quis, quae, quid.
whole, tōtus, a, um.
wholly, omnīnō; penitus.
why, cūr; quārē.
wide, lātus, a, um.
widely, lātē.
width, lātītūdō, -dinis, F.
wife, con-junx, -jugis, F.
will, against the—, use invitus, a, um, *adj.* (= *unwilling*).
1. **willing**, be—, volō, velle, volui.
2. **willing**, be more—, mālō, mälle, mālui.
1. **win**, vincō, ere, vici, victum.
2. **win over**, conciliō, āre, āvi, ātum.
3. **win, try to—over**, sollicitō, āre, āvi, ātum.
wing, cornū ūs, N.
1. **winter, verb**, hiemō, āre, āvi, ātum.
2. **winter, noun**, hiems, hiemis, F.
3. **winter, pass the—**, hiemō, āre, āvi, ātum.
winter quarters, hiberna, ōrum, N. plur.
wipe out, dēl-eō, ēre, -ēvi, -ātum.
wise, sapiēns, -entis.
1. **wish**, volō, velle, volui.
2. **wish, not to—**, nōlō, nōlle, nōlui.
with, cum, *w. abl.*; *or use abl. alone*; (= *among*), apud, *w. acc.*
1. **withdraw**, **withdraw one's self**, sē re-cipio, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum; **dis-cēdō**, ere, -cessi, -cessum; (*if from a rampart*), dē-cēdō, ere, -cessi, -cessum.
2. **withdraw** (= *lead off*), dē-dūcō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum.
1. **within** (*of place*), intrā, *prep. w. acc.*
2. **within** (*of time*), *use abl.*
3. **within**, be—a very little, minimum abesse.
1. **without**, sine, *w. abl.*
2. **without**, be—, careō, ēre, uī, itum, *w. abl.*
withstand, sus-tineō, ēre, -tinui, -tentum; (*of storms*), ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum.
road, vitrum, I, N.
woman, mulier, -eris, F.
wont, be—to, *use perfect tenses of* cōn-suēscō, ere, -suēvi.
wood, silva, ae, F.
wooded, silvestris, e.
1. **word, bring—**, nūntiō, āre, āvi, ātum.
2. **word, bring back—**, renūntiō, āre, āvi, ātum.
work, op is, -eris, N.
workman, faber, brī, M.
worthy, dignus, a, um, *w. abl., or w. quī and subjunctive.*

would that, *utinam*, *w. subjunctive*.

1. wound, verb, *vulnerō, āre, ūvi, ātum*.

2. wound, noun, *vulnus, -eris, N.*

wretched, *miser, era, erum*.

wrong, *injūria, ae, F.*; wrongs done to . . . by . . . , *use objective and subjective genitive*.

wrong-doing, *injūria, ae, F.*

Y

year, *annus, I, M.*

yesterday, *heri*.

1. yet, *tamen*.

2. yet, not—, *nōndum*.

you, *tū, vōs*.

young man, *adulēscēns, -entis, M.*

your, *tuus, a, um*; vester, *trē, trum*.

III. INDEX.

(The references are to the sections of Parts III. and V. except where otherwise specified.)

A

Ablative absolute, V. 45-50; 104.
Ablative case, various uses of, V. 92-108; 45-50; 54, 55.
Accent, page 3.
Accompaniment, ablative of, V. 103.
Accusative and infinitive construction, V. 14-18.
Accusative case, various uses of, V. 60-75.
Adjectives, declension of, III. 10-12; 14; 57-59; comparison of, III. 13; 60; agreement of, V. 11, 12, *b*; used as substantives, V. 205, *g*; used in a partitive sense, V. 86, *iv. b*; genitive with, V. 90; dative with, V. 78, *ii.*; ablative with, V. 107, *iii.*
Advantage, dative of, V. 79.
Adverbial accusative, V. 72, *i.*; adverbial clauses, position of, V. 6.
Adverbs, formation from adjectives, III. 17; comparison of, III. 17; 60; position of, V. 4, *d.*
Agent, ablative of, V. 97; dative of, V. 80, *d*; the secondary agent, V. 99, *i.*
Agreement, forms of V. 10-13.
aiō, conjugation of, III. 72, *c.*
aliquis, declension of, III. 26; uses of, V. 167, *a.*
alius, declension of, III. 14; uses of, V. 168, *a.*
alter, declension of, III. 14; uses of, V. 168, *b.*
Answers, *yes* or *no*, V. 39, *iii.*
Antecedent, peculiarities of, V. 173; agreement of pronoun with, V. 13.
Anticipation, accusative of, V. 194, *fn.*
Apodosis, V. 58.
Apposition, V. 10.
Appositive noun clauses, V. 194-199.
Arrangement of words and clauses, V. 1-9.
Attraction, subjunctive by, V. 177, *i.*
Attributive words, agreement of, V. 11

B

bōs, declension of, III. 9.

C

Calendar, Roman, page 464.
capitō, conjugation of, III. 39.

Cardinal numerals, list of, III. 15; declension of, III. 16.
Cases, use of, see under Genitive, Accusative, etc.
Causal clauses, V. 145-148, 171.
Cause, Ablative of, V. 96.
Characteristic, ablative of, V. 106; genitive of, V. 87; relative clause of, V. 21.
Chiasmus, V. 3, *i.*
coopl., conjugation of, III. 72, *a.*
coeptus sum, use of, V. 22, *iii.*
Cognate accusative, V. 72.
Collective noun with plural verb, V. 13, *n.e.*
Commands, how expressed, V. 132.
Comparatives, declension of, III. 12; formation of, III. 13; 17; 60; construction with, V. 98.
Comparison, ablative of, V. 98; expressed by *quam*, V. 98, *iii.*; standard of comparison omitted, V. 98, *vi.*; of adjectives, III. 13; of adverbs, III. 17; conditional clauses of, V. 68.
Complementary infinitive V. 19-22.
Concessive clauses, V. 65, 68; 171.
Concords, V. 10-13.
Conditional sentences, V. 68-64; in indirect narration, V. 132; conditional clauses of comparison, V. 68.
Conjugation of verbs, III. 27-46.
Conjunctions, V. 4, *A.*
Connection of thought, how expressed, V. 3, *b*; 202.
Consecutive clauses, V. 29-33.
Continuous narrative, prose, V. 201-204.
Coordinating relative, V. 172.
Correlatives, table of, III. 26, *a*; rendered by *as*, V. 174.
cum (conjunction), uses of, V. 148-151.
cum (preposition), appended to pronouns, III. 62, *b*; 64, *b*; with ablative of manner and accompaniment, V. 103, *i., ii.*

D

Dates, how expressed, page 464.
Dative case, various uses of, V. 76-81; 52, 55.
dēbeō, use of, V. 140, *b.*
Declension of nouns, III. 1-9; 48-56; of adjectives, III. 10-12; 14; 57-59; of pronouns, III. 18-26; 62-64; of numerals, III. 15, 16; 61.

Defective nouns, III. 53, 54; adjectives, III. 59; comparison, III. 13; 60; verbs, III. 72.

Definition, genitive of, V. 89.

Deliberative questions, V. 134, d.

Demonstrative pronouns, declension of, III. 22, 23; 63; peculiar forms of, III. 63; uses of, V. 158-163.

Dependent questions, V. 35-37; clauses in indirect narration, V. 175, 176; 186, 187.

Deponent verbs, III. 68; synopsis of conjugation, III. 40; gerundive of, III. 68, b; peculiarities of, III. 68, d.

Desiderative verbs, III. 74, c.

Desire, subjunctive of, V. 135.

deus, declension of, III. 9.

Difference, ablative of measure of, V. 101.

Direct object, V. 69.

Direct question, V. 34, 38.

Disjunctive questions, V. 38.

Distance, accusative of, V. 128; ablative of, V. 101, i.

Distributive numerals, III. 61, c.

domus, declension of, III. 9.

dum, uses of, V. 67; 153-155.

Duration of time, V. 129.

Duty, how expressed, V. 140.

E

Effecting, construction with verbs of, V. 33, v.

Emphasis, in relation to the order of words, V. 3, a.

Enditics, V. 34, i., fn.

eō, conjugation of, III. 45; 71, a; passive of, III. 71, a; compounds of, III. 71, a.

Epistolary tenses, V. 178, ii., fn.

Ethical dative, V. 80, c.

Exclamations, accusative in, V. 74.

F

fārī, conjugation of, III. 72, c.

Fearing, construction with verbs of, V. 138.

ferō, conjugation of, III. 44; compounds of, III. 71, b.

Final clauses, V. 23-28.

fiō, conjugation of, III. 46; compounds of, III. 71, c.

For, introductory, not translated in Latin, V. 195, fn.

fore ut, periphrasis with, V. 83, iv.

Frequentative verbs, III. 74, b; tenses in frequentative clauses, V. 149.

ful, **fuēram**, **fuērō**, in compound tenses, V. 182, e, i.

Future infinitive, with verbs of *hoping*, *promising*, etc., V. 17.

Future participle, V. 123, 124.

Future perfect tense, uses of, V. 184.

Future tense, uses of, V. 181.

G

Gender, general rules for, III. 47; gender endings, and exceptions in the five declensions, III. 48, c; 49, c; 50, c; 51, c; 52, c.

Genitive case, various uses of, V. 82-91; 53, 55.

Gerund, forms of, III. 35; uses of, V. 113, 114.

Gerundive, forms of, III. 34; uses of, V. 118-121.

Greek nouns, 48, d; 49, d; 50, d; Greek accusative, V. 73.

H

habēō, with perfect participle, V. 182, e, ii.

Heteroclitite nouns, III. 56.

Heterogeneous nouns, III. 55.

hic, declension of, III. 23; peculiar forms of, III. 63, a; uses of, V. 158.

Hindering, verbs of, V. 139.

Historical infinitive, V. 112.

Historical present, V. 179, c; sequence of tenses with, V. 28, iv.

Hortatory (or Hortative), subjunctive, V. 134, a.

I

I-stems, declension of nouns, III. 50, b.

idem, declension of, III. 23; followed by *qui* or *ac*, V. 174; uses of, V. 162.

Idiom, differences between English and Latin, V. 203; 205.

ille, declension of, III. 23; peculiar forms of, III. 63; uses of, V. 160.

Imperative mood, inflection of, III. 37, 38; uses of, V. 132, 133; in indirect discourse turned by subjunctive, V. 186, i., c.

Imperfect tense, uses of, V. 130.

Impersonal verbs, III. 73; impersonal passive, V. 56, 57; impersonal verbs, with clause or infinitive as subject, V. 110, i.

Inceptive or inchoative verbs, III. 74, a.

Indeclinable nouns, gender of, III. 47, c; list of, III. 54, b; indeclinable adjectives, III. 59.

Indefinite pronouns, declension of, III. 26; uses of, V. 166-169.

Indicative mood, inflections of, III. 27, 28; 64, c; tenses of, V. 178-184.

Indirect narration, V. 185-193; principal clauses put in, V. 186, 1; subordinate clauses in, V. 175; 186, 2; virtual, V. 177; tenses in, V. 187; pronouns in, V. 188; adverbs in, V. 189; real or apparent exceptions to rules of, V. 175, i.; 190; conditional sentences in, V. 192.

Indirect object, V. 77, 78.

Indirect questions, V. 35-39.

Indirect reflexive, V. 164, i.

Infinitive, forms of, III. 31, 32; uses of, V. 109-112; 14-18; 19-22; 195.

inquam (inquit), conjugation of, III. 72, *d*; use of, V. 18, *vi*.; 4, *g*.
Instrumental ablative, V. 92; 99.
Intensive verbs, III. 74, *b*.
Interest, construction with, V. 53, *b*, *i*, *ii*.
Interest, dative of, V. 79, 80.
Interrogative particles, *-ne*, *nōne*, *num*, V. 34, *i*, 35, *i*, 39, *iv*.; *utrum* . . . *an*, V. 38, 39, *ii*.; *annōn*, *necne*, V. 39, *i*.
Interrogative pronouns, declension of, III. 25; 64; uses of, V. 34, 35, 37.
Intransitive verbs, corresponding to English transitive verbs, V. 51-55; used impersonally in the passive, V. 56-57.
-iō, verbs of third conjugation in, III. 39; 67.
ipse, declension of, III. 23; uses of, V. 163.
Irregular nouns, declension of, III. 9; case-endings of nouns, III. 48, *c*; 49, *c*; 50, *c*; 51, *c*; 52, *c*; case endings of adjectives of third declension, III. 58, *b*; verbal endings, III. 66.
is, declension of, III. 22; uses of, V. 159.
iste, declension of, III. 23; uses of, V. 161.
It, no equivalent in Latin, when used as an impersonal or representative subject, V. 195, *fn*.
Iterative verbs, III. 74, *b*.
-ius, adjectives with genitive singular in, III. 14.

J

jam, and its compounds, with present and imperfect, V. 179, *e*; 180, *e*.
Jupiter, declension of, III. 9.
juramentum, declension of, III. 9.
Jussive subjunctive, V. 134, *b*.

L

licet, use of, V. 143; as concessive particle, V. 66, *i*.
Limit of motion, accusative of, V. 125.
Locative ablative, V. 92; 106.
Locative case, the, III. 48, *c*; 49, *c*; 50, *e*.

M

magis, comparison expressed by, III. 60, *b*.
māiō, conjugation of, III. 43.
Manner, ablative of, V. 103.
māterfamilias, declension of, III. 9.
maximē, comparison expressed by, III. 60, *b*.
Means, ablative of, V. 99.
memini, conjugation of, III. 72, *b*; construction with, V. 53, *a*.
Middle use of passive, V. 73.
mille (millia), declension of, III. 16; use of, III. 61, *e*.
Months, names of, page 464, *fn*.

Moods, see Indicative, Subjunctive, etc.
Motion, limit of, V. 125; motion *from*, V. 126.

N

Natural gender, rules for, III. 47.
-ne (enclitic), V. 34, *fn*.; used in questions, V. 34, *i*; 35, *i*.
nē, with negative purpose, V. 24, 28, *i*; with verbs of fearing, V. 133; with *dum* in clauses of proviso, V. 67; with imperative or subjunctive to express prohibitions, etc., V. 132-135; with clauses of concession, V. 134.
nē...quidem, V. 4, *f*.
Necessity, how expressed, V. 141.
Negatives, position of, V. 4, *f*.
nēmō, declension of, III. 54, *c*.
nēve and **neu**, V. 28, *ii*.
Neuter adjectives used substantively with the partitive genitive, V. 96, *i*.; as cognate accusatives, V. 72.
nisi, in conditional clauses, V. 64, *iii*.; ablative absolute, V. 50, *iv*.; with single words, V. 44, *iii*.
nōli (**nōlite**), with infinitive, to express prohibitions, V. 133.
nōiō, conjugation of, III. 43.
Nominative cases, III. *i*, *fn*.
nōn quod, **nōn quia**, with subjunctive, V. 147, *iii*.
nōne, force of, V. 34, *i*.
noster, **nostrī**, **nostrum**, use of, III. 62, *a*.
Noun clauses, different forms of the, V. 194-199.
Nouns, declension of, III. 1-9; 48-56.
num, force of, V. 34, *i*.; in dependent questions, V. 35, *i*.
Nominal adverbs, III. 61, *d*.
Numerals, III. 15, 16; 61; method of combining, III. 61, *a*.

O

Object, direct, V. 69; indirect, V. 77, 78; noun clauses used as objects, V. 194-199.
Oblique genitive, V. 85; with adjectives, V. 90.
Oblique cases, III. 1, *fn*.
ōdi, conjugation of, III. 72, *b*.
oportet, uses of, 140, *b*.
Optative use of subjunctive, V. 135.
Ōrātiō obliqua, see Indirect narration.
Order of words, V. 1-4; of clauses, V. 5-9; 204.
Ordinal numerals, list of, III. 15; declension of, III. 16.

P

Participial phrases, value of, V. 43, 48; position of, V. 7.
Participles, formation of, III. 33, 34; use of, V. 40-44; 45-50; 118-124; with force of substantives, V. 205, *g*; case endings of present participle, III. 58, *c*.

Partitive genitive, V. 86.
 Passive voice, inflection of, III. 23, 30, 32, 34, 38; impersonal use of, V. 56, 57.
paterfamilias, declension of, III. 9.
 Perfect tense, uses of, V. 182; perfect participle with *habeo*, V. 182, e, ii.; perfect participle with *fui*, *fuera*, *fuero*, V. 182, e, i.
 Periodic structure, V. 9; 204.
 Periphrastic conjugations, III. 69; V. 120, 124; indicative of, in apodosis, V. 64, i.
 Permission, how expressed, V. 143.
 Personal construction of *verba sentiendi et declarandi*, V. 18, vii.
 Personal pronouns, declension of, III. 18, 19, 20, 22, 62; peculiar forms of, III. 62, c; uses of, V. 157.
 Phraseology, differences between English and Latin, V. 203.
 Place, *from which*, V. 126; *in which*, V. 127; *to which*, V. 125.
 Pluperfect tense, uses of, V. 183.
 Plural, nouns with special meaning in, III. 53, c, d.
plus, declension of, III. 12.
 Possession, dative of, V. 80, e.
 Possessive genitive, V. 83.
 Possessive pronouns (adjectives), III. 21; 62, a; uses of, V. 165.
possum, conjugation of, III. 42, 70; use of, V. 142.
 Potential subjunctive, V. 136.
 Predicate noun, V. 12, c; adjective, V. 12, b; genitive, V. 83, i.; 86, v.; 87, iii.; dative, V. 143, i.; accusative, V. 69, v.; ablative, V. 55, v.; 105, i.
 Prepositions, with accusative, V. 70; with ablative, V. 108; construction with verbs compounded with prepositions, V. 78, v.
 Present tense, uses of, V. 179.
 Price, genitive of, V. 88; ablative of, V. 100.
 Primary tenses, V. 25; primary sequence, V. 25; 176; 187; 190, vi.
 Principal parts of the verb, III. 65.
Prisquam, uses of, V. 156.
 Prohibitions, how expressed, V. 133.
 Pronouns, see Personal, Relative, etc.
 Pronunciation of Latin, page 1.
 Protasis, V. 58.
 Proviso, clauses of, V. 67.
 Purpose, expressed by the subjunctive, V. 24-28; by supine after verb of motion, V. 116; by gerund and gerundive, V. 114, a, c; 119; dative of, V. 81.

Q

quaesō, conjugation of, III. 72, f.
 Qualities, two, compared, V. 173.
 Quality, genitive of, V. 87; ablative of, V. 105.
quam, with superlative, V. 174, i.; after comparatives, V. 98, iii.; with *ante* and *prius*, V. 156, i.

quamquam, in concessive clauses, V. 65, a; meaning *and yet*, V. 65, a, fn.
quamvis, with subjunctive, V. 65, c; joined with single word, V. 66, ii.
 Questions, direct and indirect, V. 34-39; in indirect discourse, V. 163, 1, b; deliberative questions, V. 134, d; rhetorical questions, V. 136, b.
qui, see Relative Pronoun.
quidam, declension of, III. 26; uses of, V. 167, e.
quin, with words of doubting, preventing, etc., V. 139; in relative clauses of characteristic, V. 33, ii.
quis, indefinite, declension of, III. 26; 64, c; uses of, V. 166, a.
quisquam, declension of, III. 26; uses of, V. 166, b.
quisque, declension of, III. 26; uses of, V. 169, a.
quivis, declension of, III. 26; uses of, V. 166, c.
quō, with clauses of purpose, V. 28, iii.
quod (conjunction), V. 145-147; introducing noun clauses, V. 193.
quōminus, use of, V. 139.

R

Reciprocal relation, how expressed, III. 62, e.
 Reference, dative of, V. 80, b.
refert, construction with, V. 53.
 Reflexive pronoun, declension of, III. 20; peculiar forms of, III. 62, c; of first and second person, III. 62, d; uses of, V. 164; verbs, V. 69, vii.
 Relative clauses, ordinary, V. 170-174; of purpose, V. 26; of characteristic, V. 32; causal, V. 171; concessive, V. 171.
 Relative pronouns, declension of, III. 24; 64; uses of, V. 170-174; peculiar forms of, III. 64, a.
respublica, declension of, III. 9.
 Result, clauses of, V. 29-33.

S

Saying, construction with verbs of, V. 14-18; used personally in the passive, V. 18, vii.
sē, declension of, III. 20; uses and reference of, V. 16, a; 164.
 Secondary tenses, V. 25; secondary sequence, V. 25, 176, 187.
 Semi-deponents, III. 68, c.
 Sense construction, V. 13, n.b.
 Separation, ablative of, V. 93; dative with verbs of, V. 80, a.
 Sequence of tenses, V. 25, 176, 187, 190, vi.
Should, different values and ways of translating, V. 144.
si, with conditional clauses, V. 58-63.
 Source, ablative of, V. 95.
 Space, accusative of extent of, V. 123.

Specification, accusative of, V. 73; ablative of, V. 102.

Stem, nature of, III. 48, fn. 1.

Stems of the five declensions, III. 48, *a*; 49, *a*; 50, *a*; 51, *a*; 52, *a*; present, perfect and supine stems of verbs, III. 65.

Structure of sentences in Latin, V. 1-9; 204.

Subject, agreement of verb with, V. 12, *a*; subject of infinitive, V. 109; of historical infinitive, V. 112; noun clauses used as subjects, V. 194-199.

Subjective genitive, V. 84.

Subjunctive mood, inflection of, III. 29, 30; in principal clauses, V. 134-136; in clauses of purpose, V. 24-27; of result, V. 29-32; in dependent questions, V. 35; in conditional clauses, V. 61, 63; in concessive clauses, V. 65; in conditional clauses of comparison, V. 68; with verbs of fearing, V. 138; with *quā* and *quōminus*, V. 139; with *quod*, V. 147; with *cum*, V. 148, 151; with *dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, V. 67; 155; with *antequam* and *priusquam*, V. 156; with *quī*, V. 27; 32; 171; in indirect discourse, V. 175; 186; of virtual indirect narration, V. 177; by attraction, V. 177, i.

Substantial use of infinitive, V. 109-111.

Substantive clauses, V. 27; 31; 194-199.

sum, conjugation of, III. 41; peculiar forms of, III. 70; compounds of, III. 70.

sunt qui, with clause of characteristic, V. 32, i.; 167, *d*.

Supine, formation of, III. 36; uses of, V. 115-117.

Syllabication, page 2.

Syncope verb forms, III. 66, *a*.

T

Temporal clauses, V. 149-156.

Tenses of the indicative, V. 178-184; of the infinitive, V. 15; 110, ii.; of participles, V. 41; 123; of the subjunctive, see under the various kinds of subjunctive; in indirect narration, V. 187.

Third declension, accusative in *im*, ablative in *i*, genitive plural in *um*, neuter plural in *ia*, III. 50, *b*.

Time, duration of, V. 129; time *when*, V. 130; time *within which*, V. 131.

trans, compounds of, with two accusatives, V. 69, *iv*.

U

ubi, with perfect indicative, V. 152, *b*; with subjunctive in relative clause of purpose, V. 26.

ūlus, declension of, III. 14; uses of, V. 166, *b*.

ūnus, declension of, III. 14.

ut (**utī**), to denote concession, V. 134; in final clauses, V. 24, 27; in consecutive clauses, V. 29, 31; substantive clauses introduced by, V. 196, 197; in temporal clauses, V. 152, *b*; omission after certain verbs, V. 28, *vi*.

uterque, declension of, III. 26; use of, V. 169.

utīnam, use of, V. 135.

ūtor, with ablative, V. 54; with two ablatives, V. 55, *v*.; gerundive of, used impersonally, V. 57, *fn*.; gerundive of, used personally, V. 119, *ii*.

utrum....an, V. 38.

V

Value, genitive of, V. 88; ablative of, V. 100.

Verba sentiendī et declārandī, construction of, V. 14-18; personal construction in passive, V. 18, *vii*.

Verbal adjectives, with genitive, V. 90, *i*.; gerundive, V. 118-121; participles, V. 40-44, 45-50, 122-124.

Verbal nouns, infinitive, V. 109-112; gerund, V. 113, 114; supine, V. 115-117.

Verbs, conjugation of, III. 27-46; principal parts of, III. 65; deponent, III. 40; 68; semi-deponent, III. 68, *c*; defective, III. 72; impersonal, III. 73; irregular forms, III. 66; position of, V. 2, 3, 4, *g*; agreement of finite verb with subject, V. 12, *a*; genitive with, V. 53; 91; dative with, V. 52; 78, *v*.; ablative with, 54; 107, *ii*.

vester, vestrī, vestrum, use of, III. 62, *a*.

videor, used personally, V. 18, *vii*.

Virtual indirect narration, V. 177.

vis, declension of, III. 9.

Vocative case, III. 1, *fn*.

volō, conjugation of, III. 43; constructions with, V. 20, 21, 22, *v*.; 136.

W

Wish, how expressed, V. 135.

Would, different values and ways of translating, V. 137.